This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

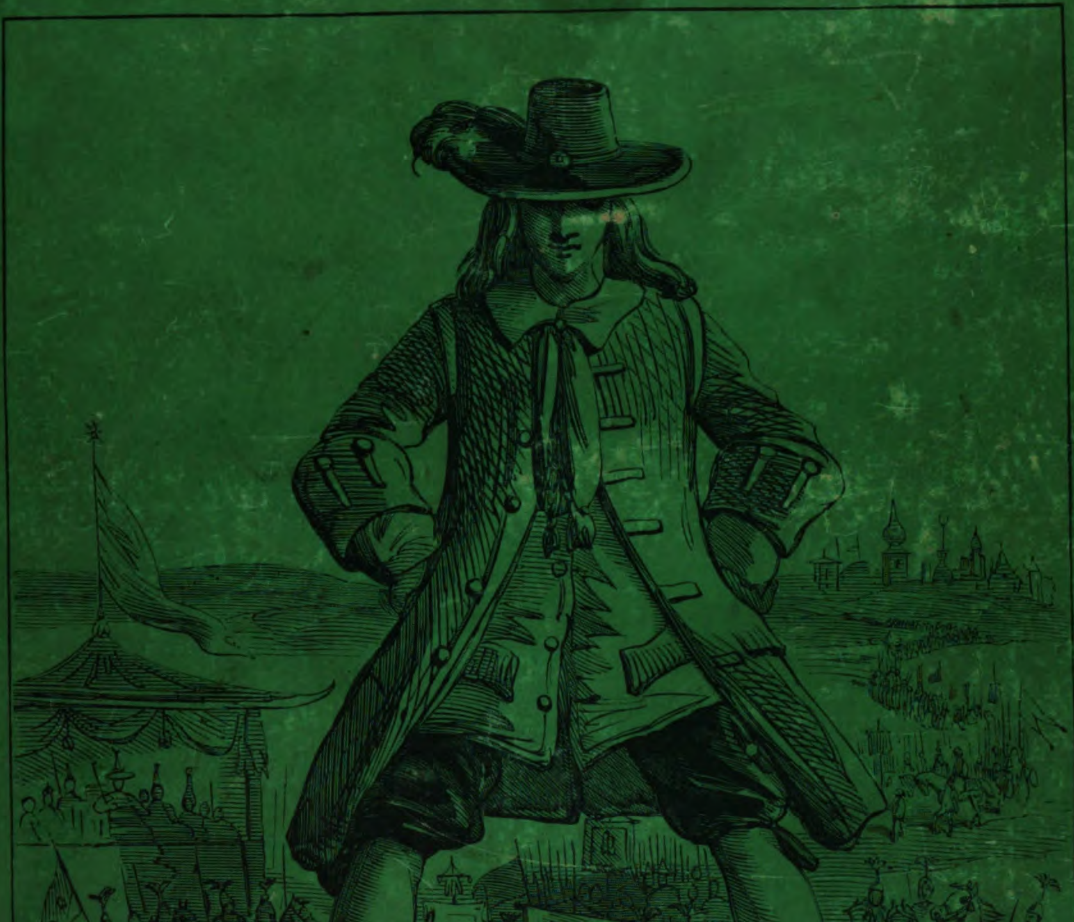
Google™ books

https://books.google.com

HALF-A-CROWN

MARVELLOUS ADVENTURES

GULLIVER'S TRAVELS
BARON MUNCHAUSEN
PETER WILKINS

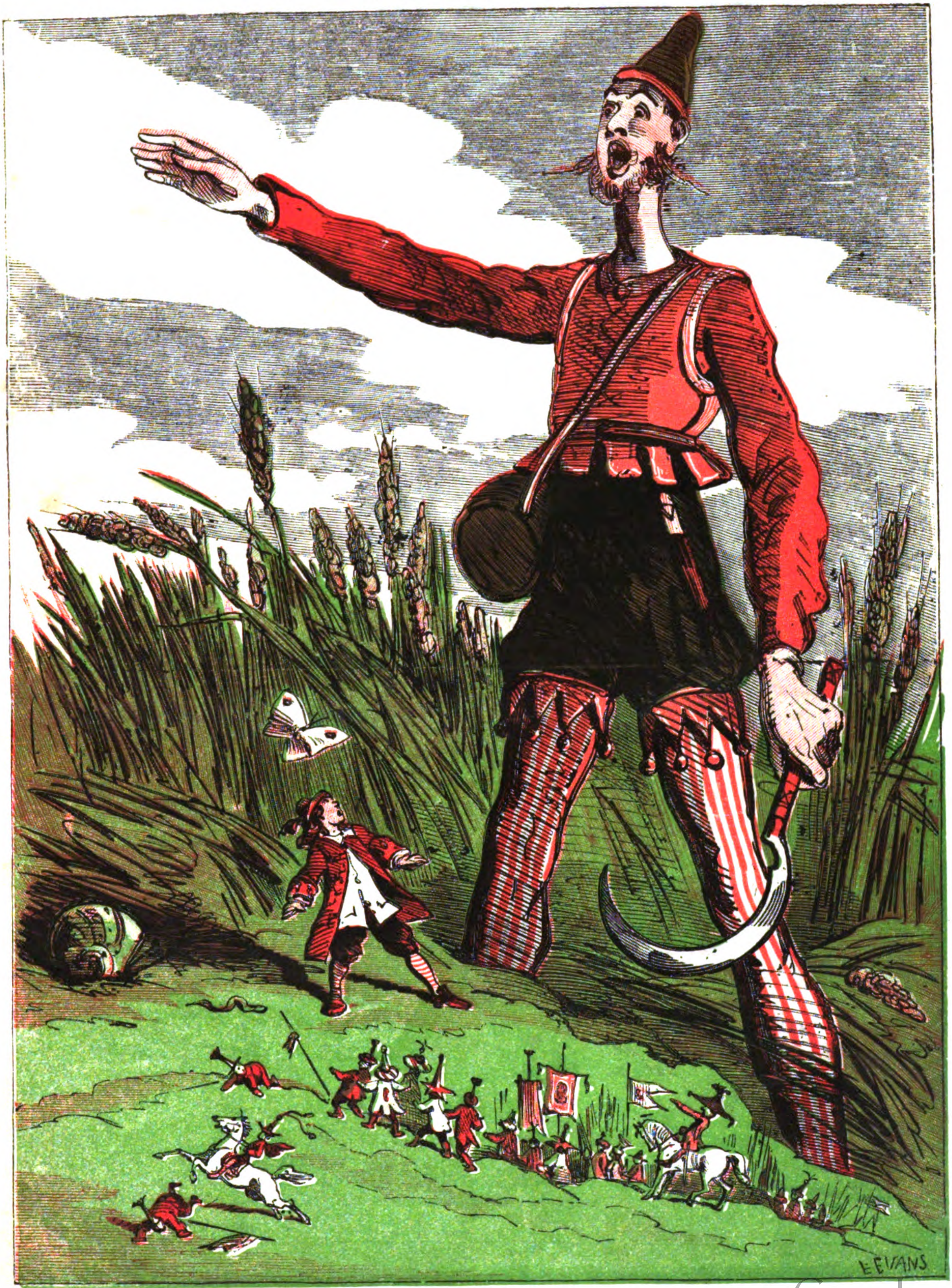


ILLUSTRATED BY PHIZ

LONDON: GEORGE VICKERS, ANGEL COURT, STRAND

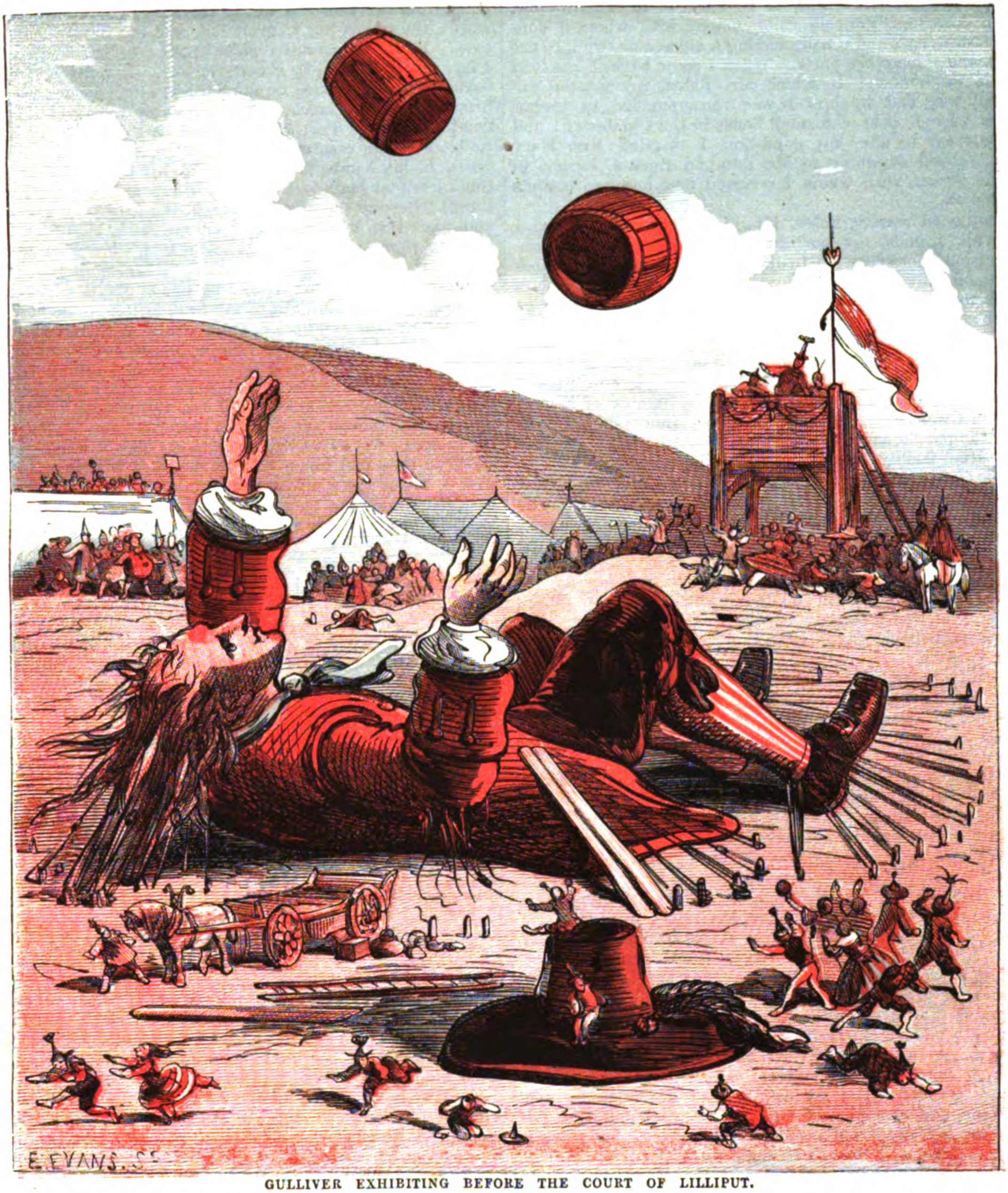
GULLIVER'S TRAVELS

IN LILLIPUT AND BROBDINGNAG.



LONDON: GEORGE VICKERS, ANGEL COURT, STRAND.

GULLIVER'S TRAVELS.



GULLIVER EXHIBITING BEFORE THE COURT OF LILLIPUT.

A VOYAGE TO LILLIPUT.

CHAPTER I.

MY father had a small estate in Nottinghamshire. I was the third of five sons. He sent me to Emanuel College in Cambridge, at fourteen years old, where I resided three years, and applied myself close to my studies; but the charge of maintaining me, although I had a very scanty allowance, being too great for a narrow fortune, I was bound apprentice to Mr. James Bates, an eminent surgeon in London, with whom I continued four years; and my father now and then sending me small sums of money, I laid them out in learning navigation, and other parts of the mathematics, useful to those who intend to travel, as I always believed it would be, some time or other, my fortune to do. When I left Mr. Bates, I went down to my father; where, by the assistance of him and my uncle John, and some other relations, I got forty pounds, and a promise of thirty pounds a year to maintain me at Leyden; there I studied physic two years and seven months, knowing it would be useful to me in long voyages.

Soon after my return from Leyden, I was recommended by my good master, Mr. Bates, to be surgeon to the Swallow, Captain Abraham Pannell, commander; with whom I continued three years and a half, making a voyage or two into the Levant, and some other parts. When I came back, I resolved to settle in London; to which Mr. Bates, my master, encouraged me, and by him I was recommended to several patients. I took part of a small house in the Old Jewry; and being advised to alter my condition, I married Mrs. Mary Burton, second daughter to Mr. Edmund Burton, hosier, in Newgate Street, with whom I received four hundred pounds for a portion.

But my good master, Bates, dying in two years after, and I having few friends, my business began to fail; for my conscience would not suffer me to imitate the bad practice of too many among my brethren. Having, therefore, consulted with my wife and some of my acquaintance, I determined to go again to sea. I was surgeon successively in two ships, and made several voyages for six years, to the East and West Indies, by which I got some addition to my fortune. My hours of leisure I spent in reading the best authors, ancient and modern, being always provided with a good number of books; and when I was ashore, in observing the manners and dispositions of the people, as well as learning their language; wherein I had a great facility, by the strength of my memory.

The last of these voyages not proving very fortunate, I grew weary of the sea, and intended to stay at home with my wife and family. I removed from the Old Jewry to Fetter Lane, and from thence to Wapping, hoping to get business among the sailors, but it would not turn to account. After three years' expectation that things would mend, I accepted an advantageous offer from Captain William Prichard, master of the Antelope, who was making a voyage to the South Sea. We set sail from Bristol, May 4, 1699, and our voyage at first was very prosperous.

It would not be proper, for some reasons, to trouble the reader with the particulars of our adventures in those seas; let it suffice to inform him, that in our passage from thence to the East Indies, we were driven by a violent storm to the north-west of Van Dieman's Land. By an observation, we found ourselves in the latitude of 30 degrees 2 minutes south. Twelve of our crew were dead by immoderate labour and ill food; the rest were in a very weak condition. On the 5th of November, which was the beginning of summer in those parts, the weather being very hazy, the seamen spied a rock within half a cable's length of the ship; but the wind was so strong, that we were driven directly upon it, and immediately split. Six of the crew, of whom I was one, having let down the boat into the sea, made a shift to get clear of the ship and the rock. We rowed, by my computation, about three leagues, till we were able to work no longer, being already spent with labour while we were in the ship. We therefore trusted ourselves to the mercy of the waves, and in about half an hour the boat was overset by a sudden flurry from the north. What became of my companions in the boat, as well as of those who escaped on the rock, or were left in the vessel, I cannot tell; but conclude they were all lost. For my own part, I swam as fortune directed me, and was pushed forward by wind and tide. I often let my legs drop, and could feel no bottom; but when I was almost gone, and able to struggle no longer, I found myself within my depth, and by this time the storm was much abated. The declivity was so small, that I walked near a mile before I got to the shore, which I conjectured was about eight o'clock in the evening. I then advanced forward near half a mile, but could not discover any sign of houses or inhabitants; at least, I was in so weak a condition, that I did not observe them. I was extremely tired, and with that, and the heat of the weather, and about half a pint of brandy that I had drank as I left the ship, I found myself much inclined to sleep. I lay down in the grass, which was very short and soft, where I slept sounder than ever I remembered to have done in my life, and, as I reckoned, about nine hours; for when I awaked, it was just daylight. I attempted to rise, but was not able to stir; for as I happened to lie on my back, I found my arms and legs were strongly fastened on each side to the ground; and my hair, which was long and thick, tied down in the same manner. I likewise felt several slender ligatures across my body, from my arm-pits to my thighs. I could only look upwards, the sun began to grow hot, and the light offended my eyes. I heard a confused noise about me; but in the posture I lay, could see nothing except the sky. In a little time, I felt something alive moving on my left leg, which advancing gently forward over my breast, came almost up to my chin; when, bending my eyes downward as much as I could, I perceived it to be a human creature not six inches high, with a bow and arrow in his hands, and a quiver at his back. In the meantime, I felt at least forty more of the same kind (as I conjectured) following the first. I was in the utmost astonishment, and roared so loud, that they all ran back in a fright; and some of them, as I was afterwards told, were hurt with the falls they got by leaping from my sides upon the ground. However, they soon returned, and one of them, who ventured so far as to get a full sight of my face, lifting up his hands and eyes by way of admiration, cried out in a shrill but distinct voice, *Hekinah degul;* the others repeated the same words several times, but I then knew not what they meant. I lay all this while, as the reader may believe, in great uneasiness; at length, struggling to get loose, I had the fortune to break the strings, and wrench out the pegs that fastened my left arm to the ground; for, by lifting it up to my face, I discovered the methods they had taken to bind me, and, at the same time, with a violent pull, which gave me excessive pain, I a little loosened the strings that tied down my hair on the left side, so that I was just able to turn my head about two inches. But the creatures ran off a second time, before I could seize them; whereupon, there was a great shout in a very shrill accent, and after it ceased, I heard one of them cry aloud, *Tolgo phonac;* when in an instant I felt above an hundred arrows discharged on my left hand, which pricked me like so many needles; and, besides, they shot another flight into the air, as we do bombs in Europe, whereof many, I suppose, fell on my body (though I felt them not), and some on my face, which I immediately covered with my left hand. When this shower of arrows was over, I fell a-groaning with grief and pain, and then striving again to get loose, they discharged another volley larger than the first, and some of them attempted with spears to stick me in the sides; but by good luck I had on me a buff jerkin, which they could not pierce. I thought it the most prudent method to lie still, and my design was to continue so till night, when, my left hand being already loose, I could easily free myself; and as for the inhabitants, I had reason to believe I might be a match for the greatest army they could bring against me, if they were all of the same size with him that I saw. But fortune disposed otherwise for me. When the people observed I was quiet, they discharged no more arrows; but, by the noise I heard, I knew their numbers increased; and about four yards from me, over against my right ear, I heard a knocking for above an hour, like that of people at work; when turning my head that way, as well as the pegs and strings would admit me, I saw a stage erected about a foot and a half from the ground, capable of holding four of the inhabitants, with two or three ladders to mount it; from whence one of them, who seemed to be a person of quality, made me a long speech, whereof I understood not one syllable. But I should have mentioned, that before the principal person began his oration, he cried out three times, *Langro dehul san;* (these words and the former were afterwards repeated and explained to me.) Whereupon, immediately about fifty of the inhabitants came and cut the strings that fastened the left side of my head, which gave me the liberty of turning it to the right, and of observing the person and gesture of him that was to speak. He appeared to be of a middle age, and taller than any of the other three who attended him, whereof one was a page that held up his train, and seemed to be somewhat longer than my middle finger; the other two stood one on each side to support him. He acted every part of an orator, and I could observe many periods of threatenings, and others of promises, pity, and kindness. I answered in a few words, but in the most submissive manner, lifting up my left hand and both my eyes to the sun, as calling him for a witness; and being almost famished with hunger, having not eaten a morsel for some hours before I left the ship, I found the demands of nature so strong upon me, that I could not forbear showing my impatience (perhaps against the strict rules of decency) by putting my finger frequently to my mouth, to signify that I wanted food. The *hurgo* (for so they called a great lord, as I afterwards learnt,) understood me very well. He descended from the stage, and commanded that several ladders should be applied to my sides, on which above a hundred of the inhabitants mounted, and walked towards my mouth, laden with baskets full of meat, which had been provided and sent thither by the king's orders, upon the first intelligence he received of me. I observed there was the flesh of several animals, but could not distinguish them by the taste. There were shoulders, legs, and loins, shaped like those of mutton, and very well dressed, but smaller than the wings of a lark. I ate them by two or three at a mouthful, and took three loaves at a time, about the bigness of musket bullets. They supplied me as fast as they could, showing a thousand marks of wonder and astonishment at my bulk and appetite. I then made another sign, that I wanted drink. They found by my eating that a small quantity would not suffice me; and being a most ingenious people, they slung up, with great dexterity, one of their largest hogsheads, then rolled it towards my hand, and beat out the top; I drank it off at a draught, which I might well do, for it did not hold half a pint, and tasted like a small wine of Burgundy, but much more delicious. They brought me a second hogshead, which I drank in the same manner, and made signs for more; but they had none to give me. When I had performed these wonders, they shouted for joy, and danced upon my breast, repeating several times, as they did at first, *Hekinah degul.* They made me a sign that I should throw down the two hogsheads, but first warning the people below to stand out of the way, crying aloud, *Borach mevolah;* and when they saw the vessels in the air, there was a universal shout of *Hekinah degul.* I confess I was often tempted, while they were passing backwards and forwards on my body, to seize forty or fifty of the first that came in my reach, and dash them against the ground. But the remembrance of what I had felt, which probably might not be the worst they could do, and the promise of honour I made them, for so I interpreted my submissive behaviour, soon drove out those imaginations. Besides, I now considered myself as bound by the laws of hospitality, to a people who had treated me with so much expense and magnificence. However, in my thoughts I could not sufficiently wonder at the intrepidity of these diminutive mortals, who durst venture to mount and walk upon my body, while one of my hands was at liberty, without trembling at the very sight of so prodigious a creature as I must appear to them. After some time, when they observed that I made no more demands for meat, there appeared before me a person of high rank from his imperial majesty. His excellency, having mounted on the small of my right leg, advanced forwards up to my face, with about a dozen of his retinue; and producing his credentials under the signet royal, which he applied close to my eyes, spoke about ten minutes, without any signs of anger, but with a kind of determinate resolution; often pointing forwards, which, as I afterwards found, was towards the capital city, about half a mile distant, whither it was agreed by his majesty in council, that I must be conveyed. I answered in few words, but to no purpose, and made a sign with my hand that was loose, putting it to the other, (but over his excellency's head, for fear of hurting him or his train,) and then to my own head and body, to signify that I desired my liberty. It appeared that he understood me well enough, for he shook his head by way of disapprobation, and held his hand in a posture to show that I must be carried as a prisoner. However, he made other signs to let me understand that I should have meat and drink enough, and very good treatment. Whereupon, I once more thought of attempting to break my bonds; but again, when I felt the smart of their arrows upon my face and hands, which were all in blisters, and many of the darts still sticking in them, and observing likewise that the number of my enemies increased, I gave tokens to let them know that they might do with me what they pleased. Upon this, the *hurgo* and his train withdrew, with much civility and cheerful countenances. Soon after, I heard a general shout, with frequent repetitions of the words *Peplom selan;* and I felt great numbers of people on my left side relaxing the cords to such a degree, that I was able to turn upon my right, and to ease myself with making water, which I very plentifully did, to the great astonishment of the people; who, conjecturing by my motion what I was going to do, immediately opened to the right and left on that side, to avoid the torrent which fell with such noise and violence from me. But before this, they had daubed my face and both my hands with a sort of ointment, very pleasant to the smell, which, in a few minutes, removed all the smart of their arrows. These circumstances, added to the refreshment I had received by their victuals and drink, which were very nourishing, disposed me to sleep. I slept about eight hours, as I was afterwards assured; and it was no wonder, for the physicians, by the emperor's order, had mingled a sleepy potion in the hogsheads of wine.

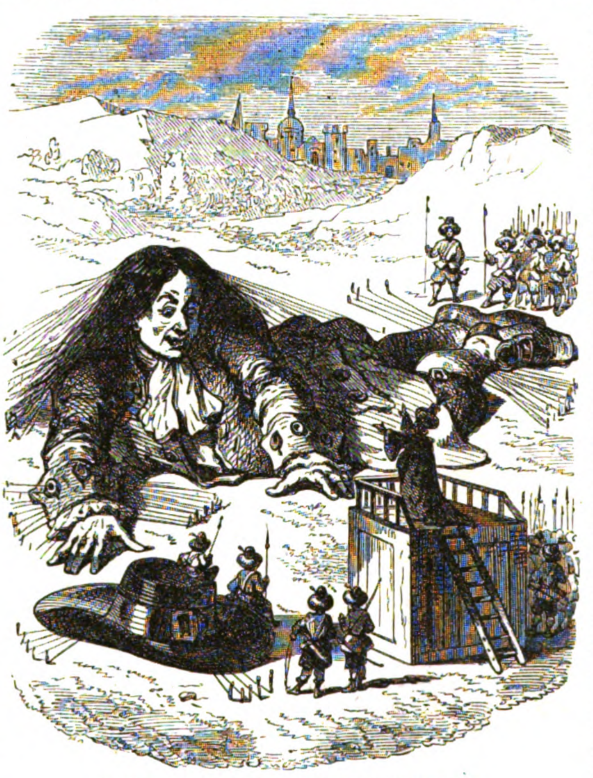
It seems, that upon the first moment I was discovered sleeping on the ground, after my landing, the emperor had early notice of it by an express, and determined in council that I should be tied in the manner I have related (which was done in the night, while I slept); that plenty of meat and drink should be sent me, and a machine prepared to carry me to the capital city.

This resolution, perhaps, may appear very bold and dangerous, and I am confident would not be imitated by any prince in Europe on the like occasion. However, in my opinion, it was extremely prudent, as well as generous; for, supposing these people had endeavoured to kill me with their spears and arrows, while I was asleep, I should certainly have awaked with the first sense of smart, which might so far have roused my rage and strength, as to have enabled me to break the strings wherewith I was tied; after which, as they were not able to make resistance, so they could expect no mercy.

These people are most excellent mathematicians, and arrived to a great perfection in mechanics by the countenance and encouragement of the emperor, who is a renowned patron of learning. This prince has several machines fixed on wheels, for the carriage of trees and other great weights. He often builds his largest men-of-war, whereof some are nine feet long, in the woods where the timber grows, and has them carried on these engines three or four hundred yards to the sea. Five hundred carpenters and engineers were immediately set at work to prepare the greatest engine they had. It was a frame of wood, raised three inches from the ground, about seven feet long, and four wide, moving upon twenty-two wheels. The shout I heard was upon the arrival of this engine, which, it seems, set out in four hours after my landing. It was brought parallel to me, as I lay. But the principal difficulty was to raise and place me in this vehicle. Eighty poles, each of one foot high, were erected for this purpose, and very strong cords, of the bigness of packthread, were fastened by hooks to many bandages, which the workmen had girt round my neck, my hands, my body, and my legs. Nine hundred of the strongest men were employed to draw up these cords, by many pulleys fastened on the poles, and thus, in less than three hours, I was raised and slung into the engine, and there tied fast. All this I was told; for, while the operation was performing, I lay in a profound sleep, by the force of that soporiferous medicine infused into my liquor. Fifteen hundred of the emperor's largest horses, each about four inches and a half high, were employed to draw me towards the metropolis, which, as I said, was half a mile distant.

About four hours after we began our journey, I awaked by a very ridiculous accident; for the carriage being stopped awhile to adjust something that was out of order, two or three of the young natives had the curiosity to see how I looked when I was asleep; they climbed up into the engine, and advancing very softly to my face, one of them, an officer in the guards, put the sharp end of his half-pike a good way up into my left nostril, which tickled my nose like a straw, and made me sneeze violently; whereupon, they stole off unperceived, and it was three weeks before I knew the cause of my waking so suddenly. We made a long march the remaining part of the day, and rested at night with five hundred guards on each side of me, half with torches, and half with bows and arrows, ready to shoot me if I should offer to stir. The next morning at sun-rise we continued our march, and arrived within two hundred yards of the city gates about noon. The emperor and all his court came out to meet us, but his great officers would by no means suffer his majesty to endanger his person by mounting on my body.

At the place where the carriage stopped, there stood an ancient temple, esteemed to be the largest in the whole kingdom; which, having been polluted some years before by an unnatural murder, was, according to the zeal of those people, looked upon as profane, and therefore had been applied to common use, and all the ornaments and furniture carried away. In this edifice it was determined I should lodge. The great gate fronting to the north was about four feet high, and almost two feet wide, through which I could easily creep. On each side of the gate was a small window, not above six inches from the ground; into that on the left side, the king's smith conveyed fourscore and eleven chains, like those that hang to a lady's watch in Europe, and almost as large, which were locked to my left leg with six-and-thirty padlocks. Over against this temple, on the other side of the great highway, at twenty feet distance, there was a turret at least five feet high. Here the emperor ascended, with many principal lords of his court, to have an opportunity of viewing me, as I was told, for I could not see them. It was reckoned that above a hundred thousand inhabitants came out of the town upon the same errand; and in spite of my guards, I believe there could not be fewer than ten thousand at several times, who mounted my body by the help of ladders. But a proclamation was soon issued, to forbid it upon pain of death. When the workmen found it was impossible for me to break loose, they cut all the strings that bound me; whereupon, I rose up with as melancholy a disposition as ever I had in my life. But the noise and astonishment of the people, at seeing me rise and walk, are not to be expressed. The chains that held my left leg were about two yards long, and gave me not only the liberty of walking backwards and forwards in a semicircle, but, being fixed within four inches of the gate, allowed me to creep in, and lie at my full length in the temple.



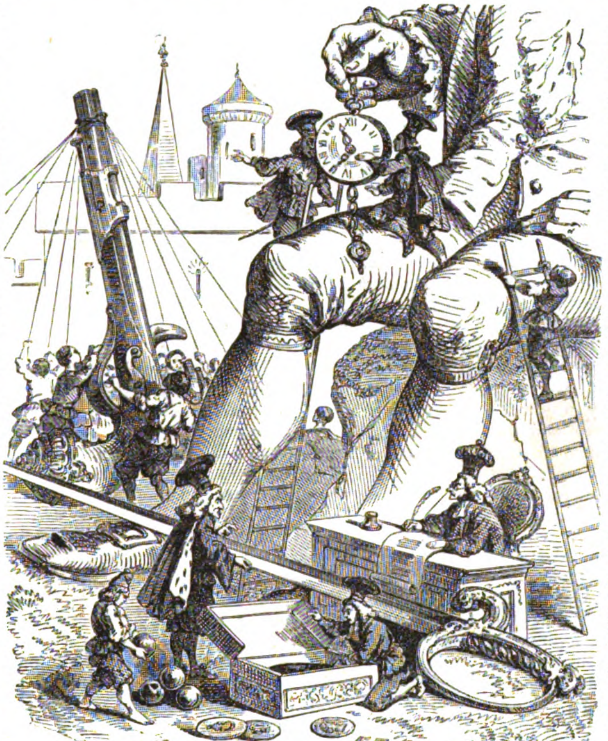
GULLIVER TAKEN PRISONER BY THE LILLIPUTIANS.

CHAPTER II.

When I found myself on my feet, I looked about me, and must confess I never beheld a more entertaining prospect. The country around appeared like a continued garden, and the enclosed fields, which were generally forty feet square, resembled so many beds of flowers. These fields were intermingled with woods of half a *stang* (a stang is a pole or perch—sixteen feet and a half); and the tallest trees, as I could judge, appeared to be seven feet high. I viewed the town on my left hand, which looked like the painted scene of a city in a theatre.

I then came back out of my house, having occasion for fresh air. The emperor was already descended from the tower, and advancing on horseback towards me, which had like to have cost him dear; for the beast, though very well trained, yet, wholly unused to such a sight, which appeared as if a mountain moved before him, reared up on his hinder feet; but that prince, who is an excellent horseman, kept his seat, till his attendants ran in, and held the bridle, while his majesty had time to dismount. When he alighted, he surveyed me round with great admiration; but kept beyond the length of my chain. He ordered his cooks and butlers, who were already prepared, to give me victuals and drink, which they pushed forward in a sort of vehicles upon wheels, till I could reach them. I took these vehicles, and soon emptied them all. Twenty of them were filled with meat, and ten with liquor; each of the former afforded me two or three good mouthfuls; and I emptied the liquor of ten vessels, which was contained in earthen vials, into one vehicle, drinking it off at a draught; and so I did with the rest. The empress, and young princes of the blood, of both sexes, attended by many ladies, sat at some distance in their chairs; but upon the accident that happened to the emperor's horse, they alighted and came near his person, which I am now going to describe. He is taller by almost the breadth of my nail than any of his court, which alone is enough to strike an awe into the beholders. His features are strong and masculine, with an Austrian lip and arched nose, his complexion olive, his countenance erect, his body and limbs well proportioned, all his motions graceful, and his deportment majestic. He was then past his prime, being twenty-eight years and three quarters old, of which he had reigned about seven in great felicity, and generally victorious. For the better convenience of beholding him, I lay on my side, so that my face was parallel to his, and he stood but three yards off; however, I have had him since many times in my hand, and therefore cannot be deceived in the description. His dress was very plain and simple, and the fashion of it between the Asiatic and European; but he had on his head a light helmet of gold, adorned with jewels, and a plume on the crest. He held his sword drawn in his hand to defend himself, if I should happen to break loose; it was almost three inches long; the hilt and scabbard were gold enriched with diamonds. His voice was shrill, but very clear and articulate, and I could distinctly hear it when I stood up. The ladies and courtiers were all most magnificently clad; so that the spot they stood upon seemed to resemble a petticoat spread on the ground, embroidered with figures of gold and silver. His imperial majesty spoke often to me, and I returned answers, but neither of us could understand a syllable. There were several of his priests and lawyers present (as I conjectured by their habits), who were commanded to address themselves to me; and I spoke to them in as many languages as I had the least smattering of, which were High and Low Dutch, Latin, French, Spanish, Italian, and Lingua Franca,—but all to no purpose. After about two hours the court retired, and I was left with a strong guard, to prevent the impertinence and probably the malice of the rabble, who were very impatient to crowd about me as near as they durst; and some of them had the impudence to shoot their arrows at me, as I sat on the ground by the door of my house, whereof one very narrowly missed my left eye. But the colonel ordered six of the ringleaders to be seized, and thought no punishment so proper as to deliver them bound into my hands, which some of his soldiers accordingly did, pushing them forwards with the butt-ends of their pikes into my reach. I took them all in my right hand, put five of them into my coat-pocket, and as to the sixth, I made a countenance as if I would eat him alive. The poor man squalled terribly, and the colonel and his officers were in much pain, especially when they saw me take out my penknife; but I soon put them out of fear, for, looking mildly, and immediately cutting the strings he was bound with, I set him gently on the ground, and away he ran. I treated the rest in the same manner, taking them one by one out of my pocket; and I observed both the soldiers and people were highly delighted at this mark of my clemency, which was represented very much to my advantage at court.

Towards night, I got with some difficulty into my house, where I lay on the ground, and continued to do so about a fortnight, during which time the emperor gave orders to have a bed prepared for me. Six hundred beds of the common measure were brought in carriages, and worked up in my house; a hundred and fifty of their beds, sewn together, made up the breadth and length, and these were four double, which, however, kept me but very indifferently from the hardness of the floor, that was of smooth stone. By the same computation, they provided me with sheets, blankets, and coverlets, tolerable enough for one who had been so long inured to hardship.



GULLIVER EXHIBITS HIS TREASURES TO THE COURT OF LILLIPUT.

As the news of my arrival spread through the kingdom, it brought prodigious numbers of rich, idle, and curious people to see me, so that the villages were almost emptied; and great neglect of tillage and household affairs must have ensued, if his imperial majesty had not provided, by several proclamations and orders of state, against this inconveniency. He directed that those who had already beheld me should return home, and not presume to come within fifty yards of my house, without license from the court, whereby the secretaries of state got considerable fees.

In the meantime, the emperor held frequent councils, to debate what course should be taken with me; and I was afterwards assured, by a particular friend, a person of great quality, who was as much in the secret as any, that the court was under many difficulties concerning me. They apprehended my breaking loose, that my diet would be very expensive, and might cause a famine. Sometimes they determined to starve me, or at least to shoot me in the face and hands with poisoned arrows, which would soon despatch me; but again they considered, that the stench of so large a carcase might produce a plague in the metropolis, and probably spread through the whole kingdom. In the midst of these consultations, several officers of the army went to the door of the great council-chamber, and two of them being admitted, gave an account of my behaviour to the six criminals above-mentioned; which made so favourable an impression on the breast of his majesty and the whole board in my behalf, that an imperial commission was issued out, obliging all the villages, nine hundred yards round the city, to deliver in every morning six beeves, forty sheep, and other victuals for my sustenance; together with a proportionable quantity of bread, and wine, and other liquors, for the due payment of which his majesty gave assignments upon his treasury; for this prince lives chiefly upon his own demesnes, seldom, except upon great occasions, raising any subsidies upon his subjects, who are bound to attend him in his wars at their own expense. An establishment was also made of six hundred persons to be my domestics, who had board-wages allowed for their maintenance, and tents built for them very conveniently on each side of my door. It was likewise ordered, that three hundred tailors should make me a suit of clothes, after the fashion of the country: that six of his majesty's greatest scholars should be employed to instruct me in their language: and lastly, that the emperor's horses, and those of the nobility and troops of guards, should be frequently exercised in my sight, to accustom themselves to me. All these orders were duly put in execution; and in about three weeks I made a great progress in learning their language, during which time the emperor frequently honoured me with his visits, and was pleased to assist my masters in teaching me. We began already to converse together in some sort; and the first words I learnt were to express my desire, that he would please to give me my liberty, which I every day repeated on my knees. His answer, as I could apprehend it, was, that this must be a work of time, not to be thought on without the advice of his council, and that first I must *lumos kelmin pesso desmar lon emposo*: that is, swear a peace with him and his kingdom; however, that I should be used with all kindness. And he advised me to acquire, by my patience and discreet behaviour, the good opinion of himself and his subjects. He desired I would not take it ill, if he gave orders to certain proper officers to search me; for probably I might carry about me several weapons, which must needs be dangerous things, if they answered the bulk of so prodigious a person. I said, his majesty should be satisfied, for I was ready to strip myself, and turn up my pockets before him. This I delivered, part in words, and part in signs. He replied, that, by the laws of the kingdom, I must be searched by two of his officers; that he knew this could not be done without my consent and assistance; and he had so good an opinion of my generosity and justice, as to trust their persons in my hands: that whatever they took from me should be returned when I left the country, or paid for at the rate which I would set upon them. I took up the two officers in my hands, put them first into my coat-pockets, and then into every other pocket about me, except my two fobs, and another secret pocket, which I had no mind should be searched, wherein I had some little necessaries that were of no consequence to any but myself. In one of my fobs there was a silver watch, and in the other a small quantity of gold in a purse. These gentlemen, having pen, ink, and paper about them, made an exact inventory of everything they saw; and when they had done, desired I would set them down, that they might deliver it to the emperor. This inventory I afterwards translated into English, and is word for word as follows:—

"*Imprimis:* In the right coat-pocket of the great man-mountain (for so I interpret the words *quinbus flestrin*), after the strictest search, we found only one great piece of coarse cloth, large enough to be a foot-cloth for your majesty's chief room of state. In the left pocket we saw a huge silver chest, with a cover of the same metal, which we, the searchers, were not able to lift. We desired it should be opened, and one of us stepping into it, found himself up to the mid-leg in a sort of dust, some part whereof flying up to our faces, set us both a-sneezing for several times together. In his right waistcoat-pocket we found a prodigious bundle of white thin substances folded one over another, about the bigness of three men, tied with a strong cable, and marked with black figures, which we humbly conceive to be writings, every letter almost as large as the palms of our hands. In the left there was a sort of engine, from the back of which were extended twenty long poles, resembling the palisades before your majesty's court, wherewith we conjecture the man-mountain combs his head; for we did not always trouble him with questions, because we found it a great difficulty to make him understand us. In the large pocket, on the right side of his middle cover (so I translated the word *ranfu-lo*, by which they meant my breeches), we saw a hollow pillar of iron, about the length of a man, fastened to a strong piece of timber larger than the pillar; and upon one side of the pillar were huge pieces of iron sticking out, cut into strange figures, which we know not what to make of. In the left pocket, another engine of the same kind. In the smaller pocket, on the right side, were several round flat pieces of white and red metal, of different bulk: some of the white, which seemed to be silver, were so large and heavy, that my comrade and I could hardly lift them. In the left pocket were two black pillars irregularly shaped; we could not, without difficulty, reach the top of them, as we stood at the bottom of his pocket. One of them was covered, and seemed all of a piece; but at the upper end of the other there appeared a white round substance, about twice the bigness of our heads. Within each of these was enclosed a prodigious plate of steel, which, by our orders, we obliged him to show us, because we apprehended they might be dangerous engines. He took them out of their cases, and told us, that in his own country his practice was to shave his beard with one of these, and cut his meat with the other. There were two pockets which we could not enter: these he called his fobs; they were two large slits cut into the top of his middle cover, but squeezed close by the pressure of his belly. Out of the right fob hung a great silver chain, with a wonderful kind of engine at the bottom. We directed him to draw out whatever was at the end of that chain, which appeared to be a globe, half silver, and half of some transparent metal; for, on the transparent side, we saw certain strange figures circularly drawn, and thought we could touch them, till we found our fingers stopped by that lucid substance. He put this engine to our ears, which made an incessant noise, like that of a water-mill; and we conjecture it is either some unknown animal, or the god that he worships; but we are more inclined to the latter opinion, because he assured us (if we understood him right, for he expressed himself very imperfectly,) that he seldom did anything without consulting it. He called it his oracle, and said, it pointed out the time for every action of his life. From the left fob he took out a net almost large enough for a fisherman, but contrived to open and shut like a purse, and served him for the same use; we found therein several massy pieces of yellow metal, which, if they be real gold, must be of immense value.

"Having thus, in obedience to your majesty's commands, diligently searched all his pockets, we observed a girdle about his waist made of the hide of some prodigious animal, from which, on the left side, hung a sword of the length of five men; and on the right, a bag or pouch divided into two cells, each cell capable of holding three of your majesty's subjects. In one of these cells were several globes or balls, of a most ponderous metal, about the bigness of our heads, and required a strong hand to lift them; the other cell contained a heap of certain black grains, but of no great bulk or weight, for we could hold above fifty of them in the palms of our hands.

"This is an exact inventory of what we found about the body of the man-mountain, who used us with great civility, and due respect to your majesty's commission. Signed and sealed on the fourth day of the eighty-ninth moon of your majesty's auspicious reign.

"*Clefrin Frelock, Marsi Frelock.*"

When this inventory was read over to the emperor, he directed me, although in very gentle terms, to deliver up the several particulars. He first called for my scimitar, which I took out, scabbard and all. In the meantime, he ordered three thousand of the choicest troops (who then attended him) to surround me at a distance, with their bows and arrows just ready to discharge; but I did not observe it, for mine eyes were wholly fixed upon his majesty. He then desired me to draw my scimitar, which, although it had got some rust by the sea water, was, in most parts, exceeding bright. I did so, and immediately all the troops gave a shout between terror and surprise; for the sun shone clear, and the reflection dazzled their eyes as I waved the scimitar to and fro in my hand. His majesty, who is a most magnanimous prince, was less daunted than I could expect; he ordered me to return it into the scabbard, and cast it on the ground as gently as I could, about six feet from the end of my chain. The next thing he demanded, was one of the iron hollow pillars, by which he meant my pocket pistols. I drew it out, and at his desire, as well as I could, expressed to him the use of it; and charging it only with powder, which, by the closeness of my pouch, happened to escape wetting in the sea (an inconvenience against which all prudent mariners take special care to provide), I first cautioned the emperor not to be afraid, and then I let it off in the air. The astonishment here was much greater than at the sight of the scimitar. Hundreds fell down as if they had been struck dead; and even the emperor, although he stood his ground, could not recover himself for some time. I delivered up both my pistols in the same manner as I had done my scimitar, and then my pouch of powder and bullets; begging him that the former might be kept from fire, for it would kindle with the smallest spark, and blow up his imperial palace into the air. I likewise delivered up my watch, which the emperor was very curious to see, and commanded two of his tallest yeomen of the guards to bear it on a pole upon their shoulders, as draymen in England do a barrel of ale. He was amazed at the continual noise it made, and the motion of the minute-hand, which he could easily discern, for their sight is much more acute than ours; he asked the opinions of his learned men about it, which were various and remote, as the reader may well imagine without my repeating; although, indeed, I could not very perfectly understand them. I then gave up my silver and copper money, my purse, with nine large pieces of gold, and some smaller ones; my knife and razor, my comb and silver snuff-box, my handkerchief and journal-book. My scimitar, pistols, and pouch were conveyed in carriages to his majesty's stores; but the rest of my goods were returned me.

I had, as I before observed, one private pocket, which escaped their search, wherein there was a pair of spectacles (which I sometimes use for the weakness of mine eyes), a pocket perspective, and some other little conveniences, which being of no consequence to the emperor, I did not think myself bound in honour to discover; and I apprehended they might be lost or spoiled, if I ventured them out of my possession.

CHAPTER III.

My gentleness and good behaviour had gained so far on the emperor and his court, and indeed upon the army and people in general, that I began to conceive hopes of getting my liberty in a short time. I took all possible methods to cultivate this favourable disposition. The natives came, by degrees, to be less apprehensive of any danger from me; I would sometimes lie down, and let five or six of them dance upon my head; and at last the boys and girls would venture to come and play at hide-and-seek in my hair. I had now made a good progress in understanding and speaking the language. The emperor had a mind, one day, to entertain me with several of the country shows, wherein they exceeded all nations I have known, both for dexterity and magnificence. I was diverted with none so much as that of the rope-dancers, performed upon a slender white thread, extended about two feet and twelve inches from the ground; upon which I shall desire liberty, with the reader's patience, to enlarge a little.

This diversion is only practised by those persons who are candidates for great employments, and high favour at court. They are trained in this art from their youth, and are not always of noble birth, or liberal education. When a great office is vacant, either by death or disgrace (which often happens), five or six of those candidates petition the emperor to entertain his majesty and the court with a dance on the rope, and whoever jumps the highest, without falling, succeeds in the office. Very often the chief ministers themselves are commanded to show their skill, and to convince the emperor that they have not lost their faculty. Flimnap, the treasurer, is allowed to cut a caper on the straight rope, at least an inch higher than any other lord in the whole empire. I have seen him do the summersault several times together, upon a trencher fixed on a rope which is no thicker than a common packthread in England. My friend Reldresal, principal secretary for private affairs, is, in my opinion, if I am not partial, the second after the treasurer; the rest of the great officers are much upon a par.

These diversions are often attended with fatal accidents, whereof great numbers are on record. I myself have seen two or three candidates break a limb. But the danger is much greater, when the ministers themselves are commanded to show their dexterity; for, by contending to excel themselves and their fellows, they strain so far that there is hardly one of them who has not received a fall, and some of them two or three. I was assured that, a year or two before my arrival, Flimnap would infallibly have broken his neck, if one of the king's cushions, that accidently lay on the ground, had not weakened the force of his fall.

There is likewise another diversion, which is only shown before the emperor and empress, and first minister, upon particular occasions. The emperor lays on the table three fine silken threads of six inches long; one is blue, the other red, and the third green. These threads are proposed as prizes for those persons whom the emperor has a mind to distinguish by a peculiar mark of his favour. The ceremony is performed in his majesty's great chamber of state, where the candidates are to undergo the trial of dexterity, very different from the former, and such as I have not observed the least resemblance of in any other country of the new or old world. The emperor holds a stick in his hands, both ends parallel to the horizon, while the candidates advancing, one by one, sometimes leap over the stick, sometimes creep under it, backward and forward several times, according as the stick is advanced or depressed. Sometimes the emperor holds one end of the stick, and his first minister the other; sometimes the minister has it entirely to himself. Whoever performs his part with most agility, and holds out the longest in leaping and creeping, is rewarded with the blue-coloured silk; the red is given to the next, and the green to the third, which they all wear girt twice round about the middle; and you see few great persons about this court who are not adorned with one of these girdles.

The horses of the army, and those of the royal stables, having been daily led before me, were no longer shy, but would come up to my very feet without starting. The riders would leap them over my hand, as I held it on the ground; and one of the emperor's huntsmen, upon a large courser, took my foot, shoe and all, which was indeed a prodigious leap. I had the good fortune to divert the emperor, one day, after a very extraordinary manner. I desired he would order several sticks of two feet high, and the thickness of an ordinary cane, to be brought me; whereupon, his majesty commanded the master of his woods to give directions accordingly; and the next morning, six woodmen arrived with as many carriages, drawn by eight horses to each. I took nine of these sticks, and fixing them firmly in the ground in a quadrangular figure, two feet and a half square, I took four other sticks, and tied them parallel at each corner, about two feet from the ground; then I fastened my handkerchief to the nine sticks that stood erect, and extended it on all sides, till it was tight as the top of a drum; and the four parallel sticks, rising about five inches higher than the handkerchief, served as ledges on each side. When I had finished my work, I desired the emperor to let a troop of his best horse, twenty-four in number, come and exercise upon this plain. His majesty approved of the proposal, and I took them up, one by one, in my hands, ready mounted and armed, with the proper officers to exercise them. As soon as they got into order, they divided into two parties, performed mock skirmishes, discharged blunt arrows, drew their swords, fled and pursued, attacked and retired, and, in short, discovered the best military discipline I ever beheld. The parallel sticks secured them and their horses from falling over the stage; and the emperor was so much delighted, that he ordered this entertainment to be repeated several days, and once was pleased to be lifted up, and give the word of command; and, with great difficulty, persuaded even the empress herself to let me hold her in her close chair within two yards of the stage, when she was able to take a full view of the whole performance. It was my good fortune, that no ill accident happened in these entertainments; only once, a fiery horse, that belonged to one of the captains, pawing with his hoof, struck a hole in my handkerchief, and his foot slipping, he overthrew his rider and himself; but I immediately relieved them both, and covering the hole with one hand, I set down the troop with the other, in the same manner as I took them up. The horse that fell was strained in the left shoulder, but the rider got no hurt, and I repaired my handkerchief as well as I could; however, I would not trust to the strength of it any more, in such dangerous enterprizes.

About two or three days before I was set at liberty, as I was entertaining the court with these kind of feats, there arrived an express, to inform his majesty that some of his subjects, riding near the place where I was first taken up, had seen a great black substance lying on the ground, very oddly shaped, extending its edges round, as wide as his majesty's bedchamber, and rising up in the middle as high as a man; that it was no living creature, as they at first apprehended, for it lay on the grass without motion, and some of them had walked round it several times; that, by mounting upon each other's shoulders, they had got to the top, which was flat and even, and, stamping upon it, they found that it was hollow within; that they humbly conceived it might be something belonging to the man-mountain; and if his majesty pleased, they would undertake to bring it with only five horses. I presently knew what they meant, and was glad at heart to receive this intelligence. It seems, upon my first reaching the shore after our shipwreck, I was in such confusion, that before I came to the place where I went to sleep, my hat, which I had fastened with a string to my head while I was rowing, and had stuck on all the time I was swimming, fell off after I came to land; the string, as I conjecture, breaking by some accident, which I never observed, but thought my hat had been lost at sea. I entreated his imperial majesty to give orders it might be brought to me as soon as possible, describing to him the use and nature of it; and the next day the waggoners arrived with it, but not in a very good condition; they had bored two holes in the brim, within an inch and a half of the edge, and fastened two hooks in the holes; these hooks were tied by a long cord to the harness, and thus my hat was dragged along for above half an English mile; but the ground in that country being extremely smooth and level, it received less damage than I expected.

Two days after this adventure, the emperor, having ordered that part of his army which quartered in and about his metropolis, to be in readiness, took a fancy of diverting himself in a very singular manner. He desired I would stand like a Colossus, with my legs as far asunder as I conveniently could. He then commanded his general (who was an old experienced leader, and a great patron of mine,) to draw up the troops in close order, and march them under me; the foot by twenty-four a-breast, and the horse by sixteen, with drums beating, colours flying, and pikes advanced. This body consisted of three thousand foot, and a thousand horse. His majesty gave orders, upon pain of death, that every soldier in his march should observe the strictest decency with regard to my person; which, however, could not prevent some of the younger officers from turning up their eyes, as they passed under me; and, to confess the truth, my breeches were at that time in so ill a condition, that they afforded some opportunities for laughter and admiration.

I had sent so many memorials and petitions for my liberty, that his majesty at length mentioned the matter, first in the cabinet, and then in a full council, where it was opposed by none, except Skyresh Bolgolam, who was pleased, without any provocation, to be my mortal enemy. But it was carried against him by the whole board, and confirmed by the emperor. The minister was *galbel*, or admiral of the realm, very much in his master's confidence, and a person well versed in affairs, but of morose and sour complexion. However, he was at length persuaded to comply; but prevailed that the articles and conditions upon which I should be set free, and to which I must swear, should be drawn up by himself. These articles were brought to me by Skyresh Bolgolam in person, attended by two under-secretaries, and several persons of distinction. After they were read, I was demanded to swear to the performance of them; first in the manner of my own country, and afterwards in the method prescribed by their laws; which was, to hold my right foot in my left hand, and to place the middle finger of my right hand on the crown of my head, and my thumb on the tip of my right ear. But because the reader may be curious to have some idea of the style and manner of expression peculiar to that people, as well as to know the articles upon which I recovered my liberty, I have made a translation of the whole instrument, word for word, as near as I was able, which I here offer to the public:—

"Golbasto Momarem Evlame Gurdilo Shefir Mully Ully Gue, most mighty emperor of Lilliput, delight and terror of the universe, whose dominions extend five thousand *blustrugs* (about twelve miles in circumference) to the extremities of the globe; monarch of all monarchs, taller than the sons of men; whose feet press down to the centre, and whose head strikes against the sun; at whose nod the princes of the earth shake their knees; pleasant as the spring, comfortable as the summer, fruitful as autumn, dreadful as winter. His most sublime majesty proposes to the man-mountain, lately arrived at our celestial dominions, the following articles, which, by a solemn oath, he shall be obliged to perform:—

"1st. The man-mountain shall not depart from our dominions without our license under our great seal.

"2nd. He shall not presume to come into our metropolis without our express order; at which time, the inhabitants shall have two hours warning to keep within doors.

"3rd. The said man-mountain shall confine his walks to our principal high roads, and not offer to walk, or lie down, in a meadow or field of corn.

"4th. As he walks the said roads, he shall take the utmost care not to trample upon the bodies of any of our loving subjects, their horses or carriages, nor take any of our subjects into his hands, without their own consent.

"5th. If any express requires extraordinary despatch, the man-mountain shall be obliged to carry, in his pocket, the messenger and horse a six days' journey, once in every moon, and return the said messenger back (if so required) safe to our imperial presence.

"6th. He shall be our ally against our enemies in the island of Blefuscu, and do his utmost to destroy their fleet, which is now preparing to invade us.

"7th. That the said man-mountain shall, at his time of leisure, be aiding and assisting to our workmen, in helping to raise certain great stones, towards covering the wall of the principal park, and other of our royal buildings.

"8th. That the said man-mountain shall, in two moons' time, deliver in an exact survey of the circumference of our dominions, by a computation of his own paces round the coast.

"Lastly. That upon this solemn oath to observe all the above articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of meat and drink sufficient for the support of 1,724 of our subjects, with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our favour. Given at our palace at Belfaborac, the twelfth day of the ninety-first moon of our reign."

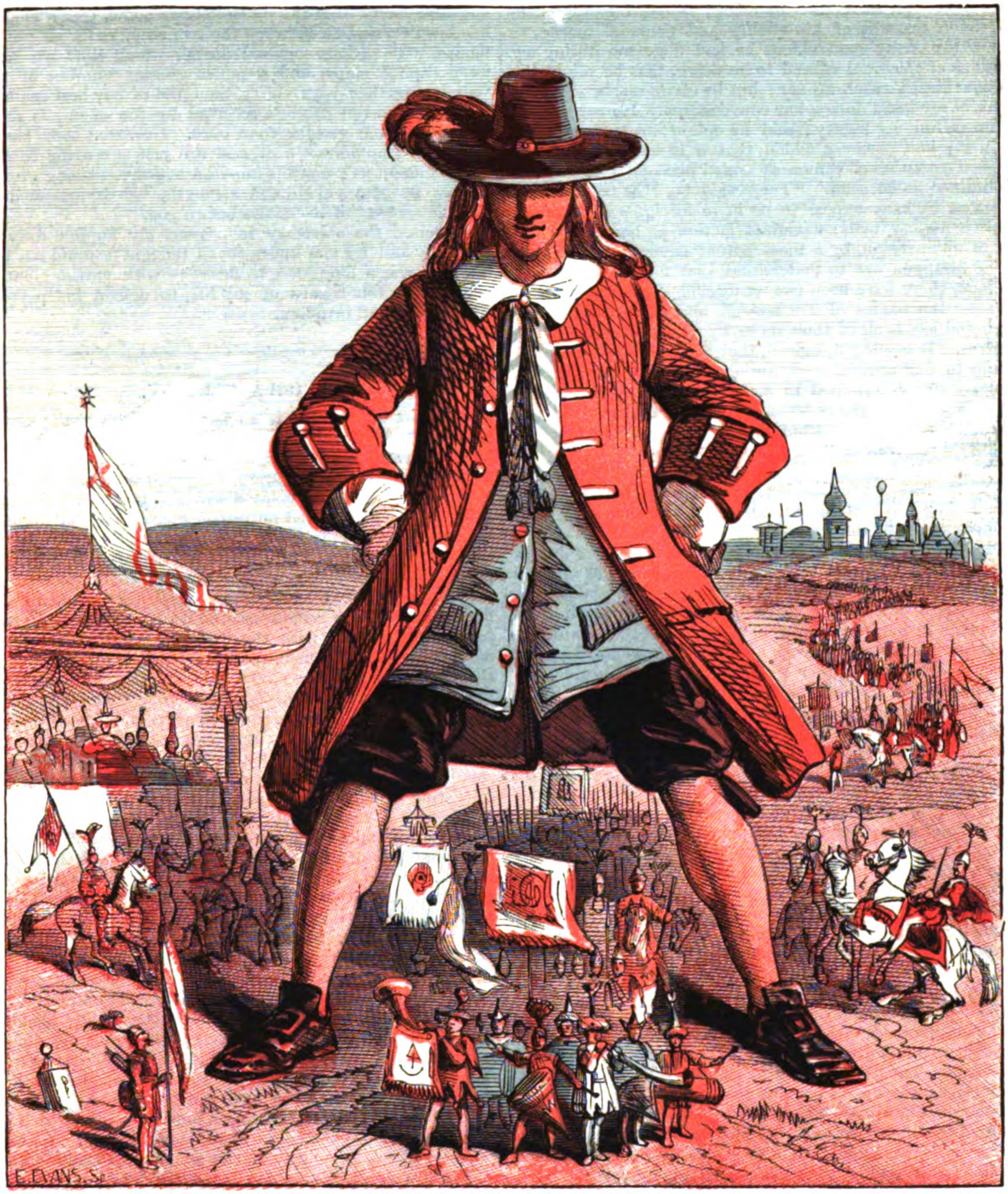
I swore and subscribed to these articles with great cheerfulness and content, although some of them were not so honourable as I could have wished, which proceeded wholly from the malice of Skyresh Bolgolam, the high-admiral; whereupon, my chains were immediately unlocked, and I was at full liberty. The emperor himself, in person, did me the honour to be by at the whole ceremony. I made my acknowledgments by prostrating myself at his majesty's feet, but he commanded me to rise; and after many gracious expressions, which, to avoid the censure of vanity, I shall not repeat, he added, that he hoped I should prove a useful servant, and well deserve all the favours he had already conferred upon me, or might do for the future.

The reader may please to observe, that in the last article of the recovery of my liberty, the emperor stipulates to allow me a quantity of meat and drink sufficient for the support of 1,724 Lilliputians. Some time after, asking a friend at court how they came to fix on that determinate number, he told me that his majesty's mathematicians, having taken the height of my body by the help of a quadrant, and finding it to exceed theirs in the proportion of twelve to one, they concluded, from the similarity of their bodies, that mine must contain at least 1,724 of theirs, and consequently would require as much food as was necessary to support that number of Lilliputians. By which the reader may conceive an idea of the ingenuity of the people, as well as the prudent and exact economy of so great a prince.

CHAPTER IV.

THE first request I made, after I had obtained my liberty, was, that I might have license to see Mildendo, the metropolis; which the emperor easily granted me, but with a special charge to do no hurt either to the inhabitants or their houses. The people had notice, by proclamation, of my design to visit the town. The wall, which encompassed it, is two feet and a half high, and at least eleven inches broad, so that a coach and horses may be driven very safely round it, and it is flanked with strong towers at ten feet distance. I stepped over the great western gate, and passed very gently and sidling through the two principal streets, only in my short waistcoat, for fear of damaging the roofs and eaves of the houses with the skirts of my coat. I walked with the utmost circumspection, to avoid treading on any stragglers who might remain in the streets; although the orders were very strict, that all people should keep in their houses, at their own peril. The garret windows and tops of houses were so crowded with spectators, that I thought in all my travels I had not seen a more populous place. The city is an exact square, each side of the wall being five hundred feet long. The two great streets, which run across and divide it into four quarters, are five feet wide. The lanes and alleys, which I could not enter, but only viewed them as I passed, are from twelve to eighteen inches. The town is capable of holding five hundred thousand souls; the houses are from three to five stories; the shops and markets well provided.

The emperor's palace is in the centre of the city, where the two great streets meet. It is enclosed by a wall of two feet high, and twenty feet distance from the buildings. I had his majesty's permission to step over this wall; and the space being so wide between that and the palace, I could easily view it on every side. The outward court is a square of forty feet, and includes two other courts; in the inmost are the royal apartments, which I was very desirous to see, but found it extremely difficult; for the great gates, from one square into another, were but eighteen inches high, and seven inches wide. Now, the buildings of the outer court were at least five feet high, and it was impossible for me to stride over them without infinite damage to the pile, though the walls were strongly built of hewn stone, and four inches thick. At the same time, the emperor had a great desire that I should see the magnificence of his palace; but this I was not able to do till three days after, which I spent in cutting down with my knife some of the largest trees in the royal park, about a hundred yards distant from the city. Of these trees I made two stools, each about three feet high, and strong enough to bear my weight. The people having received notice a second time, I went again through the city to the palace, with my two stools in my hands. When I came to the side of the outer court, I stood upon one stool, and took the other in my hand; this I lifted over the



THE GRAND ARMY OF LILLIPUT MAKES A GREAT DEMONSTRATION TO ASTONISH GULLIVER.

roof, and gently set it down on the space between the first and second court, which was eight feet wide. I then stepped over the building very conveniently from one stool to the other, and drew up the first after me with a hooked stick. By this contrivance I got into the inmost court; and, lying down upon my side, I applied my face to the windows of the middle stories, which were left open on purpose, and discovered the most splendid apartments that can be imagined. There I saw the empress and the young princes, in their several lodgings, with their chief attendants about them. Her imperial majesty was pleased to smile very graciously upon me, and gave me out of the window her hand to kiss.

But I shall not anticipate the reader with farther descriptions of this kind, because I reserve them for a greater work, which is now almost ready for the press, containing a general description of this empire, from its first erection, through a long series of princes; with a particular account of their wars and politics, laws, learning, and religion; their plants and animals; their peculiar manners and customs, with other matters very curious and useful; my chief design at present being only to relate such events and transactions as happened to the public or to myself during a residence of about nine months in that empire.

One morning, about a fortnight after I had obtained my liberty, Reldresal, principal secretary (as they style him) for private affairs, came to my house, attended only by one servant. He ordered his coach to wait at a distance, and desired I would give him an hour's audience; which I readily consented to, on account of his quality and personal merits, as well as of the many good offices he had done me during my solicitations at court. I offered to lie down, that he might the more conveniently reach my ear; but he chose rather to let me hold him in my hand during our conversation. He began with compliments on my liberty; said he might pretend to some merit in it; but, however, added, that if it had not been for the present situation of things at court, perhaps I might not have obtained it so soon. "For," said he, "as flourishing a condition as we may appear to be in to foreigners, we labour under two mighty evils: a violent faction at home, and the danger of an invasion, by a most potent enemy, from abroad. As to the first, you are to understand, that for above seventy moons past, there have been two struggling parties in this empire, under the names of *Tramecksan* and *Slamecksan*, from the high and low heels of their shoes, by which they distinguish themselves. It is alleged, indeed, that the high heels are most agreeable to our ancient constitution; but, however this be, his majesty has determined to make use only of low heels in the administration of the government, and all offices in the gift of the crown, as you cannot but observe; and particularly that his majesty's imperial heels are lower at least by a *drurr* than any of his court (*drurr* is a measure about the fourteenth part of an inch). The animosities between these two parties run so high, that they will neither eat, nor drink, nor talk with each other. We compute the *Tramecksan*, or high heels, to exceed us in number, but the power is wholly on our side. We apprehend his imperial highness, the heir to the crown, to have some tendency towards the high heels; at least, we can plainly discover that one of his heels is higher than the other, which gives him a hobble in his gait. Now, in the midst of these intestine disquiets, we are threatened with an invasion from the island of Blefuscu, which is the other great empire of the universe, almost as large and powerful as this of his majesty. For as to what we have heard you affirm, that there are other kingdoms and states in the world, inhabited by human creatures as large as yourself, our philosophers are in much doubt, and would rather conjecture that you dropped from the moon, or one of the stars, because it is certain, that a hundred mortals of your bulk would in a short time destroy all the fruits and cattle of his majesty's dominions; besides, our histories of six thousand moons make no mention of any other regions than the two great empires of Lilliput and Blefuscu. Which two mighty powers have, as I was going to tell you, been engaged in a most obstinate war for six-and-thirty moons past. It began upon the following occasion: it is allowed on all hands, that the primitive way of breaking eggs, before we eat them, was upon the larger end; but his present majesty's grandfather, while he was a boy, going to eat an egg, and breaking it according to the ancient practice, happened to cut one of his fingers; whereupon, the emperor, his father, published an edict, commanding all his subjects, upon great penalties, to break the smaller ends of their eggs. The people so highly resented this law, that our histories tell us, there have been six rebellions raised on that account, wherein one emperor lost his life, and another his crown. These civil commotions were constantly fomented by the monarchs of Blefuscu; and when they were quelled, the exiles always fled for refuge to that empire. It is computed that eleven thousand persons have at several times suffered death, rather than submit to break their eggs at the smaller end. Many hundred large volumes have been published upon this controversy; but the books of the Big-endians have been long forbidden, and the whole party rendered incapable by law of holding employments. During the course of these troubles, the emperors of Blefuscu did frequently expostulate by their ambassadors, accusing us of making a schism in religion, by offending against a fundamental doctrine of our great prophet Lustrog, in the fifty-fourth chapter of the Blundercral, which is their Alcoran. This, however, is thought to be a mere strain upon the text; for the words are these—that all true believers break their eggs at the convenient end; and which is the convenient end, seems, in my humble opinion, to be left to every man's conscience, or, at least, in the power of the chief magistrate to determine. Now, the Big-endian exiles have found so much credit in the emperor Blefuscu's court, and so much private assistance and encouragement from the party here at home, that a bloody war has been carried on between the two empires for six-and-thirty moons, with various success; during which time we have lost forty capital ships, and a much greater number of smaller vessels, together with thirty thousand of our best seamen and soldiers; and the damage received by the enemy is reckoned to be somewhat greater than ours. However, they have now equipped a numerous fleet, and are just preparing to make a descent upon us; and his imperial majesty, placing great confidence in your valour and strength, has commanded me to lay this account of his affairs before you."

I desired the secretary to present my humble duty to the emperor, and let him know, that I thought it would not become me, who was a foreigner, to interfere with parties; but I was ready, with the hazard of my life, to defend his person and state against all invaders.

CHAPTER V.

The empire of Blefuscu is an island situated to the north-east of Lilliput, from which it is parted only by a channel of eight hundred yards wide. I had not yet seen it; and upon this notice of an intended invasion, I avoided appearing on that side of the coast, for fear of being discovered by some of the enemy's ships, who had received no intelligence of me; all intercourse between the two empires having been strictly forbidden during the war, upon pain of death, and an embargo laid by our emperor upon all vessels whatsoever. I communicated to his majesty a project I had formed, of seizing the enemy's whole fleet, which, as our scouts assured us, lay at anchor in the harbour, ready to sail with the first fair wind. I consulted the most experienced seamen upon the depth of the channel, which they had often plumbed; who told me, that in the middle, at high-water, it was seventy *glumgluffs* deep, which is about six feet of European measure; and the rest of it fifty *glumgluffs* at most. I walked towards the north-east coast, over against Blefuscu; where, lying down behind a hillock, I took out my small perspective glass, and viewed the enemy's fleet at anchor, consisting of about fifty men of war, and a great number of transports; I then came back to my house, and gave orders (for which I had a warrant) for a great quantity of the strongest cable and bars of iron. The cable was about as thick as packthread, and the bars of the length and size of a knitting-needle. I trebled the cable to make it stronger, and for the same reason I twisted three of the iron bars together, bending the extremities into a hook. Having thus fixed fifty hooks to as many cables, I went back to the north-east coast, and putting off my coat, shoes, and stockings, walked into the sea, in my leathern jacket, about half an hour before high water. I waded with what haste I could, and swam in the middle about thirty yards, till I felt ground. I arrived at the fleet in less than half an hour. The enemy was so frightened when they saw me, that they leaped out of their ships, and swam to shore, where there could not be fewer than thirty thousand souls; I then took my tackling, and fastening a hook to the hole at the prow of each, I tied all the cords together at the end. While I was thus employed, the enemy discharged several thousand arrows, many of which stuck in my hands and face; and, beside the excessive smart, gave me much disturbance in my work. My greatest apprehension was for mine eyes, which I should have infallibly lost, if I had not suddenly thought of an expedient. I kept, among other little necessaries, a pair of spectacles in a private pocket, which, as I observed before, had escaped the emperor's searchers. These I took out, and fastened as strongly as I could upon my nose, and thus armed, went on boldly with my work, in spite of the enemy's arrows, many of which struck against the glasses of my spectacles, but without any other effect, farther than a little to discompose them. I had now fastened all the hooks, and, taking the knot in my hand, began to pull; but not a ship would stir, for they were all too fast held by their anchors, so that the boldest part of my enterprize remained. I therefore let go the cord, and leaving the hooks fixed to the ships, I resolutely cut with my knife the cables that fastened the anchors, receiving about two hundred shots in my face and hands; I then took up the knotted end of the cables, to which my hooks were tied, and with great ease drew fifty of the enemy's largest men-of-war after me.

The Blefuscudians, who had not the least imagination of what I intended, were at first confounded with astonishment. They had seen me cut the cables, and thought my design was only to let the ships run adrift, or fall foul on each other; but when they perceived the whole fleet moving in order, and saw me pulling at the end, they set up such a scream of grief and despair, as it is almost impossible to describe or conceive. When I had got out of danger, I stopped awhile to pick out the arrows that stuck in my hands and face, and rubbed on some of the same ointment that was given me at my first arrival, as I have formerly mentioned. I then took off my spectacles, and waiting about an hour, till the tide was a little fallen, I waded through the middle with my cargo, and arrived safe at the royal port of Lilliput.

The emperor and his whole court stood on the shore, expecting the issue of this great adventure. They saw the ships move forward in a large half-moon, but could not discern me, who was up to my breast in water. When I advanced to the middle of the channel, they were yet more in pain, because I was under water to my neck. The emperor concluded me to be drowned, and that the enemy's fleet was approaching in a hostile manner; but he was soon eased of his fears; for the channel growing shallower every step I made, I came in a short time within hearing, and holding up the end of the cable by which the fleet was fastened, I cried in a loud voice, "Long live the most puissant king of Lilliput!" This great prince received me at my landing with all possible encomiums, and created me a *nardac* upon the spot, which is the highest title of honour among them.

His majesty desired I would take some other opportunity of bringing all the rest of his enemy's ships into his ports. And so unmeasurable is the ambition of princes, that he seemed to think of nothing less than reducing the whole empire of Blefuscu into a province, and governing it by a viceroy; of destroying the Big-endian exiles, and compelling that people to break the smaller end of their eggs, by which he would remain the sole monarch of the whole world. But I endeavoured to divert him from this design, by many arguments drawn from the topics of policy as well as justice; and I plainly protested, that I would never be an instrument of bringing a free and brave people into slavery; and when the matter was debated in council, the wisest part of the ministry were of my opinion.

This open bold declaration of mine was so opposite to the schemes and politics of his imperial majesty, that he could never forgive me. He mentioned it in a very artful manner at council, where I was told that some of the wisest appeared at least, by their silence, to be of my opinion; but others, who were my secret enemies, could not forbear some expressions which by a side-wind reflected on me; and from this time began an intrigue between his majesty and a junto of ministers maliciously bent against me, which broke out in less than two months, and had like to have ended in my utter destruction. Of so little weight are the greatest services to princes, when put into the balance with a refusal to gratify their passions.

About three weeks after this exploit, there arrived a solemn embassy from Blefuscu, with humble offers of a peace; which was soon concluded, upon conditions very advantageous to our emperor, wherewith I shall not trouble the reader. There were six ambassadors, with a train of about five hundred persons; and their entry was very magnificent, suitable to the grandeur of their master, and the importance of their business. When their treaty was finished, wherein I did them several good offices by the credit I now had, or at least appeared to have, at court, their excellencies, who were privately told how much I had been their friend, made me a visit in form. They began with many compliments upon my valour and generosity, invited me to that kingdom in the emperor their master's name, and desired me to show them some proofs of my prodigious strength, of which they had heard so many wonders; wherein I readily obliged them, but shall not trouble the reader with the particulars.

When I had for some time entertained their excellencies, to their infinite satisfaction and surprise, I desired they would do me the honour to present my most humble respects to the emperor their master, the renown of whose virtues had so justly filled the whole world with admiration, and whose royal person I resolved to attend, before I returned to my own country. Accordingly, the next time I had the honour to see our emperor, I desired his general license to wait on the Blefuscudian monarch, which he was pleased to grant me, as I could perceive, in a very cold manner; but could not guess the reason, till I had a whisper from a certain person, that Flimnap and Bolgolam had represented my intercourse with those ambassadors as a mark of disaffection, from which I am sure my heart was wholly free. And this was the first time I began to conceive some imperfect idea of courts and ministers.

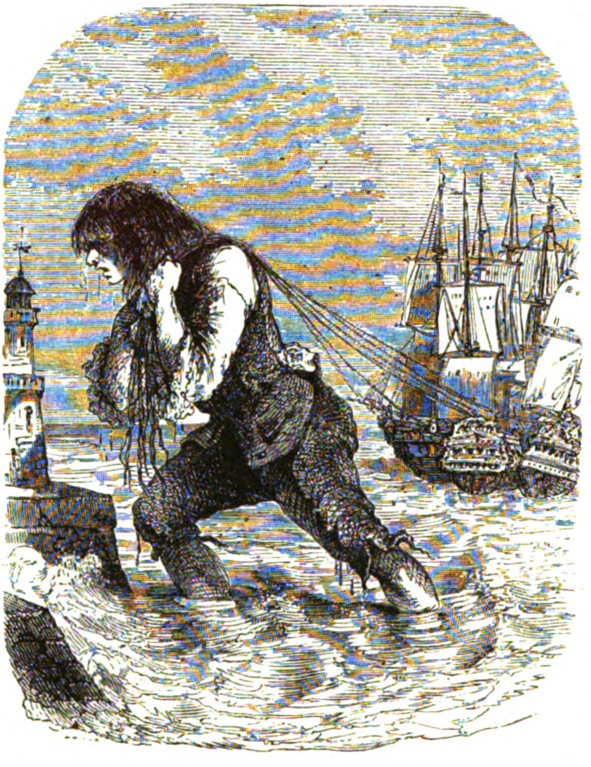
It is to be observed, that these ambassadors spoke to me by an interpreter, the languages of both empires differing as much from each other as any two in Europe, and each nation priding itself upon the antiquity, beauty, and energy of their own tongue, with an avowed contempt of that of their neighbour; yet, our emperor, standing upon the advantage he had got by the seizure of their fleet, obliged them to deliver their credentials and make their speech in the Lilliputian tongue. And it must be confessed, that from the great intercourse of trade and commerce between both realms, from the continual reception of exiles, which is mutual among them, and from the custom in each empire, to send their young nobility and richer gentry to the other, in order to polish themselves by seeing the world, and understanding men and manners,—there are few persons of distinction, or merchants, or seamen, who dwell in the maritime parts, but what can hold conversation in both tongues; as I found some weeks after, when I went to pay my respects to the emperor of Blefuscu, which, in the midst of great misfortunes through the malice of my enemies, proved a very happy adventure to me, as I shall relate in its proper place.

The reader may remember, that when I signed those articles upon which I recovered my liberty, there were some which I disliked, upon account of their being too servile; neither could anything but an extreme necessity have forced me to submit. But being now a *nardac* of the highest rank in that empire, such offices were looked upon as below my dignity, and the emperor (to do him justice) never once mentioned them to me. However, it was not long before I had an opportunity of doing his majesty, at least as I then thought, a most signal service. I was alarmed at midnight with the cries of many hundred people at my door; by which being suddenly awaked, I was in some kind of terror. I heard the word *burglum* repeated incessantly; several of the emperor's court making their way through the crowd, entreated me to come immediately to the palace, where her imperial majesty's apartment was on fire, by the carelessness of a maid of honour, who fell asleep while she was reading a romance. I got up in an instant; and orders being given to clear the way before me, and it being likewise a moonshine night, I made a shift to get to the palace without trampling on any of the people. I found they had already applied ladders to the walls of the apartment, and were well provided with buckets, but the water was at some distance. These buckets were about the size of a large thimble, and the poor people supplied me with them as fast as they could; but the flame was so violent that they did little good. I might easily have stifled it with my coat, which I unfortunately left behind me for haste, and came away only in my leathern jacket. The case seemed wholly desperate and deplorable; and this magnificent palace would have infallibly been burnt down to the ground, if, by a presence of mind unusual to me, I had not suddenly thought of an expedient. I had the evening before drank plentifully of a most delicious wine called *glimigrim* (the Blefuscudians call it *flunec*, but ours is esteemed the better sort), which is very diuretic. By the luckiest chance in the world, I had not discharged myself of any part of it. The heat I had contracted by coming very near the flames, and by labouring to quench them, made the wine begin to operate by urine; which I voided in such a quantity, and applied so well to the proper places, that in three minutes the fire was wholly extinguished, and the rest of that noble pile, which had cost so many ages in erecting, preserved from destruction.

It was now daylight, and I returned to my house without waiting to congratulate with the emperor; because, although I had done a very eminent piece of service, yet I could not tell how his majesty might resent the manner by which I had performed it; for, by the fundamental laws of the realm, it is capital in any person, of what quality soever, to make water within the precincts of the palace. But I was a little comforted by a message from his maiesty, that he would give orders to the grand justiciary for passing my pardon in form; which, however, I could not obtain; and I was privately assured, that the empress, conceiving the greatest abhorrence of what I had done, removed to the most distant side of the court, firmly resolved that those buildings should never be repaired for her use; and, in the presence of her chief confidents, could not forbear vowing revenge.

CHAPTER VI.

Although I intend to leave the description of this empire to a particular treatise, yet, in the meantime, I am content to gratify the curious reader with some general ideas. As the common size of the natives is somewhat under six inches high, so there is an exact proportion in all other animals, as well as plants and trees; for instance, the tallest horses and oxen are between four and five inches in height, the sheep an inch and a half, more or less; their geese about the bigness of a sparrow; and so the several gradations downwards, till you come to the smallest, which, to my sight, were almost invisible; but nature has adapted the eyes of the Lilliputians to all objects proper for their view; they see with great exactness, but at no great distance. And to show the sharpness of their sight towards objects that are near, I have been much pleased with observing a cook pulling a lark, which was not so large as a common fly; and a young girl threading an invisible needle with invisible silk. Their tallest trees are about seven feet high—I mean some of those in the great royal park, the tops whereof I could but just reach with my fist clenched. The other vegetables are in the same proportion; but this I leave to the reader's imagination.



GULLIVER CARRIES OFF THE HOSTILE FLEET OF THE BLEFUSCUDIANS.

I shall say but little at present of their learning, which, for many ages, has flourished in all its branches among them; but their manner of writing is very peculiar, being neither from the left to the right, like the Europeans; nor from the right to the left, like the Arabians; nor from up to down, like the Chinese; but aslant from one corner of the paper to the other, like ladies in England.

They bury their dead with their heads directly downward, because they hold an opinion, that in eleven thousand moons they are all to rise again; in which period the earth (which they conceive to be flat) will turn upside down, and by this means they shall, at their resurrection, be found ready standing on their feet. The learned amongst them confess the absurdity of this doctrine; but the practice still continues, in compliance to the vulgar.

There are some laws and customs in this empire very peculiar; and if they were not so directly contrary to those of my own dear country, I should be tempted to say a little in their justification. It is only to be wished they were as well executed. The first I shall mention relates to informers. All crimes against the state are punished here with the utmost severity; but, if the person accused makes his innocence plainly to appear upon his trial, the accuser is immediately put to an ignominious death; and out of his goods or lands the innocent person is quadruply recompensed for the loss of his time, for the danger he underwent, for the hardship of his imprisonment, and for all the charges he has been at in making his defence; or, if that fund be deficient, it is largely supplied by the crown. The emperor also confers on him some public mark of his favour, and proclamation is made of his innocence through the whole city.

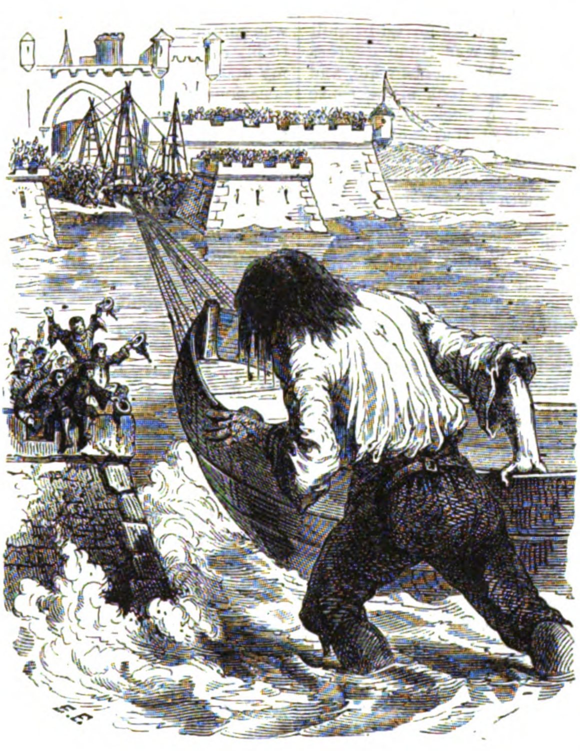
They look upon fraud as a greater crime than theft, and therefore seldom fail to punish it with death; for they allege, that care and vigilance, with a very common understanding, may preserve a man's goods from thieves, but honesty has no fence against superior cunning; and since it is necessary that there should be a perpetual intercourse of buying and selling, and dealing upon credit, where fraud is permitted and connived at, or has no law to punish it, the honest dealer is always undone, and the knave gets the advantage. I remember, when I was once interceding with the king for a criminal who had wronged his master of a great sum of money, which he had received by order, and ran away with; and happening to tell his majesty, by way of extenuation, that it was only a breach of trust, the emperor thought it monstrous in me to offer as a defence the greatest aggravation of the crime; and, truly, I had little to say in return, farther than the common answer, that different nations had different customs, for, I confess, I was heartily ashamed. Although we usually call reward and punishment the two hinges upon which all government turns, yet I could never observe this maxim to be put in practice by any nation, except that of Lilliput. Whoever can there bring sufficient proof that he has strictly observed the laws of his country for seventy-three moons, has a claim to certain privileges, according to his quality or condition of life, with a proportionable sum of money out of a fund appropriated for that use; he likewise acquires the title of *snilpall*, or legal, which is added to his name, but does not descend to his posterity. And these people thought it a prodigious defect of policy among us, when I told them that our laws were enforced only by penalties, without any mention of reward. It is upon this account that the image of justice, in their courts of judicature, is formed with six eyes, two before, as many behind, and on each side one, to signify circumspection; with a bag of gold open in her right hand, and a sword sheathed in her left, to show she is more disposed to reward than to punish.

In choosing persons for all employment, they have more regard to good morals than to great abilities; for, since government is necessary to mankind, they believe that the common size of human understanding is fitted to some station or other, and that Providence never intended to make the management of public affairs a mystery, to be comprehended only by a few persons of sublime genius, of which there seldom are three born in an age; but they suppose truth, justice, temperance, and the like, to be in every man's power, the practice of which virtues, assisted by experience and a good intention, would qualify any man for the service of his country, except where a course of study is required. But they thought the want of moral virtues was so far from being supplied by superior endowments of the mind, that employments could never be put into such dangerous hands as those of persons so qualified; and, at least, that the mistakes committed by ignorance, in a virtuous disposition, would never be of such fatal consequences to the public weal, as the practices of a man, whose inclinations led him to be corrupt, and who had great abilities to manage, to multiply, and defend his corruption.

In like manner, the disbelief of a Divine Providence renders a man incapable of holding any public station; for, since kings avow themselves to be the deputies of Providence, the Lilliputians think nothing can be more absurd than for a prince to employ such men as disown the authority under which he acts.

In relating these and the following laws, I would only be understood to mean the original institutions, and not the most scandalous corruptions, into which these people are fallen, by the degenerate nature of man. For, as to that infamous practice of acquiring great employments by dancing on the ropes, or badges of favour and distinction by leaping over sticks and creeping under them, the reader is to observe, that they were first introduced by the grandfather of the emperor now reigning, and grew to the present height by the gradual increase of party and faction.

Ingratitude is among them a capital crime, as we read it to have been in some other countries; for they reason thus: that whoever makes ill returns to his benefactor, must needs be a common enemy to the rest of mankind, from whom he has received no obligations; and therefore such a man is not fit to live.



GULLIVER FINDS A BOAT.

Their notions relating to the duties of parents and children differ extremely from ours. For since the conjunction of male and female is founded upon the great law of nature, in order to propagate and continue the species, the Lilliputians will needs have it, that men and women are joined together, like other animals, by the motives of concupiscence, and that their tenderness towards their young proceeds from the like natural principle; for which reason they will never allow that a child is under any obligation to his father for begetting him, or to his mother for bringing him into the world; which, considering the miseries of human life, was neither a benefit in itself, nor intended so by his parents, whose thoughts, in their love encounters, were otherwise employed. Upon these, and the like reasonings, their opinion is, that parents are the last of all others to be trusted with the education of their own children; and therefore they have in every town public nurseries, where all parents, except cottagers and labourers, are obliged to send their infants of both sexes to be reared and educated, when they come to the age of twenty moons, at which time they are supposed to have some rudiments of docility. These schools are of several kinds, suited to different qualities and both sexes. They have certain professors, well skilled in preparing children for such a condition of life as befits the rank of their parents, and their own capacities, as well as inclinations. I shall first say something of the male nurseries, and then of the female.

The nurseries for males of noble or eminent birth are provided with grave and learned professors, and their several deputies. The clothes and food of the children are plain and simple. They are bred up in the principles of honour, justice, courage, modesty, clemency, religion, and love of their country; they are always employed in some business, except in the times of eating and sleeping, which are very short, and two hours for diversions, consisting of bodily exercises. They are dressed by men till four years of age, and then are obliged to dress themselves, although their quality be ever so great; and the women attendants, who are aged proportionaby to ours at fifty, perform only the most menial offices. They are never suffered to converse with servants, but go together in smaller or greater numbers to take their diversions, and always in the presence of a professor, or one of his deputies, whereby they avoid those early bad impressions of folly and vice, to which our children are subject. Their parents are suffered to see them only twice a-year; the visit is to last but an hour; they are allowed to kiss the child at meeting and parting; but a professor, who always stands by on those occasions, will not suffer them to whisper, or use any fondling expressions, or bring any presents of toys, sweetmeats, and the like.

The pension from each family for the education and entertainment of a child, upon failure of due payment, is levied by the emperor's officers.

The nurseries for children of ordinary gentlemen, merchants, traders, and handicrafts, are managed proportionably after the same manner; only those designed for trades are put out apprentices at eleven years old; whereas those of persons of quality continue in their exercises till fifteen, which answers to twenty-one with us; but the confinement is gradually lessened for the last three years.

In the female nurseries, the young girls of quality are educated much like the males, only they are dressed by orderly servants of their own sex; but always in the presence of a professor or deputy, till they come to dress themselves, which is at five years old. And if it be found that these nurses ever presume to entertain the girls with frightful or foolish stories, or the common follies practised by chambermaids among us, they are publicly whipped thrice about the city, imprisoned for a year, and banished for life to the most desolate part of the country. Thus, the young ladies are as much ashamed of being called cowards as the men, and despise all personal ornaments, beyond decency and cleanliness; neither did I perceive any difference in their education made by their differences of sex, only that the exercises of the females were not altogether so robust; and that some rules were given them relating to domestic life, and a smaller compass of learning was enjoined them; for their maxim is, that among people of quality, a wife should be always a reasonable and agreeable companion, because she cannot always be young. When the girls are twelve years old, which among them is the marriageable age, their parents or guardians take them home, with great expressions of gratitude to the professors, and seldom without the tears of the young lady and her companions.

In the nurseries of females of the meaner sort, the children are instructed in all kinds of works proper for their sex, and their several degrees; those intended for apprentices are dismissed at seven years old, the rest are kept to eleven.

The meaner families, who have children at these nurseries, are obliged, besides their annual pension, which is as low as possible, to return to the steward of the nursery a small monthly share of their gettings, to be a portion for the child; and therefore all parents are limited in their expenses by the law. For the Lilliputians think nothing can be more unjust, than for people, in subservience to their own appetites, to bring children into the world, and leave the burthen of supporting them on the public. As to persons of quality, they give security to appropriate a certain sum for each child, suitable to their condition; and these funds are always managed with good husbandry and the most exact justice.

The cottagers and labourers keep their children at home, their business being only to till and cultivate the earth, and therefore their education is of little consequence to the public; but the old and diseased among them are supported by hospitals; for begging is a trade unknown in this empire.

And here it may, perhaps, divert the curious reader to give some account of my domestics, and my manner of living in this country during a residence of nine months and thirteen days. Having a head mechanically turned, and being likewise forced by necessity, I had made for myself a table and chairs, convenient enough, out of the largest trees in the royal park. Two hundred sempstresses were employed to make me shirts, and linen for my bed and table, all of the strongest and coarsest kind they could get; which, however, they were forced to quilt together in several folds, for the thickest was some degrees finer than lawn. Their linen is usually three inches wide, and three feet make a piece. The sempstresses took my measure as I lay on the ground, one standing at my neck, and another at my mid-leg, with a strong cord extended, that each held by the end, while a third measured the length of the cord with a rule of an inch long. Then they measured my right thumb, and desired no more; for by a mathematical computation, that twice round the thumb is once round the wrist, and so on to the neck and the waist, and by the help of my old shirt, which I displayed on the ground before them for a pattern, they fitted me exactly. Three hundred tailors were employed in the same manner to make me clothes; but they had another contrivance for taking my measure. I kneeled down, and they raised a ladder from the ground to my neck; upon this ladder one of them mounted, and let fall a plumb-line from my collar to the floor, which just answered the length of my coat; but my waist and arms I measured myself. When my clothes were finished, which was done in my house (for the largest of theirs would not have been able to hold them), they looked like the patchwork made by the ladies in England, only that mine were all of a colour.

I had three hundred cooks to dress my victuals, in little convenient huts built about my house, where they and their families lived, and prepared me two dishes a-piece. I took up twenty waiters in my hand, and placed them on the table; a hundred more attended below on the ground, some with dishes of meat, and some with barrels of wine and other liquors slung on their shoulders; all which the waiters above drew up, as I wanted, in a very ingenious manner, by certain cords, as we draw the bucket up a well in Europe. A dish of their meat was a good mouthful, and a barrel of their liquor a reasonable draught. Their mutton yields to ours, but their beef is excellent. I have had a sirloin so large, that I have been forced to make three bits of it; but this is rare. My servants were astonished to see me eat it, bones and all, as in our country we do the leg of a lark. Their geese and turkeys I usually ate at a mouthful, and I confess they far exceed ours. Of their smaller fowl, I could take up twenty or thirty at the end of my knife.

One day, his imperial majesty, being informed of my way of living, desired that himself and his royal consort, with the young princes of the blood, of both sexes, might have the happiness, as he was pleased to call it, of dining with me. They came accordingly, and I placed them in chairs of state, upon my table, just over against me, with their guards about them. Flimnap, the lord high treasurer, attended there likewise with his white staff; and I observed he often looked on me with a sour countenance, which I would not seem to regard, but ate more than usual, in honour to my dear country, as well as to fill the court with admiration. I have some private reasons to believe, that this visit from his majesty gave Flimnap an opportunity of doing me ill offices to his master. That minister had always been my secret enemy, though he outwardly caressed me more than was usual to the moroseness of his nature. He represented to the emperor, the low condition of his treasury; that he was forced to take up money at a great discount; that exchequer bills would not circulate under nine per cent. below par; that I had cost his majesty above a million and a half of *sprugs* (their greatest gold coin, about the bigness of a spangle); and, upon the whole, that it would be advisable in the emperor to take the first fair occasion of dismissing me.

I am here obliged to vindicate the reputation of an excellent lady, who was an innocent sufferer upon my account. The treasurer took a fancy to be jealous of his wife, from the malice of some evil tongues, who informed him that her grace had taken a violent affection for my person; and the court scandal ran for some time, that she once came privately to my lodging. This I solemnly declare to be a most infamous falsehood, without any grounds, farther than that her grace was pleased to treat me with all innocent marks of freedom and friendship. I own she came often to my house, but always publicly, nor ever without three more in the coach, who were usually her sister and young daughter, and some particular acquaintance, but this was common to many other ladies of the court; and I still appeal to my servants round, whether they at any time saw a coach at my door, without knowing what persons were in it. On those occasions, when a servant had given me notice, my custom was to go immediately to the door; and, after paying my respects, to take up the coach and two horses very carefully in my hands (for if there were six horses, the postilion always unharnessed four), and place them on a table, where I had fixed a moveable rim quite round, of five inches high, to prevent accidents; and I have often had four coaches and horses at once on my table, full of company, while I sat in my chair, leaning my face towards them; and when I was engaged with one set, the coachmen would gently drive the others round my table. I have passed many an afternoon very agreeably in these conversations. But I defy the treasurer or his two informers (I will name them, and let them make the best of it), Clustril and Drunlo, to prove that any person ever came to me *incognito*, except the secretary Reldresal, who was sent by express command of his imperial majesty, as I have before related. I should not have dwelt so long upon this particular, if it had not been a point wherein the reputation of a great lady is so nearly concerned, to say nothing of my own; though I then had the honour to be a *nardac*, which the treasurer himself is not; for all the world knows that he is only a *glumglum*, a title inferior by one degree, as that of a marquis is to a duke in England; yet I allow he preceded me in right of his post. These false informations, which I afterwards came to the knowledge of by an accident not proper to mention, made the treasurer show his lady for some time an ill countenance, and me a worse; and although he was at last undeceived and reconciled to her, yet I lost all credit with him, and found my interest decline very fast with the emperor himself, who was, indeed, too much governed by that favourite.

CHAPTER VII.

Before I proceed to give an account of my leaving this kingdom, it may be proper to inform the reader of a private intrigue, which had been for two months forming against me.

I had been hitherto, all my life, a stranger to courts, for which I was unqualified by the meanness of my condition. I had indeed heard and read enough of the dispositions of great princes and ministers, but never expected to have found such terrible effects of them, in so remote a country, governed, as I thought, by very different maxims from those in Europe.

When I was just preparing to pay my attendance on the emperor of Blefuscu, a considerable person at court (to whom I had been very serviceable, at a time when he lay under the highest displeasure of his imperial majesty) came to my house very privately at night, in a close chair, and, without sending his name, desired admittance. The chairmen were dismissed; I put the chair, with his lordship in it, into my coat-pocket; and, giving orders to a trusty servant, to say I was indisposed and gone to sleep, I fastened the door of my house, placed the chair on the table, according to my usual custom, and sat down by it. After the common salutations were over, observing his lordship's countenance full of concern, and inquiring into the reason, he desired I would hear him with patience, in a matter that highly concerned my honour and my life. His speech was to the following effect, for I took notes of it as soon as he left me:—

"You are to know," said he, "that several committees of council have been lately called, in the most private manner, on your account; and it is but two days since his majesty came to a full resolution.

"You are very sensible that Skyresh Bolgolam (*galbet*, or high-admiral) has been your mortal enemy, almost ever since your arrival. His original reasons I know not; but his hatred is increased since your great success against Blefuscu, by which his glory as admiral is much obscured. This lord, in conjunction with Flimnap, the high-treasurer, whose enmity against you is notorious, on account of his lady, Limtoc the general, Lalcon the chamberlain, and Balmuff the grand justiciary, have prepared articles of impeachment against you, for treason and other capital crimes."

This preface made me so impatient, being conscious of my own merits and innocence, that I was going to interrupt him; when he entreated me to be silent, and thus proceeded:—

"Out of gratitude for the favours you have done me, I procured information of the whole proceedings, and a copy of the articles, wherein I venture my head for your service.

"'ARTICLES OF IMPEACHMENT AGAINST QUINBUS FLESTRIN, THE MAN-MOUNTAIN.

"'*Article I.*—Whereas, by a statute made in the reign of his imperial majesty Calin Deffar Plune, it is enacted, that, whoever shall make water within the precincts of the royal palace, shall be liable to the pains and penalties of high treason; notwithstanding, the said Quinbus Flestrin, in open breach of the said law, under colour of extinguishing the fire kindled in the apartment of his majesty's most dear imperial consort, did maliciously, traitorously, and devilishly, by discharge of his urine, put out the said fire kindled in the said apartment, lying and being within the precincts of the said royal palace, against the statute in that case provided, etc., against the duty.

"'*Article II.*—That the said Quinbus Flestrin, having brought the imperial fleet of Blefuscu into the royal port, and being afterwards commanded by his imperial majesty to seize all the other ships of the said empire of Blefuscu, and reduce that empire to a province, to be governed by a viceroy from hence, and to destroy and put to death, not only all the Big-endian exiles, but likewise all the people of that empire who would not immediately forsake the Big-endian heresy; he, the said Flestrin, like a false traitor against his most auspicious, serene, imperial majesty, did petition to be excused from the said service, upon pretence of unwillingness to force the consciences, or destroy the liberties and lives of an innocent people.

"'*Article III.*—That whereas, certain ambassadors having arrived from the court of Blefuscu, to sue for peace in his majesty's court; he, the said Flestrin, did, like a false traitor, aid, abet, comfort, and divert, the said ambassadors, although he knew them to be servants to a prince who was lately an open enemy to his imperial majesty, and in an open war against his said majesty.

"'*Article IV.*—That the said Quinbus Flestrin, contrary to the duty of a faithful subject, is now preparing to make a voyage to the court and empire of Blefuscu, for which he has received only verbal license from his imperial majesty; and under colour of the said license, does falsely and traitorously intend to take the said voyage, and thereby to aid, comfort, and abet the emperor of Blefuscu, so lately an enemy, and in open war with his imperial majesty aforesaid.'

"There are some other articles, but these are the most important, of which I have read you an abstract.

"In the several debates upon this impeachment, it must be confessed that his majesty gave many marks of his great lenity, often urging the services you had done him, and endeavouring to extenuate your crimes. The treasurer and admiral insisted that you should be put to the most painful and ignominious death, by setting fire to your house at night; and the general was to attend with twenty thousand men, armed with poisoned arrows, to shoot you on the face and hands. Some of your servants were to have private orders to strew a poisonous juice on your shirts and sheets, which would soon make you tear your own flesh, and die in the utmost torture. The general came into the same opinion, so that for a long time there was a majority against you; but his majesty resolving, if possible, to spare your life, at last brought off the chamberlain.

"Upon this incident, Reldresal, principal secretary for private affairs, who always approved himself your true friend, was commanded by the emperor to deliver his opinion, which he accordingly did, and therein justified the good thoughts you have of him. He allowed your crimes to be great, but that still there was room for mercy, the most commendable virtue in a prince, and for which his majesty was so justly celebrated. He said, the friendship between you and him was so well known to the world, that perhaps the most honourable board might think him partial; however, in obedience to the command he had received, he would freely offer his sentiments. That if his majesty, in consideration to your services, and pursuant to his own merciful disposition, would please to spare your life, and only give orders to put out both your eyes, he humbly conceived, that by this expedient justice might in some measure be satisfied, and all the world would applaud the lenity of the emperor, as well as the fair and generous proceedings of those who have the honour to be his counsellors. That the loss of your eyes would be no impediment to your bodily strength, by which you might still be useful to his majesty; that blindness is an addition to courage, by concealing dangers from us; that the fear you had for your eyes was the greatest difficulty in bringing over the enemy's fleet; and it would be sufficient for you to see by the eyes of the ministers, since the greatest princes do no more.

"This proposal was received with the utmost disapprobation by the whole board. Bolgolam, the admiral, could not preserve his temper; but rising up in fury, said, he wondered how the secretary durst presume to give his opinion for preserving the life of a traitor; that the services you had performed were, by all true reasons of state, the great aggravation of your crime; that you, who was able to extinguish the fire by discharge of urine in her majesty's apartment (which he mentioned with horror), might, at another time, raise an inundation by the same means, to drown the whole palace; and the same strength, which enabled you to bring over the enemy's fleet, might serve, upon the first discontent, to carry it back; that he had good reasons to think you were a Big-endian in your heart; and as treason begins in the heart, before it appears in overt acts, so he accused you as a traitor on that account, and therefore insisted you should be put to death.

"The treasurer was of the same opinion; he showed to what straits his majesty's revenue was reduced, by the charge for maintaining you, which would soon grow insupportable; that the secretary's expedient of putting out your eyes was so far from being a remedy against this evil, that it would probably increase it, as is manifest from the common practice of blinding some kind of fowls, after which they feed the faster, and grow sooner fat; that his sacred majesty and the council, who are your judges, were, in their own consciences, fully convinced of your guilt, which was a sufficient argument to condemn you to death, without the formal proofs required by the strict letter of the law.

"But his imperial majesty, fully determined against capital punishment, was graciously pleased to say, that since the council thought the loss of your eyes too easy a censure, some other way may be inflicted hereafter. And your friend, the secretary, humbly desiring to be heard again, in answer to what the treasurer had objected, concerning the great charge his majesty was at in maintaining you, said, that his excellency, who had the sole disposal of the emperor's revenue, might easily provide against that evil, by gradually lessening your establishment; by which, for want of sufficient food, you will grow weak and faint, and lose your appetite, and consume in a few months; neither would the stench of your carcase be then so dangerous, when it should become more than half diminished; and immediately upon your death, five or six thousand of his majesty's subjects might, in two or three days, cut your flesh from your bones, take it away by cart-loads, and bury it in distant parts, to prevent infection, leaving the skeleton as a monument of admiration to posterity.

"Thus, by the great friendship of the secretary, the whole affair was compromised. It was strictly enjoined, that the project of starving you by degrees should be kept a secret; but the sentence of putting out your eyes was entered on the books; none dissenting except Bolgolam the admiral, who, being a creature of the empress, was perpetually instigated by her majesty to insist upon your death, she having borne perpetual malice against you, on account of that infamous and illegal method you took to extinguish the fire in her apartment.

"In three days your friend, the secretary, will be directed to come to your house, and read before you the articles of impeachment; and then to signify the great lenity and favour of his majesty and council, whereby you are only condemned to the loss of your eyes, which his majesty does not question you will gratefully and humbly submit to; and twenty of his majesty's surgeons will attend, in order to see the operation well performed, by discharging very sharp-pointed arrows into the balls of your eyes as you lie on the ground.

"I leave to your prudence what measures you will take; and, to avoid suspicion, I must immediately return in as private a manner as I came."

His lordship did so; and I remained alone, under many doubts and perplexities of mind.

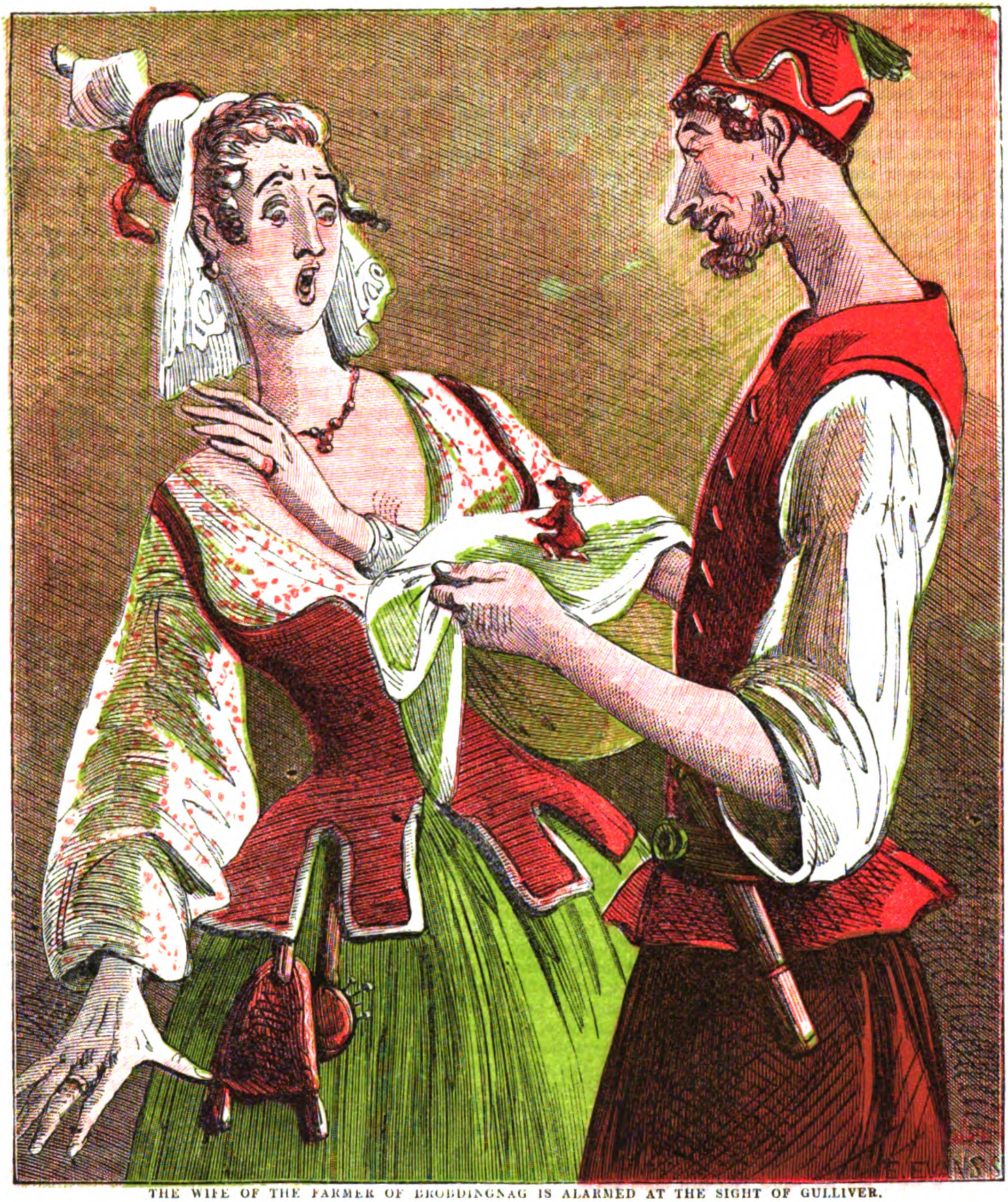
It was a custom introduced by this prince and his ministry (very different, as I have been assured, from the practice of former times), that after the court had decreed any cruel execution, either to gratify the monarch's resentment, or the malice of a favourite, the emperor always made a speech to his whole council, expressing his great lenity and tenderness, as qualities known and confessed by all the world. This speech was immediately published throughout the kingdom; nor did anything terrify the people so much, as those encomiums on his majesty's mercy, because it was observed, that the more these praises were enlarged and insisted on, the more inhuman was the punishment, and the sufferer more innocent. Yet, as to myself, I must confess, having never been designed for a courtier, either by my birth or education, I was so ill a judge of things, that I could not discover the lenity and favour of this sentence, but conceived it (perhaps erroneously) rather to be rigorous than gentle. I sometimes thought of standing my trial; for, although I could not deny the facts alleged in the several articles, yet I hoped they would admit of some extenuation. But, having in my life perused many state-trials, which I ever observed to terminate as the judge thought fit to direct, I durst not rely on so dangerous a decision, in so critical a juncture, and against such powerful enemies. Once, I was strongly bent upon resistance; for, while I had liberty, the whole strength of that empire could hardly subdue me, and I might easily with stones pelt the metropolis to pieces; but I soon rejected that project with horror, by remembering the oath I had made to the emperor, the favours I received from him, and the high title of *nardac* he conferred upon me. Neither had I so soon learned the gratitude of courtiers, to persuade myself that his majesty's present severities acquitted me of all past obligations.

At last, I fixed upon a resolution, for which it is probable I may incur some censure, and not unjustly; for I confess I owe the preserving of mine eyes, and consequently my liberty, to my own great rashness and want of experience; because, if I had then known the nature of princes and ministers, which I have since observed in many other courts, and their methods of treating criminals less obnoxious than myself, I should, with great alacrity and readiness, have submitted to so easy a punishment. But hurried on by the precipitancy of youth, and having his imperial majesty's license to pay my attendance upon the emperor of Blefuscu, I took this opportunity, before the three days were elapsed, to send a letter to my friend the secretary, signifying my resolution of setting out that morning for Blefuscu, pursuant to the leave I had got; and, without waiting for an answer, I went to that side of the island where our fleet lay. I seized a large man-of-war, tied a cable to the prow, and, lifting up the anchors, I stripped myself, put my clothes (together with my coverlet, which I carried under my arm) into the vessel, and, drawing it after me, between wading and swimming, arrived at the royal port of Blefuscu, where the people had long expected me; they lent me two guides to direct me to the capital city, which is of the same name. I held them in my hands, till I came within two hundred yards of the gate, and desired them to signify my arrival to one of the secretaries, and let him know, I there waited his majesty's command. I had an answer in about an hour, that his majesty, attended by the royal family and great officers of the court, was coming out to receive me. I advanced a hundred yards. The emperor and his train alighted from their horses, the empress and ladies from their coaches, and I did not perceive they were in any fright or concern. I lay on the ground to kiss his majesty's and the empress's hands. I told his majesty, that I was come, according to my promise, and with the license of the emperor my master, to have the honour of seeing so mighty a monarch, and to offer him any service in my power, consistent with my duty to my own prince; not mentioning a word of my disgrace, because I had hitherto no regular information of it, and might suppose myself wholly ignorant of any such design; neither could I reasonably conceive that the emperor would discover the secret, while I was out of his power; wherein, however, it soon appeared I was deceived.

I shall not trouble the reader with the particular account of my reception at this court, which was suitable to the generosity of so great a prince, nor of the difficulties I was in for want of a house and bed, being forced to lie on the ground, wrapped up in my coverlet.

CHAPTER VIII.

Three days after my arrival, walking, out of curiosity, to the north-east coast of the island, I observed, about half a league off in the sea, somewhat that looked like a boat overturned. I pulled off my shoes and stockings, and, wading two or three hundred yards, I found the object to approach nearer by force of the tide; and then plainly saw it to be a real boat, which I supposed might by some tempest have been driven from a ship; whereupon, I returned immediately towards the city, and desired his imperial majesty to lend me twenty of the tallest vessels he had left, after the loss of his fleet, and three thousand seamen, under the command of his vice-admiral. This fleet sailed round, while I went back the shortest way to the coast, where I first discovered the boat. I found the tide had driven it still nearer. The seamen were all provided with cordage, which I had beforehand twisted to a sufficient strength. When the ships came up, I stripped myself, and waded till I came within a hundred yards of the boat, after which I was forced to swim till I got up to it. The seamen threw me the end of the cord, which I fastened to a hole in the fore-part of the boat, and the other end to a man-of-war; but I found all my labour to little purpose, for, being out of my depth, I was not able to work. In this necessity, I was forced to swim behind, and push the boat forward, as often as I could, with one of my hands; and the tide favouring me, I advanced so far that I could just hold up my chin and feel the ground. I rested two or three minutes, and then gave the boat another shove, and so on, till the sea was no higher than my arm-pit; and now, the most laborious part being over, I took out my other cables, which were stowed in one of the ships, and fastened them first to the boat, and then to nine of the vessels which attended me; the wind being favourable, the seamen towed, and I shoved, until we arrived within forty yards of the shore; and waiting till the



THE WIFE OF THE FARMER OF BROBDINGNAG IS ALARMED AT THE SIGHT OF GULLIVER.

tide was out, I got dry to the boat, and by the assistance of two thousand men, with ropes and engines, I made a shift to turn it over on its bottom, and found it was but very little damaged.

I shall not trouble the reader with the difficulties I was under, by the help of certain paddles, which cost me ten days' making, to get my boat to the royal port of Blefuscu, where a mighty concourse of people appeared upon my arrival, full of wonder at the sight of so prodigious a vessel. I told the emperor that my good fortune had thrown this boat in my way, to carry me to some place whence I might return to my native country; and begged his majesty's orders for getting materials to fit it up, together with his license to depart; which, after some kind expostulations, he was pleased to grant.

I did very much wonder, in all this time, not to have heard of any express relating to me from our emperor to the court of Blefuscu. But I was afterwards given privately to understand, that his imperial majesty, never imagining I had the least notice of his designs, believed I was only gone to Blefuscu in performance of my promise, according to the license he had given me, which was well known at our court, and would return in a few days, when the ceremony was ended. But he was at last in pain at my long absence; and after consulting with the treasurer and the rest of that cabal, a person of quality was despatched with the copy of the articles against me. This envoy had instructions to represent to the monarch of Blefuscu the great lenity of his master, who was content to punish me no farther than with the loss of mine eyes; that I had fled from justice; and if I did not return in two hours, I should be deprived of my title of *nardac*, and declared a traitor. The envoy farther added, that in order to maintain the peace and amity between both empires, his master expected that his brother of Blefuscu would give orders to have me sent back to Lilliput, bound hand and foot, to be punished as a traitor.

The emperor of Blefuscu, having taken three days to consult, returned an answer consisting of many civilities and excuses. He said, that, as for sending me bound, his brother knew it was impossible; that, although I had deprived him of his fleet, yet he owed great obligations to me for many good offices I had done him in making the peace. That, however, both their majesties would soon be made easy; for I had found a prodigious vessel on the shore, able to carry me on the sea, which he had given orders to fit up, with my own assistance and direction; and he hoped in a few weeks both empires would be freed from so insupportable an incumbrance.

With this answer the envoy returned to Lilliput; and the monarch of Blefuscu related to me all that had passed, offering me, at the same time (but under the strictest confidence), his gracious protection, if I would continue in his service; wherein, although I believed him sincere, yet I resolved never more to put any confidence in princes or ministers, where I could possibly avoid it; and therefore, with all due acknowledgments for his favourable intentions, I humbly begged to be excused. I told him, that since fortune, whether good or evil, had thrown a vessel in my way, I was resolved to venture myself on the ocean, rather than be an occasion of difference between two such mighty monarchs. Neither did I find the emperor at all displeased; and I discovered, by a certain accident, that he was very glad of my resolution, and so were most of his ministers.

These considerations moved me to hasten my departure somewhat sooner than I intended, to which the court, impatient to have me gone, very readily contributed. Five hundred workmen were employed to make two sails to my boat, according to my directions, by quilting thirteen folds of their strongest linen together. I was at the pains of making ropes and cables, by twisting ten, twenty, or thirty, of the thickest and strongest of theirs. A great stone that I happened to find, after a long search, by the sea-shore, served me for an anchor. I had the tallow of three hundred cows, for greasing my boat, and other uses. I was at incredible pains in cutting down some of the largest timber-trees, for oars and masts, wherein I was, however, much assisted by his majesty's ship-carpenters, who helped me in smoothing them, after I had done the rough work.

In about a month, when all was prepared, I sent to receive his majesty's commands, and to take my leave. The emperor and royal family came out of the palace; I lay down on my face to kiss his hand, which he very graciously gave me; so did the empress and young princes of the blood. His majesty presented me with fifty purses, of two hundred *sprugs* a-piece, together with his picture at full length, which I put immediately into one of my gloves, to keep it from being hurt. The ceremonies at my departure were too many to trouble the reader with at this time.

I stored the boat with the carcases of a hundred oxen and three hundred sheep, with bread and drink proportionable, and as much meat ready dressed as four hundred cooks could provide. I took with me six cows and two bulls alive, with as many ewes and rams, intending to carry them into my own country, and propagate the breed; and to feed them on board, I had a good bundle of hay, and a bag of corn. I would gladly have taken a dozen of the natives, but this was a thing the emperor would by no means permit; and, besides a diligent search into my pockets, his majesty engaged my honour not to carry away any of his subjects, although with their own consent and desire.

Having thus prepared all things as well as I was able, I set sail on the twenty-fourth day of September, 1701, at six in the morning; and when I had gone about four leagues to the northward, the wind being at south-east, at six in the evening I descried a small island, about half a league to the north-west. I advanced forward, and cast anchor on the lee-side of the island, which seemed to be uninhabited. I then took some refreshment, and went to my rest. I slept well, and, as I conjecture, at least six hours, for I found the day broke in two hours after I awoke. It was a clear night. I ate my breakfast before the sun was up; and heaving anchor, the wind being favourable, I steered the same course that I had done the day before, wherein I was directed by my pocket compass. My intention was to reach, if possible, one of those islands which I had reason to believe lay to the north-east of Van Dieman's Land. I discovered nothing all that day; but upon the next, about three in the afternoon, when I had, by my computation, made twenty-four leagues from Blefuscu, I descried a sail steering to the south-east; my course was due east. I hailed her, but could get no answer; yet I found I gained upon her, for the wind slackened. I made all the sail I could, and in half an hour she spied me, then hung out her ancient, and discharged a gun. It is not easy to express the joy I was in, upon the unexpected hope of once more seeing my beloved country, and the dear pledges I left in it. The ship slackened her sails, and I came up with her between five and six in the evening, September 26; but my heart leaped within me to see her English colours. I put my cows and sheep into my coat-pocket, and got on board with all my little cargo of provisions. The vessel was an English merchantman, returning from Japan by the North and South Seas; the captain, Mr. John Biddel, of Deptford, a very civil man, and an excellent sailor. We were now in the latitude of thirty degrees south; there were about fifty men in the ship; and here I met an old comrade of mine, one Peter Williams, who gave me a good character to the captain. This gentleman treated me with kindness, and desired I would let him know what place I came from last, and whither I was bound; which I did in a few words, but he thought I was raving, and that the dangers I had undergone had disturbed my head; whereupon, I took my black cattle and sheep out of my pocket, which, after great astonishment, clearly convinced him of my veracity. I then showed him the gold given me by the emperor of Blefuscu, together with his majesty's picture at full length, and some other rarities of that country. I gave him two purses of two hundred *sprugs* each, and promised, when we arrived in England, to make him a present of a cow and a sheep big with young.

I shall not trouble the reader with a particular account of this voyage, which was very prosperous for the most part. We arrived in the Downs on the 13th of April, 1702. I had only one misfortune, that the rats on board carried away one of my sheep; I found her bones in a hole, picked clean from the flesh. The rest of my cattle I got safe ashore, and set them a-grazing in a bowling-green at Greenwich, where the fineness of the grass made them feed very heartily, though I had always feared the contrary; neither could I possibly have preserved them in so long a voyage, if the captain had not allowed me some of his best biscuit, which, rubbed to powder and mingled with water, was their constant food. The short time I continued in England, I made a considerable profit by showing my cattle to many persons of quality and others; and before I began my second voyage, I sold them for six hundred pounds. Since my last return, I find the breed is considerably increased, especially the sheep, which I hope will prove much to the advantage of the woollen manufacture, by the fineness of the fleeces.

I stayed but two months with my wife and family, for my insatiable desire of seeing foreign countries would suffer me to continue no longer. I left fifteen hundred pounds with my wife, and fixed her in a good house at Redriff. My remaining stock I carried with me, part in money and part in goods, in hopes to improve my fortunes. My eldest uncle John had left me an estate in land, near Epping, of about thirty pounds a-year; and I had a long lease of the Black Bull, in Fetter Lane, which yielded me as much more; so that I was not in any danger of leaving my family upon the parish. My son Johnny, named so after his uncle, was at the grammar-school, and a towardly child. My daughter Betty (who is now well married, and has children) was then at her needle-work. I took leave of my wife, and boy and girl, with tears on both sides, and went on board a merchant-ship. But my account of this voyage must be referred to the second part of my travels.

A VOYAGE TO BROBDINGNAG.

CHAPTER I.

HAVING been condemned, by nature and fortune, to active and restless life, in two months after my return, I again left my native country, and took shipping in the Downs, on the 20th day of June, 1702, in the Adventure, Captain John Nicholas, a Cornish man, commander, bound for Surat. We had a very prosperous gale, till we arrived at the Cape of Good Hope, where we landed for fresh water; but discovering a leak, we unshipped our goods, and wintered there; for the captain falling sick of an ague, we could not leave the Cape till the end of March. We then set sail, and had a good voyage till we passed the Straits of Madagascar; but having got northward of that island, and to about five degrees south latitude, the winds, which in those seas are observed to blow a constant equal gale between the north and west, from the beginning of December to the beginning of May, on the 19th of April began to blow with much greater violence, and more westerly than usual, continuing so for twenty days together; during which time we were driven a little to the east of the Molucca Islands, and about three degrees northward of the line, as our captain found by an observation he took the 2nd of May, at which time the wind ceased, and it was a perfect calm, whereat I was not a little rejoiced. But he, being a man well experienced in the navigation of those seas, bid us all prepare against a storm, which accordingly happened the day following; for the southern wind, called the southern monsoon, began to set in.

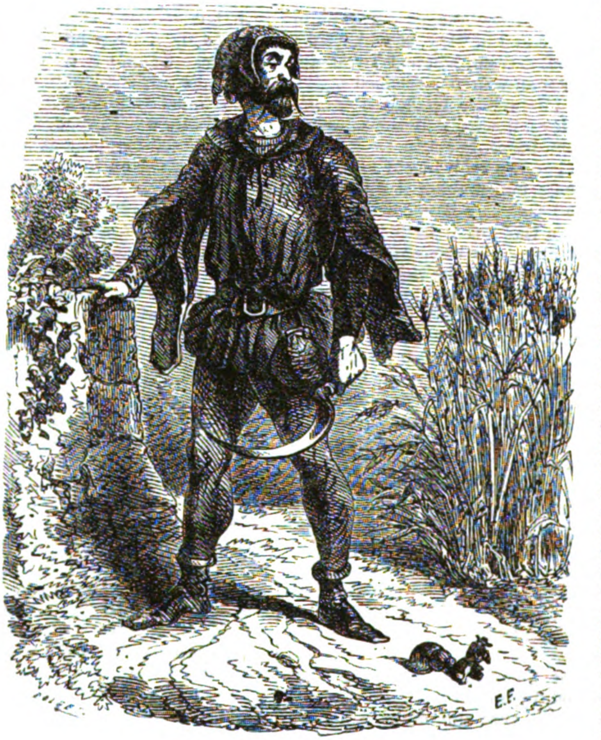
Finding it was likely to overblow, we took in our sprit-sail, and stood by to hand the fore-sail; but, making foul weather, we looked that the guns were all fast, and handed the mizen. The ship lay very broad off, so we thought it better spooning before the sea than trying or hulling. We reefed the fore-sail and set him, and hauled aft the fore-sheet; the helm was hard a-weather. The ship wore bravely. We belayed the fore down-haul; but the sail was split, and we hauled down the yard, and got the sail into the ship, and unbound all the things clear of it. It was a very fierce storm; the sea broke strong and dangerous. We hauled off upon the lanyard of the whip-staff, and helped the man at the helm. We could not get down our top-mast, but let all stand, because she scudded before the sea very well, and we knew that the top-mast being aloft, the ship was the wholesomer, and made better way through the sea, seeing we had sea-room. When the storm was over, we set fore-sail and main-sail, and brought the ship to. Then we set the mizen, main-top-sail, and the fore-top-sail. Our course was east-north-east; the wind was at south-west. We got the star-board tacks aboard; we cast off our weather-braces and lifts; we set in the lee-braces, and hauled forward by the weather-bowlings, and hauled them tight, and belayed them, and hauled over the mizen tack to windward, and kept her full and by as near as she would lie.

During this storm, which was followed by a strong wind west-south-west, we were carried, by my computation, above five hundred leages to the east, so that the oldest sailor on board could not tell in what part of the world we were. Our provisions held out well, our ship was staunch, and our crew all in good health; but we lay in the utmost distress for water. We thought it best to hold on the same course, rather than to turn more northerly, which might have brought us to the north-west part of Great Tartary, and into the Frozen Sea.

On the 16th day of June, 1703, a boy on the top-mast discovered land. On the 17th, we came in full view of a great island, or continent (for we knew not which), on the south side whereof was a small neck of land jutting out into the sea, and a creek too shallow to hold a ship of above one hundred tons. We cast anchor within a league of this creek, and our captain sent a dozen of his men well armed in the long-boat with vessels for water, if any could be found. I desired his leave to go with them, that I might see the country, and make what discoveries I could. When we came to land, we saw no river or spring, nor any sign of inhabitants. Our men, therefore, wandered on the shore to find out some fresh water near the sea, and I walked alone about a mile on the other side, where I observed the country all barren and rocky. I now began to be weary, and seeing nothing to entertain my curiosity, I returned gently down towards the creek; and the sea being full in my view, I saw our men already got into the boat, and rowing for life to the ship. I was going to hallen after them, although it had been to little purpose, when I observed a huge creature walking after them in the sea, as fast as he could; he waded not much deeper than his knees, and took prodigious strides; but our men had the start of him half a league, and, the sea thereabouts being full of sharp-pointed rocks, the monster was not able to overtake the boat. This I was afterwards told, for I durst not stay to see the issue of the adventure, but ran as fast as I could the way I first went, and then climbed up a steep hill, which gave me some prospect of the country. I found it fully cultivated; but that which first surprised me was the length of the grass, which, in those grounds that seemed to be kept for hay, was about twenty feet high.

I fell into a high road, for so I took it to be, though it served to the inhabitants only as a footpath through a field of barley. Here I walked on for some time, but could see little on either side, it being now near harvest. and the corn rising at least forty feet. I was an hour walking to the end of this field, which was fenced in with a hedge of at least one hundred and twenty feet high, and the trees so lofty, that I could make no computation of their altitude. There was a stile to pass from this field into the next. It had four steps, and a stone to cross over when you came to the uppermost. It was impossible for me to climb this stile, because every step was six feet high, and the upper stone about twenty. I was endeavouring to find some gap in the hedge, when I discovered one of the inhabitants in the next field, advancing towards the stile, of the same size with him whom I saw in the sea pursuing our boat. He appeared as tall as an ordinary spire steeple, and took about ten yards at every stride, as near as I could guess. I was struck with the utmost fear and astonishment, and ran to hide myself in the corn, whence I saw him at the top of the stile, looking back into the next field on the right hand, and heard him call in a voice many degrees louder than a speaking-trumpet; but the noise was so high in the air, that, at first, I certainly thought it was thunder. Whereupon, seven monsters, like himself, came towards him with reaping-hooks in their hands, each hook about the largeness of six scythes. These people were not so well clad as the first, whose servants or labourers they seemed to be; for, upon some words he spoke, they went to reap the corn in the field where I lay. I kept from them at as great a distance as I could, but was forced to move with extreme difficulty, for the stalks of the corn were sometimes not above a foot distant, so that I could hardly squeeze my body betwixt them. However, I made a shift to go forward, till I came to a part of the field where the corn had been laid by the rain and wind. Here it was impossible for me to advance a step; for the stalks were so interwoven, that I could not creep through, and the beards of the fallen ears so strong and pointed, that they pierced through my clothes into my flesh. At the same time, I heard the reapers not above a hundred yards behind me. Being quite dispirited with toil, and wholly overcome by grief and despair, I lay down between two ridges, and heartily wished I might there end my days. I bemoaned my desolate widow and fatherless children; I lamented my own folly and wilfulness, in attempting a second voyage, against the advice of all my friends and relations. In this terrible agitation of mind, I could not forbear thinking of Lilliput, whose inhabitants looked upon me as the greatest prodigy that ever appeared in the world; where I was able to draw an imperial fleet in my hand, and perform those other actions, which will be recorded for ever in the chronicles of that empire, while posterity shall hardly believe them, although attested by millions. I reflected what a mortification it must prove to me, to appear as inconsiderable in this nation, as one single Lilliputian would be among us. But this I conceived was to be the least of my misfortunes; for, as human creatures are observed to be more savage and cruel in proportion to their bulk, what could I expect but to be a morsel in the mouth of the first among these enormous barbarians that should happen to seize me? Undoubtedly philosophers are in the right, when they tell us that nothing is great or little otherwise than by comparison. It might have pleased fortune to have let the Lilliputians find some nation, where the people were as diminutive with respect to them, as they were to me. And who knows but that even this prodigious race of mortals might be equally overmatched in some distant part of the world, whereof we have yet no discovery?

Scared and confounded as I was, I could not forbear going on with these reflections, when one of the reapers, approaching within ten yards of the ridge where I lay, made me apprehend that with the next step I should be squashed to death under his foot, or cut in two with his reaping-hook. And therefore, when he was again about to move, I screamed as loud as fear could make me; whereupon, the huge creature trod short, and, looking round about under him for some time, at last espied me as I lay on the ground. He considered awhile, with the caution of one who endeavours to lay hold on a small dangerous animal in such a manner that it shall not be able either to scratch or bite him, as I myself have sometimes done with a weasel in England. At length, he ventured to take me behind, by the middle, between his forefinger and thumb, and brought me within three yards of his eyes, that he might behold my shape more perfectly. I guessed his meaning, and my good fortune gave me so much presence of mind, that I resolved not to struggle in the least, as he held me in the air above sixty feet from the ground, although he grievously pinched my sides, for fear I should slip through his fingers. All I ventured was, to raise mine eyes towards the sun, and place my hands together in a supplicating posture, and to speak some words in an humble melancholy tone, suitable to the condition I then was in; for I apprehended every moment that he would dash me against the ground, as we usually do any little hateful animal, which we have a mind to destroy. But my good star would have it, that he appeared pleased with my voice and gestures, and began to look upon me as a curiosity, much wondering to hear me pronounce articulate words, although he could not understand them. In the meantime, I was not able to forbear groaning and shedding tears, and turning my head towards my sides; letting him know, as well as I could, how cruelly I was hurt by the pressure of his thumb and finger. He seemed to apprehend my meaning; for lifting up the lappet of his coat, he put me gently into it, and immediately ran along with me to his master, who was a substantial farmer, and the same person I had first seen in the field.



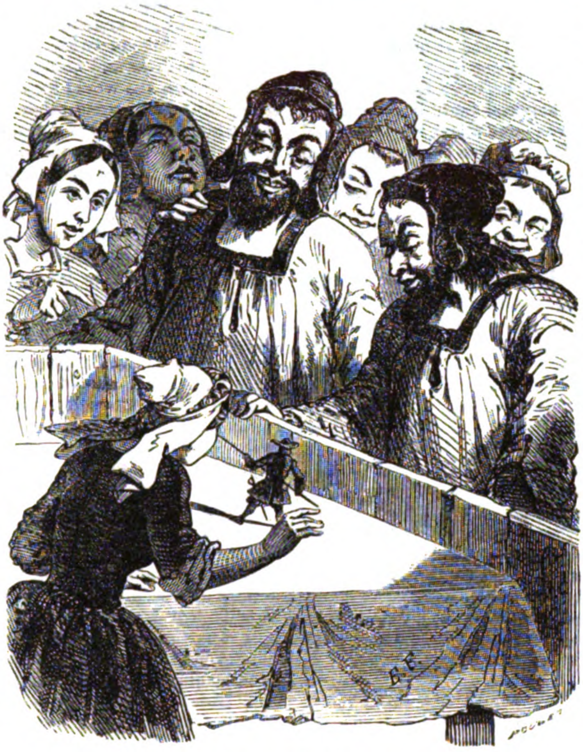
GULLIVER BEGINS TO THINK LITTLE OF HIMSELF.

The farmer having (as I suppose by their talk) received such an account of me as his servant could give him, took a piece of a small straw, about the size of a walking-staff, and therewith lifted up the lappets of my coat, which, it seems, he thought to be some kind of covering that nature had given me. He blew my hairs aside, to take a better view of my face. He called his hinds about him, and asked them, as I afterwards learned, "Whether they had ever seen in the fields any little creature that resembled me?" He then placed me softly upon the ground upon all-fours, but I got immediately up, and walked slowly backward and forward, to let those people see I had no intent to run away. They all sat down in a circle about me, the better to observe my motions. I pulled off my hat, and made a low bow towards the farmer. I fell on my knees, and lifted up my hands and eyes, and spoke several words as loud as I could: I took a purse of gold out of my pocket, and humbly presented it to him. He received it on the palm of his hand, then applied it close to his eye to see what it was, and afterwards turned it several times with the point of a pin (which he took out of his sleeve), but could make nothing of it. Whereupon, I made a sign that he should place his hand on the ground; I then took the purse, and, opening it, poured all the gold into his palm. There were six Spanish pieces of four pistoles each, beside twenty or thirty smaller coins. I saw him wet the tip of his little finger upon his tongue, and take up one of my largest pieces, and then another; but he seemed to be wholly ignorant what they were. He made me a sign to put them again into my purse, and the purse again into my pocket, which, after offering it to him several times, I thought it best to do.

The farmer, by this time, was convinced that I must be a rational creature. He spoke often to me, but the sound of his voice pierced my ears like that of a water-mill; yet his words were articulate enough. I answered as loud as I could in several languages, and he often laid his ear within two yards of me; but all in vain, for we were wholly unintelligible to each other. He then sent his servants to their work, and taking his handkerchief out of his pocket, he doubled and spread it on his left hand, which he placed flat on the ground with the palm upward, making me a sign to step into it, as I could easily do, for it was not above a foot in thickness. I thought it my part to obey, and, for fear of falling, laid myself at full length upon the handkerchief, with the remainder of which he lapped me up to the head for farther security, and in this manner carried me home to his house. There he called his wife, and showed me to her; but she screamed and ran back, as women in England do at the sight of a toad or a spider. However, when she had awhile seen my behaviour, and how well I observed the signs her husband made, she was soon reconciled, and by degrees grew extremely tender of me.

It was about twelve at noon, and a servant brought in dinner

It was only one substantial dish of meat (fit for the plain condition of a husbandman), in a dish of about four-and twenty feet diameter. The company were, the farmer and his wife, three children, and an old grandmother. When they were sat down, the farmer placed me at some distance from him on the table, which was thirty feet high from the floor. I was in a terrible fright, and kept as far as I could from the edge, for fear of falling. The wife minced a bit of meat, then crumbled some bread on a trencher, and placed it before me. I made her a low bow, took out my knife and fork, and fell to eat, which gave them exceeding delight. The mistress sent her maid for a small dram cup, which held about two gallons, and filled it with drink; I took up the vessel with much difficulty in both hands, and in a most respectful manner drank to her ladyship's health, expressing the words as loud as I could in English, which made the company laugh so heartily, that I was almost deafened with the noise. This liquor tasted like a small cider, and was not unpleasant. Then the master made me a sign to come to his trencher side; but as I walked on the table, being in great surprise all the time, as the indulgent reader will easily conceive and excuse, I happened to stumble against a crust, and fell flat on my face, but received no hurt. I got up immediately, and observing the good people to be in much concern, I took my hat (which I held under my arm, out of good manners), and waving it over my head, made three huzzas, to show I had got no mischief by my fall. But advancing forward towards my master (as I shall henceforth call him), his youngest son, who sat next to him, an arch boy of about ten years old, took me up by the legs, and held me so high in the air, that I trembled in every limb; but his father snatched me from him, and at the same time gave him such a box on the left ear, as would have felled an European troop of horse to the earth, ordering him to be taken from the table. But being afraid that the boy might owe me a spite, and well remembering how mischievous all children among us naturally are, to sparrows, rabbits, young kittens, and puppy dogs, I fell on my knees, and pointing to the boy, made my master to understand, as well as I could, that I desired his son might be pardoned. The father complied, and the lad took his seat again; whereupon, I went to him, and kissed his hand, which my master took, and made him stroke me gently with it.



GULLIVER STRUTS ON A BROBDINGNAGIAN TABLE.

In the midst of dinner, my mistress's favourite cat leaped into her lap. I heard a noise behind me, like that of a dozen stocking-weavers at work, and turning my head, I found it proceeded from the purring of that animal, who seemed to be three times larger than an ox, as I computed by the view of her head and one of her paws, while her mistress was feeding and stroking her. The fierceness of this creature's countenance altogether discomposed me, though I stood at the farther end of the table, above fifty feet off, and though my mistress held her fast, for fear she might give a spring, and seize me in her talons. But it happened there was no danger, for the cat took not the least notice of me, when my master placed me within three yards of her. And as I have been always told, and found true by experience in my travels, that flying or discovering fear before a fierce animal, is a certain way to make it pursue or attack you, so I resolved, in this dangerous juncture, to show no manner of concern. I walked with intrepidity five or six times before the very head of the cat, and came within half a yard of her; whereupon, she drew herself back, as if she were more afraid of me. I had less apprehension concerning the dogs, whereof three or four came into the room, as it is usual in farmer's houses; one of which was a mastiff, equal in bulk to four elephants, and a greyhound, somewhat taller than the mastiff, but not so large.

When dinner was almost done, the nurse came in with a child of a year old in her arms, who immediately spied me, and began a squall that you might have heard from London Bridge to Chelsea, after the usual oratory of infants, to get me for a plaything. The mother, out of pure indulgence, took me up, and put me towards the child, who presently seized me by the middle, and got my head into his mouth, where I roared so loud, that the urchin was frighted, and let me drop; and I should infallibly have broken my neck if the mother had not held her apron under me. The nurse, to quiet her babe, made use of a rattle, which was a kind of hollow vessel filled with great stones, and fastened by a cable to the child's waist,—but all in vain; so that she was forced to apply to the last remedy, by giving it suck. I must confess no object ever disgusted me so much as the sight of her monstrous breast, which I cannot tell what to compare with, so as to give the curious reader an idea of its bulk, shape, and colour. It stood prominent six feet, and could not be less than sixteen in circumference. The nipple was about half the bigness of my head, and the hue both of that and the dug so varied with spots, pimples, and freckles, that nothing could appear more nauseous; for I had a near sight of her, she sitting down, the more conveniently to give suck, and I standing on the table. This made me reflect upon the fair skins of our English ladies, who appear so beautiful to us, only because they are of our own size, and their defects not to be seen but through a magnifying-glass; where we find by experiment that the smoothest and whitest skins look rough, and coarse, and ill-coloured.

I remember, when I was at Lilliput, the complexions of those diminutive people appeared to me the fairest in the world; and talking upon this subject with a person of learning there, who was an intimate friend of mine, he said, that my face appeared much fairer and smoother when he looked on me from the ground, than it did upon a nearer view, when I took him up in my hand, and brought him close, which he confessed was at first a very shocking sight. He said he could discover great holes in my skin; that the stumps of my beard were ten times stronger than the bristles of a boar; and my complexion made up of several colours altogether disagreeable; although I must beg leave to say for myself, that I am as fair as most of my sex and country, and very little sun-burnt by all my travels. On the other side, discoursing of the ladies in that emperor's court, he used to tell me, one had freckles, another too large a mouth, a third too large a nose; nothing of which I was able to distinguish. I confess, this reflection was obvious enough, which, however, I could not forbear, lest the reader might think those vast creatures were actually deformed; for I must do them the justice to say, they are a comely race of people; and, particularly, the features of my master's countenance, although he was but a farmer, when I beheld him from the height of sixty feet, appeared very well proportioned.

When dinner was over, my master went out to his labourers, and, as I could discover by his voice and gesture, gave his wife a strict charge to take care of me. I was very much tired, and disposed to sleep, which my mistress perceiving, she put me on her own bed, and covered me with a clean white handkerchief, but larger and coarser than the main-sail of a man of war.

I slept about two hours, and dreamt I was at home with my wife and children, which aggravated my sorrow when I awoke, and found myself alone in a vast room, between two and three hundred feet wide, and above two hundred high, lying in a bed twenty yards wide. My mistress was gone about her household affairs, and had locked me in. The bed was eight yards from the floor. Some natural necessities required me to get down; I durst not presume to call, and if I had, it would have been in vain, with such a voice as mine, at so great a distance as from the room where I lay to the kitchen where the family kept. While I was under these circumstances, two rats crept up the curtains, and ran smelling backwards and forwards on the bed. One of them came up almost to my face, whereupon, I rose in a fright, and drew out my hanger to defend myself. These horrible animals had the boldness to attack me on both sides, and one of them held his fore-feet at my collar; but I had the good fortune to rip up his belly before he could do me any mischief. He fell down at my feet; and the other, seeing the fate of his comrade, made his escape, but not without one good wound on the back, which I gave him as he fled, and made the blood run trickling from him. After this exploit, I walked gently to and fro on the bed, to recover my breath and loss of spirits. These creatures were of the size of a large mastiff, but infinitely more nimble and fierce; so that, if I had taken off my belt before I went to sleep, I must have infallibly been torn to pieces and devoured. I measured the tail of the dead rat, and found it to be two yards long, wanting an inch; but it went against my stomach to drag the carcase off the bed, where it lay still bleeding. I observed it had yet some life, but with a strong slash across the neck, I thoroughly despatched it.

Soon after, my mistress came into the room, who, seeing me all bloody, ran and took me up in her hand. I pointed to the dead rat, smiling, and making other signs to show I was not hurt; whereat she was extremely rejoiced, calling the maid to take up the dead rat with a pair of tongs, and throw it out of the window. Then she set me on a table, where I showed her my hanger all bloody, and wiping it on the lappet of my coat, returned it to the scabbard. I was pressed to do more than one thing which another could not do for me, and therefore endeavoured to make my mistress understand that I desired to be set down on the floor; which after she had done, my bashfulness would not suffer me to express myself farther, than by pointing to the door, and bowing several times. The good woman, with much difficulty, at last perceived what I would be at, and taking me up again into her hand, walked into the garden, where she set me down. I went on one side about two hundred yards, and beckoning her not to look or to follow me, I hid myself between two leaves of sorrel, and there discharged the necessities of nature.

I hope the gentle reader will excuse me for dwelling on these and the like particulars, which, however insignificant they may appear to grovelling vulgar minds, yet will certainly help a philosopher to enlarge his thoughts and imagination, and apply them to the benefit of public as well as private life, which was my sole design in presenting this, and other accounts of my travels, to the world; wherein I have been chiefly studious of truth, without affecting any ornaments of learning or of style. But the whole scene of this voyage made so strong an impression on my mind, and is so deeply fixed on my memory, that in committing it to paper I did not omit one material circumstance; however, upon a strict review, I blotted out several passages of less moment which were in my first copy, for fear of being censured as tedious and trifling, whereof travellers are often, perhaps not without justice, accused.

CHAPTER II.

My mistress had a daughter of nine years old, a child of towardly parts for her age, very dexterous at her needle, and skilful in dressing her baby. Her mother and she contrived to fit up the baby's cradle for me against night; and the cradle was put into a small drawer of a cabinet, and the drawer placed upon a hanging shelf, for fear of the rats. This was my bed all the time I stayed with those people, though made more convenient by degrees, as I began to learn their language, and make my wants known. This young girl was so handy, that after I had once or twice pulled off my clothes before her, she was able to dress and undress me, though I never gave her that trouble when she would let me do either myself. She made me seven shirts, and some other linen, of as fine cloth as could be got, which, indeed, was coarser than sackcloth; and these she constantly washed for me with her own hands. She was likewise my schoolmistress, to teach me the language; when I pointed to anything, she told me the name of it in her own tongue, so that in a few days I was able to call for whatever I had a mind to. She was very good-natured, and not above forty feet high, being little for her age. She gave me the name of *Grildrig*, which the family took up, and afterwards the whole kingdom. The word imports what the Latins call *nonunculus*, the Italians, *homunceletion*, and the English, *mannikin*. To her I chiefly owe my preservation in that country; we never parted while I was there; I called her my *Glumdalclitch*, or little nurse, and should be guilty of great ingratitude, if I omitted this honourable mention of her care and affection towards me, which I heartily wish it lay in my power to requite as she deserves, instead of being the innocent but unhappy instrument of her disgrace, as I have too much reason to fear.

It now began to be known and talked of in the neighbourhood, that my master had found a strange animal in the field, about the bigness of a *splacknuck*, but exactly shaped in every part like a human creature, which it likewise imitated in all its actions; it seemed to speak a little language of its own, had already learned several words of theirs, went erect upon two legs, was tame and gentle, would come when it was called, do whatever it was bid, had the finest limbs in the world, and a complexion fairer than a nobleman's daughter of three years old. Another farmer, who lived hard by, and was a particular friend of my master, came on a visit on purpose to inquire into the truth of this story. I was immediately produced, and placed upon a table, where I walked as I was commanded, drew my hanger, put it up again, made my reverence to my master's guest, asked him in his own language how he did, and told him *he was welcome*, just as my little nurse had instructed me. This man, who was old and dim-sighted, put on his spectacles to behold me better; at which I could not forbear laughing very heartily, for his eyes appeared like the full moon shining into a chamber at two windows. Our people, who discovered the cause of my mirth, bore me company in laughing, at which the old fellow was fool enough to be angry and out of countenance. He had the character of a great miser; and, to my misfortune, he well deserved it, by the cursed advice he gave my master, to show me as a sight upon a market-day in the next town, which was half an hour's ride, about two-and-twenty miles, from our house. I guessed there was some mischief contriving, when I observed my master and his friend whispering long together, sometimes pointing at me; and my fears made me fancy that I overheard and understood some of their words. But the next morning, Glumdalclitch, my little nurse, told me the whole matter, which she had cunningly picked out from her mother. The poor girl laid me on her bosom, and fell a weeping with shame and grief. She apprehended some mischief would happen to me from rude vulgar folks who might squeeze me to death, or break one of my limbs by taking me in their hands. She had also observed how modest I was in my nature, how nicely I regarded my honour, and what an indignity I should conceive it, to be exposed for money as a public spectacle to the meanest of the people. She said, her papa and mamma had promised that Grildrig should be hers; but now she found they meant to serve her as they did last year, when they pretended to give her a lamb, and yet, as soon as it was fat, sold it to a butcher. For my own part, I may truly affirm, that I was less concerned than my nurse. I had a strong hope, which never left me, that I should one day recover my liberty; and as to the ignominy of being carried about for a monster, I considered myself to be a perfect stranger in the country, and such a misfortune could never be charged upon me as a reproach, if ever I should return to England; since the king of Great Britain himself, in my condition, must have undergone the same distress.

My master, pursuant to the advice of his friend, carried me in a box, the next market-day, to the neighbouring town, and took along with him his little daughter, my nurse, upon a pillion behind him. The box was close on every side, with a little door for me to go in and out, and a few gimlet holes to let in air. The girl had been so careful as to put the quilt of her baby's bed into it, for me to lie down on. However, I was terribly shaken and discomposed in this journey, though it was but of half an hour; for the horse went about forty feet at every step, and trotted so high, that the agitation was equal to the rising and falling of a ship in a great storm, but much more frequent. Our journey was somewhat farther than from London to St. Alban's. My master alighted at an inn which he used to frequent; and after consulting awhile with the innkeeper, and making some necessary preparations, he hired the *grultrud*, or crier, to give notice through the town of a strange creature to be seen, at the sign of the Green Eagle, not so big as a *splacknuck* (an animal in that country very finely shaped, about six feet long), and in every part of the body resembling a human creature, could speak several words, and perform a hundred diverting tricks.

I was placed upon a table in the largest room of the inn, which might be near three hundred feet square. My little nurse stood on a low stool close to the table, to take care of me, and direct what I should do. My master, to avoid a crowd, would suffer only thirty people at a time to see me. I walked about on the table as the girl commanded; she asked me questions, as far as she knew my understanding of the language reached, and I answered them as loud as I could. I turned about several times to the company, paid my humble respects, said *they were welcome*, and used some other speeches I had been taught. I took up a thimble filled with liquor, which Glumdalclitch had given me for a cup, and drank their health, I drew out my hanger, and flourished with it after the manner of fencers in England. My nurse gave me a part of a straw, which I exercised as a pike, having learnt the art in my youth. I was that day shown to twelve sets of company, and as often forced to act over again the same fopperies, till I was half dead with weariness and vexation; for those who had seen me made such wonderful reports, that the people were ready to break down the doors to come in. My master, for his own interest, would not suffer any one to touch me, except my nurse; and to prevent danger, benches were set round the table at such a distance as to put me out of everybody's reach. However, an unlucky schoolboy aimed a hazel nut directly at my head, which very narrowly missed me; otherwise, it came with so much violence, that it would have infallibly knocked out my brains, for it was almost as large as a small pumpion; but I had the satisfaction to see the young rogue well beaten, and turned out of the room.

My master gave public notice that he would show me again the next market-day; and in the meantime he prepared a more convenient vehicle for me, which he had reason enough to do, for I was so tired with my first journey, and with entertaining company for eight hours together, that I could hardly stand upon my legs or speak a word. It was at least three days before I recovered my strength; and, that I might have no rest at home, all the neighbouring gentlemen from a hundred miles round, hearing of my fame, came to see me at my master's own house. There could not be fewer than thirty persons, with their wives and children (for the country is very populous); and my master demanded the rate of a full room whenever he showed me at home, although it were only to a single family; so that for some time I had but little ease every day of the week (except Wednesday, which is their sabbath), although I were not carried to the town.

My master, finding how profitable I was likely to be, resolved to carry me to the most considerable cities of the kingdom. Having, therefore, provided himself with all things necessary for a long journey, and settled his affairs at home, he took leave of his wife, and upon the 17th of August, 1703, about two months after my arrival, we set out for the metropolis, situate near the middle of that empire, and about three thousand miles' distance from our house. My master made his daughter Glumdalclitch ride behind him; she carried me on her lap, in a box tied about her waist. The girl had lined it on all sides with the softest cloth she could get, well quilted underneath, furnished it with her baby's bed, provided it with linen and other necessaries, and made everything as convenient as she could. We had no other company but a boy of the house, who rode after us with the luggage.

My master's design was to show me in all the towns by the way, and to step out of the road, for fifty or a hundred miles, to any village or person of quality's house, where he might expect custom. We made easy journeys, of not above seven or eight score miles a day; for Glumdalclitch, on purpose to spare me, complained she was tired with the trotting of the horse. She often took me out of my box, at my own desire, to give me air, and show me the country, but always held me fast by a leading-string. We passed over five or six rivers, many degrees broader and deeper than the Nile or the Ganges; and there was hardly a rivulet so small as the Thames at London Bridge. We were ten weeks in our journey, and I was shown in eighteen large towns, besides many villages and private families.

On the 26th day of October we arrived at the metropolis, called, in their language, *Lorbrulgrud*, or Pride of the Universe. My master took a lodging in the principal street of the city, not far from the royal palace, and put out bills in the usual form, containing an exact description of my person and parts. He hired a large room between three and four hundred feet wide. He provided a table sixty feet in diameter, upon which I was to act my part, and palisadoed it round three feet from the edge, and as many high, to prevent my falling over. I was shown ten times a-day, to the wonder and satisfaction of all people. I could now speak the language tolerably well, and perfectly understood every word that was spoken to me; besides, I had learnt their alphabet, and could make a shift to explain a sentence here and there: for Glumdalclitch had been my instructor while we were at home, and at leisure hours during our journey. She carried a little book in her pocket, not much larger than a Sanson's Atlas; it was a common treatise, for the use of young girls, giving a short account of their religion: out of this she taught me my letters, and interpreted the words.

CHAPTER III.

THE frequent labours I underwent every day, made, in a few weeks, a very considerable change in my health: the more my master got by me, the more insatiable he grew. I had quite lost my stomach, and was almost reduced to a skeleton. The farmer observed it, and concluding I must soon die, resolved to make as good a hand of me as he could. While he was thus reasoning and resolving with himself, a *sardral*, or gentleman usher, came from court, commanding my master to carry me immediately thither for the diversion of the queen and her ladies. Some of the latter had already been to see me, and reported strange things of my beauty, behaviour, and good sense. Her majesty, and those who attended her, were beyond measure delighted with my demeanour. I fell on my knees, and begged the honour of kissing her imperial foot; but this gracious princess held out her little finger towards me, after I was set on the table, which I embraced in both my arms, and put the tip of it, with the utmost respect, to my lip. She made me some general questions about my country and my travels, which I answered as distinctly and in as few words as I could. She asked, whether I would be content to live at court. I bowed down to the board of the table, and humbly answered, that I was my master's slave; but if I were at my own disposal, I should be proud to devote my life to her majesty's service. She then asked my master whether he was willing to sell me at a good price. He, who apprehended I could not live a month, was ready enough to part with me, and demanded a thousand pieces of gold, which were ordered him on the spot, each piece being about the bigness of eight hundred moidores; but, allowing for the proportion of all things between that country and Europe, and the high price of gold among them, was hardly so great a sum as a thousand guineas would be in England. I then said to the queen, since I was now her majesty's most humble creature and vassal, I must beg the favour, that Glumdalclitch, who had always tended me with so much care and kindness, and understood how to do it so well, might be admitted into her service, and continue to be my nurse and instructor.

Her majesty agreed to my petition, and easily got the farmer's consent, who was glad enough to have his daughter preferred at court, and the poor girl herself was not able to hide her joy. My late master withdrew, bidding me farewell, and saying he had left me in a good service; to which I replied not a word, only making him a slight bow.

The queen observed my coldness; and, when the farmer was gone out of the apartment, asked me the reason. I made bold to tell her majesty, that I owed no other obligation to my late master, than his not dashing out the brains of a poor harmless creature found by chance in his fields; which obligation was amply recompensed by the gain he had made in showing me through half the kingdom, and the price he had now sold me for; that the life I had since led was laborious enough to kill an animal of ten times my strength; that my health was much impaired by the continual drudgery of entertaining the rabble every hour of the day; and that, if my master had not thought my life in danger, her majesty would not have got so cheap a bargain. But as I was out of all fear of being ill treated, under the protection of so great and good an empress, the ornament of nature, the darling of the world, the delight of her subjects, the phœnix of the creation, so I hoped my late master's apprehensions would appear to be groundless; for I already found my spirits revive, by the influence of her most august presence.

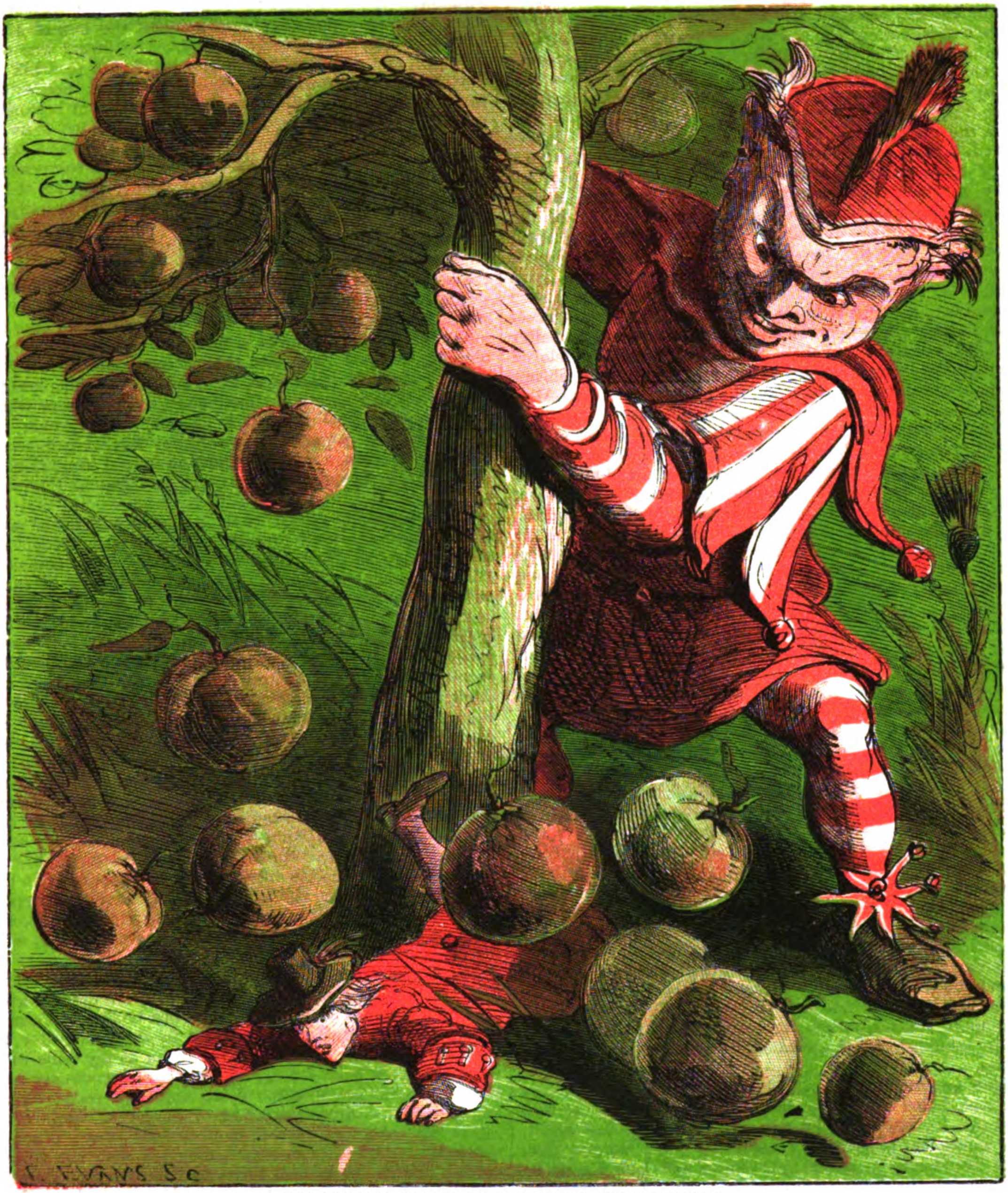
This was the sum of my speech, delivered with great improprieties and hesitation. The latter part was altogether framed in the style peculiar to that people, whereof I had learned some phrases from Glumdalclitch, while she was carrying me to court.

The Queen, giving great allowance for my defectiveness in speaking, was, however, surprised at so much wit and good sense in so diminutive an animal. She took me in her own hand, and carried me to the king, who was then retired to his cabinet. His majesty, a prince of much gravity and austere countenance, not well observing my shape at first view, asked the queen, after a cold manner, how long it was since she grew fond of a *splacknuck;* for such, it seems, he took me to be, as I lay upon my breast in her majesty's right hand. But this princess, who has an infinite deal of wit and humour, set me gently on my feet upon the scrutoire, and commanded me to give his majesty an account of myself, which I did in a very few words; and Glumdalclitch, who attended at the cabinet door, and could not endure I should be out of her sight, being admitted, confirmed all that had passed from my arrival at her father's house.

The king, although he be as learned a person as any in his dominions, and had been educated in the study of philosophy, and particularly mathematics, yet, when he observed my shape exactly, and saw me walk erect before I began to speak, conceived I might be a piece of clockwork (which is, in that country, arrived to a very great perfection), contrived by some ingenious artist. But when he heard my voice, and found what I delivered to be regular and rational, he could not conceal his astonishment. He was by no means satisfied with the relation I gave him of the manner I came into his kingdom, but thought it a story concerted between Glumdalclitch and her father, who had taught me a set of words to make me sell at a better price. Upon this imagination, he put several other questions to me, and still received rational answers, no otherwise defective than by a foreign accent, and an imperfect knowledge in the language, with some rustic phrases which I had learned at the farmer's house, and did not suit the polite style of a court.

His majesty sent for three great scholars, who were then in the weekly waiting, according to the custom in that country. These gentlemen, after they had awhile examined my shape with much nicety, were of different opinions concerning me. They all agreed that I could not be produced according to the regular laws of nature, because I was not framed with a capacity of preserving my life, either by swiftness, or climbing of trees, or digging holes in the earth. They observed by my teeth, which they viewed with great exactness, that I was a carnivorous animal; yet most quadrupeds being an overmatch for me, and field mice, with some others, too nimble, they could not imagine how I should be able to support myself, unless I fed upon snails and other insects, which they offered, by many learned arguments, to evince that I could not possibly do. One of these virtuosi seemed to think that I might be an embryo, or abortive birth. But this opinion was rejected by the other two, who observed my limbs to be perfect and finished; and that I had lived several years, as was manifest from my beard, the stumps whereof they plainly discovered through a magnifying glass. They would not allow me to be a dwarf, because my littleness was beyond all degrees of comparison; for the queen's favourite dwarf, the smallest ever known in that kingdom, was near thirty feet high. After much debate, they concluded unanimously, that I was only *reiplum scalcath,* which is interpreted literally *lusus naturæ;* a determination exactly agreeable to the modern philosophy of Europe, whose professors, disdaining the old evasion of occult causes, whereby the followers of Aristotle endeavoured in vain to disguise their ignorance, have invented this wonderful solution of all difficulties, to the unspeakable advancement of human knowledge.

After this decisive conclusion, I entreated to be heard a word or two. I applied myself to the king, and assured his majesty, that I came from a country which abounded with several millions of both sexes, and of my own stature; where the animals, trees, and houses, were all in proportion; and whereby, in consequence, I might be as able to defend myself, and to find sustenance, as any of his majesty's subjects could do here; which I took for a full answer to those gentlemen's arguments. To this they only replied with a smile of contempt, saying, that the farmer had instructed me very well in my lesson. The king, who had a much better understanding, dismissing his learned men, sent for the farmer, who, by good fortune, was not yet gone out of town. Having, therefore, first examined him privately, and then confronted him with me and the young girl, his majesty began to think that what we told him might possibly be true. He desired the queen to order that a particular care should be taken of me; and was of opinion that Glumdalclitch should still continue in her office of tending me, because he observed we had a great affection for each other. A convenient apartment was provided for her at court; she had a sort of governess appointed to take care of her education, a maid to dress her, and two other servants for menial offices; but the care of me was wholly appropriated to herself. The queen commanded her own cabinet-maker to contrive a box, that might serve me for a bed-chamber, after the model that Glumdalclitch and I should agree upon. This man was a most ingenious artist, and, according to my direction, in three weeks finished for me a wooden chamber of sixteen feet square, and twelve high, with sash windows, a door, and two closets, like a London bed-chamber. The board, that made the ceiling, was to be lifted up and down by two hinges, to put in a bed ready furnished by her majesty's upholsterer, which Glumdalclitch took out every day to air, made it with her own hands, and letting it down at night, locked up the roof over me. A nice workman, who was famous for little curiosities, undertook to make me two chairs, with backs and frames, of a substance not unlike ivory, and two tables, with a cabinet to put my things in. The room was quilted on all sides, as well as the floor and the ceiling, to prevent any accident from the carelessness of those who carried me, and to break the force of a jolt, when I went in a coach. I desired a lock for my door, to prevent rats and mice from coming in. The smith, after several attempts, made the smallest that ever was seen amongst them, for I have known a larger at the gate of a gentleman's house in England. I made a shift to keep the key in a pocket of my own, fearing Glumdalclitch might lose it. The queen likewise ordered the thinnest silks that could be got, to make me



THE QUEEN'S DWARF PLAYS A TRICK UPON GULLIVER.

clothes, not much thicker than an English blanket, very cumbersome till I was accustomed to them. They were after the fashion of the kingdom, partly resembling the Persian, and partly the Chinese, and are a very grave and decent habit.

The queen became so fond of my company, that she could not dine without me. I had a table placed upon the same at which her majesty ate, just at her elbow, and a chair to sit on. Glumdalclitch stood on a stool on the floor near my table, to assist and take care of me. I had an entire set of silver dishes and plates, and other necessaries, which, in proportion to those of the queen, were not much bigger than what I have seen in a London toy-shop, for the furniture of a baby-house; these my little nurse kept in her pocket, in a silver box, and gave me at meals as I wanted them, always cleaning them herself. No person dined with the queen but the two princesses royal, the eldest sixteen years old, and the younger, at that time, thirteen and a month. Her majesty used to put a bit of meat upon one of my dishes, out of which I carved for myself, and her diversion was, to see me eat in miniature; for the queen (who had, indeed, but a weak stomach) took up at one mouthful as much as a dozen English farmers could eat at a meal, which, to me, was for some time a very nauseous sight. She would craunch the wing of a lark, bones and all, between her teeth, although it were nine times as large as that of a full-grown turkey; and put a bit of bread in her mouth, as big as two twelvepenny loaves. She drank out of a golden cup, above a hogshead at a draught. Her knives were twice as long as a scythe, set straight upon the handle; the spoons, forks, and other instruments, were all in the same proportion. I remember, when Glumdalclitch carried me, out of curiosity, to see some of the tables at court, where ten or a dozen of those enormous knives and forks were lifted up together, I thought I had never till then beheld so terrible a sight.

It is the custom, that every Wednesday (which, as I have observed, is their sabbath) the king and queen, with the royal issue of both sexes, dine together in the apartment of his majesty, to whom I was now become a great favourite; and at these times my little chair and table were placed at his left hand, before one of the saltcellars. This prince took a pleasure in conversing with me, inquiring into the manners, religion, laws, government, and learning of Europe; wherein I gave him the best account I was able. His apprehension was so clear, and his judgment so exact, that he made very wise reflections and observations upon all I said. But I confess, that after I had been a little too copious in talking of my own beloved country, of our trade and wars by sea and land, of our schisms in religion, and parties in the state, the prejudices of his education prevailed so far, that he could not forbear taking me up in his right hand, and stroking me gently with the other, after a hearty fit of laughing, asked me whether I was a Whig or Tory. Then, turning to his first minister, who waited behind him with a white staff, near as tall as the mainmast of the Royal Sovereign, he observed, how contemptible a thing was human grandeur, which could be mimicked by such diminutive insects as I: "And yet," says he, "I dare engage, these creatures have their titles and distinctions of honour; they contrive little nests and burrows, that they call houses and cities; they make a figure in dress and equipage; they love, they fight, they dispute, they cheat, they betray." And thus he continued on, while my colour came and went several times with indignation, to hear our noble country, the mistress of arts and arms, the scourge of France, the arbitress of Europe, the seat of virtue, piety, honour, and truth, the pride and envy of the world, so contemptuously treated.

But as I was not in a condition to resent injuries, so, upon mature thoughts, I began to doubt whether I was injured or not. For, after having been accustomed several months to the sight and converse of this people, and observed every object upon which I cast mine eyes to be of proportionable magnitude, the horror I had at first conceived from their bulk and aspect was so far worn off, that if I had then beheld a company of English lords and ladies, in their finery and birthday clothes, acting their several parts in the most courtly manner of strutting, and bowing, and prating, to say the truth, I should have been strongly tempted to laugh as much at them, as the king and his grandees did at me. Neither, indeed, could I forbear smiling at myself, when the queen used to place me upon her hand towards a looking-glass, by which both our persons appeared before me in full view together; and there could be nothing more ridiculous than the comparison, so that I really began to imagine myself dwindled many degrees below my usual size.

Nothing angered and mortified me so much as the queen's dwarf; who, being of the lowest stature that was ever in that country (for I verily think he was not full thirty feet high), became so insolent at seeing a creature so much beneath him, that he would always affect to swagger and look big as he passed by me in the queen's antechamber, while I was standing on some table talking with the lords or ladies of the court; and he seldom failed of a smart word or two upon my littleness, against which I could only revenge myself by calling him *brother*, challenging him to wrestle, and such repartees as are usually in the mouths of court pages. One day, at dinner, this malicious little cub was so nettled with something I had said to him, that, rising himself upon the frame of her majesty's chair, he took me up by the middle, as I was sitting down, not thinking any harm, and let me drop into a large silver bowl of cream, and then ran away as fast as he could. I fell over head and ears, and, if I had not been a good swimmer, it might have gone very hard with me; for Glumdalclitch in that instant happened to be at the other end of the room, and the queen was in such a fright, that she wanted presence of mind to assist me. But my little nurse ran to my relief, and took me out, after I had swallowed above a quart of cream. I was put to bed; however, I received no other damage than the loss of a suit of clothes, which were utterly spoiled. The dwarf was soundly whipped, and, as a farther punishment, forced to drink up the bowl of cream into which he had thrown me: neither was he ever restored to favour; for soon after the queen bestowed him on a lady of high quality, so that I saw him no more, to my very great satisfaction; for I could not tell to what extremity such a malicious urchin might have carried his resentment.

He had before served me a scurvy trick, which set the queen a-laughing, although, at the same time, she was heartily vexed, and would have immediately cashiered him, if I had not been so generous as to intercede. Her majesty had taken a marrow-bone upon her plate, and, after knocking out the marrow, placed the bone again in the dish erect, as it stood before; the dwarf, watching his opportunity, while Glumdalclitch was gone to the sideboard, mounted the stool that she stood on to take care of me at meals, took me up in both hands, and squeezing my legs together, wedged them into the marrow-bone above my waist, where I stuck for some time, and made a very ridiculous figure. I believe it was near a minute before any one knew what was become of me, for I thought it below me to cry out; but, as princes seldom get their meat hot, my legs were not scalded, only my stockings and breeches in a sad condition. The dwarf, at my entreaty, had no other punishment than a sound whipping.

I was frequently rallied by the queen on account of my fearfulness; and she used to ask me whether the people of my country were as great cowards as myself. The occasion was this: the kingdom is much pestered with flies in summer; and these odious insects, each of them as big as a Dunstable lark, hardly gave me any rest while I sat at dinner, with their continual humming and buzzing about mine ears. They would sometimes alight upon my victuals, and leave their loathsome excrement or spawn behind, which to me was very visible, though not to the natives of that country, whose large optics were not so acute as mine in viewing smaller objects. Sometimes they would fix upon my nose or forehead, where they stung me to the quick, smelling very offensively; and I could easily trace that viscous matter, which, our naturalists tell us, enable those creatures to walk with their feet upwards upon a ceiling. I had much ado to defend myself against these detestable animals, and could not forbear starting when they came on my face. It was the common practice of the dwarf, to catch a number of these insects in his hand, as schoolboys do among us, and let them out suddenly under my nose, on purpose to frighten me and divert the queen. My remedy was, to cut them in pieces with my knife as they flew in the air, wherein my dexterity was much admired.

I remember, one morning, when Glumdalclitch had set me in a box upon a window, as she usually did in fair days, to give me air (for I durst not venture to let the box be hung on a nail out of the window, as we do with cages in England), after I had lifted up one of my sashes, and sat down at my table to eat a piece of sweet cake for my breakfast, about twenty wasps, allured by the smell, came flying into the room, humming louder than the drones of as many bagpipes. Some of them seized my cake, and carried it piecemeal away; others flew about my head and face, confounding me with the noise, and putting me in the utmost terror of their stings. However, I had the courage to rise and draw my hanger, and attack them in the air. I despatched four of them, but the rest got away, and I presently shut my window. These insects were as large as partridges; I took out their stings, found them an inch and a half long, and as sharp as needles. I carefully preserved them all; and having since shown them, with some other curiosities, in several parts of Europe, upon my return to England I gave three of them to Gresham College, and kept the fourth for myself.

CHAPTER IV.

I now intend to give the reader a short description of this country, as far as I travelled in it, which was not above two thousand miles round Lorbrulgrud, the metropolis. For the queen, whom I always attended, never went farther when she accompanied the king in his progresses, and there stayed till his majesty returned from viewing his frontiers. The whole extent of this prince's dominions reaches about six thousand miles in length, and from three to five in breadth; whence I cannot but conclude, that our geographers of Europe are in a great error, by supposing nothing but sea between Japan and California; for it was ever my opinion, that there must be a balance of earth to counterpoise the great continent of Tartary; and, therefore, they ought to correct their maps and charts, by joining this vast tract of land to the north-west parts of America; wherein I shall be ready to lend them my assistance.

The kingdom is a peninsula, terminated to the north-east by a ridge of mountains thirty miles high, which are altogether impassable, by reason of the volcanoes upon the tops; neither do the most learned know what sort of mortals inhabit beyond those mountains, or whether they be inhabited at all. On the three other sides, it is bounded by the ocean. There is not one sea-port in the whole kingdom; and those parts of the coasts into which the rivers issue, are so full of pointed rocks, and the sea generally so rough, that there is no venturing with the smallest of their boats; so that these people are wholly excluded from any commerce with the rest of the world. But the large rivers are full of vessels, and abound with excellent fish; for they seldom get any from the sea, because the sea-fish are of the same size with those in Europe, and consequently not worth catching; whereby it is manifest, that nature, in the production of plants and animals of so extraordinary a bulk, is wholly confined to this continent, of which I leave the reasons to be determined by philosophers. However, now and then they take a whale that happens to be dashed against the rocks, which the common people feed on heartily. These whales I have known so large, that a man could hardly carry one upon his shoulders; and sometimes, for curiosity, they are brought in hampers to Lorbrulgrud. I saw one of them in a dish at the king's table, which passed for a rarity; but I did not observe he was fond of it, for I think, indeed, the bigness disgusted him, although I have seen one somewhat larger in Greenland.

The country is well inhabited, for it contains fifty-one cities, near a hundred walled towns, and a great number of villages. To satisfy my curious reader, it may be sufficient to describe Lorbrulgrud. This city stands upon almost two equal parts, on each side the river that passes through. It contains above eighty thousand houses, and about six hundred thousand inhabitants. It is in length three *glomglungs* (which make about fifty-four English miles), and two and a half in breadth; as I measured it myself in the royal map made by the king's order, which was laid on the ground on purpose for me, and extended a hundred feet; I paced the diameter and circumference several times barefoot, and computing by the scale, measured it pretty exactly.

The king's palace is no regular edifice, but a heap of building, about seven miles round; the chief rooms are generally two hundred and forty feet high, and broad and long in proportion. A coach was allowed to Glumdalclitch and me, wherein her governess frequently took her out to see the town, or go among the shops; and I was always of the party, carried in my box; although the girl, at my own desire, would often take me out, and hold me in her hand, that I might more conveniently view the houses and the people, as we passed along the streets. I reckoned our coach to be about a square of Westminster Hall, but not altogether so high; however, I cannot be very exact. One day, the governess ordered our coachman to stop at several shops, where the beggars, watching their opportunity, crowded to the sides of the coach, and gave me the most horrible spectacle that ever an European eye beheld. There was a woman with a cancer in her breast, swelled to a monstrous size, full of holes, in two or three of which I could have easily crept, and covered my whole body. There was a fellow with a wen in his neck, larger than five wool-packs; and another with a couple of wooden legs, each about twenty feet high. But the most hateful sight of all, was the lice crawling on their clothes. I could see distinctly the limbs of these vermin with my naked eye, much better than those of an European louse through a microscope, and their snouts, with which they rooted like swine. They were the first I had ever beheld, and I should have been curious enough to dissect one of them, if I had had the proper instruments, which I unluckily left behind me in the ship; although, indeed, the sight was so nauseous, that it perfectly turned my stomach.

Besides the large box in which I was usually carried, the queen ordered a smaller one to be made for me, of about twelve feet square, and ten high, for the convenience of travelling; because the other was somewhat too large for Glumdalclitch's lap, and cumbersome in the coach; it was made by the same artist, whom I directed in the whole contrivance. This travelling closet was an exact square, with a window in the middle of three of the squares, and each window was latticed with iron wire on the outside, to prevent accidents in long journeys. On the fourth side, which had no window, two strong staples were fixed, through which the person that carried me, when I had a mind to be on horseback, put a leathern belt, and buckled it about his waist. This was always the office of some grave trusty servant, in whom I could confide, whether I attended the king and queen in their progresses, or were disposed to see the gardens, or pay a visit to some great lady or minister of state in the court, when Glumdalclitch happened to be out of order; for I soon began to be known and esteemed among the greatest officers, I suppose more on account of their majesties' favour, than any merit of my own. In journeys, when I was weary of the coach, a servant on horseback would buckle on my box, and place it upon a cushion before him; and there I had a full prospect of the country on three sides, from my three windows. I had, in this closet, a field-bed and a hammock hung from the ceiling, two chairs and a table, neatly screwed to the floor, to prevent being tossed about by the agitation of the horse or the coach. And having been long used to sea-voyages, those motions, although sometimes very violent, did not much discompose me.

Whenever I had a mind to see the town, it was always in my travelling-closet; which Glumdalclitch held in her lap in a kind of open sedan, after the fashion of the country, borne by four men, and attended by two others in the queen's livery. The people, who had often heard of me, were very curious to crowd about the sedan, and the girl was complaisant enough to make the bearers stop, and to take me in her hand, that I might be more conveniently seen.

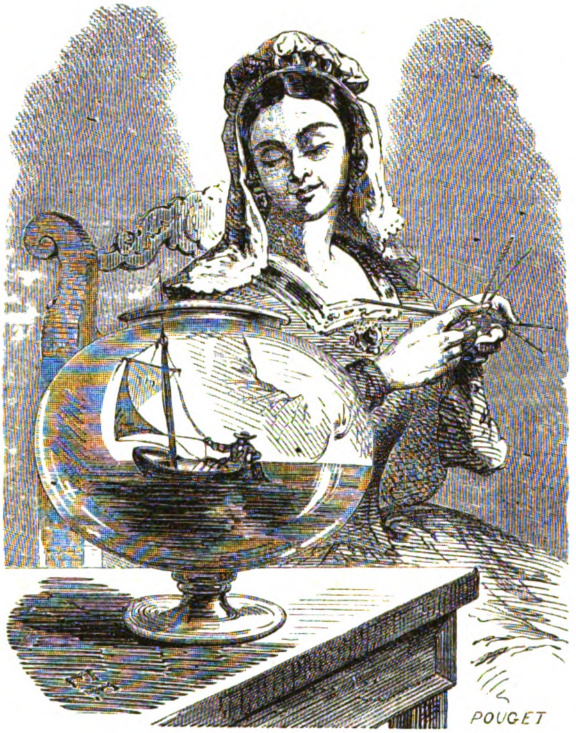
I was very desirous to see the chief temple, and particularly the tower belonging to it, which is reckoned the highest in the kingdom. Accordingly, one day my nurse carried me thither, but I may truly say I came back disappointed; for the height is not above three thousand feet, reckoning from the ground to the highest pinnacle top; which, allowing for the difference between the size of those people and us in Europe, is no great matter for admiration, nor at all equal in proportion (if I rightly remember) to Salisbury steeple. But, not to detract from a nation to which, during my life, I shall acknowledge myself extremely obliged, it must be allowed, that whatever this famous tower wants in height is amply made up in beauty and strength; for the walls are near a hundred feet thick, built of hewn stone, whereof each is about forty feet square, and adorned on all sides with statues of gods and emperors, cut in marble, larger than the life, placed in their several niches. I measured a little finger which had fallen down from one of these statues, and lay unperceived among some rubbish, and found it exactly four feet and an inch in length. Glumdalclitch wrapped it up in her handkerchief, and carried it home in her pocket, to keep among other trinkets, of which the girl was very fond, as children at her age usually are.

The king's kitchen is, indeed, a noble building, vaulted at top, and about six hundred feet high. The great oven is not so wide, by ten paces, as the cupola of St. Paul's; for I measured the latter on purpose, after my return. But if I should describe the kitchen grate, the prodigious pots and kettles, the joints of meat turning on the spits, with many other particulars, perhaps I should be hardly believed; at least, a severe critic would be apt to think I enlarged a little, as travellers are often suspected to do: to avoid which censure, I fear I have run too much into the other extreme; and that if this treatise should happen to be translated into the language of Brobdingnag (which is the general name of that kingdom), and transmitted thither, the king and his people would have reason to complain that I had done them an injury, by a false and diminutive representation.

His majesty seldom keeps above six hundred horses in his stables; they are generally from fifty-four to sixty feet high. But when he goes abroad on solemn days, he is attended, for state, by a militia guard of five hundred horse, which, indeed, I thought was the most splendid sight that could be ever beheld, till I saw part of his army in battalis, whereof I shall find another occasion to speak.

CHAPTER V.

I SHOULD have lived happy enough in that country, if my littleness had not exposed me to several ridiculous and troublesome accidents; some of which I shall venture to relate. Glumdalclitch often carried me into the gardens of the court in my smaller box, and would sometimes take me out of it, and hold me in her hand, or set me down to walk. I remember, before the dwarf left the queen, he followed us one day into those gardens, and my nurse having set me down, he and I being close together near some dwarf apple-trees, I must needs show my wit by a silly allusion between him and the trees, which happens to hold in their language as it does in ours. Whereupon, the malicious rogue, watching his opportunity, when I was walking under one of them, shook it directly over my head, by which a dozen apples, each of them near as large as a Bristol barrel, came tumbling about my ears; one of them hit me on the back as I chanced to stoop, and knocked me down flat on my face; but I received no other hurt, and the dwarf was pardoned at my desire, because I had given the provocation.



GULLIVER SAILS HIS BOAT TO AMUSE HIS NURSE.

Another day, Glumdalclitch left me on a smooth grass-plot to divert myself, while she walked at some distance with her governess. In the meantime, there suddenly fell such a violent shower of hail, that I was immediately, by the force of it, struck to the ground; and when I was down, the hailstones gave me such cruel bangs all over the body, as if I had been pelted with tennis-balls; however, I made a shift to creep on all-fours, and shelter myself, by lying flat on my face, on the lee-side of a border of lemon thyme; but so bruised from head to foot, that I could not go abroad for ten days. Neither is this at all to be wondered at; because nature, in that country, observing the same proportion through all her operations, a hailstone is near eighteen hundred times as large as one in Europe; which I can assert upon experience, having been so curious as to weigh and measure them.

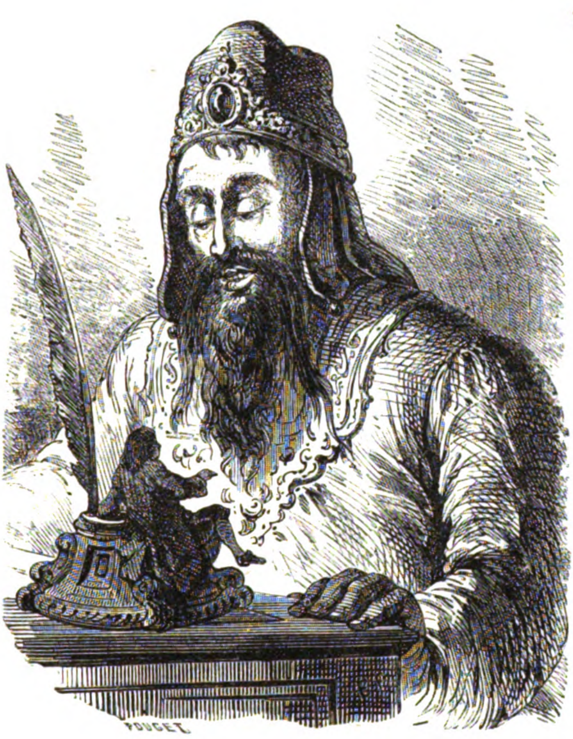
But a more dangerous accident happened to me in the same garden, when my little nurse, believing she had put me in a secure place (which I often entreated her to do, that I might enjoy my own thoughts,) and having left my box at home, to avoid the trouble of carrying it, went to another part of the garden with her governess and some ladies of her acquaintance. While she was absent, and out of hearing, a small white spaniel that belonged to one of the chief gardeners, having got by accident into the garden, happened to range near the place where I lay; the dog, following the scent, came directly up, and taking me in his mouth, ran straight to his master, wagging his tail, and set me gently on the ground. By good fortune, he had been so well taught, that I was carried between his teeth without the least hurt, or even tearing my clothes. But the poor gardener, who knew me well, and had a great kindness for me, was in a terrible fright; he gently took me up in both his hands, and asked me how I did; but I was so amazed and out of breath, that I could not speak a word. In a few minutes I came to myself, and he carried me safe to my little nurse, who, by this time, had returned to the place where she left me, and was in cruel agonies when I did not appear, nor answer when she called. She severely reprimanded the gardener on account of his dog; but the thing was hushed up, and never known at court, for the girl was afraid of the queen's anger: and truly, as to myself, I thought it would not be for my reputation that such a story should go about.

This accident absolutely determined Glumdalclitch never to trust me abroad, for the future, out of her sight. I had been long afraid of this resolution, and therefore concealed from her some little unlucky adventures that happened in those times when I was left by myself. Once, a kite, hovering over the garden, made a stoop at me; and if I had not resolutely drawn my hanger, and run under a thick espalier, he would have certainly carried me away in his talons. Another time, walking to the top of a fresh molehill, I fell to my neck in the hole through which that animal had cast up the earth, and coined some lie, not worth remembering, to excuse myself for spoiling my clothes. I likewise broke my right shin against the shell of a snail, which I happened to stumble over, as I was walking alone, and thinking on poor England.

I cannot tell whether I were more pleased or mortified to observe, in those solitary walks, that the smaller birds did not appear to be at all afraid of me, but would hop about within a yard's distance, looking for worms and other food, with as much indifference and security as if no creature at all were near them. I remember, a thrush had the confidence to snatch out of my hand, with his bill, a piece of cake that Glumdalclitch had just given me for my breakfast. When I attempted to catch any of these birds, they would boldly turn against me, endeavouring to peck my fingers, which I durst not venture within their reach; and then they would hop back unconcerned, to hunt for worms or snails, as they did before. But one day, I took a thick cudgel, and threw it with all my might so luckily at a linnet, that I knocked him down, and seizing him by the neck with both my hands, ran with him in triumph to my nurse. However, the bird, who had only been stunned, recovering himself, gave me so many boxes with his wings on both sides of my head and body, though I held him at arm's length, and was out of the reach of his claws, that I was twenty times thinking to let him go. But I was soon relieved by one of our servants, who wrung off the bird's neck; and I had him next day for dinner, by the queen's command. This linnet, as near as I can remember, seemed to be somewhat larger than an English swan.

The maids of honour often invited Glumdalclitch to their apartments, and desired she would bring me along with her, on purpose to have the pleasure of seeing and touching me. They would often strip me naked from top to toe, and lay me at full length in their bosoms; wherewith I was much disgusted, because, to say the truth, a very offensive smell came from their skins, which I do not mention, or intend, to the disadvantage of those excellent ladies, for whom I have all manner of respect; but I conceive that my sense was more acute, in proportion to my littleness, and that those illustrious persons were no more disagreeable to their lovers, or to each other, than people of the same quality are with us in England. And, after all, I found their natural smell was much more supportable than when they used perfumes, under which I immediately swooned away. I cannot forget, that an intimate friend of mine in Lilliput took the freedom, in a warm day, when I had used a good deal of exercise, to complain of a strong smell about me, although I am as little faulty that way as most of my sex: but I suppose his faculty of smelling was as nice in regard to me, as mine was to that of this people. Upon this point, I cannot forbear doing justice to the queen my mistress, and Glumdalclitch my nurse, whose persons were as sweet as those of any lady in England.

That which gave me most uneasiness among these maids of honour (when my nurse carried me to visit them), was, to see them use me without any manner of ceremony, like a creature who had no sort of concupiscence; for they would strip themselves to the skin, and put their smocks on in my presence, while I was placed on their toilet, directly before their naked bodies; which, I am sure, to me was very far from being a tempting sight, or from giving me any other emotions than those of horror and disgust; their skins appeared so coarse and uneven, so variously coloured, when I saw them near, with a mole here and there as broad as a trencher, and hairs hanging from it thicker than pack-threads.



GULLIVER HAS A CONFERENCE WITH THE EMPEROR.

One day, a young gentleman, who was nephew to my nurse's governess, came and pressed them both to see an execution. It was of a man who had murdered one of that gentleman's intimate acquaintance. Glumdalclitch was prevailed on to be of the company, very much against her inclination, for she was naturally tender-hearted; and as for myself, although I abhorred such kind of spectacles, yet my curiosity tempted me to see something that I thought must be extraordinary. The malefactor was fixed in a chair upon a scaffold erected for that purpose, and his head cut off at one blow, with a sword about forty feet long. The veins and arteries spouted up such a prodigious quantity of blood, and so high in the air, that the great *jet d'eau* at Versailles was not equal, for the time it lasted; and the head, when it fell on the scaffold floor, gave such a bounce as made me start, although I were at least half an English mile distant.

The queen, who often used to hear me talk of my sea-voyages, and took all occasions to divert me when I was melancholy, asked me whether I understood how to handle a sail or an oar, and whether a little exercise of rowing might not be convenient for my health. I answered, that I understood both very well; for, although my proper employment had been to be surgeon or doctor to the ship, yet often, upon a pinch, I was forced to work like a common mariner. But I could not see how this could be done in their country, where the smallest wherry was equal to a first-rate man-of-war among us; and such a boat as I could manage would never live in any of their rivers. Her majesty said, if I would contrive a boat, her own joiner should make it, and she would provide a place for me to sail in. The fellow was an ingenious workman, and, by my instructions, in ten days finished a pleasure-boat, with all its tackling, able conveniently to hold eight Europeans. When it was finished, the queen was so delighted, that she ran with it in her lap to the king, who ordered it to be put in a cistern full of water, with me in it, by way of trial; where I could not manage my two sculls, or little oars, for want of room. But the queen had before contrived another project. She ordered the joiner to make a wooden trough, of three hundred feet long, fifty broad, and eight deep; which, being well pitched, to prevent leaking, was placed on the floor, along the wall, in an outer room of the palace. It had a cock near the bottom, to let out the water when it began to grow stale; and two servants could easily fill it in half an hour. Here I often used to row for my own diversion, as well as that of the queen and her ladies, who thought themselves well entertained with my skill and agility. Sometimes I would put up my sail, and then my business was only to steer, while the ladies gave me a gale with their fans; and, when they were weary, some of their pages would blow my sail forward with their breath, while I showed my art by steering starboard or larboard as I pleased. When I had done, Glumdalclitch always carried back my boat into her closet, and hung it on a nail to dry.

In this exercise I once met an accident, which had like to have cost me my life; for, one of the pages having put my boat into the trough, the governess who attended Glumdalclitch very officiously lifted me up, to place me in the boat; but I happened to slip through her fingers, and should infallibly have fallen down forty feet, upon the floor, if, by the luckiest chance in the world, I had not been stopped by a corking-pin that stuck in the good gentlewoman's stomacher; the head of the pin passed between my shirt and the waistband of my breeches, and thus I was held by the middle in the air, till Glumdalclitch ran to my relief.

Another time, one of the servants, whose office it was to fill my trough every third day with fresh water, was so careless as to let a huge frog (not perceiving it) slip out of his pail. The frog lay concealed till I was put into my boat, but then, seeing a resting-place, climbed up, and made it lean so much on one side, that I was forced to balance it with all my weight on the other, to prevent overturning. When the frog was got in, it hopped at once half the length of the boat, and then over my head, backward and forward, daubing my face and clothes with its odious slime. The largeness of its features made it appear the most deformed animal that can be conceived. However, I desired Glumdalclitch to let me deal with it alone. I banged it a good while with one of my sculls, and at last forced it to leap out of the boat.

But the greatest danger I ever underwent in that kingdom was from a monkey, who belonged to one of the clerks of the kitchen. Glumdalclitch had locked me up in her closet, while she went somewhere upon business, or a visit. The weather being very warm, the closet-window was left open, as well as the windows and the door of my bigger box, in which I usually lived, because of its largeness and conveniency. As I sat quietly meditating at my table, I heard something bounce in at the closet-window, and skip about from one side to the other; whereat, although I was much alarmed, yet I ventured to look out, but not stirring from my seat; and then I saw this frolicsome animal frisking and leaping up and down, till at last he came to my box, which he seemed to view with great pleasure and curiosity, peeping in at the door and every window. I retreated to the farther corner of my room, or box; but the monkey, looking in at every side, put me into such a fright, that I wanted presence of mind to conceal myself under the bed, as I might easily have done. After some time spent in peeping, grinning, and chattering, he at last espied me; and reaching one of his paws in at the door, as a cat does when she plays with a mouse, although I often shifted place to avoid him, he at length seized the lappet of my coat (which, being made of that country silk, was very thick and strong), and dragged me out. He took me up in his right fore-foot, and held me as a nurse does a child she is going to suckle, just as I have seen the same sort of creature do with a kitten in Europe; and when I offered to struggle, he squeezed me so hard, that I thought it more prudent to submit. I have good reason to believe that he took me for a young one of his own species, by his often stroking my face very gently with his other paw. In these diversions he was interrupted by a noise at the closet-door, as if somebody were opening it; whereupon, he suddenly leaped up to the window at which he had come in, and thence upon the leads and gutters, walking upon three legs, and holding me in the fourth, till he clambered up to a roof that was next to ours. I heard Glumdalclitch give a shriek at the moment he was carrying me out. The poor girl was almost distracted: that quarter of the palace was all in an uproar; the servants ran for ladders. The monkey was seen by hundreds in the court, sitting upon the ridge of a building, holding me like a baby in one of his fore-paws, and feeding me with the other, by cramming into my mouth some victuals he had squeezed out of the bag on one side of his chaps, and patting me when I would not eat; whereat many of the rabble below could not forbear laughing, neither do I think they justly ought to be blamed, for, without question, the sight was ridiculous enough to everybody but myself. Some of the people threw up stones, hoping to drive the monkey down; but this was strictly forbidden, or else, very probably, my brains had been dashed out.

The ladders were now applied, and mounted by several men; which the monkey observing, and finding himself almost encompassed, not being able to make speed enough with his three legs, let me drop on a ridge-tile, and made his escape. Here I sat for some time, five hundred yards from the ground, expecting every moment to be blown down by the wind, or to fall by my own giddiness, and come tumbling over and over from the ridge to the eaves; but an honest lad, one of my nurse's footmen, climbed up, and putting me into his breeches-pocket, brought me down safe.

I was almost choked with the filthy stuff the monkey had crammed down my throat; but my dear little nurse picked it out of my mouth with a small needle, and then I fell a-vomiting, which gave me great relief. Yet I was so weak and bruised in the sides with the squeezes given me by this odious animal, that I was forced to keep my bed a fortnight. The king, queen, and all the court, sent every day to inquire after my health, and her majesty made me several visits during my sickness. The monkey was killed, and an order made that no such animal should be kept about the palace.

When I attended the king after my recovery, to return him thanks for his favours, he was pleased to rally me a good deal upon this adventure. He asked me what my thoughts and speculations were, while I lay in the monkey's paw; how I liked the victuals he gave me, and his manner of feeding; and whether the fresh air on the roof had sharpened my stomach. He desired to know what I would have done upon such an occasion in my own country. I told his majesty, that in Europe we had no monkeys except such as were brought for curiosities from other places, and so small, that I could deal with a dozen of them together, if they presumed to attack me. And as for that monstrous animal, with whom I was so lately engaged (it was indeed as large as an elephant), if my fears had suffered me to think so far as to make use of my hanger (looking fiercely, and clapping my hand upon the hilt as I spoke), when he poked his paw into my chamber, perhaps I should have given him such a wound as would have made him glad to withdraw it, with more haste than he put it in. This I delivered in a firm tone, like a person who was jealous lest his courage should be called in question. However, my speech produced nothing else beside a loud laughter, which all the respect due to his majesty from those about him could not make them contain. This made me reflect, how vain an attempt it is for a man to endeavour to do himself honour among those who are out of all degree of equality or comparison with him. And yet I have seen the moral of my own behaviour very frequent in England, since my return; where a little contemptible varlet, without the least title to birth, person, wit, or common sense, shall presume to look with importance, and put himself upon a foot with the greatest persons of the kingdom.

I was every day furnishing the court with some ridiculous story; and Glumdalclitch, although she loved me to excess, yet was arch enough to inform the queen, whenever I committed any folly that she thought would be diverting to her majesty. The girl, who had been out of order, was carried by her governess to take the air about an hour's distance, or thirty miles from town. They alighted out of the coach near a small footpath in a field, and Glumdalclitch setting down my travelling box, I went out of it to walk. There was a cow-dung in the path, and I must needs try my activity by attempting to leap over it. I took a run, but unfortunately jumped short, and found myself just in the middle, up to my knees. I waded through with some difficulty, and one of the footmen wiped me as clean as he could with his handkerchief, for I was filthily bemired; and my nurse confined me to my box till we returned home, where the queen was soon informed of what had passed, and the footmen spread it about the court; so that all the mirth for some days was at my expense.

CHAPTER VI.

I USED to attend the king's levee once or twice a-week, and had often seen him under the barber's hand; which, indeed, was at first very terrible to behold, for the razor was almost twice as long as an ordinary scythe. His majesty, according to the custom of the country, was only shaved twice a-week. I once prevailed on the barber to give me some of the suds or lather, out of which I picked forty or fifty of the strongest stumps of hair. I then took a piece of fine wood, and cut it like the back of a comb, making several holes in it at equal distances, with as small a needle as I could get from Glumdalclitch. I fixed in the stumps so artificially, scraping and sloping them with my knife toward the points, that I made a very tolerable comb; which was a seasonable supply, my own being so much broken in the teeth that it was almost useless; neither did I know any artist in that country, so nice and exact, as would undertake to make me another.

And this puts me in mind of an amusement, wherein I spent many of my leisure hours. I desired the queen's woman to save for me the combings of her majesty's hair, whereof in time I got a good quantity; and consulting with my friend the cabinet-maker, who had received general orders to do little jobs for me, I directed him to make two chair frames, no larger than those I had in my box, and to bore little holes with a fine awl round those parts where I designed the backs and seats; through these holes I wove the strongest hairs I could pick out, just after the manner of cane chairs in England. When they were finished, I made a present of them to her majesty, who kept them in her cabinet, and used to show them for curiosities, as, indeed, they were the wonder of every one that beheld them.

The queen would have had me sit upon one of these chairs, but I absolutely refused to obey her, protesting, I would rather die a thousand deaths, than place a dishonourable part of my body on those precious hairs, that once adorned her majesty's head. Of these hairs (as I had always a mechanical genius) I likewise made a neat little purse, about five feet long, with her majesty's name deciphered in gold letters, which I gave to Glumdalclitch, by the queen's consent. To say the truth, it was more for show than use, being not of strength to bear the weight of the larger coins, and therefore she kept nothing in it but some little toys that girls are fond of.

The king, who delighted in music, had frequent concerts at court, to which I was sometimes carried, and set in my box on a table to hear them; but the noise was so great that I could hardly distinguish the tunes. I am confident that all the drums and trumpets of a royal army, beating and sounding together just at your ears, could not equal it. My practice was, to have my box removed from the place where the performers sat, as far as I could, then to shut the doors and windows of it, and draw the window-curtains; after which, I found their music not disagreeable.

I had learned in my youth to play a little upon the spinet; Glumdalclitch kept one in her chamber, and a master attended twice a-week to teach her. I called it a spinet, because it somewhat resembled that instrument, and was played upon in the same manner. A fancy came into my head, that I would entertain the king and queen with an English tune upon this instrument. But this appeared extremely difficult; for the spinet was near sixty feet long, each key being almost a foot wide, so that with my arms extended I could not reach to above five keys, and to press them down required a good smart stroke with my fist, which would be too great a labour, and to no purpose. The method I contrived was this: I prepared two round sticks, about the bigness of common cudgels; they were thicker at one end than the other, and I covered the thicker ends with pieces of a mouse's skin, that by rapping on them I might neither damage the tops of the keys nor interrupt the sound. Before the spinet a bench was placed, about four feet below the keys, and I was put upon the bench. I ran sideling upon it, that way and this, as fast as I could, banging the proper keys with my two sticks, and made a shift to play a jig, to the great satisfaction of both their majesties. But it was the most violent exercise I ever underwent; and yet I could not strike above sixteen keys, nor consequently play the bass and treble together, as other artists do, which was a great disadvantage to my performance.

The king, who, as I before observed, was a prince of excellent understanding, would frequently order that I should be brought in my box, and set upon the table in his closet; he would then command me to bring one of my chairs out of the box, and sit down within three yards' distance upon the top of the cabinet, which brought me almost to a level with his face. In this manner I had several conversations with him. I one day took the freedom to tell his majesty, that the contempt he discovered towards Europe, and the rest of the world, did not seem answerable to those excellent qualities of mind that he was master of; that reason did not extend itself with the bulk of the body; on the contrary, we observed in our country, that the tallest persons were usually the least provided with it; that among other animals, bees and ants had the reputation of more industry, art, and sagacity, than many of the larger kinds; and that, as inconsiderable as he took me to be, I hoped I might live to do his majesty some signal service. The king heard me with attention, and began to conceive a much better opinion of me than he had ever before. He desired I would give him as exact an account of the government of England as I possibly could; because, as fond as princes commonly are of their own customs (for so he conjectured of other monarchs by my former discourses), he should be glad to hear of anything that might deserve imitation.

Imagine with thyself, courteous reader, how often I then wished for the tongue of Demosthenes or Cicero, that might have enabled me to celebrate the praise of my own dear native country, in a style equal to its merits and felicity.

I began my discourse by informing his majesty, that our dominions consisted of two islands, which composed three mighty kingdoms, under one sovereign, beside our plantations in America. I dwelt long upon the fertility of our soil, and the temperature of our climate. I then spoke at large upon the constitution of an English parliament; partly made up of an illustrious body, called the House of Peers, persons of the noblest blood, and of the most ancient and ample patrimonies. I described, that extraordinary care was always taken of their education in arts and arms, to qualify them for being counsellors both to the king and kingdom; to have a share in the legislature; to be members of the highest court of judicature, whence there can be no appeal; and to be champions always ready for the defence of their prince and country, by their valour, conduct, and fidelity. That these were the ornament and bulwark of the kingdom, worthy followers of their most renowned ancestors, whose honour had been the reward of their virtue, from which their posterity were never once known to degenerate. To these were joined several holy persons, as part of that assembly, under the title of bishops, whose peculiar business is to take care of religion, and of those who instruct the people therein. These were searched and sought out through the whole nation, by the prince and his wisest counsellors, among such of the priesthood as were most deservedly distinguished by the sanctity of their life, and the depth of their erudition; who were, indeed, the spiritual fathers of the clergy and the people.

That the other part of the parliament consisted of an assembly, called the House of Commons, who were all principal gentlemen, freely picked and culled out by the people themselves, for their great abilities and love of their country, to represent the wisdom of the whole nation. And that these two bodies made up the most august assembly in Europe; to whom, in conjunction with the prince, the whole legislature is committed.

I then descended to the courts of justice; over which the judges, those venerable sages and interpreters of the law, presided, for determining the disputed rights and properties of men, as well as for the punishment of vice, and protection of innocence. I mentioned the prudent management of our treasury; the valour and achievements of our forces, by sea and land. I computed the number of our people, by reckoning how many millions there might be of each religious sect or political party among us. I did not omit even our sports and pastimes, or any other particular which I thought might redound to the honour of my country. And I finished all with a brief historical account of affairs and events in England for about a hundred years past.

This conversation was not ended under five audiences, each of several hours; and the king heard the whole with great attention, frequently taking notes of what I spoke, as well as memorandums of what questions he intended to ask me.

When I had put an end to these long discourses, his majesty, in a sixth audience, consulting his notes, proposed many doubts, queries, and objections, upon every article. He asked, what methods were used to cultivate the minds and bodies of our young nobility, and in what kind of business they commonly spent the first and teachable part of their lives? What course was taken to supply that assembly, when any noble family became extinct? What qualifications were necessary in those who are to be created new lords; whether the humour of the prince, a sum of money to a court lady, or a design of strengthening a party opposite to the public interest, ever happened to be the motives in those advancements? What share of knowledge these lords had in the laws of their country, and how they came by it, so as to enable them to decide the properties of their fellow-subjects, in the last resort? Whether they were always so free from avarice, partialities, or want, that a bribe, or some other sinister view, could have no place among them? Whether those holy lords I spoke of were always promoted to that rank upon account of their knowledge in religious matters, and the sanctity of their lives; had never been compliers with the times, while they were common priests; or slavish prostitute chaplains to some nobleman, whose opinions they continued servilely to follow, after they were admitted into that assembly?

He then desired to know what arts were practised in electing those whom I called commoners; whether a stranger, with a strong purse, might not influence the vulgar voters to choose him before their own landlord, or the most considerable gentleman in the neighbourhood? How it came to pass, that people were so violently bent upon getting into this assembly, which I allowed to be a great trouble and expense, often to the ruin of their families, without any salary or pension? because this appeared such an exalted strain of virtue and public spirit, that his majesty seemed to doubt it might possibly not be always sincere. And he desired to know, whether such zealous gentlemen could have any views of refunding themselves for the charges and trouble they were at, by sacrificing the public good to the designs of a weak and vicious prince, in conjunction with a corrupted ministry? He multiplied his questions, and sifted me thoroughly upon every part of this head, proposing numberless inquiries and objections, which I think it not prudent or convenient to repeat.

Upon what I said in relation to our courts of justice, his majesty desired to be satisfied in several points; and this I was the better able to do, having been formerly almost ruined by a long suit in chancery, which was decreed for me, with costs. He asked, what time was usually spent in determining between right and wrong, and what degree of expense? Whether advocates and orators had liberty to plead in causes manifestly known to be unjust, vexatious, or oppressive? Whether party, in religion or politics, were observed to be of any weight in the scale of justice? Whether those pleading orators were persons educated in the general knowledge of equity, or only in provincial, national, and other local customs? Whether they or their judges had any part in penning those laws, which they assumed the liberty of interpreting, and glossing upon at their pleasure? Whether they had ever, at different times, pleaded for and against the same cause, and cited precedents to prove contrary opinions? Whether they were a rich or a poor corporation? Whether they received any pecuniary reward for pleading, or delivering their opinions? And particularly, whether they were ever admitted as members in the lower senate?

He fell next upon the management of our treasury; and said, he thought my memory had failed me, because I computed our taxes at about five or six millions a-year, and when I came to mention the issues, he found they sometimes amounted to more than double; for the notes he had taken were very particular in this point, because he hoped, as he told me, that the knowledge of our conduct might be useful to him, and he could not be deceived in his calculations. But, if what I told him were true, he was still at a loss how a kingdom could run out of its estate, like a private person. He asked me, who were our creditors; and where we found money to pay them? He wondered to hear me talk of such chargeable and expensive wars; that certainly we must be a quarrelsome people, or live among very bad neighbours; and that our generals must needs be richer than our kings. He asked, what business we had out of our own islands, unless upon the score of trade, or treaty, or to defend the coasts with our fleet? Above all, he was amazed to hear me talk of a mercenary standing army, in the midst of peace, and among a free people. He said, if we were governed by our consent, in the persons of our representatives, he could not imagine of whom we were afraid, or against whom we were to fight; and would hear my opinion, whether a private man's house might not be better defended by himself, his children, and family, than by half a dozen rascals, picked up at a venture in the streets for small wages, who might get a hundred times more by cutting their throats?

He laughed at my odd kind of arithmetic, as he was pleased to call it, in reckoning the numbers of our people, by a computation drawn from the several sects among us, in religion and politics. He said, he knew no reason why those who entertain opinions prejudicial to the public, should be obliged to change, or should not be obliged to conceal them. And as it was tyranny in any government to require the first, so it was weakness not to enforce the second; for a man may be allowed to keep poisons in his closet, but not to vend them about for cordials.

He observed, that among the diversions of our nobility and gentry, I had mentioned gaming; he desired to know at what age this entertainment was usually taken up, and when it was laid down; how much of their time it employed; whether it ever went so high as to affect their fortunes; whether mean, vicious people, by their dexterity in that art, might not arrive at great riches, and sometimes keep our very nobles in dependence, as well as habituate them to vile companions; wholly take them from the improvement of their minds, and force them, by the losses they received, to learn and practice that infamous dexterity upon others?

He was perfectly astonished with the historical account I gave him of our affairs during the last century; protesting it was only a heap of conspiracies, rebellions, murders, massacres, revolutions, banishments, the very worst effects that avarice, faction, hypocrisy, perfidiousness, cruelty, rage, madness, hatred, envy, lust, malice, and ambition, could produce.

His majesty, in another audience, was at the pains to recapitulate the sum of all I had spoken; compared the questions he made with the answers I had given; then taking me into his hands, and stroking me gently, delivered himself in these words, which I shall never forget, nor the manner he spoke them in: "My little friend Grildrig, you have made a most admirable panegyric upon your country; you have clearly proved that ignorance, idleness, and vice, are the proper ingredients for qualifying a legislator; that laws are best explained, interpreted, and applied, by those whose interest and abilities lie in perverting, confounding, and eluding them. I observe among you some lines of an institution, which, in its original, might have been tolerable, but these half erased, and the rest wholly blurred and blotted by corruption. It does not appear, from all you have said, how any one perfection is required toward the procurement of any one station among you; much less, that men are ennobled on account of their virtue; that priests are advanced for their piety or learning; soldiers, for their conduct or valour; judges, for their integrity; senators, for the love of their country; or counsellors, for their wisdom. As for yourself," continued the king, "who have spent the greatest part of your life in travelling, I am well disposed to hope you may hitherto have escaped many vices of your country. But, by what I have gathered from your own relation, and the answers I have with much pains wringed and extorted from you, I cannot but conclude the bulk of your natives to be the most pernicious race of little odious vermin that nature ever suffered to crawl upon the surface of the earth."

CHAPTER VII.

Nothing but an extreme love of truth could have hindered me from concealing this part of my story. In was in vain to discover my resentments, which were always turned into ridicule; and I was forced to rest with patience, while my noble and beloved country was so injuriously treated. I am as heartily sorry as any of my readers can possibly be, that such an occasion was given; but this prince happened to be so curious and inquisitive upon every particular, that it could not consist either with gratitude or good manners, to refuse giving him what satisfaction I was able. Yet thus much I may be allowed to say in my own vindication, that I artfully eluded many of his questions, and gave to every point a more favourable turn, by many degrees, than the strictness of truth would allow. For I have always borne that laudable partiality to my own country, which Dionysius Halicarnassensis, with so much justice, recommends to an historian: I would hide the frailties and deformities of my political mother, and place her virtues and beauties in the most advantageous light. This was my sincere endeavour in those many discourses I had with that monarch, although it unfortunately failed of success.

But great allowances should be given to a king who lives wholly secluded from the rest of the world, and must therefore be altogether unacquainted with the manners and customs that most prevail in other nations; the want of which knowledge will ever produce many prejudices, and a certain narrowness of thinking, from which we, and the politer countries of Europe, are wholly exempted. And it would be hard indeed, if so remote a prince's notions of virtue and vice were to be offered as a standard for all mankind.

To confirm what I have now said, and farther to show the miserable effects of a confined education, I shall here insert a passage, which will hardly obtain belief. In hopes to ingratiate myself farther into his majesty's favour, I told him of an invention, discovered between three and four hundred years ago, to make a certain powder, into a heap of which, the smallest spark of fire falling, would kindle the whole in a moment, although it were as big as a mountain, and make it all fly up in the air together, with a noise and agitation greater than thunder. That a proper quantity of this powder, rammed into a hollow tube of brass or iron, according to its bigness, would drive a ball of iron or lead, with such violence and speed, as nothing was able to sustain its force. That the largest balls thus discharged, would not only destroy whole ranks of an army at once, but batter the strongest walls to the ground; sink down ships, with a thousand men in each, to the bottom of the sea; and when linked together by a chain, would cut through masts and rigging, divide hundreds of bodies in the middle, and lay all waste before them. That we often put this powder into large hollow balls of iron, and discharged them by an engine into some city we were besieging, which would rip up the pavements, tear the houses to pieces, burst and throw splinters on every side, dashing out the brains of all who came near. That I knew the ingredients very well, which were cheap and common; I understood the manner of compounding them, and could direct his workmen how to make those tubes, of a size proportionable to all other things in his majesty's kingdom, and the largest need not be above a hundred feet long; twenty or thirty of which tubes, charged with the proper quantity of powder and balls, would batter down the walls of the strongest town in his dominions in a few hours, or destroy the whole metropolis, if ever it should pretend to dispute his absolute commands. This I humbly offered to his majesty, as a small tribute of acknowledgment, in return for so many marks that I had received of his royal favour and protection.

The king was struck with horror at the description I had given of those terrible engines, and the proposal I had made. He was amazed, how so impotent and grovelling an insect as I (these were his expressions) could entertain such inhuman ideas, and in so familiar a manner, as to appear wholly unmoved at all the scenes of blood and desolation, which I had painted as the common effects of those destructive machines; whereof, he said, some evil genius, enemy to mankind, must have been the first contriver. As for himself, he protested, that although few things delighted him so much as new discoveries in art or in nature, yet he would rather lose half his kingdom, than be privy to such a secret; which he commanded me, as I valued my life, never to mention any more.

I remember very well, in a discourse one day with the king, when I happened to say, there were several thousand books among us written upon the art of government, it gave him (directly contrary to my intention) a very mean opinion of our understandings. He confined the knowledge of governing within very narrow bounds—to common sense and reason, justice and lenity; to the speedy determination of civil and criminal causes; with some other obvious topics, which are not worth considering. And he gave it for his opinion, that whoever could make two ears of corn, or two blades of grass, to grow upon a spot of ground where only one grew before, would deserve better of mankind, and do more essential service to his country, than the whole race of politicians put together.

The learning of this people is wholly applied to what may be useful in life, so that among us it would be little esteemed. No law of that country must exceed in words the number of letters in their alphabet, which consists only of two-and-twenty. They are expressed in the most plain and simple terms, wherein those people are not mercurial enough to discover above one interpretation; and to write a comment upon any law, is a capital crime.

They have had the art of printing, as well as the Chinese, time out of mind; but their libraries are not very large; for that of the king, which is reckoned the largest, does not amount to above a thousand volumes, placed in a gallery of twelve hundred feet long, whence I had liberty to borrow what books I pleased. The queen's joiner had contrived, in one of Glumdalclitch's rooms, a kind of wooden machine, five-and-twenty feet high, formed like a standing ladder; the steps were each fifty feet long; it was, indeed, a moveable pair of stairs, the lowest end placed at ten feet distance from the wall of the chamber. The book I had a mind to read was put up leaning against the wall; I first mounted to the upper step of the ladder, and turning my face towards the book, began at the top of the page, and so walking to the right and left about eight or ten paces, according to the length of the lines, till I had got a little below the level of mine eyes, and then descending gradually till I came to the bottom; after which, I mounted again, and began the other page in the same manner, and so turned over the leaf, which I could easily do with both my hands, for it was as thick and stiff as pasteboard, and in the largest folios not above eighteen or twenty feet long.

As to their military affairs, they boast that the king's army consists of a hundred and seventy-six thousand foot, and thirty-two thousand horse; if that may be called an army, which is made up of tradesmen in the several cities, and farmers in the country, whose commanders are only the nobility and gentry, without pay or reward. They are indeed perfect enough in their exercises, and under very good discipline, wherein I saw no great merit; for how should it be otherwise, where every farmer is under the command of his own landlord, and every citizen under that of the principal men in his own city, chosen, after the manner of Venice, by ballot?

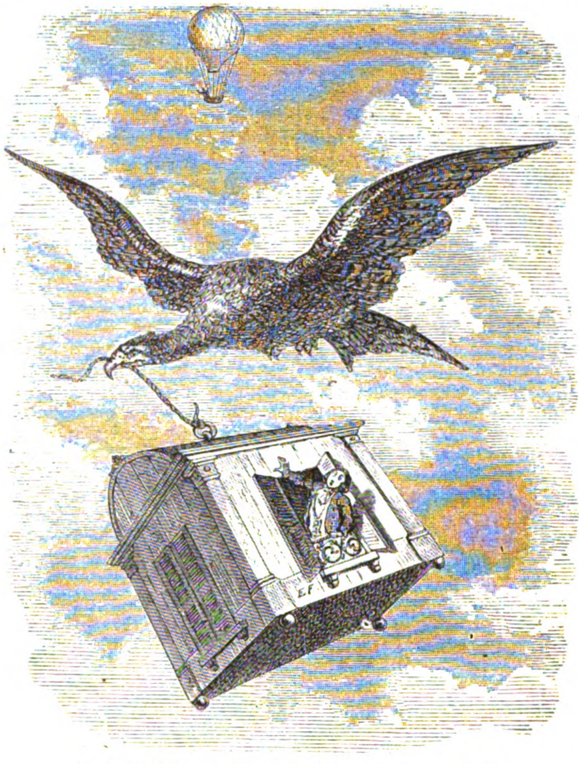
I was curious to know how this prince, to whose dominions there is no access from any other country, came to think of armies, or to teach his people the practice of military discipline. But I was soon informed, both by conversation and reading their histories; for, in the course of many ages, they have been troubled with the same disease to which the whole race of mankind is subject; the nobility often contending for power, the people for liberty, and the king for absolute dominion.

CHAPTER VIII.

I HAD always a strong impulse that I should some time recover my liberty, though it was impossible to conjecture by what means, or to form any project with the least hope of succeeding. The ship in which I sailed was the first ever known to be driven within sight of that coast, and the king had given strict orders, that if at any time another appeared, it should be taken ashore, and, with all its crew and passengers, brought in a tumbril to Lorbrulgrud. He was strongly bent to get me a woman my own size, by whom I might propagate the breed; but I think I should rather have died, than undergone the disgrace of leaving a posterity to be kept in cages, like tame canary-birds, and perhaps, in time, sold about the kingdom, to persons of quality, for curiosities. I was indeed treated with much kindness; I was the favourite of a great king and queen, and the delight of the whole court; but it was upon such a foot as ill became the dignity of human-kind. I could never forget those domestic pledges I had left behind me. I wanted to be among people with whom I could converse upon even terms, and walk about the streets and fields without being afraid of being trod to death like a frog or a young puppy. But my deliverance came sooner than I expected, and in a manner not very common; the whole story and circumstances of which I shall faithfully relate.

I had now been two years in this country; and about the beginning of the third, Glumdalclitch and I attended the king and queen, in a progress to the south coast of the kingdom. I was carried, as usual, in my travelling-box, which, as I have already described, was a very convenient closet, of twelve feet wide; and I had ordered a hammock to be fixed, by silken ropes, from the four corners at the top, to break the jolts, when a servant carried me before him on horseback, as I sometimes desired; and would often sleep in my hammock, while we were upon the road. On the roof of my closet, not directly over the middle of the hammock, I ordered the joiner to cut out a hole of a foot square, to give me air in hot weather, as I slept; which hole I shut at pleasure, with a board that drew backward and forward through a groove.

When we came to our journey's end, the king thought proper to pass a few days at a palace he has near Flanflasnic, a city within eighteen English miles of the sea-side. Glumdalclitch and I were much fatigued; I had got a small cold, but the poor girl was so ill as to be confined to her chamber. I longed to see the ocean, which must be the only scene of my escape, if ever it should happen. I pretended to be worse than I really was, and desired leave to take the fresh air of the sea, with a page, whom I was very fond of, and who had sometimes been trusted with me. I shall never forget with what unwillingness Glumdalclitch consented, nor the strict charge she gave the page to be careful of me, bursting, at the same time, into a flood of tears, as if she had some foreboding of what was to happen. The boy took me out in my box, about half an hour's walk from the palace, towards the rocks on the sea-shore. I ordered him to set me down, and lifting up one of my sashes, cast many a wistful, melancholy look towards the sea. I found myself not very well, and told the page that I had a mind to take a nap in my hammock, which I hoped would do me good. I got in, and the boy shut the window close down, to keep out the cold. I soon fell asleep, and all I can conjecture is, while I slept, the page, thinking no danger could happen, went among the rocks to look for birds' eggs, having before observed him from my window searching about, and picking up one or two in the clefts. Be that as it will, I found myself suddenly awaked with a violent pull upon the ring, which was fastened at the top of my box, for the convenience of carriage. I felt my box raised very high in the air, and then borne forward with prodigious speed. The first jolt had like to have shaken me out of my hammock, but afterward the motion was easy enough. I called out several times, as loud as I could raise my voice, but all to no purpose. I looked towards my windows, and could see nothing but the clouds and sky. I heard a noise just over my head, like the clapping of wings, and then began to perceive the woful condition I was in—that some eagle had got the ring of my box in his beak, with an intent to let it fall on a rock, like a tortoise in a shell, and then pick out my body, and devour it; for the sagacity and smell of this bird enables him to discover his quarry at a great distance, though better concealed than I could be within a two-inch board.

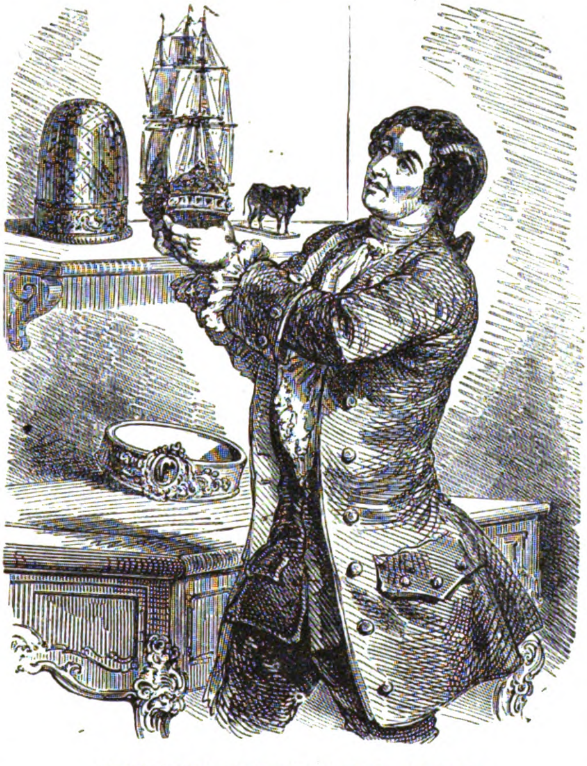

AN EAGLE FLIES AWAY WITH GULLIVER AND HIS HOUSE.

In a little time, I observed the noise and flutter of wings to increase very fast, and my box was tossed up and down, like a sign in a windy day. I heard several bangs or buffets, as I thought, given to the eagle (for such I am certain it must have been that held the ring of my box in his beak), and then, all on a sudden, felt myself falling perpendicularly down, for above a minute, but with such incredible swiftness, that I almost lost my breath. My fall was stopped by a terrible squash, that sounded louder to my ears than the cataract of Niagara; after which, I was quite in the dark for another minute, and then my box began to rise so high, that I could see light from the tops of the windows. I now perceived I was fallen into the sea. My box, by the weight of my body, the goods that were in it, and the broad plates of iron fixed for strength at the four corners of the top and bottom, floated about five feet deep in water. I did then, and do now suppose, that the eagle which flew away with my box was pursued by two or three others, and forced to let me drop, while he defended himself against the rest, who hoped to share in the prey. The plates of iron fastened at the bottom of the box (for those were the strongest) preserved the balance while it fell, and hindered it from being broken on the surface of the water. Every joint of it was well grooved; and the door did not move on hinges, but up and down, like a sash, which kept my closet so tight, that very little water came in. I got, with much difficulty, out of my hammock, having first ventured to draw back the slip-board on the roof, already mentioned, contrived on purpose to let in air, for want of which I found myself almost stifled.

How often did I then wish myself with my dear Glumdalclitch, from whom one single hour had so far divided me! And I may say, with truth, that in the midst of my own misfortunes I could not forbear lamenting my poor nurse, the grief she would suffer from my loss, the displeasure of the queen, and the ruin of her fortune. Perhaps many travellers have not been under greater difficulties and distress than I was at this juncture, expecting every moment to see my box dashed to pieces, or at least overset by the first violent blast or rising wave. A breach in one single pane of glass would have been immediate death; nor could anything have preserved the windows, but the strong lattice-wires placed on the outside against accidents in travelling. I saw the water ooze in at several crannies, although the leaks were not considerable, and I endeavoured to stop them as well as I could. I was not able to lift up the roof of my closet, which otherwise I certainly should have done, and sat on the top of it; where I might at least preserve myself some hours longer than by being shut up (as I may call it) in the hold. Or, if I escaped these dangers for a day or two, what could I expect, but a miserable death of cold and hunger? I was four hours under these circumstances, expecting, and indeed wishing, every moment to be my last.

I have already told the reader that there were two strong staples fixed upon that side of my box which had no window, and into which the servant, who used to carry me on horseback, would put a leathern belt, and buckle it about his waist. Being in this disconsolate state, I heard, or at least thought I heard, some kind of grating noise on that side of my box where the staples were fixed; and soon after, I began to fancy that the box was pulled or towed along the sea; for I now and then felt a sort of tugging, which made the waves rise near the tops of my windows, leaving me almost in the dark. This gave me some faint hopes of relief, although I was not able to imagine how it could be brought about. I ventured to unscrew one of my chairs, which were always fastened to the floor; and having made a hard shift to screw down again, directly under the slipping-board I had lately opened, I mounted on the chair, and putting my mouth as near as I could to the hole, I called for help in a loud voice, and in all the languages I understood. I then fastened my handkerchief to a stick I usually carried, and, thrusting it up the hole, waved it several times in the air, that if any boat or ship were near, the seamen might conjecture some unhappy mortal to be shut up in the box.

I found no effect from all I could do, but plainly perceived my closet to be moved along; and in the space of an hour, or better, that side of the box where the staples were, and had no windows, struck against something that was hard. I apprehended it to be a rock, and found myself tossed more than ever. I plainly heard a noise upon the cover of my closet, like that of a cable, and the grating of it as it passed through the ring. I then found myself hoisted up, by degrees, at least three feet higher than I was before. Whereupon, I again thrust up my stick and handkerchief, calling for help till I was almost hoarse. In return to which, I heard a great shout, repeated three times, giving me such transports of joy, as are not to be conceived but by those who feel them. I now heard a trampling over my head, and somebody calling through the hole with a loud voice, in the English tongue, "If there be anybody below, let them speak." I answered, I was an Englishman, drawn by ill fortune into the greatest calamity that ever any creature underwent; and begged, by all that was moving, to be delivered of the dungeon I was in. The voice replied, I was safe, for my box was fastened to their ship; and the carpenter should immediately come and saw a hole in the cover, large enough to pull me out. I answered, that was needless, and would take up too much time; for there was no more to be done, but let one of the crew put his finger into the ring, and take the box out of the sea into the ship, and so into the captain's cabin. Some of them, upon hearing me talk so wildly, thought I was mad—others laughed; for, indeed, it never came into my head, that I was now got among people of my own stature and strength. The carpenter came, and in a few minutes sawed a passage about four feet square, then let down a small ladder, upon which I mounted, and thence was taken into the ship, in a very weak condition.



GULLIVER PUTS A SHIP AND AN OX ON HIS SHELF.

The sailors were all in amazement, and asked me a thousand questions, which I had no inclination to answer. I was equally confounded at the sight of so many pigmies, for such I took them to be, after having so long accustomed mine eyes to the monstrous objects I had left. But the captain, Mr. Thomas Wilcocks, an honest worthy Shropshire man, observing I was ready to faint, took me into his cabin, gave me a cordial to comfort me, and made me turn in upon his own bed, advising me to take a little rest, of which I had great need. Before I went to sleep, I gave him to understand that I had some valuable furniture in my box, too good to be lost,—a fine hammock, a handsome field-bed, two chairs, a table, and a cabinet; that my closet was hung on all sides, or rather quilted, with silk and cotton; that if he would let one of the crew bring my closet into his cabin, I would open it there before him, and show him my goods. The captain, hearing me utter these absurdities, concluded I was raving; however (I suppose to pacify me), he promised to give order as I desired, and going upon deck, sent some of his men down into my closet, whence (as I afterwards found) they drew up all my goods, and stripped off the quilting; but the chairs, cabinet, and bedstead, being screwed to the floor, were much damaged by the ignorance of the seamen, who tore them up by force. Then they knocked off some of the boards for the use of the ship, and when they had got all they had a mind for, let the hull drop into the sea, which, by reason of many breaches made in the bottom and sides, sunk to rights. And, indeed, I was glad not to have been a spectator of the havoc they made, because I am confident it would have sensibly touched me, by bringing former passages into my mind, which I would rather have forgot.

I slept some hours, but perpetually disturbed with dreams of the place I had left, and the dangers I had escaped. However, upon waking I found myself much recovered. It was now about eight o'clock at night, and the captain ordered supper immediately, thinking I had already fasted too long. He entertained me with great kindness, observing me not to look wildly, or talk inconsistently; and, when we were left alone, desired I would give him a relation of my travels, and by what accident I came to be set adrift, in that monstrous wooden chest. He said, that about twelve o'clock at noon, as he was looking through his glass, he spied it at a distance, and thought it was a sail, which he had a mind to make, being not much out of his course, in hopes of buying some biscuit, his own beginning to fall short. That upon coming nearer, and finding his error, he sent out his long-boat, to discover what it was; that his men came back in a fright, swearing they had seen a swimming house. That he laughed at their folly, and went himself in the boat, ordering his men to take strong cable along with them. That the weather being calm, he rowed round me several times, observed my windows, and wire lattices that defended them. That he discovered two staples upon one side, which was all of boards, without any passage for light. He then commanded his men to row up to that side, and fastening a cable to one of the staples, ordered them to tow my chest, as they called it, toward the ship. When it was there, he gave directions to fasten another cable to the ring fixed in the cover, and raise up my chest with pulleys, which all the sailors were not able to do, above two or three feet. He said, they saw my stick and handkerchief thrust out of the hole, and concluded that some unhappy man must be shut up in the cavity. I asked, whether he or the crew had seen any prodigious birds in the air, about the time he first discovered me? to which he answered, that discoursing this matter with the sailors while I was asleep, one of them said, he had observed three eagles flying towards the north, but remarked nothing of their being larger than the usual size—which I suppose to be imputed to the great height they were at; and he could not guess the reason of my question. I then asked the captain, how far he reckoned we might be from land? He said, by the best computation he could make, we were at least a hundred leagues. I assured him that he must be mistaken by almost half, for I had not left the country whence I came above two hours before I dropped into the sea. Whereupon, he began again to think that my brain was disturbed, of which he gave me a hint, and advised me to go to bed in a cabin he had provided. I assured him I was well refreshed with his good entertainment and company, and as much in my senses as ever I was in my life. He then grew serious, and desired to ask me freely, whether I were not troubled in my mind by the consciousness of some enormous crime, for which I was punished, at the commaud of some prince, by exposing me in that chest, as great criminals, in other countries, have been forced to sea in a leaky vessel, without provisions; for although he should be sorry to have taken so ill a man into his ship, yet he would engage his word to set me safe ashore in the first port where we arrived. He added, that his suspicions were much increased by some very absurd speeches I had delivered, at first to his sailors, and afterwards to himself, in relation to my closet or chest, as well as by my odd looks and behaviour while I was at supper.

I begged his patience to hear me tell my story, which I faithfully did, from the last time I left England to the moment he first discovered me. And as truth always forces its way into rational minds, so this honest worthy gentleman, who had some tincture of learning and very good sense, was immediately convinced of my candour and veracity. But, farther to confirm all I had said, I entreated him to give order that my cabinet should be brought, of which I had the key in my pocket; for he had already informed me how the seamen disposed of my closet. I opened it in his own presence, and showed him the small collection of rarities I made in the country from which I had been so strangely delivered. There was the comb I had contrived out of the stumps of the king's beard, and another of the same materials, but fixed into a paring of her majesty's thumb nail, which served for the back. There was a collection of needles and pins, from a foot to half a yard long; four wasp stings, like a joiner's tacks; some combings of the queen's hair; a gold ring, which one day she made me a present of, in a most obliging manner, taking it from her little finger, and throwing it over my head like a collar. I desired the captain would please to accept this ring in return for his civilities, which he absolutely refused. I showed him a corn that I had cut off, with my own hand, from a maid of honour's toe; it was about the bigness of a Kentish pippin, and grown so hard, that when I returned to England, I got it hollowed into a cup, and set in silver. Lastly, I desired him to see the breeches I had then on, which were made of a mouse's skin.

I could force nothing on him but a footman's tooth, which I observed him to examine with great curiosity, and found he had a fancy for it. He received it with abundance of thanks, more than such a trifle could deserve. It was drawn by an unskilful surgeon, in a mistake, from one of Glumdalclitch's men, who was afflicted with the toothache, but it was as sound as any in his head. I got it cleaned, and put it into my cabinet. It was about a foot long, and four inches in diameter.

The captain was very well satisfied with this plain relation I had given him, and said, he hoped, when we returned to England, I would oblige the world by putting it on paper, and making it public. My answer was, that I thought we were overstocked with books of travels; that nothing could now pass which was not extraordinary; wherein, I doubted, some authors less consulted truth than their own vanity or interest, or the diversion of ignorant readers; that my story could contain little beside common events, without those ornamental descriptions of strange plants, trees, birds, and other animals, or of the barbarous customs and idolatry of savage people, with which most writers abound. However, I thanked him for his good opinion, and promised to take the matter into my thoughts.

He said, he wondered at one thing very much, which was, to hear me speak so loud; asking me whether the king or queen of that country were thick of hearing? I told him, it was what I had been used to for above two years past, and that I wondered as much at the voices of him and his men, who seemed to me only to whisper, and yet I could hear them well enough. But, when I spoke in that country, it was like a man talking in the streets, to another looking out from the top of a steeple, unless when I was placed on a table, or held in any person's hand. I told him, I had likewise observed another thing, that when I first got into the ship, and the sailors stood all about me, I thought they were the most contemptible little creatures I had ever beheld. For, indeed, while I was in that prince's country, I could never endure to look in a glass after mine eyes had been accustomed to such prodigious objects, because the comparison gave me so despicable a conceit of myself. The captain said, that while we were at supper, he observed me to look at everything with a sort of wonder, and that I often seemed hardly able to contain my laughter, which he knew not well how to take, but imputed it to some disorder in my brain. I answered, it was very true; and I wondered how I could forbear, when I saw his dishes of the size of a silver threepence, a leg of pork hardly a mouthful, a cup not so big as a nutshell; and so I went on, describing the rest of his household stuff and provisions, after the same manner. For, although the queen had ordered a little equipage of all things necessary for me, while I was in her service, yet my ideas were wholly taken up with what I saw on every side of me, and I winked at my own littleness, as people do at their own faults. The captain understood my raillery very well, and merrily replied with the old English proverb, that he doubted mine eyes were bigger than my belly, for he did not observe my stomach so good, although I had fasted all day; and, continuing in his mirth, protested he would have gladly given a hundred pounds to have seen my chest in the eagle's bill, and afterwards in its fall from so great a height into the sea; which would certainly have been a most astonishing object, worthy to have the description of it transmitted to future ages; and the comparison of Phaëton was so obvious, that he could not forbear applying it, although I did not much admire the conceit.

The captain, having been at Tonquin, was, in his return to England, driven north-eastward to the latitude of 44 degrees, and longitute of 143. But meeting a trade-wind two days after I came on board him, we sailed southward a long time, and coasting New Holland, kept our course west-south-west, and then south-south-west, till we doubled the Cape of Good Hope. Our voyage was very prosperous, but I shall not trouble the reader with a journal of it. The captain called in at one or two ports, and sent in his long-boat for provisions and fresh water; but I never went out of the ship till we came into the Downs, which was on the third day of June, 1706, about nine months after my escape. I offered to leave my goods in security for payment of my freight; but the captain protested he would not receive one farthing. We took a kind leave of each other, and I made him promise he would come to see me at my house in Redriff. I hired a horse and guide for five shillings, which I borrowed of the captain.

As I was on the road, observing the littleness of the houses, the trees, the cattle, and the people, I began to think myself in Lilliput. I was afraid of trampling on every traveller I met, and often called aloud to have them stand out of the way, so that I had liked to have got one or two broken heads for my impertinence.

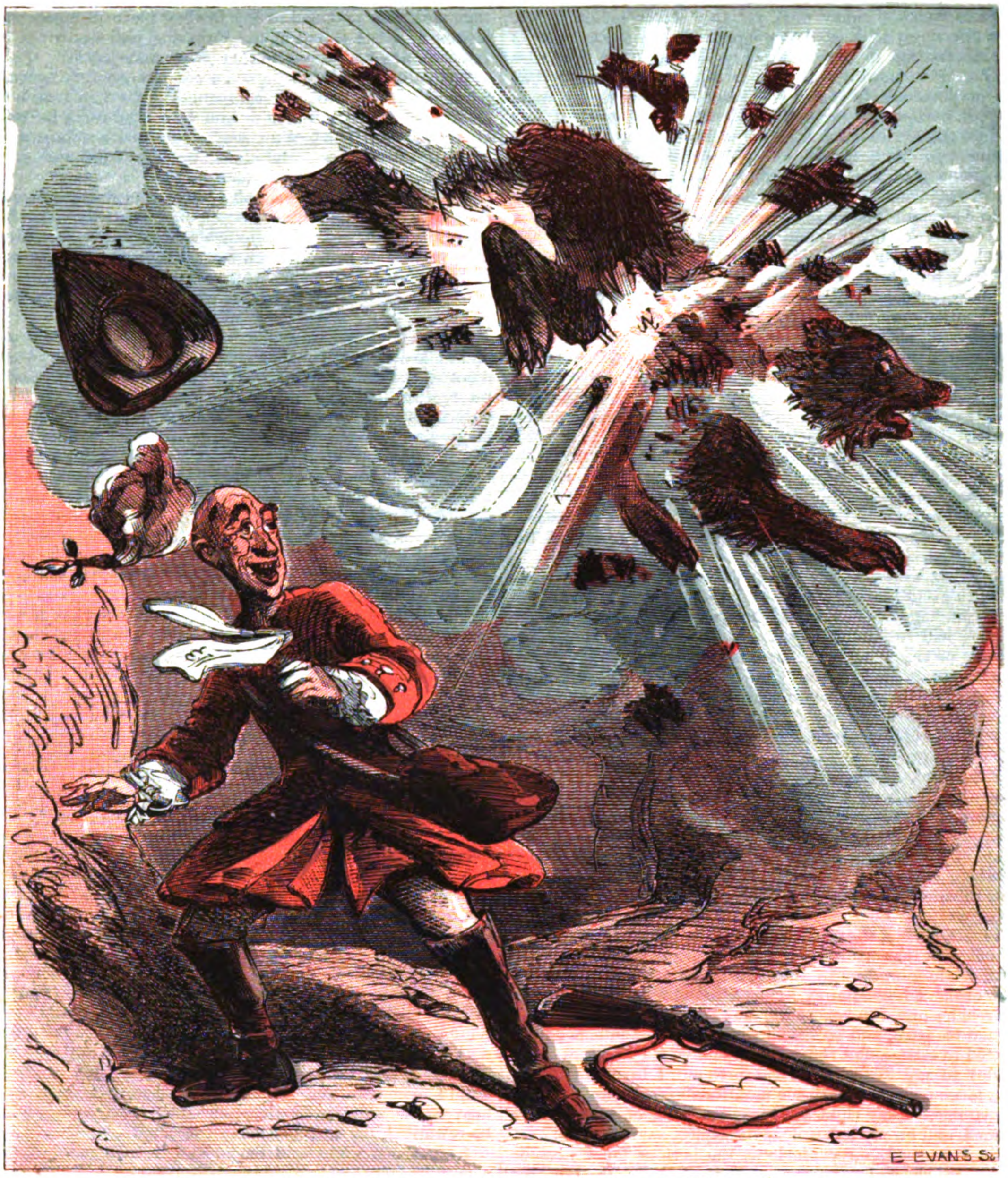
When I came to my own house, for which I was forced to inquire, one of the servants opening the door, I bent down to go in (like a goose under a gate), for fear of striking my head. My wife ran out to embrace me, but I stooped lower than her knees, thinking she could otherwise never be able to reach my mouth. My daughter kneeled to ask my blessing, but I could not see her till she arose, having been so long used to stand with my head and eyes erect to above sixty feet; and then I went to take her up with one hand by the waist. I looked down upon the servants, and one or two friends that were in the house, as if they had been pigmies, and I a giant. I told my wife she had been too thrifty, for I found she had starved herself and her daughter to nothing. In short, I behaved myself so unaccountably, that they were all of the captain's opinion when he first saw me, and concluded I had lost my wits. This I mention as an instance of the great power of habit and prejudice.

In a little time, I and my family and friends came to a right understanding; but my wife protested I should never go to sea any more.

THE END.

Edmund Evans, Engraver and Printer, Raquet Court, Fleet Street.

THE TRAVELS OF
BARON MUNCHAUSEN.



BARON MUNCHAUSEN SHOOTS A BEAR, VERY MUCH TO HIS OWN AND THE BEAR'S ASTONISHMENT.

CHAPTER I.

[THE BARON IS SUPPOSED TO RELATE THESE ADVENTURES TO HIS FRIENDS, OVER A BOTTLE.]

The Baron relates an account of his first travels—The astonishing effect of a storm—Arrives at Ceylon; combats and conquers two extraordinary opponents—Returns to Holland.

Some years before my beard announced approaching manhood, or, in other words, when I was neither man nor boy, but between both, I expressed in repeated conversations a strong desire of seeing the world; from which I was discouraged by my parents, though my father had been no inconsiderable traveller himself, as will appear before I have reached the end of my singular, and, I may add, interesting adventures. A cousin, by my mother's side, took a liking to me, often said I was a fine forward youth, and was much inclined to gratify my curiosity. His eloquence had more effect than mine, for my father consented to my accompanying him in a voyage to the island of Ceylon, where his uncle had resided as governor many years.

We sailed from Amsterdam with despatches from their High Mightinesses the States of Holland. The only circumstance which happened on our voyage worth relating, was the wonderful effects of a storm, which had torn up by the roots a great number of trees of enormous bulk and height, in an island where we lay at anchor to take in wood and water; some of these trees weighed many tons, yet they were carried by the wind so amazingly high, that they appeared like the feathers of small birds floating in the air, for they were at least five miles above the earth; however, as soon as the storm subsided, they all fell perpendicularly into their respective places, and took root again, except the largest, which happened, when it was blown into the air, to have a man and his wife, a very honest old couple, upon its branches, gathering cucumbers (in this part of the globe that useful vegetable grows upon trees). The weight of this couple, as the tree descended, overbalanced the trunk, and brought it down in an horizontal position; it fell upon the chief man of the island, and killed him on the spot; he had quitted his house in the storm, under an apprehension of its falling upon him, and was returning through his own garden when this fortunate accident happened.—The word fortunate, here, requires some explanation.—This chief was a man of a very avaricious and oppressive disposition, and though he had no family, the natives of the island were half-starved by his oppressive and infamous impositions. The very goods which he had thus taken from them were spoiling in his stores, while the poor wretches from whom they were plundered were pining in poverty. Though the destruction of this tyrant was accidental, the people chose the cucumber-gatherers for their governors, as a mark of their gratitude for destroying, though accidentally, their late tyrant.

After we had repaired the damages we sustained in this remarkable storm, and taken leave of the new governor and his lady, we sailed with a fair wind for the object of our voyage.

In about six weeks we arrived at Ceylon, where we were received with great marks of friendship and true politeness. The following singular adventure may not prove unentertaining.

After we had resided at Ceylon about a fortnight, I accompanied one of the governor's brothers upon a shooting party. He was a strong, athletic man, and being used to that climate (for he had resided there some years), he bore the violent heat of the sun much better than I could; in our excursion he had made a considerable progress through a thick wood, when I was only at the entrance.

Near the banks of a large piece of water, which had engaged my attention, I thought I heard a rustling noise behind; on turning about, I was almost petrified (as who would not?) at the sight of a lion, which was evidently approaching with the intention of satisfying his appetite with my poor carcase, and that without asking my consent. What was to be done in this horrible dilemma? I had not even a moment for reflection; my piece was only charged with swan-shot, and I had no other about me; however, though I could have no idea of killing such an animal with that weak kind of ammunition, yet I had some hopes of frightening him by the report, and perhaps of wounding him also. I immediately let fly, without waiting till he was within reach; and the report did but enrage him, for he now quickened his pace, and seemed to approach me full speed. I attempted to escape, but that only added (if an addition could be made) to my distress; for the moment I turned about, I found a large crocodile, with his mouth extended, almost ready to receive me; on my right hand was the piece of water before mentioned, and on my left a deep precipice, said to have, as I have since learned, a receptacle at the bottom for venomous creatures; in short, I gave myself up as lost, for the lion was now upon his hind-legs, just in the act of seizing me; I fell involuntarily to the ground with fear, and as it afterwards appeared, he sprang over me. I lay some time in a situation which no language can describe, expecting to feel his teeth or talons in some part of me every moment. After waiting in this prostrate situation a few seconds, I heard a violent but unusual noise, different from any sound that had ever before assailed my ears; nor is it at all to be wondered at, when I inform you from whence it proceeded. After listening for some time, I ventured to raise my head and look round, when, to my unspeakable joy, I perceived the lion had, by the eagerness with which he sprung at me, jumped forward as I fell, into the crocodile's mouth! which, as before observed, was wide open; the head of the one stuck in the throat of the other! and they were struggling to extricate themselves! I fortunately recollected my *couteau de chasse* which was by my side; with this instrument I severed the lion's head at one blow, and the body fell at my feet! I then with the butt-end of my fowling-piece rammed the head farther into the throat of the crocodile, and destroyed him by suffocation, for he could neither gorge nor eject it.

Soon after I had thus gained a complete victory over my two powerful adversaries, my companion arrived in search of me; for finding I did not follow him into the wood, he returned, apprehending I had lost my way, or met with some accident.

After mutual congratulations, we measured the crocodile, which was just forty feet in length.

As soon as we had related this extraordinary adventure to the governor, he sent a wagon and servants, who brought home the two carcases. The lion's skin was properly preserved with its hair on; after which it was made into tobacco-pouches, and presented by me, upon our return to Holland, to the burgomasters, who, in return, requested my acceptance of a thousand ducats.

The skin of the crocodile was stuffed in the usual manner, and makes a capital article in their public museum at Amsterdam, where the exhibitor relates the whole story to each spectator, with such additions as he thinks proper. Some of his variations are rather extravagant; one of them is, that the lion jumped quite through the crocodile, and was making his escape at the back-door, when, as soon as his head appeared, Monsieur the Great Baron (as he is pleased to call me) cut it off, and three feet of the crocodile's tail along with it; nay, so little attention has this fellow to the truth, that he sometimes adds, as soon as the crocodile missed his tail, he turned about, snatched the *couteau de chasse* out of Monsieur's hand, and swallowed it with such eagerness, that it pierced his heart and killed him immediately!

The little regard which this impudent knave has to veracity, makes me sometimes apprehensive that my *real facts* may fall under suspicion, by being found in company with his confounded inventions.

CHAPTER II.

In which the Baron proves himself a good shot—He loses his horse, and finds a wolf—Makes him draw his sledge—Promises to entertain his company with a relation of such facts as are well deserving their notice.

I SET off from Rome on a journey to Russia, in the midst of winter, from a just notion that frost and snow must of course mend the roads, which every traveller had described as uncommonly bad through the northern parts of Germany, Poland, Courland, and Livonia. I went on horseback, as the most convenient manner of travelling; I was but lightly clothed, and of this I felt the inconvenience the more I advanced north-east.—What must not a poor old man have suffered in that severe weather and climate, whom I saw on a bleak common in Poland, lying on the road, helpless, shivering, and hardly having wherewithal to cover his nakedness! I pitied the poor soul!—Though I felt the severity of the air myself, I threw my mantle over him, and immediately I heard a voice from the heavens, blessing me for that piece of charity, saying, "You will be rewarded, my son, for this in time."

I went on; night and darkness overtook me. No village was to be seen. The country was covered with snow, and I was unacquainted with the road.

Tired, I alighted, and fastened my horse to something, like a pointed stump of a tree, which appeared above the snow; for the sake of safety, I placed my pistols under my arm, and laid down on the snow, where I slept so soundly that I did not open my eyes till full daylight. It is not easy to conceive my astonishment, to find myself in the midst of a village, lying in a churchyard; nor was my horse to be seen, but I heard him soon after neigh somewhere above me. On looking upwards, I beheld him hanging by his bridle to the weather-cock of the steeple. Matters were now very plain to me: the village had been covered with snow overnight; a sudden change of weather had taken place; I had sunk down to the churchyard whilst asleep, gently, and in the same proportion as the snow had melted away; and what in the dark I had taken to be a stump of a little tree appearing above the snow, to which I had tied my horse, proved to have been the cross or weather-cock of the steeple!

Without long consideration, I took one of my pistols, shot the bridle in two, brought down the horse, and proceeded on my journey. [Here the Baron seems to have forgot his feelings; he should certainly have ordered his horse a feed of corn, after fasting so long.]

He carried me well: advancing into the interior parts of Russia, I found travelling on horseback rather unfashionable in winter; therefore I submitted, as I always do, to the custom of the country, took a single horse sledge, and drove briskly towards St. Petersburgh. I do not exactly recollect whether it was in Eastland or Jugemanland, but I remember that, in the midst of a dreary forest, I spied a terrible wolf making after me, with all the speed of ravenous winter hunger. He soon overtook me. There was no possibility of escape. Mechanically I laid myself down flat in the sledge, and let my horse run for our safety. What I wished, but hardly hoped or expected, happened immediatly after. The wolf did not mind me in the least, but took a leap over me, and falling furiously on the horse, began instantly to tear and devour the hind-part of the poor animal, which ran the faster for his pain and terror. Thus unnoticed and safe myself, I lifted my head slyly up, and with horror I beheld that the wolf had ate his way into the horse's body; it was not long before he had fairly forced himself into it, when I took my advantage, and fell upon him with the butt-end of my whip. This unexpected attack in his rear frightened him so much, that he leaped forward with all his might; the horse's carcase dropped on the ground, but in his place the wolf was in the harness; and I on my part whipping him continually, we both arrived in full career safe to St. Petersburgh, contrary to our respective expectations, and very much to the astonishment of the spectators.

I shall not tire you, gentlemen, with the politics, arts, sciences, and history of this magnificent metropolis of Russia; nor trouble you with the various intrigues and pleasant adventures I had in the politer circles of that country, where the lady of the house always receives the visitor with a dram and a salute. I shall confine myself rather to the greater and nobler objects of your attention, horses and dogs, my favourites in the brute creation; also to foxes, wolves, and bears, with which, and game in general, Russia abounds more than any other part of the world; and to such sports, manly exercises, and feats of gallantry and activity, as show the gentleman better than musty Greek and Latin, or all the perfume, finery, and capers of French wits or *petit-maîtres*.

CHAPTER III.

An encounter between the Baron's nose and a door-post, with its wonderful effects—Fifty brace of ducks and other fowl destroyed by one shot—Flogs a fox out of his skin—Leads an old sow home in a new way, and vanquishes a wild boar.

It was some time before I could obtain a commission in the army, and for several months I was perfectly at liberty to sport away my time and money in the most gentleman-like manner. You may easily imagine that I spent much of both out of town, with such gallant fellows as knew how to make the most of an open forest country. The very recollection of those amusements gives me fresh spirits, and creates a warm wish for a repetition of them. One morning I saw through the windows of my bedroom, that a large pond, not far off, was covered with wild ducks. In an instant I took my gun from the corner, ran down-stairs and out of the house in such a hurry, that I imprudently struck my face against the door-post. Fire flew out of my eyes, but it did not prevent my intention; I soon came within shot, when, levelling my piece, I observed, to my sorrow, that even the flint had sprung from the cock, by the violence of the shock I had just received. There was no time to be lost. I presently remembered the effect it had on my eyes, therefore opened the pan, levelled my piece against the wild fowls, and my fist against one of my eyes. [The Baron's eyes have retained fire ever since, and appear particularly illuminated when he relates this anecdote.] A hearty blow drew sparks again; the shot went off, and I killed fifty brace of ducks, twenty widgeons, and three couple of teals. Presence of mind is the soul of manly exercises. If soldiers and sailors owe to it many of their lucky escapes, huntsmen and sportsmen are not less beholden to it for many of their successes. In a noble forest in Russia, I met a fine black fox, whose valuable skin it would have been a pity to tear by ball or shot. Reynard stood close to a tree. In a twinkling I took out my ball, and placed a good spike-nail in its room, fired, and hit him so cleverly that I nailed his brush fast to the tree. I now went up to him, took out my hanger, gave him a cross cut over the face, laid hold of my whip, and fairly flogged him out of his fine skin.

Chance and good luck often correct our mistakes; of this I had a singular instance soon after, when, in the depth of a forest, I saw a wild pig and sow running close behind each other. My ball had missed them, yet the foremost pig only ran away, and the sow stood motionless, as fixed to the ground. On examining into the matter, I found the latter one to be an old sow, blind with age, which had taken hold of her pig's tail, in order to be led along by filial duty. My ball having passed between the two, had cut his leading-string, which the old sow continued to hold in her mouth, and as her former guide did not draw her on any longer, she had stopped of course; I therefore laid hold of the remaining end of the pig's tail, and led the old beast home without any farther trouble on my part, and without any reluctance or apprehension on the part of the helpless old animal.

Terrible as these wild sows are, yet more fierce and dangerous are the boars, one of which I had once the misfortune to meet in a forest, unprepared for attack or defence. I retired behind an oak-tree, just when the furious animal levelled a side-blow at me, with such force that his tusks pierced through the tree, by which means he could neither repeat the blow nor retire.—Ho, ho! thought I, I shall soon have you now!—and immediately I laid hold of a stone, wherewith I hammered and bent his tusks in such a manner, that he could not retreat by any means, and must wait my return from the next village, whither I went for ropes and a cart, to secure him properly, and to carry him off safe and alive, in which I perfectly succeeded.

CHAPTER IV.

Reflections on Saint Hubert's stag—Shoots a stag with cherry-stones; the wonderful effects of it—Kills a bear by extraordinary dexterity; his danger pathetically described—Attacked by a wolf, which he turns inside out—Is assailed by a mad dog, from which he escapes—The Baron's cloak seized with madness, by which his whole wardrobe is thrown into confusion.

You have heard, I dare say, of the hunter's and sportsman's saint and protector, St. Hubert; and of the noble stag, which appeared to him in the forest, with the holy cross between his antlers. I have paid my homage to that saint every year in good fellowship, and seen this stag a thousand times, either painted in churches, or embroidered in the stars of his knights; so that, upon the honour and conscience of a good sportsman, I hardly know whether there may not have been formerly, or whether there are not such crossed stags even at this present day. But let me rather tell what I have seen myself. Having one day spent all my shot, I found myself unexpectedly in presence of a stately stag, looking at me as unconcernedly as if he had known of my empty pouches. I charged immediately with powder, and upon it a good handful of cherry-stones, for I had sucked the fruit as far as the hurry would permit. Thus I let fly at him, and hit him just on the middle of the forehead, between his antlers; it stunned him—he staggered—yet he made off. A year or two after, being with a party in the same forest, I beheld a noble stag with a fine full-grown cherry-tree above ten feet high between his antlers. I immedately recollected my former adventure, looked upon him as my property, and brought him to the ground by one shot, which at once gave me the haunch and cherry-sauce; for the tree was covered with the richest fruit, the like I had never tasted before. Who knows but some passionate holy sportsman, or sporting abbot, or bishop, may have shot, planted, and fixed the cross between the antlers of St. Hubert's stag, in a manner similar to this? They always have been, and still are, famous for plantations of crosses and antlers; and in case of distress or dilemma, which too often happens to keen sportsmen, one is apt to grasp at anything for safety, and to try an expedient, rather than miss the favourable opportunity. I have many times found myself in that trying situation.

What do you say of this, for example? Daylight and powder were spent one day in a Polish forest. When I was going home, a terrible bear made up to me in great speed, with open mouth ready to fall upon me; all my pockets were searched in an instant for powder and ball, but in vain—I found nothing but two spare flints; one I flung with all my might into the monster's open jaws, down his throat. It gave him pain and made him turn about, so that I could level the second at his back-door, which, indeed, I did with wonderful success; for it flew in, met the first flint in the stomach, struck fire, and blew up the bear with a terrible explosion. Though I came safe off that time, yet I should not wish to try it again, or venture against bears with no other ammunition.

There is a kind of fatality in it. The fiercest and most dangerous animals generally came upon me when defenceless, as if they had a notion or an instinctive intimation of it. Thus, a frightful wolf rushed upon me so suddenly, and so close, that I could do nothing but follow mechanical instinct, and thrust my fist into his open mouth. For safety's sake I pushed on and on, till my arm was fairly in up to the shoulder. How should I disengage myself? I was not much pleased with my awkward situation, with a wolf face to face—our ogling was not of the most pleasant kind. If I withdrew my arm, then the animal would fly the more furiously upon me; that I saw in his flaming eyes. In short, I laid hold of his tail, turned him inside out like a glove, and flung him to the ground, where I left him.

The same expedient would not have answered against a mad dog, which soon after came running against me in a narrow street at St. Petersburgh. Run who can, I thought; and to do this the better, I threw off my fur cloak, and was safe within doors in an instant. I sent my servant for the cloak, and he put it in the wardrobe with my other clothes. The day after, I was amazed and frightened by Jack's bawling, "For God's sake, sir, your fur cloak is mad!" I hastened up to him, and found almost all my clothes tossed about and torn to pieces. The fellow was perfectly right in his apprehensions about the fur cloak's madness. I saw him myself just then falling upon a fine full-dress suit, which he shook and tossed in an unmerciful manner.

CHAPTER V.

The effects of great activity and presence of mind—A favourite hound described, which pups while pursuing a hare; the hare also litters while pursued by the hound—Presented with a famous horse by Count Przobossky, with which he performs many extraordinary feats.

ALL these narrow and lucky escapes, gentlemen, were chances turned to advantage by presence of mind and vigorous exertions, which taken together, as everybody knows, make the fortunate sportsman, sailor, and soldier; but he would be a very blameable and imprudent sportsman, admiral, or general, who would always depend upon chance and his stars, without troubling himself about those arts which are their particular pursuits, and without providing the very best implements, which insure success. I was not blameable either way; for I have always been as remarkable for the excellency of my horses, dogs, guns, and swords, as for the proper manner of using and managing them; so that, upon the whole, I may hope to be remembered in the forest, upon the turf, and in the field. I shall not enter here into any detail of my stables, kennel, or armoury; but a favourite bitch of mine I cannot help mentioning to you—she was a greyhound, and I never had or saw a better. She grew old in my service, and was not remarkable for her size, but rather for her uncommon swiftness. I always coursed with her. Had you seen her you must have admired her, and would not have wondered at my predilection, and at my coursing her so much. She ran so fast, so much, and so long in my service, that she actually ran off her legs; so that, in the latter part of her life I was under the necessity of working and using her only as a terrier, in which quality she still served me many years.

Coursing one day a hare, which appeared to me uncommonly big, I pitied my poor bitch, being big with pups, yet she would course as fast as ever. I could follow her on horseback only at a great distance. At once I heard a cry as it were of a pack of hounds, but so weak and faint that I hardly knew what to make of it. Coming up to them, I was greatly surprised. The hare had littered in running; the same had happened to my bitch in coursing—and there were just as many leverets as pups. By instinct the former ran, the latter coursed: and thus I found myself in possession at once of six hares, and as many dogs, at the end of a course which had only begun with one.

I remember this, my wonderful bitch, with the same pleasure and tenderness as a superb Lithuanian horse, which no money could have bought. He became mine by an accident, which gave me an opportunity of showing my horsemanship to a great advantage. I was at Count Przobossky's noble country-seat in Lithuania, and remained with the ladies at tea in the drawing-room, while the gentlemen were down in the yard, to see a young horse of blood, which had just arrived from the stud. We suddenly heard a noise of distress—I hastened down stairs, and found the horse so unruly, that nobody durst approach or mount him. The most resolute horseman stood amazed and aghast—despondency was expressed in every countenance; when, in one leap, I was on his back, took him by surprise, and worked him quite into gentleness and obedience, with the best display of horsemanship I was master of. Fully to show this to the ladies, and save them unnecessary trouble, I forced him to leap in at one of the open windows of the tea-room, walked round several times, pace, trot, and gallop; and at last made him mount the tea-table, there to repeat his lessons in a pretty style of miniature, which was exceedingly pleasing to the ladies, for he performed them amazingly well, and did not break either cup or saucer. It placed me so high in their opinion, and so well in that of the noble lord, that with his usual politeness he begged I would accept of this young horse, and ride him full career to conquest and honour, in the campaign against the Turks, which was soon to be opened, under the command of Count Munich.

I could not indeed have received a more agreeable present, nor a more ominous one at the opening of that campaign, in which I made my apprenticeship as a soldier. A horse so gentle, so spirited, and so fierce—at once a lamb and a Bucephalus, put me always in mind of the soldier's and the gentleman's duty—of young Alexander, and of the astonishing things he performed in the field.

We took the field, among several other reasons, it seems, with an intention to retrieve the character of the Russian arms, which had been blemished a little by Czar Peter's last campaign on the Pruth; and this we fully accomplished by several very fatiguing and glorious campaigns under the command of that great general I mentioned before.

Modesty forbids individuals to arrogate to themselves great successes or victories, the glory of which is generally engrossed by the commander, nay—which is rather awkward—by kings and queens, who never smelt gunpowder but at the field-days and reviews of their troops; never saw a field of battle, or an enemy in battle array.

Nor do I claim any particular share of glory in the great engagements with the enemy. We all did our duty, which, in the patriot's, soldier's and gentleman's language, is a very comprehensive word, of great honour, meaning, and import, and of which the generality of idle quidnuncs and coffee-house politicians, can hardly form any but a very mean and contemptible idea. However, having had the command of a body of hussars, I went upon several expeditions, with discretionary powers; and the success I then met with, is, I think, fairly, and only to be placed to my account, and to that of the brave fellows whom I led on to conquest and to victory. We had very hot work once in the van of the army, when we drove the Turks into Oczakow. My spirited Lithuanian had almost brought me into a scrape: I had an advance fore-post, and saw the enemy coming against me in a cloud of dust, which left me rather uncertain about their actual numbers and real intentions: to wrap myself up in a similar cloud was common prudence, but would not have much advanced my knowledge, or answered the end for which I had been sent out; therefore I let my flankers on both wings spread to the right and left, and make what dust they could, and I myself led on straight upon the enemy, to have a nearer sight of them: in this I was gratified, for they stood and fought, till, for fear of my flankers, they began to move off rather disorderly. This was the moment to fall upon them with spirit; we broke them entirely—made a terrible havoc amongst them, and drove them not only back to a walled town in their rear, but even through it, contrary to our most sanguine expectation.

The swiftness of my Lithuanian enabled me to be foremost in the pursuit; and seeing the enemy fairly flying through the opposite gate, I thought it would be prudent to stop in the market-place, to order the men to rendezvous. I stopped, gentlemen; but judge of my astonishment, when in this market-place I saw not one of my hussars about me! Are they scouring the other streets? or what has become of them? They could not be far off, and must, at all events, soon join me. In that expectation I walked my panting Lithuanian to a spring in this market-place, and let him drink. He drank uncommonly —with an eagerness not to be satisfied, but natural enough; for when I looked round for my men, what should I see, gentlemen? the hind part of the poor creature, croup and legs were missing, as if he had been cut in two, and the water ran out as it came in, without refreshing or doing him any good! How it could have happened, was quite a mystery to me, till I returned with him to the town-gate. There I saw, that when I rushed in pell-mell with the flying enemy, they had dropped the portcullis (a heavy falling door, with sharp spikes at the bottom, let down suddenly, to prevent the entrance of an enemy into a fortified town,) unperceived by me, which had totally cut off his hind part, that still lay quivering on the outside of the gate. It would have been an irreparable loss, had not our farrier contrived to bring both parts together while hot. He sewed them up with sprigs and young shoots of laurels that were at hand—the wound healed; and, what could not have happened but to so glorious a horse, the sprigs took root in his body, grew up, and formed a bower over me; so that afterwards I could go upon many other expeditions in the shade of my own and my horse's laurels.

CHAPTER VI.

The Baron is made a prisoner of war, and sold for a slave—Keeps the Sultan's bees, which are attacked by two bears—Loss of one of his bees; a silver hatchet, which he throws at the bears, rebounds and flies up to the moon; brings it back by an ingenious invention; falls to the earth on his return, and helps himself out of a pit—Extricates himself from a carriage which meets his in a narrow road, in a manner never before attempted, nor practised since—The wonderful effects of the frost upon his servant's French horn.

I WAS not always successful. I had the misfortune to be overpowered by numbers, to be made prisoner of war; and, what is worse, but always usual among the Turks, to be sold for a slave. [The Baron was afterwards in great favour with the Grand Signior, as will appear hereafter.] In that state of humiliation, my daily task was not very hard and laborious, but rather singular and irksome. It was, to drive the Sultan's bees every morning to their pasture-grounds, to attend them all the day long, and against night to drive them back to their hives. One evening I missed a bee, and soon observed that two bears had fallen upon her, to tear her to pieces for the honey she carried. I had nothing like an offensive weapon in my hands but the silver hatchet, which is the badge of the Sultan's gardeners and farmers. I threw it at the robbers, with an intention to frighten them away, and set the poor bee at liberty; but, by an unlucky turn of my arm, it flew upwards, and continued rising till it reached the moon. How should I recover it? how fetch it down again? I recollected that Turkey-beans grow very quick, and run up to an astonishing height. I planted one immediately; it grew, and actually fastened itself to one of the moon's horns. I had no more to do now but to climb up by it into the moon, where I safely arrived, and had a troublesome piece of business before I could find my silver hatchet, in a place where everything has the brightness of silver; at last, however, I found it in a heap of chaff and chopped straw. I was now for returning: but, alas! the heat of the sun had dried up my bean; it was totally useless for my descent: so I fell to work, and twisted me a rope of that chopped straw, as long and as well as I could make it. This I fastened to one of the moon's horns, and slid down to the end of it. Here I held myself fast with the left hand; and, with the hatchet in my right, I cut the long, now useless end of the upper part, which, when tied to the lower end, brought me a good deal lower: this repeated splicing and tying of the rope did not improve its quality, or bring me down to the Sultan's farms. I was four or five miles from the earth, at least, when it broke; I fell to the ground with such amazing violence, that I found myself stunned, and in a hole nine fathoms deep at least, made by the weight of my body falling from so great a height: I recovered, but knew not how to get out again; however, I dug slopes or steps with my finger nails (the Baron's nails were then of forty years' growth), and easily accomplished it.

Peace was soon after concluded with the Turks; and gaining my liberty, I left St. Petersburgh at the time of that singular revolution, when the emperor in his cradle, his mother, the Duke of Brunswick, her father, Field-Marshal Munich, and many others, were sent to Siberia. The winter was then so uncommonly severe all over Europe, that ever since the sun seems to be frost-bitten. At my return to this place, I felt on the road greater inconveniences than those I had experienced on my setting out.

I travelled post, and finding myself in a narrow lane, bid the postilion give a signal with his horn, that other travellers might not meet us in the narrow passage. He blew with all his might, but his endeavours were in vain, he could not make the horn sound; which was unaccountable and rather unfortunate, for soon after we found ourselves in the presence of another coach coming the other way: there was no proceeding; however, I got out of my carriage, and being pretty strong, placed it, wheels and all, upon my head: I then jumped over a hedge about nine feet high (which, considering the weight of the coach, was rather difficult) into a field, and came out again by another jump into the road beyond the other carriage: I then went back for the horses, and placing one upon my head, and the other under my left arm, by the same means brought them to my coach, put to, and proceeded to an inn at the end of our stage. I should have told you, that the horse under my arm was very spirited, and not above four years old; in making my second spring over the hedge, he expressed great dislike to that violent kind of motion, by kicking and snorting; however, I confined his hind-legs, by putting them into my coat pocket. After we arrived at the inn, my postilion and I refreshed ourselves: he hung his horn on a peg near the kitchen fire; I sat on the other side.

Suddenly we heard a cry of *Tereng! tereng! teng! teng!* We looked round, and now found the reason why the postilion had not been able to sound his horn; his tunes were frozen up in the horn, and came out now by thawing, plain enough, and much to the credit of the driver; so that the honest fellow entertained us for some time with a variety of tunes, without putting his mouth to the horn—the King of Prussia's March—Over the Hill and over the Dale—with many other favourite tunes: at length the thawing entertainment concluded, as I shall this short account of my Russian travels.

Some travellers are apt to advance more than is perhaps strictly true: if any of the company entertain a doubt of my veracity, I shall only say to such, I pity their want of faith, and must request they will take leave before I begin the second part of my adventures, which are as strictly founded in fact as those I have already related.

PART II.

CHAPTER VII.

The Baron relates his adventures on a voyage to North America, which are well worth the reader's attention—Pranks of a whale—A sea-gull saves a sailor's life—The Baron's head forced into his stomach—A dangerous leak stopped à posteriori.

I EMBARKED at Portsmouth in a first-rate English man-of-war, of one hundred guns and fourteen hundred men, for North America. Nothing worth relating happened till we arrived within three hundred leagues of the river St. Laurence, when the ship struck with amazing force against (as we supposed) a rock; however, upon heaving the lead, we could find no bottom, even with three hundred fathom. What made this circumstance the more valuable, and indeed beyond all comprehension, was, that the violence of the shock was such that we lost our rudder, broke our bowsprit in the middle, and split all our masts from top to bottom, two of which went by the board; a poor fellow, who was aloft, furling the main-sheet, was flung at least three leagues from the ship; but he fortunately saved his life, by laying hold of the tail of a large sea-gull, who brought him back and lodged him on the very spot from whence he was thrown. Another proof of the violence of the shock was the force with which the people between decks were driven against the floors above them; my head, particularly, was pressed into my stomach, where it continued some months before it recovered its natural situation. Whilst we were all in a state of astonishment at the general and unaccountable confusion in which we were involved, the whole was suddenly explained, by the appearance of a large whale, who had been basking asleep within sixteen feet of the surface of the water. This animal was so much displeased with the disturbance which our ship had given him—for in our passage we had with our rudder scratched his nose—that he beat in all the gallery and part of the quarter-deck with his tail, and almost at the same instant took the main-sheet anchor, which was suspended, as it usually is, from the head, between his teeth, and ran away with the ship, at least sixty leagues, at the rate of twelve leagues an hour, when fortunately the cable broke, and we lost both the whale and the anchor. However, upon our return to Europe some months after, we found the same whale within a few leagues of the same spot, floating dead upon the water; it measured above half a mile in length. As we could take but a small quantity of such a monstrous animal on board, we got our boats out, and with much difficulty cut off his head, where, to our great joy, we found the anchor, and above forty fathom of the cable, concealed on the left side of his mouth, just under his tongue. [Perhaps this was the cause of his death, as that side of his tongue was much swelled, with a great degree of inflammation.] This was the only extraordinary circumstance that happened on this voyage. One part of our distress, however, I had like to have forgot: while the whale was running away with the ship, she sprung a leak, and the water poured in so fast, that all our pumps could not keep us from sinking; it was, however, my good fortune to discover it first. I found it a large hole, about a foot diameter; you will naturally suppose this circumstance gives me infinite pleasure, when I inform you, that this noble vessel was preserved, with all its crew, by a most fortunate thought! in short, I sate down over it, and could have dispensed with it had it been larger; nor will you be surprised, when I inform you I am descended from Dutch parents. [The Baron's ancestors have but lately settled there; in another part of his adventures he boasts of royal blood.]

My situation, while I sat there, was rather cool, but the carpenter's art soon relieved me.

CHAPTER VIII.

Bathes in the Mediterranean—Meets an unexpected companion—Arrives unintentionally in the regions of heat and darkness, from which he is extricated by dancing a hornpipe—Frightens his deliverers, and returns on shore.

I WAS once in great danger of being lost in a most singular manner in the Mediterranean: I was bathing in that pleasant sea, near Marseilles, one summer's afternoon, when I discovered a very large fish, with his jaws quite extended, approaching me with the greatest velocity; there was no time to be lost, nor could I possibly avoid him. I immediately reduced myself to as small a size as possible, by closing my feet and placing my hands also near my sides, in which position I passed directly between his jaws, and into his stomach, where I remained some time in total darkness, and comfortably warm, as you may imagine: at last it occurred to me, that by giving him pain he would be glad to get rid of me: as I had plenty of room I played my pranks, such as tumbling, hop, step, and jump, &c., but nothing seemed to disturb him so much as the quick motion of my feet in attempting to dance a hornpipe; soon after I began, he put me out, by sudden fits and starts: I persevered; at last he roared horridly, and stood up almost perpendicular in the water, with his head and shoulders exposed, by which he was discovered by the people on board an Italian trader, then sailing by, who harpooned him in a few minutes. As soon as he was brought on board, I heard the crew consulting how they should cut him up, so as to preserve the greatest quantity of oil. As I understood Italian, I was in most dreadful apprehensions lest their weapons employed in this business should destroy me also; therefore I stood as near the centre as possible, for there was room enough for a dozen men in this creature's stomach, and I naturally imagined they would begin with the extremities: however, my fears were soon dispersed, for they began by opening the bottom of the belly. As soon as I perceived a glimmering of light, I called out lustily to be released from a situation in which I was now almost suffocated. It is impossible for me to do justice to the degree and kind of astonishment which sat upon every countenance at hearing a human voice issue from a fish, but more so at seeing a naked man walk upright out of his body; in short, gentlemen, I told them the whole story, as I have done you, whilst amazement struck them dumb.

After taking some refreshment, and jumping into the sea to cleanse myself, I swam to my clothes, which lay where I had left them on the shore. As near as I can calculate, I was near four hours and a half confined in the stomach of this animal.

CHAPTER IX.

Adventures in Turkey, and upon the river Nile—Sees a balloon over Constantinople; shoots at, and brings it down; finds a French experimental philosopher suspended from it—Goes on an embassy to Grand Cairo, and returns upon the Nile, where he is thrown into an unexpected situation, and detained six weeks.

WHEN I was in the service of the Turks, I frequently amused myself in a pleasure-barge on the Marmora, which commands a view of the whole city of Constantinople, including the Grand Seignior's Seraglio. One morning, as I was admiring the beauty and serenity of the sky, I observed a globular substance in the air, which appeared to be about the size of a twelve-inch globe, with somewhat suspended from it. I immediately took up my largest and longest barrel fowling-piece, which I never travel or make even an excursion without, if I can help it; I charged with a ball, and fired at the globe; but to no purpose, the object being at too great a distance. I then put in a double quantity of powder, and five or six balls: this second attempt succeeded; all the balls took effect, and tore one side open, and brought it down. Judge my surprise, when a most elegant gilt car, with a man in it, and part of a sheep which seemed to have been roasted, fell within two yards of me: when my astonishment had in some degree subsided, I ordered my people to row close to this strange aërial traveller.

I took him on board my barge (he was a native of France): he was much indisposed from his sudden fall into the sea, and incapable of speaking; after some time, however, he recovered, and gave the following account of himself, viz.: "About seven or eight days since, I cannot tell which, for I have lost my reckoning, having been most of the time where the sun never sets, I ascended from the Land's End in Cornwall, in the island of Great Britain, in the car from which I have just been taken, suspended from a very large balloon, and took a sheep with me, to try atmospheric experiments upon: unfortunately the wind changed within ten minutes after my ascent; and, instead of driving towards Exeter, where I intended to land, I was driven towards the sea, over which I suppose I have continued ever since, but much too high to make observations.

"The calls of hunger were so pressing, that the intended experiments upon heat and respiration gave way to them. I was obliged, on the third day, to kill the sheep for food; and being at that time infinitely above the moon, and for upwards of sixteen hours after so very near the sun that it scorched my eyebrows, I placed the carcase, taking care to skin it first, in that part of the car where the sun had sufficient power, or, in other words, where the balloon did not shade it from the sun, by which method it was well roasted in about two hours. This has been my food ever since." Here he paused, and seemed lost in viewing the objects about him. When I told him the buildings before us were the Grand Seignior's Seraglio at Constantinople, he seemed exceedingly affected, as he had supposed himself in a very different situation. "The cause," added he, "of my long flight, was owing to the failure of a string which was fixed to a valve in the balloon, intended to let out the inflammable air; and if it had not been fired at, and rent in the manner before mentioned, I might, like Mahomet, have been suspended between heaven and earth till doomsday."

The Grand Seignior, to whom I was introduced by the Imperial, Russian, and French ambassadors, employed me to negotiate a matter of great importance at Grand Cairo, and which was of such a nature that it must ever remain a secret.

I went there in great state by land; where, having completed the business, I dismissed almost all my attendants, and returned like a private gentleman: the weather was delightful, and that famous river, the Nile, was beautiful beyond all description; in short, I was tempted to hire a barge, to descend by water to Alexandria. On the third day of my voyage the river began to rize most amazingly, (you have all heard, I presume, of the annual overflowing of the Nile,) and on the next day it spread the whole country for many leagues on each side! On the fifth, at sunrise, my barge became entangled with what I at first took for shrubs; but as the light became stronger, I found myself surrounded by almonds, which were perfectly ripe and in the highest perfection. Upon plumbing with a line, my people found we were at least sixty feet from the ground, and unable to advance or retreat. At about eight or nine o'clock, as near as I could judge by the altitude of the sun, the wind rose suddenly, and canted our barge on one side: here she filled, and I saw no more of her for some time. Fortunately we all saved ourselves (six men and two boys) by clinging to the tree, the boughs of which were equal to our weight, though not to that of the barge: in this situation we continued six weeks and three days, living upon the almonds; I need not inform you we had plenty of water. On the forty-second day of our distress, the water fell as rapidly as it had risen, and on the forty-sixth we were able to venture down upon terra firma. Our barge was the first pleasing object we saw, about two hundred yards from the spot where she sunk. After drying everything that was useful by the heat of the sun, and loading ourselves with necessaries from the stores on board, we set out to recover our lost ground; and found by the nearest calculation, we had been carried over garden-walls, and a variety of enclosures, above one hundred and fifty miles. In four days, after a very tiresome journey on foot, with thin shoes, we reached the river, which was now confined to its banks, related our adventures to a boy, who kindly accommodated all our wants, and sent us forward in a barge of his own. In six days more we arrived at Alexandria, where we took shipping for Constantinople. I was received kindly by the grand Seignior, and had the honour of seeing the Seraglio, to which his highness introduced me himself.

CHAPTER X.

Pays a visit during the siege of Gibraltar to his old friend General Elliot—Sinks a Spanish man-of-war—Wakes an old woman on the African coast—Destroys all the enemy's cannon; frightens the Count d'Artois, and sends him to Paris—Saves the lives of two English spies with the identical sling that killed Goliah; and raises the siege.

DURING the late siege of Gibraltar, I went with a provision-fleet under Lord Rodney's command, to see my old friend General Elliot, who has, by his distinguished defence of that place, acquired laurels that can never fade. After the usual joy which generally attends the meeting of old friends had subsided, I went to examine the state of the garrison, and view the operations of the enemy, for which purpose the General accompanied me. I had brought a most excellent refracting telescope with me from London, purchased of Dollond, by the help of which I found the enemy were going to discharge a thirty-six pounder at the spot where we stood. I told the General what they were about; he looked through the glass also, and found my conjectures right. I immediately, by his permission, ordered a forty-eight pounder to be brought from a neighbouring battery, which I placed with so much exactness (having long studied the art of gunnery) that I was sure of my mark.

I continued watching the enemy till I saw the match placed at the touch-hole of their piece; at that very instant I gave the signal for our gun to be fired also.

About midway between the two pieces of cannon, the balls struck each other with amazing force, and the effect was astonishing! The enemy's ball recoiled back with such violence as to kill the man who had discharged it, by carrying his head fairly off, with sixteen others, which it met with in its progress to the Barbary coast; where its force, after passing through three masts of vessels that then lay in a line behind each other in the harbour, was so much spent, that it only broke its way through the roof of a poor labourer's hut, about two hundred yards inland, and destroyed a few teeth an old woman had left, who lay asleep upon her back with her mouth open. The ball lodged in her throat. Her husband soon after came home, and endeavoured to extract it; but finding that impracticable, by the assistance of a rammer he forced it into her stomach. Our ball did excellent service; for it not only repelled the other in the manner just described, but, proceeding as I intended it should, it dismounted the very piece of cannon that had just been employed against us, and forced it into the hold of the ship, where it fell with so much force as to break its way through the bottom. The ship immediately filled and sank, with above a thousand Spanish sailors on board, besides a considerable number of soldiers. This, to be sure, was a most extraordinary exploit; I will not, however, take the whole merit to myself; my judgment was the principal engine, but chance assisted me a little; for I afterwards found, that the man who charged our forty-eight pounder put in, by mistake, a double quantity of powder, else we could never have succeeded so much beyond all expectation, especially in repelling the enemy's ball.

General Elliot would have given me a commission for this singular piece of service; but I declined everything, except his thanks, which I received at a crowded table of officers at supper, on the evening of that very day.

As I am very partial to the English, who are beyond all doubt a brave people, I determined not to take my leave of the garrison till I had rendered them another piece of service; and in about three weeks an opportunity presented itself. I dressed myself in the habit of a *Popish Priest*, and at about one o'clock in the morning stole out of the garrison, passed the enemy's lines, and arrived in the middle of their camp, where I entered the tent in which the Prince d'Artois was, with the Commander-in-chief, and several other officers, in deep council, concerting a plan to storm the castle next morning. My disguise was my protection; they suffered me to continue there, hearing everything that passed, till they went to their several beds. When I found the whole camp, and even the sentinels, were wrapped up in the arms of Morpheus, I began my work, which was that of dismounting all their cannon (above three hundred pieces), from forty-eight to twenty-four pounders, and throwing them three leagues into the sea. Having no assistance, I found this the hardest task I ever undertook, except swimming to the opposite shore with the famous Turkish piece of ordnance, described by Baron de Tott in his Memoirs, which I shall hereafter mention. I then piled all the carriages together in the centre of the camp, which, to prevent the noise of the wheels being heard, I carried in pairs under my arms; and a noble appearance they made, as high at least as the rock of Gibraltar. I then lighted a match, by striking a flint stone, situated twenty feet from the ground (in an old wall, built by the Moors when they invaded Spain), with the breech of an iron eight-and-forty pounder, and so set fire to the whole pile. I forgot to inform you, that I threw all their ammunition-wagons upon the top.

Before I applied the lighted match, I had laid the combustibles at the bottom, so judiciously, that the whole was in a blaze in a moment. To prevent suspicion, I was one of the first to express my surprise. The whole camp was, as you may imagine, petrified with astonishment: the general conclusion was, that their sentinels had been bribed, and that seven or eight regiments of the garrison had been employed in this horrid destruction of their artillery. Mr. Drinkwater, in his account of this famous siege, mentions the enemy sustaining a great loss by a fire which happened in their camp, but never knew the cause; how should he? as I never divulged it before (though I alone saved Gibraltar by this night's business), not even to General Elliot. The Count d'Artois and all his attendants ran away in their fright, and never stopped on the road till they reached Paris, which they did in about a fortnight; this dreadful conflagration had such an effect upon them, that they were incapable of taking the least refreshment for three months after, but, chameleon-like, lived upon the air.

If any gentleman will say he doubts the truth of this story, I will fine him a gallon of brandy, and make him drink it at one draught.

About two months after I had done the besieged this service, one morning, as I sat at breakfast with General Elliot, a shell (for I had no time to destroy their mortars as well as their cannon) entered the apartment we were sitting in; it lodged upon our table: the General, as most men would do, quitted the room directly; but I took it up before it burst, and carried it to the top of the rock; when, looking over the enemy's camp, on an eminence near the sea-coast, I observed a considerable number of people, but could not, with my naked eye, discover how they were employed. I had recourse again to my telescope, when I found that two of our officers, one a general, the other a colonel, with whom I had spent the preceding evening, and who went out into the enemy's camp about midnight as spies, were taken, and then were actually going to be executed on a gibbet. I found the distance too great to throw the shell with my hand; but most fortunately recollecting that I had the very sling in my pocket which assisted David in slaying Goliah, I placed the shell in it, and immediately threw it in the midst of them: it burst as it fell, and destroyed all present, except the two culprits, who were saved by being suspended so high, for they were just turned off: however, one of the pieces of the shell flew with such force against the foot of the gibbet, that it immediately brought it down. Our two friends no sooner felt terra firma, than they looked about for the cause; and, finding their guards, executioner and all, had taken it in their heads to die first, they directly extricated each other from their disgraceful cords; and then ran down to the sea-shore, seized a Spanish boat with two men in it, and made them row to one of our ships, which they did with great safety; and in a few minutes after, when I was relating to General Elliot how I had acted, they both took us by the hand, and, after mutual congratulations, we retired to spend the day with festivity.

CHAPTER XI.

An interesting account of the Baron's ancestors—A quarrel relative to the spot where Noah built his ark—The history of the sling and its properties—A favourite poet introduced upon no very reputable occasion—Queen Elizabeth's abstinence—The Baron's father crosses from England to Holland upon a marine horse, which he sells for seven hundred ducats.

You wish (I can see by your countenances) I would inform you how I became possessed of such a treasure as the sling just mentioned. (Here facts must be held sacred.) Thus then it was: I am a descendant of the wife of Uriah, whom we all know David was intimate with; she had several children by his majesty; they quarrelled once upon a matter of the first consequence, viz., the spot where Noah's ark was built, and where it rested after the flood. A separation consequently ensued. She had often heard him speak of this sling, as his most valuable treasure: this she stole the night they parted; it was missed before she got out of his dominions, and she was pursued by no less than six of the king's body-guards: however, by using it herself, she hit the first of them (for one was more active in the pursuit than the rest) where David did Goliah, and killed him on the spot. His companions were so alarmed at his fall, that they retired, and left Uriah's wife to pursue her journey. She took with her, I should have informed you before, her favourite son by this connexion, to whom she bequeathed the sling; and thus it has, without interruption, descended from father to son till it came into my possession. One of its possessors, my great-great-great-grandfather, who lived about two hundred and fifty years ago, was upon a visit to England, and became intimate with a poet, who was a great deer-stealer; I think his name was Shakespeare: he frequently borrowed this sling, and with it killed so much of Sir Thomas Lucy's venison, that he narrowly escaped the fate of my two friends at Gibraltar. Poor Shakespeare was imprisoned, and my ancestor obtained his freedom in a very singular manner. Queen Elizabeth was then on the throne, but grown so indolent, that every trifling matter was become a trouble to her; dressing, undressing, eating, drinking, and some other offices, which shall be nameless, made life a burden to her: all these things he enabled her to do without, or by a deputy! and what do you think was the only return she could prevail upon him to accept for such eminent services?—Setting Shakespeare at liberty.—Such was his affection for that famous writer, that he would have shortened his own days to add to the number of his friend's.

I do not hear that any of the Queen's subjects, particularly the *beef-eaters*, as they are vulgarly called to this day, however they might be struck with the novelty at the time, much approved of her living totally without food. She did not survive the practice herself above seven years and a half.

My father, who was the immediate possessor of this sling before me, told me the following anecdote:—

He was walking by the sea-shore at Harwich, with this sling in his pocket; before his paces had covered a mile, he was attacked by a fierce animal, called a sea-horse, open-mouthed, who ran at him with great fury; he hesitated a moment, then took out his sling, retreated back about a hundred yards, stooped for a couple of pebbles, of which there were plenty under his feet, and slung them both so dexterously at the animal, that each stone put out an eye, and lodged in the cavities which their removal had occasioned. He now got upon his back, and drove him into the sea; for the moment he lost his sight, he lost all his ferocity, and became as tame as possible: the sling was placed as a bridle in his mouth; he was guided with the greatest facility across the ocean, and in less than three hours they both arrived on the opposite shore, which is about thirty leagues. The master of the Three Cups, at Helvoetsluys, in Holland, purchased this marine horse to make an exhibition of, for seven hundred ducats, which was upwards of three hundred pounds; and the next day my father paid his passage back in the packet to Harwich.

My father made several curious observations in this passage which I will relate hereafter.

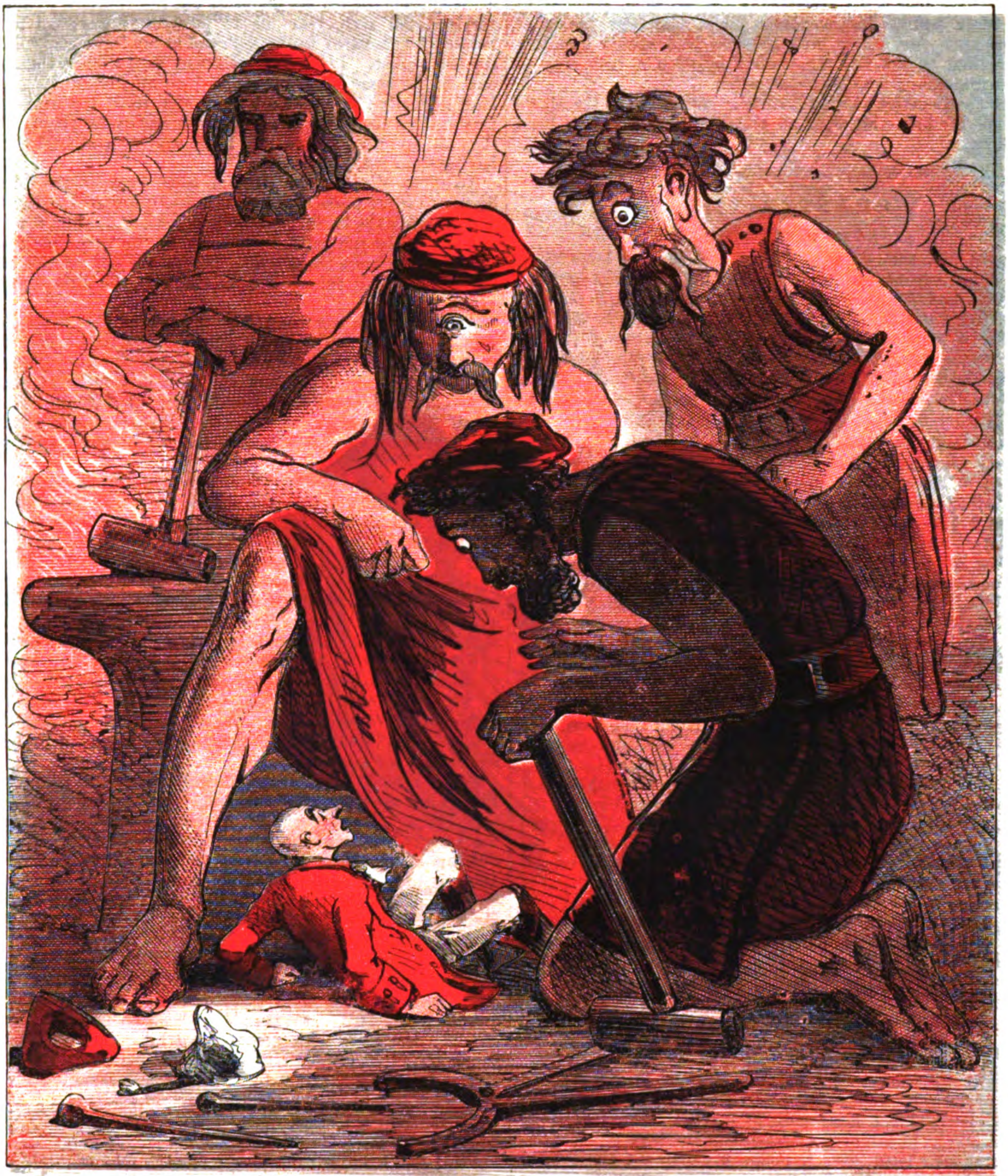
CHAPTER XII.

The frolic; its consequences—Windsor Castle—St. Paul's—College of Physicians, Undertakers, Sextons, &c., almost ruined—Industry of the Apothecaries.

THE FROLIC.

This famous sling makes the possessor equal to any task he is desirous of performing.

I made a balloon of such extensive dimensions, that an account of the silk it contained would exceed all credibility; every mercer's shop and weaver's stock in London, Westminster, and Spitalfields, contributed to it: with this balloon and my sling I played many tricks, such as taking one house from its station, and placing another in its stead, without disturbing the inhabitants, who were generally asleep, or too much employed to observe the peregrinations of their habitations. When the



BARON MUNCHAUSEN PAYS A VISIT TO VULCAN AND HIS CYCLOPS.

sentinel at Windsor Castle heard St. Paul's clock strike thirteen, it was through my dexterity; I brought the buildings nearly together that night, by placing the castle in St. George's Fields, and carried it back again before daylight, without waking any of the inhabitants; notwithstanding these exploits, I should have kept my balloon and its properties a secret, if Montgolfier had not made the art of flying so public.

On the 30th of September, when the College of Physicians chose their annual officers, and dined sumptuously together, I filled my balloon, brought it over the dome of their building, clapped the sling round the golden ball at the top, fastening the other end of it to the balloon, and immediately ascended with the whole college to an immense height, where I kept them upwards of three months. You will naturally inquire what they did for food such a length of time? To this I answer—Had I kept them suspended twice the time, they would have experienced no inconvenience on that account, so amply, or rather extravagantly, had they spread their table for that day's feasting.

Though this was meant as an innocent frolic, it was productive of much mischief to several respectable characters among the clergy, undertakers, sextons, and grave-diggers; they were, it must be acknowledged, sufferers; for it is a well-known fact, that during the three months the college was suspended in the air, and therefore incapable of attending their patients, no deaths happened, except a few who fell before the scythe of Father Time, and some melancholy objects, who, perhaps to avoid some trifling inconvenience here, laid the hands of violence upon themselves, and plunged into misery infinitely greater than that which they hoped by such a rash step to avoid, without a moment's consideration.

If the apothecaries had not been very active during the above time, half the undertakers, in all probability, would have been bankrupts.

CHAPTER XIII.

A TRIP TO THE NORTH.

The Baron sails with Captain Phipps, attacks two large bears, and has a very narrow escape—Gains the confidence of these animals, and then destroys thousands of them; loads the ship with their hams and skins; makes presents of the former, and obtains a general invitation to all city feasts—A dispute between the Captain and the Baron, in which, from motives of politeness, the Captain is suffered to gain his point—The Baron declines the honour of a throne, and an empress into the bargain.

We all remember Captain Phipps's (now Lord Mulgrave) last voyage of discovery to the north. I accompanied the captain, not as an officer, but a private friend. When we arrived in a high northern latitude, I was viewing the objects around me with the telescope which I introduced to your notice in my Gibraltar adventures. I thought I saw two large white bears in violent action upon a body of ice considerably above the masts, and about half a league distance. I immediately took my carbine, slung it across my shoulder, and ascended the ice. When I arrived at the top, the unevenness of the surface made my approach to those animals troublesome and hazardous beyond expression: sometimes hideous cavities opposed me, which I was obliged to spring over; in other parts the surface was as smooth as a mirror, and I was continually falling: as I approached near enough to reach them, I found they were only at play. I immediately began to calculate the value of their skins, for they were each as large as a well-fed ox: unfortunately, at the very instant I was presenting my carbine, my right foot slipped, I fell upon my back, and the violence of the blow deprived me totally of my senses for nearly half an hour; however, when I recovered, judge of my surprise at finding one of those large animals I have been just describing had turned me upon my face, and was just laying hold of the waistband of my breeches, which were then new and made of leather: he was certainly going to carry me feet foremost, God knows where, when I took this knife (showing a large clasp-knife) out of my side-pocket, made a chop at one of his hind-feet, and cut off three of his toes; he immediately let me drop, and roared most horridly. I took up my carbine and fired at him as he ran off; he fell directly. The noise of the piece roused several thousands of these white bears, who were asleep upon the ice within half a mile of me; they came immediately to the spot. There was no time to be lost. A most fortunate thought arrived in my pericranium just at that instant. I took off the skin and head of the dead bear in half the time that some people would be in skinning a rabbit, and wrapped myself in it, placing my own head directly under Bruin's; the whole herd came round me immediately, and my apprehensions threw me into a most piteous situation, to be sure: however, my scheme turned out a most admirable one for my own safety. They all came smelling, and evidently took me for a brother Bruin; I wanted nothing but bulk to make an excellent counterfeit: however, I saw several cubs amongst them not much larger than myself. After they had all smelt me, and the body of their deceased companion, whose skin was now become my protector, we seemed very sociable, and I found I could mimic all their actions tolerably well; but at growling, roaring, and hugging, they were quite my masters. I began now to think how I might turn the general confidence which I had created amongst these animals to my advantage.

I heard an old army surgeon say, a wound in the spine was instant death. I now determined to try the experiment, and had again recourse to my knife, with which I struck the largest in the back of the neck, near the shoulders, but under great apprehensions, not doubting but the creature would, if he survived the stab, tear me to pieces. However, I was remarkably fortunate; for he fell dead at my feet without making the least noise. I was now resolved to demolish them every one in the same manner, which I accomplished without the least difficulty; for although they saw their companions fall, they had no suspicion of either the cause or the effect. When they all lay dead before me, I felt myself a second Samson, having slain many thousands.

To make short of the story, I went back to the ship, and borrowed three parts of the crew to assist me in skinning them, and carrying the hams on board, which we did in a few hours, and loaded the ship with them. As to the other parts of the animals, they were thrown into the sea, though I doubt not but the whole would eat as well as the legs, were they properly cured.

As soon as we returned, I sent some of the hams, in the captain's name, to the Lords of the Admiralty, others to the Lords of the Treasury, some to the Lord Mayor and Corporation of London, a few to each of the trading companies, and the remainder to my particular friends, from all of whom I received warm thanks; but from the city I was honoured with substantial notice, viz., an invitation to dine at Guildhall annually on Lord Mayor's Day.

The bear-skins I sent to the Empress of Russia, to clothe her majesty and her court in the winter, for which she wrote me a letter of thanks with her own hand, and sent it by an ambassador extraordinary, inviting me to share the honours of her bed and crown; but as I never was ambitious of royal dignity, I declined her majesty's favour in the politest terms. The same ambassador had orders to wait and bring my answer to her majesty *personally*, upon which business he was absent about three months: her majesty's reply convinced me of the strength of her affections, and the dignity of her mind; her late indisposition was entirely owing (as she, kind creature! was pleased to express herself in a late conversation with the Prince Dolgorouki) to my cruelty. What the sex see in me I cannot conceive, but the Empress is not the only female sovereign who has offered me her hand.

Some people have very illiberally reported, that Captain Phipps did not proceed as far as he might have done upon that expedition. Here it becomes my duty to acquit him; our ship was in a very proper trim, till I loaded it with such an immense quantity of bear-skins and hams, after which it would have been madness to have attempted to proceed farther, as we were now scarcely able to combat a brisk gale, much less those mountains of ice which lay in the higher latitudes.

The captain has since often expressed a dissatisfaction that he had no share in the honours of that day, which he emphatically called the *bear-skin day*. He has also been very desirous of knowing by what art I destroyed so many thousands, without fatigue or danger to myself: indeed, he is so ambitious of dividing the glory with me, that we have actually quarrelled about it, and we are not now upon speaking terms. He boldly asserts I had no merit in deceiving the bears, because I was covered with one of their skins; nay, he declares there is not, in his opinion, in Europe, so complete a bear naturally as himself among the human species.

He is now a noble peer, and I am too well acquainted with good manners to dispute so delicate a point with his lordship.

CHAPTER XIV.

Our Baron excels Baron Tott beyond all comparison; yet fails in part of his attempt—Gets into disgrace with the Grand Seignior, who orders his head to be cut off—Escapes, and gets on board a vessel, in which he is carried to Venice—Baron Tott's origin, with some account of that great man's parents—Pope Ganganelli's amour—His Holiness fond of shell-fish.

Baron de Tott, in his Memoirs, makes as great a parade of a single act, as many travellers whose whole lives have been spent in seeing the different parts of the globe; for my part, if I had been blown from Europe to Asia from the mouth of a cannon, I should have boasted less of it afterwards than he has done of only firing off a Turkish piece of ordnance. What he says of this wonderful gun, as near as my memory will serve me, is this:—"The Turks had placed below the castle, and near the city, on the banks of Simois, a celebrated river, an enormous piece of ordnance cast in brass, which would carry a marble ball of eleven hundred pounds weight. I was inclined," says Tott, "to fire it, but I was willing first to judge of its effects; the crowd about me trembled at this proposal, as they asserted it would overthrow not only the castle, but the city also; at length their fears in part subsided, and I was permitted to discharge it. It required no less than three hundred and thirty pounds weight of powder; and the ball weighed, as before mentioned, eleven hundredweight. When the engineer brought the priming, the crowds who were about me retreated back as fast as they could; nay, it was with the utmost difficulty I persuaded the Pacha, who came on purpose, there was no danger: even the engineer who was to discharge it by my direction, was considerably alarmed. I took my stand on some stone-work behind the cannon, gave the signal, and felt a shock like that of an earthquake! At the distance of three hundred fathom, the ball burst into three pieces; the fragments crossed the strait, rebounded on the opposite mountain, and left the surface of the water all in a foam, through the whole breadth of the channel."

This, gentlemen, is, as near as I can recollect, Baron Tott's account of the largest cannon in the known world. Now, when I was there not long since, the anecdote of Tott's firing this tremendous piece was mentioned as a proof of that gentleman's extraordinary courage.

I was determined not to be out-done by a Frenchman; therefore took this very piece upon my shoulder, and, after balancing it properly, jumped into the sea with it, and swam to the opposite shore, from whence I unfortunately attempted to throw it back into its former place. I say unfortunately, for it slipped a little in my hand, just as I was going to discharge it, and in consequence of that, it fell into the middle of the channel, where it now lies, without a prospect of ever recovering it: and, notwithstanding the high favour I was in with the Grand Seignior, as before mentioned, this cruel Turk, as soon as he heard of the loss of his famous piece of ordnance, issued an order to cut off my head. I was immediately informed of it by one of the Sultanas, with whom I was become a great fovourite, and she secreted me in her apartment while the officer charged with my execution was, with his assistants, in search of me.

That very night I made my escape on board a vessel bound to Venice, which was then weighing anchor to proceed on her voyage.

The last story, gentlemen, I am not fond of mentioning, as I miscarried in the attempt, and was very near losing my life into the bargain: however, as it contains no impeachment of my honour, I would not withhold it from you.

Now, gentlemen, you all know me, and can have no doubt of my veracity. I will entertain you with the origin of this same swaggering bouncing Tott.

His reputed father was a native of Berne, in Switzerland; his profession was that of a surveyor of the streets, lanes, and alleys, vulgarly called a scavenger. His mother was a native of the mountains of Savoy, and had a most beautiful large wen on her neck, common to both sexes in that part of the world; she left her parents when young, and sought her fortune in the same city which gave his father birth: she maintained herself, while single, by acts of kindness to our sex, for she never was known to refuse them any favour they asked, provided they did but pay her some compliment beforehand. This lovely couple met by accident in the street, in consequence of their being both intoxicated; for, by reeling to one centre, they threw each other down: this created mutual abuse, in which they were complete adepts; they were both carried to the watch-house, and afterwards to the house of correction; they soon saw the folly of quarrelling, made it up, became fond of each other, and married; but madam returning to her old tricks, his father, who had high notions of honour, soon separated himself from her; she then joined a family who strolled about with a puppet-show. In time she arrived at Rome, where she kept an oyster-stand. You have all heard, no doubt, of Pope Ganganelli, commonly called Clement XIV.: he was remarkably fond of oysters. One Good Friday, as he was passing through this famous city in state, to assist at high mass at St. Peter's Church, he saw this woman's oysters (which were remarkably fine and fresh); he could not proceed without tasting them; there were about five thousand people in his train; he ordered them all to stop, and sent word to the church he could not attend mass till next day; then alighting from his horse (for the Pope always rides on horseback upon these occasions) he went into her stall, and ate every oyster she had there, and afterwards retired into the cellar where she had a few more. This subterraneous apartment was her kitchen, parlour, and bedchamber. He liked his situation so much that he discharged all his attendants, and, to make short of the story, his Holiness passed the whole night there! Before they parted, he gave her absolution, not only for every sin she had, but all she might hereafter commit.

Now, gentlemen, I have his mother's word for it, (and her honour cannot be doubted,) that Baron Tott is the fruit of that amour. When Tott was born, his mother applied to his Holiness, as the father of her child; he immediately placed him under proper people; and as he grew up, gave him a gentleman's education, had him taught the use of arms, procured him promotion in France, and a title, and when he died he left him a good estate.

CHAPTER XV.

A farther account of the journey from Hardwick to Helvoetsluys—Description of a number of marine objects, never mentioned by any traveller before—Rocks seen in this passage, equal to the Alps in magnitude; Lobsters, Crabs, &c., of an extraordinary magnitude—A woman's life saved—The cause of her falling into the sea—Dr. Hawes's directions followed with success.

I OMITTED several very material parts in my father's journey across the English Channel to Holland, which, that they may not be totally lost, I will now faithfully give you in his own words, as I heard him relate them to his friends several times.

"On my arrival," says my father, "at Helvoetsluys, I was observed to breathe with some difficulty: upon the inhabitants inquiring into the cause, I informed them that the animal upon whose back I rode from Harwich across to their shore, did not swim! Such is their peculiar form and disposition, that they cannot float or move upon the surface of the water; he ran with incredible swiftness upon the sands, from shore to shore, driving fish in millions before him, many of which were quite different from any I had yet seen, carrying their heads at the extremity of their tails. I crossed," continued he, "one prodigious range of rocks, equal in height to the Alps, (the tops or highest part of these marine mountains are said to be upwards of one hundred fathoms below the surface of the sea) on the sides of which there were a great variety of tall, noble trees, loaded with marine fruit, such as lobsters, crabs, oysters, scollops, muscles, cockles, &c. &c.; some of which were a cart-load singly, and none less than a porter's! All those which are brought on shore, and sold in our markets, are of an inferior dwarf kind, or properly, waterfalls, *i.e.*, fruit shook off the branches of the tree it grows upon, by the motion of the water, as those in our gardens are by that of the wind! The lobster-trees appeared the richest, but the crab and oysters were the tallest. The periwinkle is a kind of shrub; it grows at the foot of the oyster-tree, and twines round it as the ivy does the oak. I observed the effect of several accidents by shipwreck, &c., particularly a ship that had been wrecked by striking against a mountain or rock, the top of which lay within three fathoms of the surface. As she sunk, she fell upon her side, and forced a very large lobster-tree out of its place. It was in the spring, when the lobsters were very young, and many of them being separated by the violence of the shock, they fell upon a crab-tree which was growing below them; they have, like the farina of plants, united, and produced a fish resembling both. I endeavoured to bring one with me, but it was too cumbersome, and my salt-water Pegasus seemed much displeased at every attempt to stop his career whilst I continued upon his back; besides, I was then, though galloping over a mountain of rocks that lay about midway the passage, at least five hundred fathom below the surface of the sea, and began to find the want of air inconvenient; therefore I had no inclination to prolong the time. Add to this, my situation was in other respects very unpleasant; I met many large fish, who were, if I could judge by their open mouths, not only able, but really wished to devour us; now, as my Rosinante was blind, I had these hungry gentlemen's attempts to guard against, in addition to my other difficulties.

"As we drew near the Dutch shore, and the body of water over our heads did not exceed twenty fathoms, I thought I saw a human figure in a female dress then lying on the sand before me with some signs of life; when I came close, I perceived her hand move; I took it into mine, and brought her on shore as a corpse. An apothecary, who had just been instructed by Dr. Hawes (the Baron's father must have lived very lately, if Dr. Hawes was his preceptor,) of London, treated her properly, and she recovered. She was the rib of a man who commanded a vessel belonging to Helvoetsluys. He was just going out of port on a voyage, when she, hearing he had got a mistress with him, followed him in an open boat. As soon as she had got on the quarter-deck, she flew at her husband, and attempted to strike him with such impetuosity, that he thought it most prudent to slip on one side, and let her make the impression of her fingers upon the waves rather than his face: he was not much out in his ideas of the consequence; for meeting no opposition, she went directly overboard, and it was my unfortunate lot to lay the foundation for bringing this happy pair together again.

"I can easily conceive what execrations the husband loaded me with, when, on his return, he found this gentle creature waiting his arrival, and learned the means by which she came into the world again. However, great as the injury is which I have done this poor devil, I hope he will die in charity with me, as my motive was good, though the consequences to him are, it must be confessed, horrible."

CHAPTER XVI.

This is a very short chapter, but contains a fact for which the Baron's memory ought to be dear to every Englishman, especially those who may hereafter have the misfortune of being made prisoners of war.

On my return from Gibraltar, I travelled by way of France to England. Being a foreigner, this was not attended with any inconvenience to me. I found in the harbour of Calais a ship just arrived, with a number of English sailors, as prisoners of war. I immediately conceived an idea of giving these brave fellows their liberty, which I accomplished as follows:—After forming a pair of large wings, each of them forty yards long, and fourteen wide, and annexing them to myself, I mounted at break of day, when every creature, even the watch upon deck, was fast asleep. As I hovered over the ship, I fastened three grappling irons to the tops of the three masts, with my sling, and fairly lifted her several yards out of the water, and then proceeded across to Dover, where I arrived in half an hour! Having no farther occasion for these wings, I made them a present to the Governor of Dover Castle, where they are now exhibited to the curious.

As to the prisoners, and the Frenchmen who guarded them, they did not awake till they had been near two hours on Dover Pier. The moment the English understood their situation, they changed places with their guard, and took back what they had been plundered of, but no more, for they were too generous to retaliate, and plunder them in return.

CHAPTER XVII.

Voyage eastward—The Baron introduces a friend, who never deceived him: wins an hundred guineas by pinning his faith upon that friend's nose—Game started at sea—Some other circumstances, which will, it is hoped, afford the reader no small degree of amusement.

In a voyage which I made to the East Indies with Captain Hamilton, I took a favourite pointer with me; he was, to use a common phrase, worth his weight in gold, for he never deceived me. One day when we were, by the best observations we could make, at least three hundred leagues from land, my dog pointed; I observed him for near an hour with astonishment, and mentioned the circumstance to the captain and every officer on board, asserting, that we must be near land, for my dog smelt game. This occasioned a general laugh; but that did not alter in the least the good opinion I had of my dog. After much conversation pro and con, I boldly told the captain, I placed more confidence in Tray's nose than I did in the eyes of every seaman on board; and therefore boldly proposed laying the sum I had agreed to pay for my passage (viz., one hundred guineas) that we should find game within half an hour. The captain (a good hearty fellow) laughed again, desired Mr. Crawford the surgeon, who was prepared, to feel my pulse; he did so, and reported me in perfect health. The following dialogue between them took place; I overheard it, though spoken low, and at some distance.

Captain. His brain is turned; I cannot with honour accept his wager.

Surgeon. I am of a different opinion; he is quite sane, and depends more upon the scent of his dog than he will upon the judgment of all the officers on board; he will certainly lose, and he richly merits it.

Captain. Such a wager cannot be fair on my side; however, I'll take him up, if I return his money afterwards.

During the above conversation, Tray continued in the same situation, and confirmed me still more in my former opinion. I proposed the wager a second time, it was then accepted.

Done! and done! were scarcely said on both sides, when some sailors who were fishing in the long-boat, which was made fast to the stern of the ship, harpooned an exceeding large shark, which they brought on board and began to cut up for the purpose of barrelling the oil, when, behold, they found no less than *six brace of live partridges* in this animal's stomach!

They had been so long in that situation, that one of the hens was sitting upon four eggs, and a fifth was hatching when the shark was opened!!! This young bird we brought up, by placing it with a litter of kittens that came into the world a few minutes before! The old cat was as fond of it as any of her own four-legged progeny, and made herself very unhappy when it flew out of her reach, till it returned again. As to the other partridges, there were four hens amongst them; one or more were, during the voyage, constantly sitting, and consequently we had plenty of game at the Captain's table: and in gratitude to poor Tray (for being a means of winning one hundred guineas) I ordered him the bones daily, and sometimes a whole bird.

CHAPTER XVIII.

A second visit (but an accidental one) to the Moon—The ship driven by a whirlwind a thousand leagues above the surface of the water, where a new atmosphere meets them, and carries them into a capacious harbour in the moon—A description of the inhabitants, and their manner of coming into the lunarian world—Animals, customs, weapons of war, wines, vegetables, &c.

A SECOND TRIP TO THE MOON.

I have already informed you of one trip I made to the Moon, in search of my silver hatchet: I afterwards made another in a much pleasanter manner, and stayed in it long enough to take notice of several things, which I will endeavour to describe as accurately as my memory will permit.

I went on a voyage of discovery, at the request of a distant relation, who had a strange notion that there were people to be found equal in magnitude to those described by Gulliver in the empire of Brobdingnag. For my part I always treated that account as fabulous; however, to oblige him, as he had made me his heir, I undertook it, and sailed for the South Seas, where we arrived without meeting with anything remarkable, except some flying men and women, who were playing at leap-frog, and dancing minuets in the air.

On the eighteenth day after we had passed the Island of Otaheite, mentioned by Captain Cook as the place from whence they brought Omai, a hurricane blew our ship at least one thousand leagues above the surface of the water, and kept it at that height, till a fresh gale arising filled the sails in every part, and onwards we travelled at a prodigious rate; thus we proceeded above the clouds for six weeks. At last we discovered a great land in the sky, like a shining island, round and bright; where coming into a convenient harbour, we went on shore, and soon found it was inhabited. Below us we saw another earth, containing cities, trees, mountains, rivers, seas, &c., which we conjectured was this world which we had left. Here we saw huge figures riding upon vultures of a prodigious size, and each of them having three heads. To form some idea of the magnitude of these birds, I must inform you, that each of their wings is as wide and six times the length of the main-sheet of our vessel, which was about six hundred tons burthen. Thus, instead of riding upon horses, as we do in this world, the inhabitants of the Moon (for we now found we were in Madam Luna) fly about on these birds. The king, we found, was engaged in a war with the Sun, and he offered me a commission, but I declined the honour his majesty intended me. Everything in *this* world is of extraordinary magnitude, a common flea being much larger than one of our sheep: in making war their principal weapons are radishes, which are used as darts: those who are wounded by them die immediately. Their shields are made of mushrooms, and their darts (when radishes are out of season) of the tops of asparagus. Some of the natives of the Dog-star are to be seen here; commerce tempts them to ramble: their faces are like large mastiffs, with their eyes near the lower end or tip of their noses: they have no eyelids, but cover their eyes with the end of their tongues when they go to sleep; they are generally twenty feet high. As to the natives of the Moon, none of them are less in stature than thirty-six feet: they are not called the human species, but the cooking animals, for they all dress their food by fire, as we do, but lose no time at their meals, as they open their left side, and place the whole quantity at once in their stomach, then shut it again till the same day in the next month; for they never indulge themselves with food more than twelve times a year, or once a month. All but gluttons and epicures must prefer this method to ours.

There is but one sex either of the cooking or any other animals in the Moon; they are all produced from trees of various sizes and foliage; that which produces the cooking animal, or human species, is much more beautiful than any of the others; it has large straight boughs and flesh-coloured leaves, and the fruit it produces are nuts or pods, with hard shells at least two yards long; when they become ripe, which is known from their changing colour, they are gathered with great care, and laid by as long as they think proper: when they choose to animate the seed of these nuts, they throw them into a large cauldron of boiling water, which opens the shells in a few hours, and out jumps the creature.

Nature forms their minds for different pursuits before they come into the world; from one shell comes forth a warrior, from another a philosopher, from a third a divine, from a fourth a lawyer, from a fifth a farmer, from a sixth a clown, &c. &c.; and each of them immediately begin to perfect themselves, by practising what they before knew only in theory.

When they grow old, they do not die, but turn into air, and dissolve like smoke! As for their drink, they need none; the only evacuations they have are insensible, and by their breath. They have but one finger upon each hand, with which they perform every thing in as perfect a manner as we do who have four besides the thumb. Their heads are placed under their right arm; and when they are going to travel, or about any violent exercise, they generally leave them at home, for they can consult them at any distance; this is a very common practice; and when those of rank or quality among the Lunarians have an inclination to see what's going forward among the common people, they stay at home, *i.e.*, the body stays at home, and sends the head only, which is suffered to be present *incog.*, and return at pleasure with an account of what has passed.

The stones of their grapes are exactly like hail; and I am perfectly satisfied that when a storm or high wind in the Moon shakes their vines, and breaks the grapes from the stalks, the stones fall down and form our hail showers. I would advise those who are of my opinion to save a quantity of these stones when it hails next, and make Lunarian wine. It is common beverage at St. Luke's. Some material circumstances I had nearly omitted. They put their bellies to the same use as we do a sack, and throw whatever they have occasion for into it, for they can shut and open it again when they please, as they do their stomachs: they are not troubled with bowels, liver, heart, or any other intestines; neither are they encumbered with clothes, nor is there any part of their bodies unseemly or indecent to exhibit.

Their eyes they can take in and out of their places when they please, and can see as well with them in their hand as in their head! and if by any accident they lose or damage one, they can borrow or purchase another, and see as clearly with it as their own. Dealers in eyes are on that account very numerous in most parts of the Moon, and in this article alone all the inhabitants are whimsical: sometimes green and sometimes yellow eyes are the fashion. I know these things appear strange; but if the shadow of a doubt can remain on any person's mind, I say, let him take a voyage there himself, and then he will know I am a traveller of veracity.

CHAPTER XIX.

The Baron crosses the Thames without the assistance of a bridge, ship, boat, balloon, or even his own will: rouses himself after a long nap, and destroys a monster who lived upon the destruction of others.

MY first visit to England was about the beginning of the present king's reign. I had occasion to go down to Wapping, to see some goods shipped, which I was sending to some friends at Hamburgh; after that business was over, I took the Tower Wharf in my way back. Here I found the sun very powerful, and I was so much fatigued that I stepped into one of the cannon to compose me, where I fell fast asleep. This was about noon: it was the fourth of June; exactly at one o'clock these cannon were all discharged in memory of the day; they had been all charged that morning; and having no suspicion of my situation, I was shot over the houses on the opposite side of the river, into a farmer's yard, between Bermondsey and Deptford, where I fell upon a large hay-stack without waking, and continued there in a sound sleep till hay became so extravagantly dear (which was about three months after), that the farmer found it his interest to send his whole stock to market: the stack I was reposing upon was the largest in the yard, containing about five hundred load; they began to cut that first. I waked with the voices of the people who had ascended the ladders to begin at the top, and got up, totally ignorant of my situation: in attempting to run away, I fell upon the farmer to whom the hay belonged, and broke his neck, yet received no injury myself. I afterwards found, to my great consolation, that this fellow was a most detestable character, always keeping the produce of his grounds for extravagant markets.

CHAPTER XX.

The Baron slips through the world: after paying a visit to Mount Etna, he finds himself in the South Sea; visits Vulcan in his passage; gets on board a Dutchman; arrives at an island of Cheese, surrounded by a sea of Milk; describes some very extraordinary objects—Lose their compass; their ship slips between the teeth of a fish unknown in this part of the world: their difficulty in escaping from thence; arrive in the Caspian Sea—Starves a bear to death—A few waistcoat anecdotes—In this chapter, which is the longest, the Baron moralizes upon the virtue of veracity.

MR. DRYBONES' Travels to Sicily, which I had read with great pleasure, induced me to pay a visit to Mount Etna; my voyage to this place was not attended with any circumstances worth relating. One morning early, three or four days after my arrival, I set out from a cottage where I had slept, within six miles of the foot of the mountain, determined to explore the internal parts, if I perished in the attempt. After three hours' hard labour, I found myself at the top; it was then, and had been for upwards of three weeks, raging: its appearance in this state has been so frequently noticed by different travellers, that I will not tire you with descriptions of objects you are already acquainted with. I walked round the edge of the crater, which appeared to be fifty times at least as capacious as the Devil's Punch-bowl near Petersfield, on the Portsmouth Road, but not so broad at the bottom, as in that part it resembles the contracted part of a funnel more than a punch-bowl. At last, having made up my mind, in I sprang, feet foremost; I soon found myself in a warm berth, and my body bruised and burnt in various parts by the red-hot cinders, which, by their violent ascent, opposed my descent: however, my weight soon brought me to the bottom, where I found myself in the midst of noise and clamour, mixed with the most horrid imprecations: after recovering my senses, and feeling a reduction of my pain, I began to look about me. Guess, gentlemen, my astonishment, when I found myself in the company of Vulcan and his Cyclops, who had been quarrelling for the three weeks before mentioned, about the observation of good order and due subordination, and which had occasioned such alarms for that space of time in the world above. However, my arrival restored peace to the whole society, and Vulcan himself did me the honour of applying plasters to my wounds, which healed them immediately; he also placed refreshments before me, particularly nectar, and other rich wines, such as the gods and goddesses only aspire to. After this repast was over, Vulcan ordered Venus to show me every indulgence which my situation required. To describe the apartment and the couch on which I reposed, is totally impossible, therefore I will not attempt it; let it suffice to say, it exceeds the power of language to do it justice, or speak of that kind-hearted goddess in any terms equal to her merit.

Vulcan gave me a very concise account of Mount Etna: he said it was nothing more than an accumulation of ashes thrown from his forge; that he was frequently obliged to chastise his people, at whom, in his passion, he made it a practice to throw red-hot coals at home, which they often parried with great dexterity, and then threw them up into the world, to place them out of his reach, for they never attempted to assault him in return, by throwing them back again. "Our quarrels," added he, "last sometimes three or four months, and these appearances of coals or cinders in the world are what I find you mortals call eruptions." Mount Vesuvius, he assured me, was another of his shops, to which he had a passage three hundred and fifty leagues under the bed of the sea, where similar quarrels produced similar eruptions. I should have continued here as an humble attendant upon Madam Venus; but some busy tattlers, who delight in mischief, whispered a tale in Vulcan's ear, which roused in him a fit of jealousy not to be appeased. Without the least previous notice, he took me one morning under his arm, as I was waiting upon Venus, agreeable to custom, and carried me to an apartment I had never before seen, in which there was, to all appearance, *a well*, with a wide mouth: over this he held me at arm's length, and saying, "*Ungrateful mortal, return to the world from whence you came;*" without giving me the least opportunity of reply, dropped me in the centre. I found myself descending with an increasing rapidity, till the horror of my mind deprived me of all reflection. I suppose I fell into a trance, from which I was suddenly roused by plunging into a large body of water illuminated by the rays of the sun!!

I could, from my infancy, swim well, and play tricks in the water. I now found myself in paradise, considering the horrors of mind I had just been released from. After looking about me some time, I could discover nothing but an expanse of sea, extending beyond the eye in every direction; I also found it very cold, a different climate from Master Vulcan's shop. At last I observed at some distance a body of amazing magnitude, like a huge rock, approaching me; I soon discovered it to be a piece of floating ice; I swam round it till I found a place where I could ascend to the top, which I did, but not without some difficulty. Still I was out of sight of land, and despair returned with double force; however, before night came on, I saw a sail, which we approached very fast; when it was within a very small distance, I hailed them in German; they answered in Dutch; I then flung myself into the sea, and they threw out a rope, by which I was taken on board. I now enquired where we were, and was informed, in the great Southern Ocean; this opened a discovery which removed all my doubts and difficulties. It was now evident that I had passed from Mount Etna through the centre of the earth to the South Seas: this, gentlemen, was a much shorter cut than going round the world, and which no man has accomplished, or ever attempted, but myself: however, the next time I perform it, I will be much more particular in my observations.

I took some refreshment, and went to rest. The Dutch are a very rude sort of people; I related the Etna passage to the officers, exactly as I have done to you, and some of them, particularly the captain, seemed by his grimaces and half-sentences to doubt my veracity; however, as he had kindly taken me on board his vessel, and was then in the very act of administering to my necessities, I pocketed the affront.

I now in my turn began to inquire where they were bound? To which they answered they were in search of new discoveries; "*and if,*" said they, "*your story is true, a new passage is really discovered, and we shall not return disappointed.*" We were now exactly in Captain Cook's first track, and arrived the next morning in Botany Bay. This place I would by no means recommend to the English government as a receptacle for felons, or place of punishment; it should rather be the reward of merit, nature having most bountifully bestowed her best gifts upon it.

We stayed here but three days; the fourth after our departure a most dreadful storm arose, which in a few hours destroyed all our sails, splintered our bowsprit, and brought down our top-mast; it fell directly upon the box that enclosed our compass, which, with the compass, was broken to pieces. Every one who has been at sea knows the consequences of such a misfortune: we now were at a loss where to steer. At length the storm abated, which was followed by a steady brisk gale, that carried us at least forty knots an hour for six months! [we should suppose the Baron has made a little mistake, and substituted *months* for *days*] when we began to observe an amazing change in everything about us: our spirits became light, our noses were regaled with the most aromatic effluvia imaginable: the sea had also changed its complexion, and from green became white!! Soon after these wonderful alterations, we saw land, and not at any great distance an inlet, which we sailed up near sixty leagues, and found it wide and deep, flowing with milk of the most delicious taste. Here we landed, and soon found it was an island consisting of one large cheese: we discovered this by one of the company fainting away as soon as we landed: this man always had an aversion to cheese; when he recovered, he desired the cheese to be taken from under his feet: upon examination we found him perfectly right, for the whole island, as before observed, was nothing but a cheese of immense magnitude! Upon this the inhabitants, who are amazingly numerous, principally sustain themselves, and it grows every night in proportion as it is consumed in the day. Here seemed to be plenty of vines, with bunches of large grapes, which, upon being pressed, yielded nothing but milk. We saw the inhabitants running races upon the surface of the milk: they were upright, comely figures, nine feet high, have three legs, and but one arm; upon the whole, their form was graceful, and when they quarrel, they exercise a straight horn, which grows in adults from the centre of their foreheads, with great adroitness; they did not sink at all, but ran and walked upon the surface of the milk, as we do upon a bowling-green.

Upon this island of cheese grows great plenty of corn, the ears of which produce loaves of bread, ready made, of a round form like mushrooms. We discovered, in our rambles over this cheese, seventeen other rivers of milk, and ten of wine.

After thirty-eight days' journey, we arrived on the opposite side to that on which we landed: here we found some blue mould, as cheese-eaters call it, from whence spring all kinds of rich fruit; instead of breeding mites, it produces peaches, nectarines, apricots, and a thousand delicious fruits, which we are not acquainted with. In these trees, which are of an amazing size, were plenty of birds' nests; amongst others was a king-fisher's, of prodigious magnitude; it was at least twice the circumference of the dome of St. Paul's Church in London. Upon inspection, this nest was made of huge trees curiously joined together; there were, let me see *(for I make it a rule always to* *speak within compass,)* there were upwards of five hundred eggs in this nest, and each of them was as large as four common hogsheads, or eight barrels, and we could not only see, but hear the young ones chirping within. Having, with great fatigue, cut open one of these eggs, we let out a young one unfeathered, considerably larger than twenty full-grown vultures. Just as we had given this youngster his liberty, the old kingfisher lighted, and seizing our captain, who had been active in breaking the egg, in one of her claws, flew with him above a mile high, and then let him drop into the sea, but not till she had beaten all his teeth out of his mouth with her wings.

Dutchmen generally swim well: he soon joined us, and we retreated to our ship. On our return we took a different route, and observed many strange objects. We shot two wild oxen, each with one horn, also like the inhabitants, except that it sprouted from between the eyes of these animals; we were afterwards concerned at having destroyed them, as we found, by inquiry, they tamed these creatures, and used them as we do horses, to ride upon and draw their carriages; their flesh, we were informed, is excellent, but useless where people live upon cheese and milk. When we had reached within two days' journey of the ship, we observed three men hanging to a tall tree by their heels; upon inquiring the cause of their punishment, I found they had all been travellers, and upon their return home had deceived their friends, by describing places they never saw, and relating things that never happened: this gave me no concern, *as I have ever confined myself to facts.*

As soon as we arrived at the ship, we unmoored, and set sail from this extraordinary country, when, to our astonishment, all the trees upon shore, of which there were a great number very tall and large, paid their respects to us twice, bowing to exact time, and immediately recovered their former posture, which was quite erect. By what we could learn of this CHEESE, it was considerably larger than the continent of all Europe!

After sailing three months, we knew not where, being still without compass, we arrived in a sea which appeared to be almost black: upon tasting it, we found it most excellent wine, and had great difficulty to keep the sailors from getting drunk with it: however, in a few hours we found ourselves surrounded by whales and other animals of an immense magnitude; one of which appeared to be too large for the eye to form a judgment of: we did not see him till we were close to him. This monster drew our ship, with all her masts standing, and sails bent, by suction into his mouth, between his teeth, which were much larger and taller than the mast of a first-rate man-of-war. After we had been in his mouth some time, he opened it pretty wide, took in an immense quantity of water, and floated our vessel, which was at least five hundred tons burthen, into his stomach; here we lay as quiet as at anchor in a dead calm. The air, to be sure, was rather warm, and very offensive. We found anchors, cables, boats, and barges in abundance, and a considerable number of ships, some laden and some not, which this creature had swallowed. Everything was transacted by torch-light; no sun, no moon, no planet, to make observations from. We were all generally afloat and aground twice a-day: whenever he drank, it became high water with us; and when he evacuated, we found ourselves aground: upon a moderate computation, he took in more water at a single draught than is generally to be found in the Lake of Geneva, though that is above thirty miles in circumference. On the second day of our confinement in these regions of darkness, I ventured at low water, as we called it, when the ship was aground, to ramble with the captain, and a few of the other officers, with lights in our hands; we met with people of all nations, to the amount of upwards of ten thousand; they were going to hold a council how to recover their liberty; some of them having lived in this animal's stomach several years; there were several children here who had never seen the world, their mothers having lain in repeatedly in this warm situation. Just as the chairman was going to inform us of the business upon which we were assembled, this plaguy fish becoming thirsty, drank in his usual manner; the water poured in with such impetuosity, that we were all obliged to retreat to our respective ships immediately, or run the risk of being drowned; some were obliged to swim for it, and with difficulty saved their lives. In a few hours after, we were more fortunate, we met again just after the monster had evacuated. I was chosen chairman, and the first thing I did was to propose splicing two main-masts together; and the next time he opened his mouth to be ready to wedge them in, so as to prevent his shutting it. It was unanimously approved. One hundred stout men were chosen upon this service. We had scarcely got our masts properly prepared, when an opportunity offered, the monster opened his mouth; immediately the top of the mast was placed against the roof, and the other end pierced his tongue, which effectually prevented him from shutting his mouth. As soon as everything in his stomach was afloat, we manned a few boats, who rowed themselves and us into the world. The daylight, after, as near as we could judge, three months' confinement in total darkness, cheered our spirits surprisingly. When we had all taken our leave of this capacious animal, we mustered just a fleet of ninety-five ships, of all nations, who had been in this confined situation.

We left the two masts in his mouth, to prevent others being confined in the same horrid gulf of darkness and filth. Our first object was to learn what part of the world we were in; this we were for some time at a loss to ascertain: at last I found, from former observations, that we were in the Caspian Sea, which washes part of the country of the Calmuck Tartars! How we came here, it was impossible to conceive, as this sea has no communication with any other. One of the inhabitants of the Cheese Island whom I had brought with me, accounted for it thus:—that the monster, in whose stomach we had been so long confined, had carried us here through some subterranean passage: however, we pushed to shore, and I was the first who landed. Just as I put my foot upon the ground, a large bear leaped upon me with his fore-paws; I caught one in each hand, and squeezed him till he cried out most lustily; however, in this position I held him till I starved him to death. You may laugh, gentlemen, but this was soon accomplished, as I prevented him licking his paws. From hence I travelled up to St. Petersburgh a second time: here an old friend gave me a most excellent pointer, descended from the famous bitch before mentioned, that littered while she was hunting a hare. I had the misfortune to have him shot soon after by a blundering sportsman, who fired at him instead of a covey of partridges which he had just set. Of this creature's skin I have had this waistcoat made, (showing his waistcoat,) which always leads me involuntarily to game if I walk in the fields in the proper season, and when I come within shot, *one of the buttons constantly flies off, and lodges upon the spot where the sport is;* and as the birds rise, being always primed and cocked, I never miss them. Here are now but three buttons left. I shall have a new set sewed on against the shooting season commences.

When a covey of partridges is disturbed in this manner, by the button falling amongst them, they always rise from the ground in a direct line before each other. I one day, by forgetting to take my ramrod out of my gun, shot it straight through a leash, as regularly as if the cook had spitted them. I had forgot to put in any shot, and the rod had been made so hot with the powder, that the birds were completely roasted by the time I reached home.

Since my arrival in England, I have accomplished what I had very much at heart, viz., providing for the inhabitant of the Cheese Island whom I had brought with me. My old friend, Sir William Chambers, who is entirely indebted to me for all his ideas of Chinese gardening, by a description of which he has gained such high reputation—I say, gentlemen, in a discourse which I had with this gentleman, he seemed much distressed for a contrivance to light the lamps at the new buildings, Somerset House; the common mode with ladders, he observed, was both dirty and inconvenient. My native of the Cheese Island popped into my head; he was only nine feet high when I first brought him from his own country, but was now increased to ten and a half: I introduced him to Sir William, and he is appointed to that honourable office. He is also to carry, under a large cloak, a utensil in each coat pocket, instead of those four which Sir William has *very properly* fixed for private purposes in so conspicuous a situation in the great quadrangle.

He has also obtained from Mr. PITT the situation of messenger to his Majesty's lords of the bedchamber, whose principal employment will *now* be, divulging the secrets of the Royal Household to their *worthy* patron.

CHAPTER XXI.

Extraordinary flight on the back of an eagle, over France to Gibraltar, South and North America, the Polar Regions, and back to England, within six-and-thirty hours.

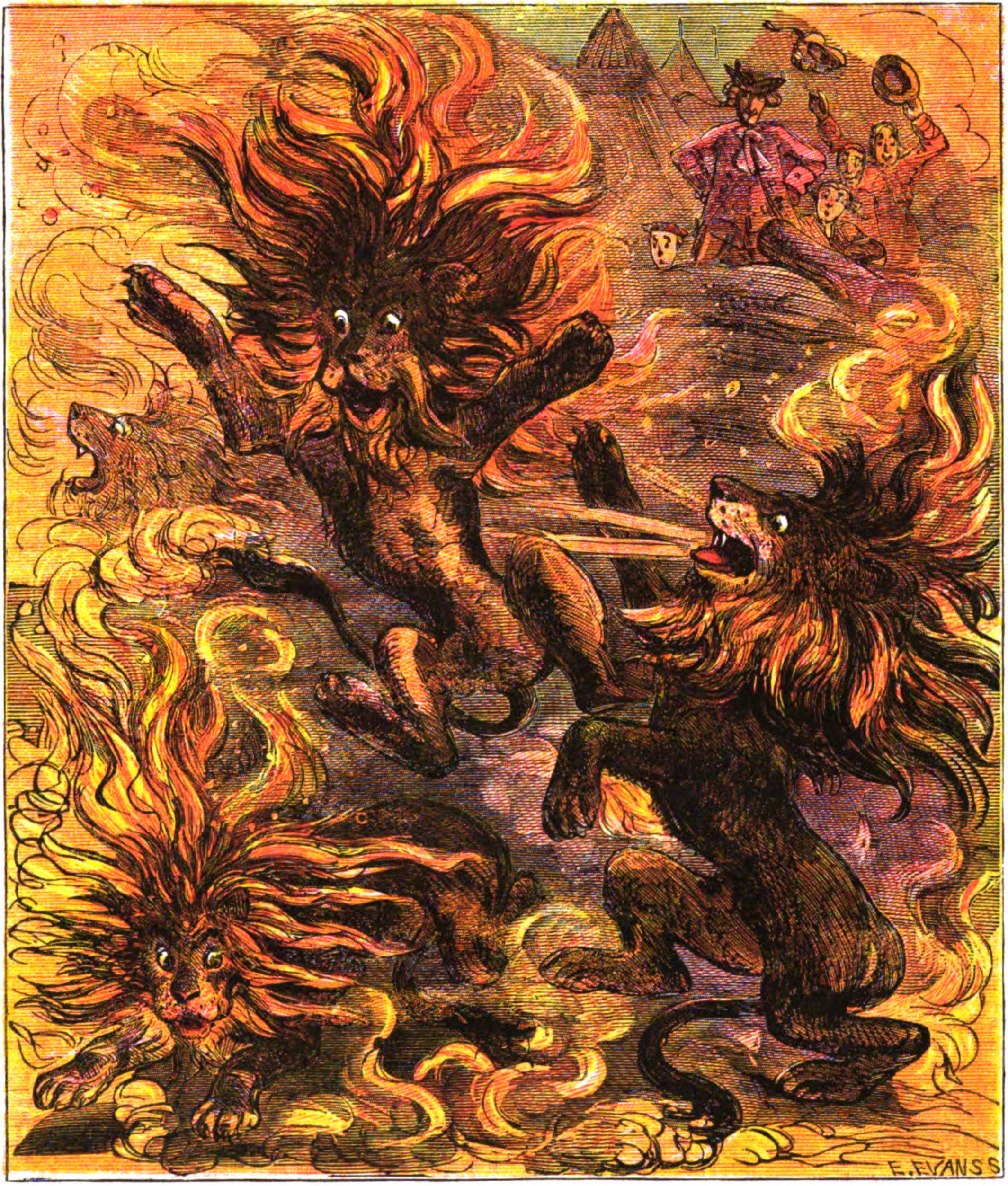
About the beginning of his present Majesty's reign, I had some business with a distant relation, who then lived on the Isle of Thanet; it was a family dispute, and not likely to be finished soon. I made it a practice during my residence there, the weather being fine, to walk out every morning. After a few of these excursions, I observed an object upon a great eminence about three miles distant: I extended my walk to it, and found the ruins of an ancient temple: I approached it with admiration and astonishment; the traces of grandeur and magnificence which yet remained were evident proofs of its former splendour. Here I could not help lamenting the ravages and devastations of time, of which that once noble structure exhibited such a melancholy proof. I walked round it several times, meditating on the fleeting and transitory nature of all terrestrial things. On the eastern end were the remains of a lofty tower, near forty feet high, overgrown with ivy, the top apparently flat; I surveyed it on every side very minutely, thinking that if I could gain its summit, I should enjoy the most delightful prospect of the circumjacent country. Animated with this hope, I resolved, if possible, to gain the summit, which I at length effected by means of the ivy, though not without great difficulty and danger: the top I found covered with this evergreen, except a large chasm in the middle. After I had surveyed with pleasing wonder the beauties of art and nature that conspired to enrich the scene, curiosity prompted me to sound the opening in the middle, in order to ascertain its depth, as I entertained a suspicion that it might probably communicate with some unexplored subterranean cavern in the hill: but having no line I was at a loss how to proceed. After revolving the matter in my thoughts for some time, I resolved to drop a stone down and listen to the echo: having found one that answered my purpose, I placed myself over the hole, with one foot on each side, and stooping down to listen, I dropped the stone, which I had no sooner done than I heard a rustling below, and suddenly a monstrous eagle put its head right opposite my face, and rising up with irresistible force, carried me away seated on its shoulders: I instantly grasped it round the neck, which was large enough to fill my arms; and its wings, when extended, were ten yards from one extremity to the other. As it rose with a regular ascent, my seat was perfectly easy, and I enjoyed the prospect below with inexpressible pleasure. It hovered over Margate for some time, was seen by several people, and many shots were fired at it; one ball hit the heel of my shoe, but did me no injury. It then directed its course to Dover cliff, where it alighted, and I thought of dismounting, but was prevented by a sudden discharge of musketry from a party of marines that were exercising on the beach; the balls flew about my head, and rattled on the feathers of the eagle like hail-stones; yet I could not perceive it had received any injury. It instantly re-ascended and flew over the sea towards Calais; but so very high, that the Channel seemed to be no broader than the Thames at London Bridge. In a quarter of an hour I found myself over a thick wood in France, where the eagle descended very rapidly, which caused me to slip down to the back part of its head; but alighting on a large tree, and raising its head, I recovered my seat as before, but saw no possibility of disengaging myself without the danger of being killed by the fall; so I determined to sit fast, thinking it would carry me to the Alps, or some other high mountain, where I could dismount without any danger. After resting a few minutes, it took wing, flew several times round the wood, and screamed loud enough to be heard across the English Channel. In a few minutes, one of the same species arose out of the wood, and flew directly towards us; it surveyed me with evident marks of displeasure, and came very near me. After flying several times round, they both directed their course to the south-west. I soon observed that the one I rode upon could not keep pace with the other, but inclined towards the earth, on account of my weight; its companion perceiving this, turned round and placed itself in such a position that the other could rest its head on its rump; in this manner they proceeded till noon, when I saw the rock of Gibraltar very distinctly. The day being clear, notwithstanding my degree of elevation, the earth's surface appeared just like a map, where land, sea, lakes, rivers, mountains, and the like were perfectly distinguishable; and having some knowledge of geography, I was at no loss to determine what part of the globe I was in.

Whilst I was contemplating this wonderful prospect, a dreadful howling suddenly began all around me, and in a moment I was invested by thousands of small black, deformed, frightful-looking creatures, who pressed me on all sides in such a manner that I could neither move hand or foot: but I had not been in their possession more than ten minutes, when I heard the most delightful music that can possibly be imagined: which was suddenly changed into a noise, the most awful and tremendous, to which the report of cannon, or the loudest claps of thunder could bear no more proportion than the gentle zephyrs of the evening to the most dreadful hurricane: but the shortness of its duration prevented all those fatal effects which a prolongation of it would certainly have been attended with.

The music commenced, and I saw a great number of the most beautiful little creatures seize the other party, and throw them with great violence into something like a snuff-box, which they shut down, and one threw it away with incredible velocity; then turning to me, he said, they whom he had secured were a party of devils, who had wandered from their proper habitation; and that the vehicle in which they were enclosed would fly with unabating rapidity for ten thousand years, when it would burst of its own accord, and the devils would recover their liberty and faculties, as at the present moment. He had no sooner finished this relation than the music ceased, and they all disappeared, leaving me in a state of mind bordering on the confines of despair.

When I had recomposed myself a little, and looking before me with inexpressible pleasure, I observed that the eagles were preparing to light on the peak of Teneriffe: they descended on the top of a rock; but seeing no possible means of escape if I dismounted, determined me to remain where I was. The eagles sat down seemingly fatigued, when the heat of the sun soon caused them both to fall asleep; nor did I long resist its fascinating power. In the cool of the evening, when the sun had retired below the horizon, I was roused from sleep by the eagle moving under me; and having stretched myself along its back, I sat up, and resumed my travelling position, when they both took wing, and having placed themselves as before, directed their course to South America. The moon shining bright during the whole night, I had a fine view of all the islands in those seas.

About the break of day we reached the great continent of America, that part called Terra Firma, and descended on the top of a very high mountain. At this time the moon, far distant in the west, and obscured by dark clouds, but just afforded light sufficient for me to discover a kind of shrubbery all around, bearing fruit something like cabbages, which the eagles began to feed on very eagerly. I endeavoured to discover my situation, but fogs and passing clouds involved me in the thickest darkness; and what rendered the scene still more shocking, was the tremendous howling of wild beasts, some of which appeared to be very near: however, I determined to keep my seat, imagining that the eagle would carry me away if any of them should make an hostile attempt. When daylight began to appear, I thought of examining the fruit which I had seen the eagles eat; and as some was hanging, which I could easily come at, I took out my knife and cut a slice: but how great was my surprise to see that it had all the appearance of roast beef, regularly mixed, both fat and lean! I tasted it, and found it well-flavoured and delicious; then cut several large slices and put in my pocket, where I found a crust of bread which I had brought from Margate; took it out, and found three musket-balls that had been lodged in it on Dover cliff. I extracted them, and cutting a few slices more, made a hearty meal of bread and cold beef fruit. I then cut down two of the largest that grew near me, and tying them together with one of my garters, hung them over the eagle's neck for another occasion, filling my pockets at the same time. While I was settling these affairs, I observed a large fruit like an inflated bladder, which I wished to try an experiment upon: and striking my knife into



THE BARON'S ENCAMPMENT IS SURROUNDED BY LIONS, WHO MEET WITH A WARM RECEPTION.

one of them, a fine pure liquor like Hollands gin gushed out, which the eagles observing, eagerly drank up from the ground. I cut down the bladder as fast as I could, and saved about half a pint in the bottom of it, which I tasted, and could not distinguish it from the best mountain wine. I drank it all, and found myself greatly refreshed. By this time the eagles began to stagger against the shrubs. I endeavoured to keep my seat, but was soon thrown to some distance among the bushes. In attempting to rise, I put my hand upon a large hedgehog, which happened to lie among the grass upon its back: it instantly closed round my hand, so that I found it impossible to shake it off. I struck it several times against the ground without effect; but while I was thus employed, I heard a rustling among the shrubbery, and looking up, I saw a huge animal within three yards of me; I could make no defence, but held out both my hands, when it rushed upon me, and seized that on which the hedgehog was fixed. My hand being soon relieved, I ran to some distance, where I saw the creature suddenly drop down and expire with the hedgehog in its throat. When the danger was past, I went to view the eagles, and found them lying on the grass fast asleep, being intoxicated with the liquor they had drank. Indeed, I found myself considerably elevated by it, and seeing everything quiet, I began to search for some more, which I soon found; and having cut down two large bladders, about a gallon each, I tied them together, and hung them over the neck of the other eagle; and two smaller ones I tied with a cord round my own waist. Having secured a good stock of provisions, and perceiving the eagles begin to recover, I again took my seat. In half an hour they arose majestically from the place, without taking the least notice of their encumbrance.—Each re-assumed its former station; and directing their course to the northward, they crossed the Gulf of Mexico, entered North America, and steered directly for the Polar regions, which gave me the finest opportunity of viewing this vast continent that can possibly be imagined.

Before we entered the frigid zone, the cold began to affect me; but piercing one of my bladders, I took a draught, and found that it could make no impression on me afterwards. Passing over Hudson's Bay, I saw several of the Company's ships lying at anchor, and many tribes of Indians marching with their furs to market.

By this time I was so reconciled to my seat, and become such an expert rider, that I could sit up and look around me; but in general I lay along the eagle's neck, grasping it in my arms, with my hands immersed in its feathers, in order to keep them warm.

In these cold climates I observed that the eagles flew with greater rapidity, in order, I suppose, to keep their blood in circulation. In passing Baffin's Bay, I saw several large Greenlandmen to the eastward, and many surprising mountains of ice in those seas.

While I was surveying these wonders of nature, it occurred to me that this was a good opportunity to discover the north-west passage, if any such thing existed, and not only obtain the reward offered by government, but the honour of a discovery pregnant with so many advantages to every European nation. But while my thoughts were absorbed in this pleasing reverie, I was alarmed by the first eagle striking its head against a solid transparent substance; and in a moment that which I rode experienced the same fate, and both fell down seemingly dead.

Here our lives must inevitably have terminated, had not a sense of danger, and the singularity of my situation, inspired me with a degree of skill and dexterity, which enabled us to fall near two miles perpendicular with as little inconveniency as if we had been let down with a rope: for no sooner did I perceive the eagles strike against a frozen cloud, which is very common near the poles, than (they being close together) I laid myself along the back of the foremost, and took hold of its wings to keep them extended, at the same time stretching out my legs behind to support the wings of the other. This had the desired effect; and we descended very safe on a mountain of ice, which I supposed to be about three miles above the level of the sea.

I dismounted; unloaded the eagles; opened one of the bladders, and administered some of the liquor to each of them, without once considering that the horrors of destruction seemed to have conspired against me. The roaring of waves, crashing of ice, and the howling of bears, conspired to form a scene the most awful and tremendous: but notwithstanding this, my concern for the recovery of the eagles was so great, that I was insensible of the danger to which I was exposed. Having rendered them every assistance in my power, I stood over them in painful anxiety, fully sensible that it was only by means of them that I could possibly be delivered from these abodes of despair.

But suddenly a monster bear began to roar behind me, with a voice like thunder. I turned round, and seeing the creature just ready to devour me, having the bladder of liquor in my hands, through fear I squeezed it so hard, that it burst, and the liquor flying in the eyes of the animal, totally deprived it of sight. It instantly turned from me, ran away in a state of distraction, and soon fell over a precipice of ice into the sea, where I saw it no more.

The danger being over, I again turned my attention to the eagles, whom I found in a fair way of recovery; and suspecting that they were faint for want of victuals, I took one of the beef fruits, cut it into small slices, and presented them with it, which they devoured with avidity.

Having given them plenty to eat and drink, and disposed of the remainder of my provision, I took possession of my seat as before. After composing myself, and adjusting every thing in the best manner, I began to eat and drink very heartily; and through the effects of the mountain, as I called it, was very cheerful, and began to sing a few verses of a song which I had learned when I was a boy: but the noise soon alarmed the eagles, who had been asleep, through the quantity of liquor which they had drank, and they arose seemingly much terrified. Happily for me, however, when I was feeding them I had accidentally turned their heads towards the south-east, which course they pursued with a rapid motion. In a few hours I saw the Western Isles, and soon after had the inexpressible pleasure of seeing Old England. I took no notice of the seas or islands over which I passed.

The eagles descended gradually as they drew near the shore, intending, as I supposed, to alight on one of the Welch mountains; but when they came to the distance of about sixty yards, two guns were fired at them, loaded with balls, one of which took place in a bladder of liquor that hung to my waist; the other entered the breast of the foremost eagle, who fell to the ground, while that which I rode, having received no injury, flew away with amazing swiftness.

This circumstance alarmed me exceedingly, and I began to think it was impossible for me to escape with my life; but recovering a little, I once more looked down upon the earth; when, to my inexpressible joy, I saw Margate at a little distance, and the eagle descending on the old tower whence it had carried me on the morning of the day before. It no sooner came down than I threw myself off, happy to find that I was once more restored to the world. The eagle flew away in a few minutes, and I sat down to compose my fluttering spirits, which I did in a few hours.

I soon paid a visit to my friends, and related these adventures. Amazement stood in every countenance; their congratulations on my returning in safety were repeated with an unaffected degree of pleasure; and we passed the evening as we are doing now, every person present paying the highest compliments to my COURAGE and VERACITY.

CHAPTER XXII.

The Baron insists on the Veracity of his former Memoirs—Forms a Design of making Discoveries in the Interior Parts of Africa—His Discourse with Hilaro Frosticos about it—His Conversation with Lady Fragrantia—The Baron goes with other Persons of Distinction to Court; relates an Anecdote of the Marquis de Bellecourt.

ALL that I have related before, said the Baron, is gospel; and if there be any one so hardy as to deny it, I am ready to fight him with any weapon he pleases. Yes, cried he, in a more elevated tone, as he started from his seat, I will condemn him to swallow this decanter, glass and all, perhaps, and filled with kerren-wasser; [a kind of ardent spirit distilled from cherries, and much used in some parts of Germany.] Therefore, my dear friends and companions, have confidence in what I say, and pay honour to the tales of Munchausen. A traveller has a right to relate and embellish his adventures as he pleases; and it is very unpolite to refuse that deference and applause they deserve.

Having passed some time in England since the completion of my former memoirs, I at length began to revolve in my mind what a prodigious field of discovery must be in the interior part of Africa. I could not sleep with the thoughts of it; I therefore determined to gain every proper assistance from government, to penetrate the celebrated source of the Nile, and assume the viceroyship of the interior kingdoms of Africa, or, at least, the great realm of Monomotapa. It was happy for me that I had one most powerful friend at court, whom I shall call the illustrious Hilaro Frosticos. You perchance know him not by that name: but we had a language among ourselves, as well we may; for, in the course of my peregrinations I have acquired precisely nine hundred and ninety-nine leash of languages.—What! gentlemen, do you stare?—Well, I allow there are not so many languages spoken in this vile world: but then, have I not been in the Moon? and trust me, whenever I write a Treatise upon Education, I shall delineate methods of inculcating whole dozens of languages at once, French, Spanish, Greek, Hebrew, Cherokee, &c., in such a style as will shame all the pedagogues existing.

Having passed a whole night without being able to sleep for the vivid imagination of African discoveries, I hastened to the levee of my illustrious friend Hilaro Frosticos; and having mentioned my intention with all the vigour of fancy, he gravely considered my words, and after some awful meditations, thus he spoke: "*Olough, ma genesat, istum fullanah, cum dera kargos belgarasah eseum balgo bartigos triangulissimus!*—However," added he, "it behoveth thee to consider and ponder well upon the perils and the multitudinous dangers in the way of that wight who thus advanceth in all the perambulation of adventures. And verily, most valiant Sire and Baron, I hope thou wilt demean thyself with all that laudable gravity and precaution which, as is related in the three hundred and forty-seventh chapter of the Prophilactics, is of more consideration than all the merits in this terraqueous globe. Yes, most truly do I advise thee unto thy good, and speak unto thee, most valiant Munchausen, with the greatest esteem, and wish thee to succeed in thy voyage; for it is said, that in the interior realms of Africa there are tribes that can see but just three inches and a half beyond the extremity of their noses; and verily thou shouldest moderate thyself, even sure and slow; they stumble who walk fast. But we shall bring you unto the Lady Fragrantia, and have her opinion of the matter." He then took from his pocket a cap of dignity, such as described in the most honourable and antique heraldry, and placing it upon my head, addressed me thus:—"As thou seemest again to revive the spirit of ancient adventure, permit me to place upon thy head this favour, as a mark of the esteem in which I hold thy valorous disposition."

The Lady Fragrantia, my dear friends, was one of the most divine creatures in all Great Britian, and was desperately in love with me. She was drawing my portrait upon a piece of white satin, when the most noble Hilaro Frosticos advanced. He pointed to the cap of dignity which he had placed upon my head. "I do declare, Hilaro," said the lovely Fragrantia, "'tis pretty, 'tis interesting; I love you, and I like you, my dear Baron," said she, putting on another plume—"this gives it an air more delicate and more fantastical. I do thus, my dear Munchausen, as your friend—yet you can reject or accept my present just as you please; but I like the fancy; 'tis a good one, and I mean to improve it: and against whatever enemies you go, I shall have the sweet satisfaction to remember you bear my favour on your head!"

I snatched it with trepidation, and gracefully dropping on my knees, I three times kissed it with all the rapture of romantic love. "I swear," cried I, "by thy bright eyes, and by the lovely whiteness of thine arm, that no savage, tyrant, or enemy, upon the face of the earth shall despoil me of this favour, while one drop of the blood of the Munchausens doth circulate in my veins! I will bear it triumphant through the realms of Africa, whither I now intend my course, and make it respected, even in the court of Prester John."

"I admire your spirit," replied she, "and shall use my utmost interest at court to have you despatched with every pomp, and as soon as possible: but here comes a most brilliant company indeed, Lady Carolina Wilhelmina Amelia Skeggs, Lord Spigot, and Lady Faucet, and the Countess of Belleair."

After the ceremonies of introduction to this company were over, we proceeded to consult upon the business; and as the cause met with general applause, it was immediately determined that I should proceed without delay, as soon as I obtained the sovereign approbation. "I am convinced," said Lord Spigot, "that if there be anything really unknown and worthy of our most ardent curiosity, it must be in the immense regions of Africa; that country, which seems to be the oldest on the globe, and yet with the greater part of which we are almost utterly unacquainted. What prodigious wealth of gold and diamonds must not lie concealed in those torrid regions, when the very rivers on the coast pour forth continual specimens of golden sand! 'Tis my opinion, therefore, that the Baron deserves the applause of all Europe for his spirit, and merits the most powerful assistance of the sovereign."

So flattering an approbation, you may be sure, was delightful to my heart; and with every confidence and joy, I suffered them to take me to court that instant. After the usual ceremonies of introduction, suffice it to say, that I met with every honour and applause that my most sanguine expectations could demand. I had always a taste for the fashionable *je ne sais quoi* of the most elegant society; and in the presence of all the sovereigns of Europe I ever found myself quite at home, and experienced from the whole court the most flattering esteem and admiration. I remember, one particular day, the fate of the unfortunate Marquis de Bellecourt. The Countess of Rassinda, who accompanied him, looked most divinely. "Yes, I am confident," said the Marquis de Bellecourt to me, "that I have acted according to the strictest sentiments of justice, and of loyalty to my sovereign. What stronger breast-plate than a heart untainted? and though I did not receive a word nor a look, yet I cannot think—no, it were impossible—to be misrepresented. Conscious of my own integrity, I will try again—I will go boldly up." The Marquis de Bellecourt saw the opportunity; he advanced three paces, put his hand upon his breast, and bowed. "Permit me," said he, "with the most profound respect, to———." His tongue faltered—he could scarcely believe his sight: for at that moment the whole company were moving out of the room. He found himself almost alone, deserted by every one. "What!" said he, "and did he turn upon his heel with the most marked contempt? Would he not speak to me? Would he not even hear me utter a word in my defence?" His heart died within him—not even a look, a smile for any one. "My friends! Do they not know me? Do they not see me? Alas! they fear to catch the contagion of my———. Then," said he, "adieu!—'tis more than I can bear—I shall go to my country seat, and never, never will return.—Adieu, fond court, adieu!"

The venerable Marquis de Bellecourt stopped for a moment ere he entered his carriage. Thrice he looked back, and thrice he wiped the starting tear from his eye—"Yes," said he, "for once at least, Truth shall be found—in the bottom of a well!"

Peace to thy ghost, most noble marquis,—a King of kings shall pity thee; and thousands who are yet unborn shall owe their happiness to thee, and have cause to bless thee; thousands, perhaps, that shall never even know thy name—but Munchausen's self shall celebrate thy glory!

CHAPTER XXIII.

Preparation for the Baron's Expedition into Africa—Description of his Chariot; the Beauties of its Interior Decorations; the Animals that drew it; and the Mechanism of the Wheels.

EVERYTHING being concluded, and having received my instructions for the voyage, I was conducted by the illustrious Hilaro Frosticos, the Lady Fragrantia, and a prodigious crowd of nobility, and placed sitting upon the summit of the whale's bones at that palace; and having remained in this situation for three days and three nights, as a trial ordeal, and a specimen of my perseverance and resolution, the third hour after midnight they seated me in the chariot of Queen Mab. It was of a prodigious dimension, large enough to contain more stowage than the tun of Heidelberg, and globular like a hazel-nut: in fact, it seemed to be really a hazel-nut grown to a most extravagant dimension, and that a great worm of proportionable enormity had bored a hole in the shell. Through this same entrance I was ushered. It was as large as a coach-door, and I took my seat in the centre, a kind of chair self-balanced without touching anything, like the fancied tomb of Mahomet. The whole interior surface of the nutshell appeared a luminous representation of all the stars of heaven, the fixed stars, the planets, and a comet. The stars were as large as those worn by our first nobility! and the comet, excessively brilliant, seemed as if you had assembled all the eyes of the beautiful girls in the kingdom, and combined them, like a peacock's plumage, into the form of a comet—that is, a globe, and a bearded tail to it, diminishing gradually to a point. This beautiful constellation seemed very sportive and delightful. It was much in the form of a tadpole! and without ceasing, went full of playful giddiness up and down, all over the heaven on the concave surface of a nutshell. One time it would be at that part of the heavens under my feet, and in the next minute would be over my head. It was never at rest, but for ever going east, west, north, or south; and paid no more respect to the different worlds than if they were so many lanterns without reflectors. Some of them he would dash against and push out of their places; others he would burn up and consume to ashes; and others again he would split into fritters, and their fragments would instantly take a globular form, like spilled quicksilver, and become satellites to whatever other worlds they should happen to meet with in their career. In short, the whole seemed an epitome of the creation, past, present, and future,—and all that passes among the stars during one thousand years, was here generally performed in as many seconds.

I surveyed all the beauties of the chariot with wonder and delight.—"Certainly," cried I, "this is heaven in miniature!" In short, I took the reins in my hand.—But before I proceed on my adventures, I shall mention the rest of my attendant furniture. The chariot was drawn by a team of nine bulls harnessed to it, three after three. In the first rank was a most tremendous bull, named John Mowmowsky; the rest were called Jacks in general, but not dignified by any particular denomination. They were all shod for the journey, not indeed like horses, with iron, or as bullocks commonly are, to drag on a cart: but we shod with men's skulls. Each of their feet was, hoof and all, crammed into a man's head, cut off for the purpose, and fastened therein with a kind of cement or paste, so that the skull seemed to be a part of the foot and hoof of the animal. With these skull-shoes the creatures could perform astonishing journeys, and slide upon the water, or upon the ocean, with great velocity. The harnesses were fastened with golden buckles, and decked with studs in a superb style; and the creatures were ridden by nine postilions, crickets of a great size, as large as monkeys, who sat squat upon the heads of the bulls, and were continually chirping at a most infernal rate, loud in proportion to their bodies.

The wheels of the chariot consisted of upwards of ten thousand springs, formed so as to give the greater impetuosity to the vehicle, and were more complex than a dozen clocks like that of Strasburgh. The external of the chariot was adorned with banners, and a superb festoon of the laurel that formerly shaded me on horseback. And now, having given you a very concise description of my machine for travelling into Africa, which you must allow to be far superior to the apparatus of Monsieur Vaillant, I shall proceed to relate the exploits of my voyage.

CHAPTER XXIV.

The Baron proceeds on his voyage—Conveys a squadron to Gibraltar—Declines the Acceptance of the Island of Candia——His Chariot Damaged by Pompey's Pillar and Cleopatra's Needle—The Baron out-does Alexander—Breaks his Chariot, and splits a great Rock at the Cape of Good Hope.

Taking the reins in my hand, while the music gave a general salute, I cracked my whip—away they went—and in three hours I found myself just between the Isle of Wight and the main land of England. Here I remained four days, until I had received part of my accompaniment, which I was ordered to take under my convoy.—'Twas a squadron of men-of-war that had been a long time prepared for the Baltic, but which were now destined for the Mediterranean. By the assistance of large hooks and eyes, exactly such as are worn in our hats, but of a greater size, some hundredweight each, the men-of-war hooked themselves on to the wheels of the vehicle: and, in fact, nothing could be more simple or convenient; because they could be hooked or unhooked in an instant with the utmost facility. In short, having given a general discharge of their artillery, and three cheers, I cracked my whip; away we went, helter skelter, and in six jiffies I found myself and all my retinue safe and in good spirits, just at the rock of Gibraltar. Here I unhooked my squadron, and having taken an affectionate leave of the officers, I suffered them to proceed in their ordinary manner to the place of their destination. The whole garrison were highly delighted with the novelty of my vehicle; and at the pressing solicitations of the governor and officers, I went ashore, and took a view of that barren old rock, about which more powder has been fired away than would purchase twice as much fertile ground in any part of the world! Mounting my chariot, I took the reins, and again made forward, in mad career, down the Mediterranean, to the isle of Candia. Here I received despatches from the Sublime Porte, entreating me to assist in the war against Russia, with a reward of the whole island of Candia for my alliance. At first I hesitated, thinking that the island of Candia would be a most valuable acquisition to the sovereign who at that time employed me, and that the most delicious wines, sugar, &c., in abundance would flourish on the island; yet, when I considered the trade of the East India Company, which would most probably suffer by the intercourse with Persia through the Mediterranean, I at once rejected the proposal, and had afterwards the thanks of the Honourable the House of Commons for my propriety and political discernment.

Having been properly refreshed at Candia, I again proceeded, and in a short time arrived in the land of Egypt. The land of this country, at least that part of it near the sea, is very low, so that I came upon it ere I was aware; and the pillar of Pompey got entangled in the various wheels of the machine, and damaged the whole considerably. Still I drove on through thick and thin, till passing over that great obelisk, the Needle of Cleopatra, the work got entangled again, and jolted at a miserable rate over the mud and swampy ground of all that country; yet my poor bulls trotted on with astonishing labour across the Isthmus of Suez into the Red Sea, and left a track, an obscure channel, which has since been taken by De Tott for the remains of a canal cut by some of the Ptolemies from the Red Sea to the Mediterranean; but, as you perceive, was in reality no more than the track of my chariot, the car of Queen Mab.

As the artists at present in that country are nothing wonderful, though the ancient Egyptians, 'tis said, were most astonishing fellows, I could not procure any new coach-springs, or have a possibility of setting my machine to rights in the kingdom of Egypt; and as I could not presume to attempt another journey overland, and the great mountains of marble beyond the source of the Nile, I thought it most eligible to make the best way I could, by sea, to the Cape of Good Hope, where I supposed I should get some Dutch smiths and carpenters, or perhaps some English artists; and my vehicle being properly repaired, it was my intention thence to proceed overland, through the heart of Africa. The surface of the water, I well knew, afforded less resistance to the wheels of the machine,—it passed along the waves like the chariot of Neptune; and in short, having gotten upon the Red Sea, we scudded away to admiration, through the pass of Babelmandel to the great Western coast of Africa, where Alexander had not the courage to venture.

And really, my friends, if Alexander had ventured towards the Cape of Good Hope, he most probably would have never returned. It is difficult to determine whether there were then any inhabitants in the more southern parts of Africa or not; yet, at any rate, this conqueror of the world would have made but a nonsensical adventure; his miserable ships, not contrived for a long voyage, would have become leaky, and foundered, before he could have doubled the Cape, and left his majesty fairly beyond the limits of the then known world. Yet it would have been an august exit for an Alexander, after having subdued Persia and India, to go wandering the Lord knows where—to Jupiter Ammon, perhaps; or on a voyage to the moon, as an Indian chief once said to Captain Cook.

But, for my part, I was far more successful than Alexander—I drove on with the most amazing rapidity; and thinking to halt on shore at the Cape, I unfortunately drove too close, and shattered the right side wheels of my vehicle against the rock, now called the Table Mountain. The machine went against it with such impetuosity, as completely shivered the rock in a horizontal direction; so that the summit of the mountain, in the form of a semi-sphere, was knocked into the sea: and the steep mountain becoming thereby flattened at the top, has since received the name of the Table Mountain, from its similarity to that piece of furniture.

Just as this part of the mountain was knocked off, the ghost of the Cape, that tremendous sprite, which cuts such a figure in the Lusiad, was discovered sitting squat, in an excavation formed for him in the centre of the mountain. He seemed just like a young bee in his little cell before he comes forth, or like a bean in a bean-pod; and when the upper part of the mountain was split across and knocked off, the superior half of his person was discovered. He appeared of a bottle-blue colour, and started, dazzled with the unexpected glare of the light: hearing the dreadful rattle of the wheels, and the loud chirping of the crickets, he was thunder-struck; and instantly giving a shriek, sunk down ten thousand fathoms in the earth; while the mountain, vomiting out some smoke, silently closed up, and left not a trace behind!

CHAPTER XXV.

The Baron secures his Chariot, &c., at the Cape, and takes his Passage for England in a homeward-bound Indiaman—Wrecked upon an Island of Ice, near the Coast of Guinea—Escapes from the Wreck, and rears a variety of Vegetables upon the Island—Meets some Vessels belonging to the Negroes, bringing White Slaves from Europe, in Retaliation, to work upon their Plantations in a Cold Climate near the South Pole—Arrives in England, and lays an Account of his Expedition before the Privy Council—Great Preparations for a new Expedition—The Sphinx, Gog and Magog, and a great Company attend him—The Ideas of Hilaro Frosticos respecting the Interior Parts of Africa.

I PERCEIVED with grief and consternation the miscarriage of all my apparatus; yet I was not absolutely dejected: a great mind is never known but in adversity. With permission of the Dutch governor, the chariot was properly laid up in a great storehouse, erected at the water's edge, and the bulls received every refreshment possible after so terrible a voyage. Well, you may be sure they deserved it; and therefore every attendance was engaged for them, until I should return.

As it was not possible to do anything more, I took my passage in a homeward-bound Indiaman, to return to London, and lay the matter before the Privy Council.

We met with nothing particular until we arrived upon the coast of Guinea, where, to our utter astonishment, we perceived a great hill, seemingly of glass, advancing against us in the open sea; the rays of the sun were reflected upon it with such splendour, that it was extremely difficult to gaze at the phenomenon. I immediately knew it to be an island of ice, and, though in so very warm a latitude, determined to make all possible sail from such horrible danger. We did so, but all in vain; for about eleven o'clock at night, blowing a very hard gale, and exceedingly dark, we struck upon the island. Nothing could equal the distraction, the shrieks and despair of the whole crew; until I, knowing there was not a moment to be lost, cheered up their spirits, and bade them not despond, but do as I should request them. In a few minutes the vessel was half full of water; and the enormous castle of ice that seemed to hem us in on every side, in some places falling in hideous fragments upon the deck, killed the one half of the crew; upon which, getting upon the summit of the mast, I contrived to make it fast to a great promontory of the ice, and calling to the remainder of the crew to follow me, we all escaped from the wreck, and got upon the summit of the island.

The rising sun soon gave us a dreadful prospect of our situation, and the loss, or rather icefication, of the vessel; for being closed in on every side with castles of ice during the night, she was absolutely frozen over and buried, in such a manner that we could behold her under our feet, even in the central solidity of the island. Having debated what was best to be done, we immediately cut down, through the ice, and got up some of the cables of the vessel and the boats, which making fast to the island, we towed it with all our might, determined to bring home island and all, or perish in the attempt. On the summit of the island we placed what oakum and dregs of every kind of matter we could get from the vessel; which, in the space of a very few hours, on account of the liquefying of the ice and the warmth of the sun, were transformed into a very fine manure; and as I had some seeds of exotic vegetables in my pocket, we shortly had a sufficiency of fruits and roots growing upon the island to supply the whole crew;—especially the bread-fruit tree, a few plants of which had been in the vessel; and another tree, which bore plum-puddings, so very hot, and with such exquisite proportion of sugar, fruit, &c., that we all acknowledged it was not possible to taste anything of the kind more delicious in England: in short, though the scurvy had made such dreadful progress among the crew before our striking upon the ice, the supply of vegetables, and especially the bread-fruit and pudding-fruit, put an almost immediate stop to the distemper.

We had not proceeded thus many weeks, advancing with incredible fatigue by continual towing, when we fell in with a fleet of Negromen, as they call them. These wretches, I must inform you, my dear friends, had found means to make prizes of those vessels from some Europeans upon the coast of Guinea; and tasting the sweets of our luxury, had formed colonies in several new discovered islands near the South Pole, where they had a variety of plantations of such matters as would only grow in the coldest climates. As the black inhabitants of Guinea were unsuited to the climate and excessive cold of the country, they formed the diabolical project of getting Christian slaves to work for them. For this purpose, they sent vessels every year to the coast of Scotland, the northern parts of Ireland and Wales, and were even sometimes seen off the coast of Cornwall; and having purchased, or entrapped by fraud or violence, a great number of men, women, and children, they proceeded with their cargoes of human flesh to the other end of the world, and sold them to their planters, where they were flogged into obedience, and made to work like horses all the rest of their lives.

My blood ran cold at the idea, while every one on the island also expressed his horror that such an iniquitous traffic should be suffered to exist. But, except by open violence, it was found impossible to destroy the trade, on account of a barbarous prejudice, entertained of late by the negroes, that the white people have no souls! However, we were determined to attack them, and steering down our island upon them, soon overwhelmed them; we saved as many of the white people as possible, but pushed all the blacks into the water again. The poor creatures we saved from slavery were so overjoyed, that they wept aloud through gratitude; and we experienced every delightful sensation, to think what happiness we should shower upon their parents, their brothers, and sisters, and children, by bringing them home safe, redeemed from slavery, to the bosom of their native country.

Having happily arrived in England, I immediately laid a statement of my voyage, &c., before the Privy Council; and entreated immediate assistance to travel into Africa, and, if possible, refit my former machine, and take it along with the rest. Everything was instantly granted to my satisfaction, and I received orders to get myself ready for departure as soon as possible.

As the Emperor of China had sent a most curious animal as a present to Europe, which was kept in the Tower; and it being of an enormous stature, and capable of performing the voyage with *éclat*, she was ordered to attend me. She was called Sphinx, and was one of the most tremendous though magnificent figures I ever beheld. She was harnessed with superb trappings to a large flat-bottomed boat, in which was placed an edifice of wood, exactly resembling Westminster Hall. Two balloons were placed over it, tackled by a number of ropes to the boat, to keep up a proper equilibrium, and prevent it from overturning, or filling, from the prodigious weight of the fabric.

The interior of the edifice was decorated with seats, in the form of an amphitheatre, and crammed as full as it could hold with ladies and lords, as a council and retinue for your humble servant. Nearly in the centre was a seat elegantly decorated for myself, and on either side of me was placed the famous Gog and Magog in all their pomp.

The Lord Viscount Gosamer being our postilion, we floated gallantly down the river, the noble Sphinx gamboling like the huge Leviathan, and towing after her the boat and balloons.

Thus we advanced, sailing gently, into the open sea; being calm weather, we could scarcely feel the motion of the vehicle, and passed our time in grand debate upon the glorious intention of our voyage, and the discoveries that would result.

"I am of opinion," said my noble friend Hilaro Frosticos, "that Africa was originally inhabited for the greater part, or, I may say, subjugated by lions; which, next to man, seem to be the most dreaded of all mortal tyrants. The country in general, at least, what we have been hitherto able to discover, seems rather inimical to human life; the intolerable dryness of the place, the burning sands that overwhelm whole armies and cities in general ruin, and the hideous life many roving hordes are compelled to lead, incline me to think, that if ever we form any great settlements therein, it will become the grave of our countrymen. Yet it is nearer to us than the East Indies; and I cannot but imagine, that in many places every production of China, and of the East and West Indies, would flourish, if properly attended to. And as the country is so prodigiously extensive and unknown, what a source of discovery must not it contain!—In fact, we know less about the interior of Africa than we do of the Moon; for, in this latter, we measure the very prominences, and observe the varieties and inequalities of the surface through our glasses,

> Forests and mountains on her spotted orb.

But we see nothing in the interior of Africa, but what some compilers of maps or geographers are fanciful enough to imagine. What a happy event, therefore, should we not expect from a voyage of discovery and colonization, undertaken in so magnificent a style as the present!—what a pride—what an acquisition to philosophy!"

CHAPTER XXVI.

Count Gosamer thrown by Sphinx into the Snow on the Top of Teneriffe—Gog and Magog conduct Sphinx for the rest of the Voyage—The Baron arrives at the Cape, and unites his former Chariot, &c., to his new Retinue—Passes into Africa, proceeding from the Cape northward—Defeats a Host of Lions by a curious Stratagem—Travels through an immense Desert—His whole Company, Chariot, &c., overwhelmed by a Whirlwind of Sand—Extricates them, and arrives in a fertile Country.

The brave Count Gosamer, with a pair of hell-fire spurs on, riding upon Sphinx, directed the whole retinue towards the Madeiras. But the count had no small share of an amiable vanity; and perceiving great multitudes of people, Gascons, &c., assembled upon the French coast, he could not refrain from showing some singular capers, such as they had never seen before: but especially when he observed all the members of the National Assembly extend themselves along the shore, as a piece of French politeness, to honour this expedition, with Rousseau, Voltaire, and Beelzebub at their head, he set spurs to Sphinx, and, at the same time, cut and cracked away as hard as he could, holding in the reins with all his might, striving to make the creature plunge and show some uncommon diversion. But sulky and ill-tempered was Sphinx at the time: she plunged indeed—such a devil of a plunge!—that she dashed him in one jerk over her head, and he fell precipitately into the water before her. It was in the Bay of Biscay, all the world knows a very boisterous sea; and Sphinx, fearing he would be drowned, never turned to the left or to the right out of her way, but advancing furious, just stooped her head a little, and supped the poor Count off the water into her mouth, together with the quantity of two or three tuns of water, which she must have taken in along with him, but which were to such an enormous creature as Sphinx, nothing more than a spoonful would be to any of you or me. She swallowed him, but when she had got him in her stomach, his long spurs so scratched and tickled her, that they produced the effect of an emetic. No sooner was he in, but out he was squirted with the most horrible impetuosity, like a ball or shell from the calibre of a mortar. Sphinx was at this time quite sea-sick; and the unfortunate count was driven forth like a sky-rocket, and landed upon the peak of Teneriffe, plunged over head and ears in the snow—*Requiescat in pace!*

I perceived all this mischief from my seat in the ark, but was in such a convulsion of laughter, that I could not utter an intelligible word. And now Sphinx, deprived of her postilion, went on in a zig-zag direction, and gamboled away after a most dreadful manner. And thus had every thing gone to wreck, had I not given instant orders to Gog and Magog to sally forth. They plunged into the water, and swimming on each side, got at length right before the animal, and then seized the reins. Thus they continued swimming on each side, like Tritons, holding the muzzle of Sphinx; while I, sallying forth astride upon the creature's back, steered forward on our voyage to the Cape of Good Hope.

Arriving at the Cape, I immediately gave orders to repair my former chariot and machines, which were very expeditiously performed by the excellent artists I had brought with me from Europe. And now, everything being refitted, we launched forth upon the water: perhaps there never was anything seen more glorious or more august. 'Twas magnificent to behold Sphinx make her obeisance on the water, and the crickets chirp upon the bulls in return of the salute; while Gog and Magog advancing, took the reins of the great John Mowmowsky, and leading towards us chariot and all, instantly disposed of them to the fore-part of the ark by hooks and eyes, and tackled Sphinx before all the bulls. Thus the whole had a most tremendous and triumphal appearance. In front floated forwards the mighty Sphinx with Gog and Magog on each side; next followed in order the bulls with crickets upon their heads; and then advanced the chariot of Queen Mab, containing the curious seat and orrery of heaven; after which appeared the boat and ark of council, overtopped with two balloons, which gave an air of great lightness and elegance to the whole. I placed in the galleries under the balloons, and on the backs of the bulls, a number of excellent vocal performers, with martial music of clarionets and trumpets: they sung the Watery Dangers, and the Pomp of deep Cerulean! The sun shone glorious on the water, while the procession advanced towards the land, under five hundred arches of ice, illuminated with coloured lights, and adorned in the most grotesque and fanciful style with sea-weed, elegant festoons, and shells of every kind; while a thousand water-spouts danced eternally before and after us, attracting the water from the sea in a kind of cone, and suddenly uniting with the most fantastical thunder and lightning.

Having landed our whole retinue, we immediately began to proceed towards the heart of Africa; but first thought it expedient to place a number of wheels under the ark for its greater facility of advancing. We journeyed nearly due north for several days, and met with nothing remarkable except the astonishment of the savage natives to behold our equipage.

The Dutch Government at the Cape, to do them justice, gave us every possible assistance for the expedition. I presume they had received instructions on that head from their High Mightinesses in Holland. However, they presented us with a specimen of some of the most excellent of their Cape wine, and showed us every politeness in their power. As to the face of the country, as we advanced, it appeared in many places capable of every cultivation and of abundant fertility. The natives and Hottentots of this part of Africa have been frequently described by travellers, and therefore it is not necessary to say any more about them. But in the more interior parts of Africa the appearance, manners, and genius of the people are totally different.

We directed our course by the compass and the stars, getting every day prodigious quantities of game in the woods, and at night encamping within a proper enclosure for fear of the wild beasts. One whole day, in particular, we heard on every side, among the hills, the horrible roaring of lions, resounding from rock to rock like broken thunder. It seemed as if there was a general rendezvous of all these savage animals to fall upon our party. That whole day we advanced with caution, our hunters scarcely venturing beyond pistol shot from the caravan, for fear of dissolution. At night we encamped as usual, and threw up a circular entrenchment round our tents. We had scarce retired to repose when we found ourselves serenaded by at least one thousand lions, approaching equally on every side, and within a hundred paces. Our cattle showed the most horrible symptoms of fear, all trembling, and in cold perspiration. I directly ordered the whole company to stand to their arms, and not to make any noise by firing till I should command them. I then took a large quantity of tar, which I had brought with our caravan for that purpose, and strewed it in a continued stream round the encampment; within which circle of tar I immediately placed another train or circle of gunpowder: and having taken this precaution, I anxiously waited the lions' approach. These dreadful animals, knowing, I presume, the force of our troop, advanced very slowly, and with caution; approaching on every side of us with an equal pace, and growling in hideous concert, so as to resemble an earthquake, or some similar convulsion of the world. When they had at length advanced and steeped all their paws in the tar, they put their noses to it, smelling it as if it were blood, and daubed their great bushy hair and whiskers with it equal to their paws. At that very instant, when, in concert, they were to give the mortal dart upon us, I discharged a pistol at the train of gunpowder, which instantly exploding on every side, made all the lions recoil in general uproar, and take to flight with the utmost precipitation. In an instant, we could behold them scattered through the woods at some distance, roaring in agony, and moving about like so many Will-o'-the-Wisps, their paws and faces all on fire from the tar and the gunpowder. I then ordered a general pursuit: we followed them on every side through the woods, their own light serving as our guide, until, before the rising of the sun, we followed into their fastnesses and shot or otherwise destroyed every one of them: and during the whole of our journey after, we never heard the roaring of a lion; nor did any wild beast presume to make another attack upon our party, which shows the excellence of immediate presence of mind, and the terror inspired upon the most savage enemies by a proper and well-timed proceeding.

We at length arrived on the confines of an immeasurable desert—an immense plain, extending on every side of us like an ocean. Not a tree, nor a shrub, nor a blade of grass was to be seen, but all appeared an extreme fine sand, mixed with gold-dust and little sparkling pearls.

The gold-dust and pearls appeared to us of little value, because we could have no expectation of returning to England for a considerable time. We observed, at a great distance, something like a smoke arising just over the verge of the horizon; and looking with our telescopes, we perceived it to be a whirlwind tearing up the sand and tossing it about in the heavens with frightful impetuosity. I immediately ordered my company to erect a mound around us of a great size, which we did with astonishing labour and perseverance; and then roofed it over with certain planks and timber, which we had with us for the purpose. Our labour was scarcely finished, when the sand came rolling in like the waves of the sea; 'twas a storm and river of sand united. It continued to advance in the same direction, without intermission, for three days, and completely covered over the mound we had erected, and buried us all within. The intense heat of the place was intolerable; but guessing, by the cessation of the noise, that the storm was passed, we set about digging a passage to the light of day again, which we effected in a very short time; and ascending, perceived that the whole had been so completely covered with the sand, that there appeared no hills, but one continued plain, with inequalities or ridges on it, like the waves of the sea. We soon extricated our vehicle and retinue from the burning sands, but not without great danger, as the heat was very violent, and began to proceed on our voyage. Storms of sand of a similar nature several times attacked us, but by using the same precautions we preserved ourselves repeatedly from destruction. Having travelled more than nine thousand miles over this inhospitable plain, exposed to the perpendicular rays of a burning sun, without ever meeting a rivulet, or a shower from heaven to refresh us, we at length became almost desperate; when, to our inexpressible joy, we beheld some mountains at a great distance; and on our nearer approach, observed them covered with a carpet of verdure, and groves and woods. Nothing could appear more romantic or beautiful than the rocks and precipices intermingled with flowers and shrubs of every kind, and palm-trees of such a prodigious size as to surpass anything ever seen in Europe. Fruits of all kind appeared growing wild in the utmost abundance, and antelopes, and sheep, and buffaloes, wandered about the groves and valleys in profusion. The trees resounded with the melody of birds, and everything displayed a general scene of rural happiness and joy.

CHAPTER XXVII.

A Feast on Live Bulls and Kava—The Inhabitants admire the European Adventurers—The Emperor comes to meet the Baron, and pays him great compliments—The Inhabitants of the Centre of Africa descended from the People of the Moon, proved by an Inscription in Africa, and by the Analogy of their Language; which is also the same with that of the Ancient Scythians—The Baron is declared Sovereign of the Interior of Africa on the Decease of the Emperor—He endeavours to abolish the Custom of eating Live Bulls, which excites much Discontent—The advice of Hilaro Frosticos upon the occasion—The Baron makes a Speech to the Assembly of the States; which only excites great Murmurs—He consults with Hilaro Frosticos.

HAVING passed over the nearest mountains, we entered a delightful vale, where we perceived a multitude of persons at a feast of living bulls, whose flesh they cut away with great knives, making a table of the creature's carcase; serenaded by the bellowing of the unfortunate animal. Nothing seemed requisite to add to the barbarity of this feast but *kava*, made as described in Cook's voyages; and at the conclusion of the feast we perceived them brewing this liquor, which they drank with the utmost avidity. From that moment, inspired with an idea of universal benevolence, I determined to abolish the custom of eating live flesh, and drinking of kava. But I knew that such a thing could not be immediately effected, whatever in future time might be performed.

Having rested ourselves during a few days, we determined to set out towards the principal city of the empire. The singularity of our appearance was spoken of all over the country as a phenomenon. The multitude looked upon Sphinx, the bulls, the crickets, the balloons, and the whole company, as something more than terrestrial; but especially the thunder of our fire-arms, which struck horror and amazement into the whole nation.

We at length arrived at the metropolis, situated on the banks of a noble river; and the emperor, attended by all his court, came out in grand procession to meet us. The emperor appeared mounted on a dromedary, royally caparisoned, with all his attendants on foot, through respect for his majesty. He was rather above the middle stature of that country, four feet three inches in height, with a countenance like all his countrymen, as white as snow! He was preceded by a band of most exquisite music, according to the fashion of the country, and his whole retinue halted within about fifty paces of our troop. We returned the salute by a discharge of musketry, and a flourish of our trumpets and martial music. I commanded our caravan to halt, and dismounting, advanced uncovered, with only two attendants, towards his majesty. The emperor was equally polite, and descending from his dromedary, advanced to meet me. "I am happy," said he, "to have the honour to receive so illustrious a traveller, and assure you that everything in my empire shall be at your disposal."

I thanked his majesty for his politeness, and expressed how happy I was to meet so polished and refined a people in the centre of Africa; and that I hoped to show myself and company grateful for his esteem, by introducing the arts and sciences of Europe among the people.

I immediately perceived the true descent of this people, which does not appear of terrestrial origin, but descended from some of the inhabitants of the Moon; because the principal language spoken there, and in the centre of Africa, is very nearly the same. Their alphabet and method of writing are pretty much the same, and show the extreme antiquity of this people, and their exalted origin. I have submitted a specimen of their characters to the inspection of a celebrated antiquarian; and it will be proved to the satisfaction of every one, in his next volume, what an immediate intercourse there must have been between the inhabitants of the Moon and the ancient Scythians; which Scythians did not, by any means, inhabit a part of Russia, but the central part of Africa, as I can abundantly prove to my very learned and laborious friend. The words of the specimen referred to, written in our characters, are, *Sregnah dna skoohtop*; that is, the Scythians are of heavenly origin. The word *sregnah*, which signifies *Scythians*, is compounded of *sreg*, or *sre*, whence our present English word *sire*, or *sir;* and *nah*, or *gnah*, knowledge; because the Scythians united the essentials of nobility and learning together: *dna* signifies heaven, or belonging to the moon, from *duna*, who was anciently worshipped as goddess of that luminary; and *skoohtop* signifies the origin or beginning of anything, from *skoo*, the name used in the moon for a point in geometry; and *top* or *htop*, vegetation. These words are inscribed at this day upon a pyramid in the centre of Africa, nearly at the source of the river Niger; and if any one refuses his assent, he may go there to be convinced.

The emperor conducted me to his court amidst the admiration of his courtiers, and paid us every possible politeness that African magnificence could bestow. He never presumed to proceed on any expedition without consulting us; and looking upon us as a species of superior beings, paid the greatest respect to our opinions. He frequently asked me about the states of Europe, and the kingdom of Great Britain, and appeared lost in admiration at the account I gave him of our shipping, and the immensity of the ocean. We taught him to regulate the government nearly on the same plan with the British constitution, and to institute a parliament and degrees of nobility. His majesty was the last of his royal line; and on his decease, with the unanimous consent of the people, made me heir to the whole empire. The nobility and chiefs of the country immediately waited upon me with petitions, entreating me to accept the government. I consulted with my noble friends Gog and Magog, &c., and after much consultation, it was agreed that I should accept the government, not as actual and independent monarch of the place, but as viceroy to his majesty of England.

I now thought it high time to do away the custom of eating of live flesh and drinking of kava; and for that purpose used every persuasive method to wean the majority of the people from it. This, to my astonishment, was not taken in good part by the nation, and they looked with jealousy at those strangers, who wanted to make innovations among them.

Nevertheless, I felt much concern to think that my fellow-creatures could be capable of such barbarity. I did everything that a heart fraught with universal benevolence and good will to all mankind could be capable of desiring. I first tried every method of persuasion and incitement. I did not harshly reprove them; but I invited frequently whole thousands to dine after the fashion of Europe, upon roasted meat. Alas! 'twas all in vain! my goodness nearly excited a sedition. They murmured among themselves, spoke of my intentions, my wild and ambitious views, as if I—oh heaven!—could have had any personal interested motive in making them live like men, rather than crocodiles and tigers. In fine, perceiving that gentleness could be of no avail—well knowing that when complaisance can effect nothing from some spirits, compulsion excites respect and veneration—I prohibited under the pain of the severest penalties the drinking of kava, or eating of live flesh, for the space of nine days, within the districts of Angalinar and Paphagalana.

But this created such an universal abhorrence and detestation of my government, that my ministers, and even myself, were universally pasquinadoed; lampoons, satires, ridicule, and insult, were showered upon the name of Munchausen wherever it was mentioned; and in fine, there never was a government so much detested, or with such little reason.

In this dilemma I had recourse to the advice of my noble friend Hilaro Frosticos. In his good sense I now expected some resource; for the rest of the council, who had advised me to the former method, had given but a poor specimen of their abilities and discernment, or I should have succeeded more happily. In short, he addressed himself to me and to the council, as follows:—

"It is in vain, most noble Munchausen, that your Excellency endeavours to compel or force these people to a life to which they have never been accustomed. In vain do you tell them that apple pies, puddings, roast beef, minced pies, or tarts, are delicious, that sugar is sweet, that wine is exquisite. Alas! they cannot, they will not comprehend what deliciousness is, what sweetness, or what the flavour of the grape. And even if they were convinced of the superior excellence of your way of life, never, never would they be persuaded; and that, if for no other reason, but because force or persuasion is employed to induce them to it. Abandon that idea for the present, and let us try another method. My opinion, therefore, is, that we should at once cease all endeavours to compel or persuade them. But let us, if possible, procure a quantity of *fudge* from England, and carelessly scatter it all over the country: and from this disposal of matters, I presume, nay, I have a moral certainty, that we shall reclaim this people from horror and barbarity."

Had this been proposed at any other time, it would have been violently opposed in the council: but now, when every other attempt had failed, when there seemed no other resource, the majority willingly submitted to they knew not what; for they absolutely had no idea of the manner, the possibility of success, or how they could bring matters to bear. However, 'twas a scheme; and as such they submitted. For my part, I listened with ecstasy to the words of Hilaro Frosticos: for I knew that he had a most singular knowledge of human kind, and could humour and persuade them on to their own happiness and universal good. Therefore, according to the advice of Hilaro, I despatched a balloon with four men over the desert to the Cape of Good Hope, with letters to be forwarded to England, requiring, without delay, a few cargoes of fudge.

The people had all this time remained in a general state of ferment and murmur. Everything that rancour, low wit, and deplorable ignorance could conceive to asperse my government, was put in execution. The most worthy, even the most beneficent actions, everything that was amiable, were perverted into opposition.

The heart of Munchausen was not made of such impenetrable stuff as to be insensible to the hatred of even the most worthless wretch in the whole kingdom; and once, at a general assembly of the states, filled with an idea of such continued ingratitude, I spoke as pathetic as possible, not methought beneath my dignity, to make them feel for me: that the universal good and happiness of the people were all I wished or desired—that if my actions had been mistaken, or improper surmises formed, still I had no wish, no desire, but the public welfare, &c., &c.

Hilaro Frosticos was all this time much disturbed; he looked sternly at me—he frowned; but I was so engrossed with the warmth of my heart, my intentions, that I understood him not: in a minute I saw nothing but as if through a cloud (such is the force of amiable sensibility)—lords, ladies, chiefs, the whole assembly, seemed to swim before my sight. The more I thought on my good intentions, the lampoons which so much affected my delicacy, good nature, tenderness—I forgot myself—I spoke rapid, violent—benificence—fire—tenderness—Alas! I melted into tears!

"Pish! pish!" said Hilaro Frosticos!

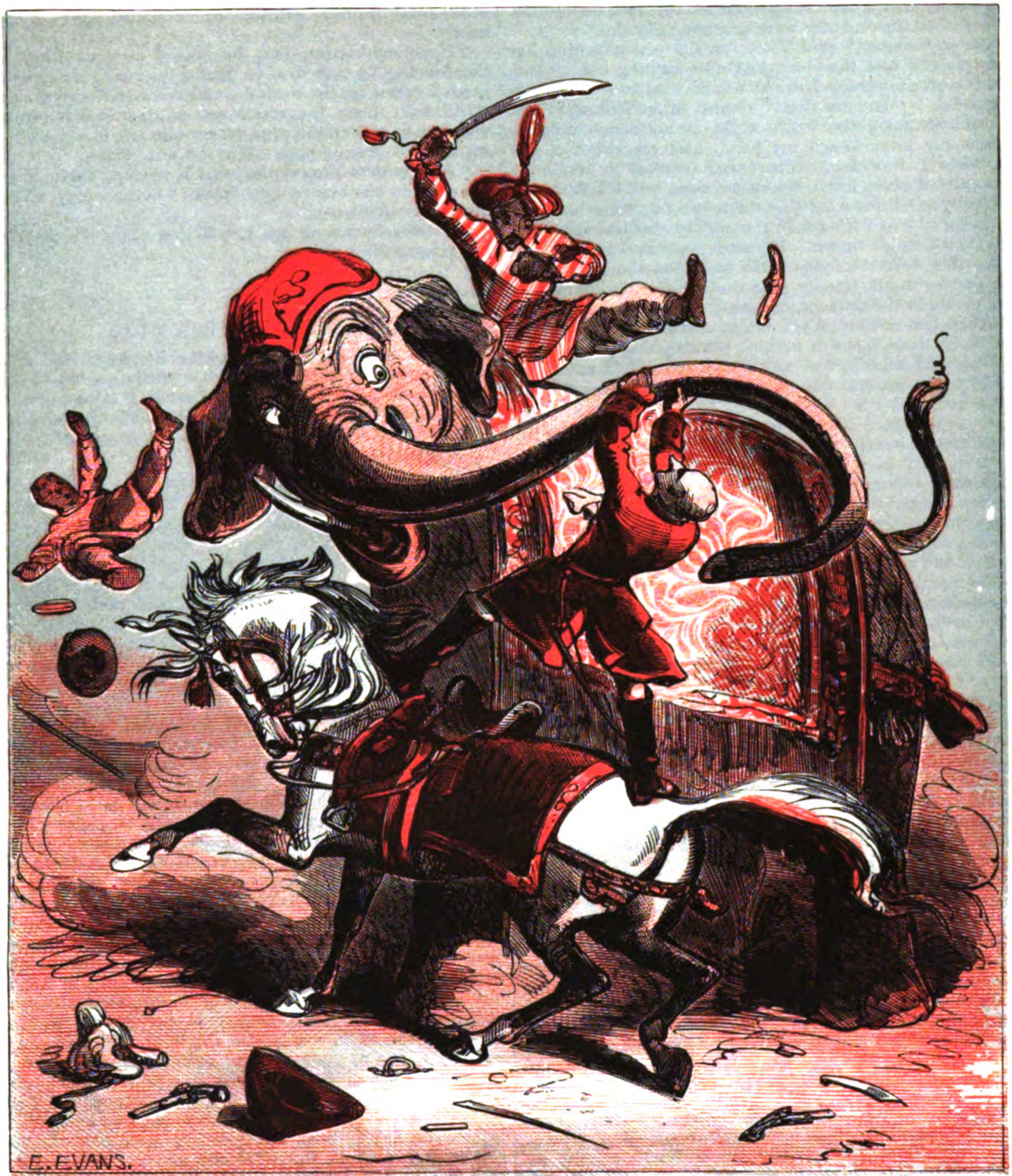
Now, indeed, was my government lampooned, satirized, carribonadoed, bepickled, and bedevilled. One day, with my arm full of lampoons, I started up as Hilaro entered the room—the tears in my eyes. "Look, look here, Hilaro!—how can I bear all this? It is impossible to please them; I will leave the government—I cannot bear it! See what pitiful anecdotes—what surmises—I will make my people feel for me—I will leave the government!"

"Pshaw!" says Hilaro. At that simple monosyllable, I found myself changed as if by magic; for I ever looked on Hilaro as a person so experienced, such fortitude, such good sense. "There are three sail under the convoy of a frigate," added Hilaro, "just arrived at the Cape, after a fortunate passage, laden with the fudge that we demand. No time is to be lost; let it be immediately conducted hither, and distributed through the principal granaries of the empire."

CHAPTER XXVIII.

A Proclamation by the Baron—Excessive Curiosity of the People to know what Fudge was—The People in a general Ferment about it—They break open all the Granaries in the Empire—The Affections of the People conciliated—An Ode performed in Honour of the Baron—His Discourse with Fragrantia on the excellence of the Music.

SOME time after, I ordered the following proclamation to be published in the Court Gazette, and in all the other papers of the empire:—



THE BARON'S ENCOUNTER WITH TIPPOO SAIB AT THE SIEGE OF SERINGAPATAM.

By the most mighty and puissant lord, his Excellency the
LORD BARON MUNCHAUSEN.

WHEREAS a quantity of fudge has been distributed through all the granaries of the empire for particular uses; and as the natives have ever expressed their aversion to all manner of European eatables, it is hereby strictly forbidden, under pain of the severest penalties, for any of the officers, charged with the keeping of the said fudge, to give, sell, or suffer to be sold, any part or quantity whatever of the said material, until it be agreeable unto our good will and pleasure. MUNCHAUSEN.

Dated in our Castle of Gristariska, this Triskill of the month of Griskish, in the year Moulikasra-navas-kashna-vildash.

This proclamation excited the most ardent curiosity all over the empire. "Do you know what this fudge is?" said Lady Mooshilgarousti to Lord Darnarlaganl. "Fudge!" said he—"fudge!—no: what fudge?" "I mean," replied her ladyship, "the enormous quantity of fudge that has been distributed under guards in all the strong places in the empire, and which is strictly forbidden to be sold, or given to any of the natives, under the severest penalties." "Lord!" replied he, "what in the name of wonder can it be?—Forbidden! why it must;—but pray do you, Lady Fashashash, do you know what this fudge is?—Do you, Lord Trastillauex? Or you, Miss Gristilarkask! What! nobody know what this fudge can be?"

It engrossed for several days the chit-chat of the whole empire. Fudge, fudge, fudge, resounded in all companies and in all places, from the rising until the setting of the sun; and even at night, when gentle sleep refreshed the rest of mortals, the ladies of all that country were dreaming of fudge!

"Upon my honour," said Kitty, as she was adjusting her modesty-piece before the glass, just after getting out of bed, "there is scarce anything I would not give to know what this fudge can be." "La! my dear," replied Miss Kilinariska, "I have been dreaming the whole night of nothing but fudge. I thought my lover kissed my hand, and pressed it to his bosom, while I, frowning, endeavoured to wrest it from him: that he kneeled at my feet. No, never, never will I look at you, cried I, till you tell me what this fudge can be, or get me some of it. Begone! cried I, with all the dignity of offended beauty, majesty, and a tragic queen.—Begone! never see me more, or bring me this delicious fudge. He swore on the honour of a knight, that he would wander o'er the world, encounter every danger, perish in the attempt, or satisfy the angel of his soul."

The chiefs and nobility of the nation, when they met together to drink their kava, spoke of nothing but fudge.—Men, women, and children, all, all talked of nothing but fudge. 'Twas a fury of curiosity, one general ferment, an universal fever—nothing but fudge could allay it.

But in one respect they all agreed, that government must have had some interested view in giving such positive orders to preserve it, and keep it from the natives of the country. Petitions were addressed to me from all quarters, from every corporation and body of men in the whole empire. The majority of the people instructed their constituents, and the parliament presented a petition, praying that I would be pleased to take the state of the nation under consideration, and give orders to satisfy the people, or the most dreadful consequences were to be apprehended. To these requests, at the entreaty of my council, I made no reply, or at best but unsatisfactory answers. Curiosity was on the rack; they forgot to lampoon the government, so engaged were they about the fudge. The great assembly of the states could think of nothing else. Instead of enacting laws for the regulation of the people, instead of consulting what should seem most wise, most excellent, they could think, talk, and harangue of nothing but fudge. In vain did the Speaker call to order; the more checks they got, the more extravagant and inquisitive thay were.

In short, the populace in many places rose in the most outrageous and tumultuous manner, forced open the granaries in all places in one day, and triumphantly distributed the fudge through the whole empire.

Whether on account of the longing, the great curiosity, imagination, or the disposition of the people, I cannot say—but they found it infinitely to their taste; 'twas an intoxication of joy, satisfaction, and applause.

Finding how much they liked this fudge, I procured another quantity from England, much greater than the former, and cautiously bestowed it all over the kingdom. Thus were the affections of the people regained; and they, from hence, began to venerate, applaud, and admire my government more than ever. The following Ode was performed at the castle, in the most superb style, and universally admired:—

ODE.

Ye bulls and crickets, and Gog, Magog,
And trump'ts high chiming anthrophog,
Come sing blithe choral all in *og*,
Caralog, basilog, fog, and bog!

Great and superb appears thy cap sublime,
  Admired and worshipp'd as the rising sun;
Solemn, majestic, wise, like hoary Time,
  And fam'd alike for virtue, sense, and fun.

Then swell the noble strain with song
  And elegance divine,
While Goddesses around shall throng,
  And all the Muses Nine.

And bulls, and crickets, and Gog, Magog,
And trumpets chiming anthrophog,
Shall sing blithe choral all in *og*,
Caralog, basilog, fog, and bog!

This piece of poetry was much applauded, admired, and *encored* in every public assembly; celebrated as an astonishing effort of genius; and the music, composed by Minheer Gastrashbark Gkrghhbarwskhk, was thought equal to the sense! Never was there anything so universally admired—the summit of the most exquisite wit, the keenest praise, the most excellent music.

"Upon my honour, and the faith I owe my love," said I, "music may be talked of in England; but to possess the very soul of harmony, the world should come to the performance of this Ode." Lady Fragrantia was at that moment drumming with her fingers on the edge of her fan, lost in a reverie, thinking she was playing upon—Was it a forte piano?

"No, my dear Fragrantia," said I, tenderly taking her in my arms, while she melted into tears; "never, never, will I play upon any other——!"

O! 'twas divine, to see her like a summer's morning, all blushing and full of dew!

CHAPTER XXIX.

The Baron sets all the People of the Empire to work to build a Bridge from their Country to Great Britain—His Contrivance to render the Arch secure—Orders an Inscription to be engraved on the Bridge—Returns with all his Company, Chariot, &c., to England—Surveys the Kingdoms and Nations under him from the Middle of the Bridge.

"And now, most noble Baron," said the illustrious Hilaro Frosticos, "now is the time to make this peeple proceed in any business that we find convenient. Take them at this present ferment of the mind, let them not think, but at once set them to work." In short, the whole nation went heartily to the business, to build an edifice such as was never seen in any other country. I took care to supply them with their favourite kava and fudge, and they worked like horses. The tower of Babylon, which, according to Hermogastricus, was seven miles high, or the Chinese wall, was a mere trifle, in comparison to this stupendous edifice, which was completed in a very short space of time.

It was of an immense height, far beyond anything that ever had been before erected; and of such gentle ascent, that a regiment of cavalry with a train of cannon could ascend with perfect ease and facility. It seemed like a rainbow in the heavens, the base of which appeared to rise in the centre of Africa, and the other extremity seemed to stoop into Great Britain. A most noble bridge indeed, and a piece of masonry that has outdone Sir Christopher Wren. Wonderful must it have been to form so tremendous an arch, especially as the artists had certain difficulties to labour against, which they could not have in the formation of any other arch in the world; I mean, the attraction of the moon and planets: because the arch was of so great a height, and in some parts so elongated from the earth, as in a great measure to diminish in its gravitation to the centre of our globe; or rather, seemed more easily operated upon by the attraction of the planets; so that the stones of the arch, one would think, at certain times, were ready to fall *up* to the moon, and at other times to fall down to the earth. But as the former was more to be dreaded, I secured stability to the fabric by a very curious contrivance: I ordered the architects to get the heads of some hundred numbskulls and blockheads, and fix them to the interior surface of the arch, at certain intervals, all the whole length; by which means the arch was held together firm, and its inclination to the earth eternally established; because of all the things in the world, the skulls of these kind of animals have a strange facility of tending to the centre of the earth.

The building being completed, I caused an inscription to be engraved in the most magnificent style upon the summit of the arch; in letters so great and luminous, that all vessels sailing to the East or West Indies might read them distinct in the heavens, like the motto of Constantine:—

KARDOL BAGARLAN KAI TON FARINGO SARGAL RA MO PASHROL VATINEAC CAL COLNITOS RO NA FILNAT AGASTRA SA DINGANNAL FANO.

That is to say, "As long as this arch and bond of union shall exist, so long shall the people be happy. Nor can all the power of the world affect them, unless the moon, advancing from her usual sphere, should so much attract the skulls as to cause a sudden elevation; on which, the whole will fall into the most horrible confusion."

An easy intercourse being thus established between Great Britain and the centre of Africa, numbers travelled continually to and from both countries, and at my request mail coaches were ordered to run on the bridge between both empires. After some time, having settled the government perfectly to my satisfaction, I requested permission to resign, as a great cabal had been excited against me in England: I therefore received my letters of recall, and prepared to return to Old England.

In fine, I set out upon my journey, covered with applause and general admiration. I proceeded with the same retinue that I had before, Sphinx, Gog and Magog, &c., and advanced along the bridge, lined on each side with rows of trees, adorned with festoons of various flowers, and illuminated with coloured lights. We advanced at a great rate along the bridge, which was so very extensive that we could scarce perceive the ascent, but proceeded insensibly until we arrived on the centre of the arch. The view from thence was glorious beyond conception: 'twas divine to look down on the kingdoms, and seas, and islands under us. Africa seemed in general of a tawny brownish colour, burned up by the sun; Spain seemed more inclining to a yellow, on account of some fields of corn scattered over the kingdom; France appeared more inclining to a bright straw colour, intermixed with green; and England appeared covered with the most beautiful verdure. I admired the appearance of the Baltic sea, which evidently seemed to have been introduced between those countries by the sudden splitting of the land; and that originally Sweden was united to the western coast of Denmark: in short, the whole interstice of the Gulf of Finland had no being, until these countries, by mutual consent, separated from one another. Such were my philosophical meditations, as I advanced; when I observed a man in armour with a tremendous spear or lance, and mounted upon a steed, advancing against me. I soon discovered by a telescope that it could be no other than Don Quixote, and promised myself much amusement in the rencounter.

CHAPTER XXX.

The Baron's Retinue is opposed in a heroic style by Don Quixote, who in his turn is attacked by Gog and Magog—Lord Whittington with the Lord Mayor's Show comes to the assistance of Don Quixote—Gog and Magog assail his Lordship—Lord Whittington makes a Speech, and deludes Gog and Magog to his Party—A general Scene of Uproar and Battle among the Company; until the Baron, with great presence of mind, appeases the Tumult.

"WHAT art thou?" exclaimed Don Quixote on his potent steed. "Who art thou? Speak,—or by the eternal vengeance of mine arm, thy whole machinery shall perish at sound of this my trumpet!"

Astonished at so rude a salutation, the great Sphinx stopped short, and bridling up herself, drew in her head, like a snail when it touches something that it does not like: the bulls set up a horrid bellowing; the crickets sounded an alarm; and Gog and Magog advanced before the rest. One of these powerful brothers had in his hand a great pole, to the extremity of which was fastened a cord of about two feet in length, and to the end of the cord was fastened a ball of iron, with spikes shooting from it like the rays of a star: with this weapon he prepared to encounter; and advancing, thus he spoke:—

"Audacious wight! that thus, in complete steel arrayed, doth dare to venture cross my way, to stop the great Munchausen. Know, then, proud knight, that thou shalt instant perish 'neath my potent arm."

When Quixote, Mancha's knight, responded firm:—

"Gigantic monster! leader of witches, crickets, and chimeras dire! know thou, that here before yon azure heaven, the cause of truth, of valour, and of faith right pure shall ordeal counter try it!"

Thus he spoke, and brandishing his mighty spear, would instant prodigies sublime performed, had not some wight placed 'neath the tail of dark Rosinante furze all thorny base; at which, quadrupedanting, plunged the steed, and instant on the earth the knight roared *credo* for his life.

At that same moment, ten thousand frogs started from the morions of Gog and Magog, and furiously assailed the knight on every side. In vain he roared, and invoked fair Dulcinea del Toboso: for frogs' wild croaking seemed more loud, more sonorous than all his invocations. And thus in battle vile the knight was overcome, and spawn all swarmed upon his glittering helmet.

"Detested miscreants!" roared the knight; "avaunt! Enchanters dire and goblins could alone this arduous task perform, to rout the knight of Mancha—foul defeat, and war, even such as ne'er was known before. Then hear, O del Toboso! hear my vows, that thus in anguish of my soul I urge, 'midst frogs, Gridalbin, Hecaton, Kai, Talon, and the Rove! (for such the names and definitions of their qualities, their separate powers.) For Merlin plumed their airy flight, and then in watery moonbeam dyed his rod eccentric. At the touch, ten thousand frogs, strange metamorphos'd, croaked even thus: And here they come, on high behest to vilify the knight, that erst defended famed virginity, and matrons all bewronged, and pilgrims hoar, and courteous guise of all! But the age of chivalry is gone, and the glory of Europe is extinguished for ever!"

He spake, and sudden good Lord Whittington, at head of all his raree-show, came forth, armour antique of chivalry, and helmets old, and troops, all streamers, flags and banners glittering gay, red, gold, and purple; and in every hand a square of gingerbread all gilded nice, was brandished awful. At a word, ten thousand thousand Naples biscuits, crackers, buns, and flannel-cakes, and hats of gingerbread, encountered in mid-air in glorious exaltation; like some huge storm of mill-stones, or when it rains whole clouds of dogs and cats.

The frogs, astonished, thunderstruck, forgot their notes and music, that before had seemed so terrible, and drowned the cries of knight renown; and mute in wonder heard the words of Whittington, pronouncing solemn:—"Goblins, chimeras dire, or frogs, or whatsoe'er enchantment thus presents in antique shape, attend and hear the words of peace: and thou, good Herald, read aloud the Riot Act!"

He ceased, and dismal was the tone that softly breathed from all the frogs in chorus, who quick had petrified with fright, unless redoubted Gog and Magog, both with poles high topped with airy bladders by a string dependant, had not stormed against his lordship. Ever and anon the bladders, loud resounding on his chaps, proclaimed their fury against all-potent law, coercive mayoralty: when he, submissive, thus in cunning guile addressed the knights assailant:—"Gog, Magog, renowned and famous! what, my sons, shall you assail your father, friend, and chief confessed? Shall you, thus armed with bladders vile, attack my title, eminence, and pomp sublime? Subside, vile discord, and again return to your true 'legiance. Think, my friends, how oft your gorgeous pouch I've crammed, all calapash, green fat, and calapée. Remember how you've feasted, stood inert for ages, until size immense you've gained. And think, how different is the service of Munchausen, where you o'er seas, cold, briny, float along the tide, eternal toiling like to slaves Algiers and Tripoli. And ev'n on high, balloon like, through the heavens have journeyed late, upon a rainbow or some awful bridge stretched eminent; as if on earth he had not work sufficient to distress your potent servitudes, but he should also seek in heaven dire cause of labour! Recollect, my friends, even why or wherefore should you thus assail your lawful Magistrate, or why desert his livery? or for what or wherefore serve this German Lord Munchausen, who for all your labours shall alone bestow some fudge and heroic blows in war? Then cease, and thus in amity return to friendship aldermanic, bungy, brown, and sober."

Ceased he then, right worshipful, when both the warring champions instant stemmed their battle, and in sign of peace and unity returning, 'neath their feet reclined their weapons. Sudden at a signal either stamped his foot sinistrine, and the loud report of bursten bladder stunned each ear surrounding, like the roar of thunder from on high convulsing heaven and earth.

'Twas now upon the saddle once again the knight of Mancha rose; and in his hand far balancing his lance, full tilt against the troops of bulls opposing ran. And thou, shrill Crillitrilkril, than whom no cricket e'er on hob of rural cottage, or chimney black, more gladsome tuned his merry note, e'en thou didst perish, shrieking gave the ghost in empty air the sport of ev'ry wind; for e'en that heart so jocund and so gay was pierced, harsh spitted by the lance of Mancha, while undaunted thou didst sit between the horns that crowned Mowmowsky. And now Whittington advanced, 'midst armour antique and the powers Magog and Gog; and with his rod enchanting touched the head of every frog, long mute and thunderstruck; at which, in universal chorus and salute, they sung blithe jocund, and amain advanced rebellious 'gainst my troop.

While Sphinx, though great, gigantic, seemed instinctive base and cowardly, and at the sight of storming gingerbread, and powers Magog, and Gog, and Quixote, all against her, started fierce, o'erturning boat, balloons, and all; loud roared the bulls, hideous: and the crash of wheels, and chaos of confusion drear, resounded far from earth to heaven. And still more fierce in charge the great Lord Whittington, from poke of ermine his fam'd Grimalkin took. She screamed, and harsh attacked my bulls confounded; lightning-like she darted, and from half the troop their eyes devouring tore. Nor could the riders, crickets throned sublime, escape from rage, from fury less averse than cannons murder o'er the stormy sea. The great Mowmowsky roared amain and plunged in anguish, shunning every dart of fire-ey'd fierce Grimalkin. Dire the rage of warfare, and contending crickets, Quixote and great Magog; when Whittington advancing—"Good, my friends and warriors, headlong on the foe bear down impetuous!" He spoke, and waving high the mighty rod, tipped wonderful each bull, at which more fierce the creatures bellowed, while enchantment drear devoured their vitals. And all had gone to wreck in more than mortal strife, unless, like Neptune orient from the stormy deep, I rose, e'en towering o'er the ruins of my fighting troops. Serene and calm I stood, and gazed around undaunted; nor did aught oppose against my foes impetuous. But sudden, from chariot, purses plentiful of fudge poured forth, and scattered it amain o'er all the crowd contending. As when old Catherine or the careful Joan doth scatter to the chickens bits of bread and crumbs fragmented, while rejoiced they gobble fast the proffered scraps in general plenty and fraternal peace, and "hush," she cries, "hush! hush!"

CHAPTER XXXI.

The Baron arrives in England—The Colossus of Rhodes comes to congratulate him—Great Rejoicings on the Baron's return, and a tremendous Concert—The Baron's Discourse with Fragrantia, and her Opinion of the Tour to the Hebrides.

HAVING arrived in England once more, the greatest rejoicings were made for my return; the whole city seemed one general blaze of illumination; and the Colossus of Rhodes, hearing of my astonishing feats, came on purpose to England to congratulate me on such unparalleled achievements. But above all other rejoicings on my return, the musical oratorio and song of triumph were magnificent in the extreme. Gog and Magog were ordered to take the maiden tower of Windsor, and make a tambourine or great drum of it. For this purpose they extended an elephant's hide, tanned and prepared for the design, across the summit of the tower, from parapet to parapet; so that, in proportion, this extended elephant's hide was to the whole of the castle what the parchment is to a drum; in such a manner that the whole became one great instrument of war.

To correspond with this, Colossus took Guildhall and Westminster Abbey, and turning the foundations towards the heavens, so that the roofs of the edifices were upon the ground, he strung them across with brass and steel wire from side to side; and thus, when strung, they had the appearance of most noble dulcimers. He then took the great dome of St. Paul's, raising it off the earth with as much facility as you would a decanter of claret. And when once risen up, it had the appearance of a quart bottle. Colossus instantly, with his teeth, cracked off the superior part of the cupola, and then applying his lips to the instrument, began to sound it like a trumpet. 'Twas martial beyond description—*tantara!—tara—ta!*

During the concert I walked in the park with Lady Fragrantia: she was dressed that morning in a *chémise à la reine.* "I like," said she, "the dew of the morning, 'tis delicate and ethereal; and, by thus bespangling me, I think it will more approximate me to the nature of the rose (for her looks were like Aurora); and to confirm the vermilion, I shall go to Spa." "And drink the Pouhon spring," added I, gazing at her from top to toe. "Yes," replied the lovely Fragrantia, "with all my heart—'tis the drink of sweetness and delicacy; never were there any creatures like the water-drinkers at Spa; they seem like so many thirsty blossoms on a peach-tree, that suck up the shower in the scorching heat. There is a certain something in the waters that gives vigour to the whole frame, and expands every heart with rapture and benevolence. They drink—good gods! how they do drink! and then how they sleep! Pray, my dear Baron, were you ever at the Falls of Niagara?" "Yes, my lady," replied I (surprised at such a strange association of ideas); "I have been, many years ago, at the Falls of Niagara, and found no more difficulty in swimming up and down the cataracts, than I should to move a minuet." At that moment she dropped her nosegay—"Ah," said she, as I presented it to her, "there is no great variety in these polyanthuses. I do assure you, my dear Baron, that there is taste in the selection of flowers, as well as everything else; and were I a girl of sixteen, I should wear some rose-buds in my bosom; but at five-and-twenty, I think 'twould be more *apropos* to wear a full-blown rose, quite ripe, and ready to drop off the stalk for want of being pulled—heigh ho!" "But pray, my lady," said I, "how do you like the concert?" "Alas!" said she, languishingly, while she laid her hand upon my shoulder, "what are these bodiless sounds and vibration to me? and yet what an exquisite sweetness in the songs of the northern part of our island: '*Thou art gone awa' from me, Mary!*' How pathetic and divine the little airs of Scotland and the Hebrides! But never, never can I think of that same Doctor Johnson—that 'Constable,' as Fergus MacLeod calls him—but I have an idea of a great brown full-bottomed wig and a hogshead of porter! Oh! 'twas base to be treated everywhere with politeness and hospitality, and in return invidiously to smellfungus them all over; to go to the country of Kate of Aberdeen, of Auld Robin Gray, 'midst rural innocence and sweetness, take up their plaids, and dance. Oh! Doctor, Doctor!"

"And what would you say, Fragrantia, if you were to write a 'Tour to the Hebrides?'" "Peace to the heroes," replied she, in a delicate and theatrical tone; "peace to the heroes who sleep in the isle of Iona; the sons of the wave, and the chiefs of the dark-brown shield! The tear of the sympathising stranger is scattered by the wind over the hoary stones as she meditates sorrowfully on the times of old! Such could I say, sitting upon some druidical heap or tumulus. The fact is this, there is a right and wrong handle to everything; and there is more pleasure in thinking with pure nobility of heart, than with the illiberal enmities and sarcasm of a blackguard."

CHAPTER XXXII.

A litigated Contention between Don Quixote, Gog, Magog, &c.—A grand Court assembled upon it—The Appearance of the Company—The Matrons, Judges, &c.—The Method of Writing, and the Use of the fashionable Amusement Quizzes—Wauwau arrives from the Country of Prester John, and leads the whole Assembly a Wild-goose Chase to the Top of Plinlimmon, and thence to Virginia—The Baron meets a Floating Island in his Voyage to America—Pursues Wauwau with his whole Company through the Deserts of North America—His curious Contrivance to seize Wauwau in a Morass.

THE contention between Gog and Magog, and Sphinx, Hilaro Frosticos, the Lord Whittington, &c., was productive of infinite litigation. All the lawyers in the kingdom were employed, to render the affair as complex and gloriously uncertain as possible; and, in fine, the whole nation became interested, and were divided on both sides of the question. Colossus took the part of Sphinx; and the affair was at length submitted to the decision of a grand council in a great hall, adorned with seats on every side, in form of an amphitheatre. The assembly appeared the most magnificent and splendid in the world. A court or jury of one hundred matrons occupied the principal and most honourable part of the amphitheatre; they were dressed in flowing robes of sky-blue velvet, adorned with festoons of brilliants and diamond stars—grave and sedate-looking matrons, all in uniform, with spectacles upon their noses; and opposite to these were placed one hundred judges, with curly white wigs flowing down on each side of them to their very feet; so that Solomon in all his glory was not so wise in appearance. At the ardent request of the whole empire, I condescended to be the president of the court; and being arrayed accordingly, I took my seat beneath a canopy erected in the centre. Before every judge was placed a square inkstand, containing a gallon of ink, and pens of a proportionable size; and also right before him an enormous folio, so large as to serve for table and book at the same time. But they did not make much use of their pens and ink, except to blot and daub the paper; for, that they should be the more impartial, I had ordered that none but the blind should be honoured with the employment: so that when they attempted to write anything, they uniformly dipped their pens into the machine containing sand; and having scrawled over a page as they thought, desiring them to dry it with sand, would spill half a gallon of ink upon the paper, and thereby daubing their fingers, would transfer the ink to their face whenever they leaned their cheek upon their hands for greater gravity. As to the matrons, to prevent an eternal prattle that would drown all manner of intelligibility, I found it absolutely necessary to sew up their mouths; so that between the blind judges and the dumb matrons, methought, the trial had a chance of being terminated sooner than it otherwise would. The matrons, instead of their tongues, had other instruments to convey their ideas: each of them had three quizzes, one quiz pendant from the string that sewed up her mouth, and another quiz in either hand. When she wished to express her negative, she darted and recoiled the quizzes in her right and left hand; and when she desired to express her affirmative, she, nodding, made the quiz pendant from her mouth flow down and recoil again. The trial proceeded in this manner for a long time, to the admiration of the whole empire; when at length I thought proper to send to my old friend and ally, Preston John, entreating him to forward to me one of the species of wild and curious birds found in his kingdom, called a Wauwau. This creature was brought over the great bridge before mentioned, from the interior of Africa, by a balloon. The balloon was placed upon the bridge, extending over the parapets on each side, with great wings or oars to assist its velocity; and under the balloon was placed pendant a kind of boat, in which were the persons to manage the steerage of the machine, and protect Wauwau. This oracular bird arriving in England, instantly darted through one of the windows of the great hall, and perched upon the canopy in the centre, to the admiration of all present. Her cackling appeared quite prophetic and oracular: and the first question proposed to her by the unanimous consent of the matrons and judges was, Whether or not the moon was composed of Green Cheese? The solution of this question was deemed absolutely necessary, before they could proceed farther on the trial.

Wauwau seemed in figure not very much differing from a swan, except that the neck was not near so long, and she stood after an admirable fashion like to Vestris. She began cackling most sonorously, and the whole assembly agreed that it was absolutely necessary to catch her, and having her in their immediate possession, nothing more would be requisite for the termination of this litigated affair. For this purpose the whole house rose up to catch her, and approached in tumult, the judges brandishing their pens, and shaking their big wigs, and the matrons quizzing as much as possible in every direction, which very much startled Wauwau; who, clapping her wings, instantly flew out of the hall. The assembly began to proceed after her in order and style of precedence: together with my whole train of Gog and Magog, Sphinx, Hilaro Frosticos, Queen Mab's chariot, the bulls and crickets, &c., preceded by bands of music; while Wauwau, descending on the earth, ran on like an ostrich before the troop, cackling all the way. Thinking suddenly to catch this ferocious animal, the judges and matrons would suddenly quicken their pace: but the creature would as quickly outrun them, or sometimes fly away for many miles together, and then alight to take breath until we came within sight of her again. Our train journeyed over a most prodigious tract of country in a direct line, over hills and dales, to the summit of Plinlimmon, where we thought to have seized Wauwau; but she instantly took flight, and never ceased until she arrived at the mouth of the Potomac river in Virginia.

Our company immediately embarked in the machines before described, in which we had journeyed into Africa, and after a few days' sail arrived in North America. We met with nothing curious on our voyoge, except a floating island, containing some very delightful villages, inhabited by a few whites and negroes; the sugar cane did not thrive there well, on account, as I was informed, of the variety of the climates; the island being sometimes driven up as far as the north pole, and at other times wafted under the equinoctial. In pity to the poor islanders, I got a huge stake of iron, and driving it through the centre of the island, fastened it to the rocks and mud at the bottom of the sea; since which time the island has become stationary, and is well known at present by the name of St. Christopher's, and there is not an island in the world more secure.

Arriving in North America, we were received by the President of the United States with every honour and politeness. He was pleased to give us all the information possible relative to the woods and immense regions of America, and ordered troops of the different tribes of the Esquimaux to guide us through the forests in pursuit of Wauwau; who, we at length found, had taken refuge in the centre of a morass. The inhabitants of the country, who loved hunting, were much delighted to behold the manner in which we attempted to seize upon Wauwau; the chase was noble and uncommon. I determined to surround the animal on every side; and for this purpose ordered the judges and matrons to surround the morass with nets extending a mile in height; on various parts of which nets the company disposed themselves, floating in the air, like so many spiders upon their cobwebs. Magog, at my command, put on a kind of armour that he had carried with him for the purpose, corslet of steel, with gauntlets, helmet, &c., so as nearly to resemble a mole. He instantly plunged into the earth, making way with his sharp steel head-piece, and tearing up the ground with his iron claws; and found not much difficulty therein, as morass in general is of a soft and yielding texture. Thus he hoped to undermine Wauwau, and suddenly rising, seize her by the foot: while his brother Gog ascended the air in a balloon, hoping to catch her if she should escape Magog. Thus the animal was surrounded on every side, and at first was very much terrified, knowing not which way she had best to go. At length, hearing an obscure noise under ground, Wauwau took flight before Magog could have time to catch her by the foot. She flew to the right, then to the left, north, east, west, and south; but found on every side the company prepared upon their nets. At length she flew right up, soaring at a most astonishing rate towards the sun, while the company on every side set up one general acclamation. But Gog in his balloon soon stopped Wauwau in the midst of her career, and snared her in a net, the cords of which he continued to hold in his hand. Wauwau did not totally lose her presence of mind, but, after a little consideration, made several violent darts against the volume of the balloon; so fierce, as at length to tear open a great space, on which, the inflammable air rushing out, the whole apparatus began to tumble to the earth with amazing rapidity. Gog himself was thrown out of the vehicle, and letting go the reins of the net, Wauwau got liberty again, and flew out of sight in an instant.

Gog had been above a mile elevated from the earth when he began to fall; and as he advanced, the rapidity increased, so that he went like a ball from a cannon into the morass, and his nose striking against one of the iron-capped hands of his brother Magog, just then rising from the depths, he began to bleed violently, and, but for the softness of the morass, would have lost his life.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

The Baron harangues the Company, and they continue the Pursuit—The Baron, wandering from his Retinue, is taken by the Savages, scalped, and tied to a stake to be roasted; but he contrives to extricate himself, and kills the Savages—The Baron travels over land through the Forests of North America, to the Confines of Russia—Arrives at the Castle of the Nareskin Rowskimowmowsky, and gallops into the Kingdom of Loggerheads—A Battle, in which the Baron fights the Nareskin in single combat, and generously gives him his Life—Arrives at the Friendly Islands, and discourses with Omai—The Baron, with all his attendants, goes from Otaheite to the Isthmus of Darien; and having cut a Canal across the Isthmus, returns to England.

"My Friends, and very learned and profound Judicarii," said I, "be not disheartened that Wauwau has escaped from you at present; persevere, and we shall yet succeed. You should never despair, Munchausen being your general; and therefore be brave, be courageous, and fortune shall second your endeavours. Let us advance undaunted in pursuit, and follow the fierce Wauwau even three times round the globe, until we entrap her."

My words filled them with confidence and valour, and they unanimously agreed to continue the chase. We penetrated the frightful deserts and gloomy woods of America, beyond the source of the Ohio, through countries utterly unknown before. I frequently took the diversion of shooting in the woods; and one day that I happened with three attendants to wander far from our troop, we were suddenly set upon by a number of savages. As we had expended our powder and shot, and happened to have no side arms, it was in vain to make any resistance against hundreds of enemies. In short, they bound us, and made us walk before them to a gloomy cavern in a rock, where they feasted upon what game they had killed: but which not being sufficient, they took my three unfortunate companions and myself, and scalped us. The pain of losing the flesh from my head was most horrible; it made me leap in agonies, and roar like a bull. They then tied us to stakes, and making great fires around us, began to dance in a circle, singing with much distortion and barbarity, and at times putting the palms of their hands to their mouths, set up the war-whoop. As they had on that day also made a great prize of some wine and spirits belonging to our troop, these barbarians, finding it delicious, and unconscious of its intoxicating quality, began to drink it in profusion, while they beheld us roasting; and in a very short time they were all completely drunk, and fell asleep around the fires. Perceiving some hopes, I used most astonishing efforts to extricate myself from the cords with which I was tied, and at length succeeded. I immediately unbound my companions, and though half roasted, they still had power enough to walk. We sought about for the flesh that had been taken off our heads, and having found the scalps, we immediately adapted them to our bloody heads, sticking them on with a kind of glue of a sovereign quality, that flows from a tree in that country; and the parts united and healed in a few hours. We took care to revenge ourselves on the savages, and with their own hatchets put every one of them to death. We then returned to our troop, who had given us up for lost; and they made great rejoicings on our return. We now proceeded in our journey through this prodigious wilderness, Gog and Magog acting as pioneers, hewing down the trees, &c., at a great rate as we advanced. We passed over numberless swamps, and lakes, and rivers, until at length we discovered a habitation at some distance. It appeared a dark and gloomy castle, surrounded with strong ramparts, and a broad ditch. We called a council of war, and it was determined to send a deputation with a trumpet to the walls of the castle, and demand friendship from the governor, whoever he might be, and an account if aught he knew of Wauwau. For this purpose our whole caravan halted in the wood, and Gog and Magog reclined amongst the trees, that their enormous strength and size should not be discovered, and give umbrage to the lord of the castle. Our embassy approached the castle, and having demanded admittance for some time, at length the drawbridge was let down, and they were suffered to enter. As soon as they had passed the gate it was immediately closed after them, and on either side they perceived ranks of halberdiers, who made them tremble with fear. "We come," the herald proclaimed, "on the part of Hilaro Frosticos, Don Quixote, Lord Whittington, and the thrice-renowned Baron Munchausen, to claim friendship from the governor of this puissant castle, and to seek Wauwau." "The most noble the governor," replied an officer, "is at all times happy to entertain such travellers as pass through these immense deserts, and will esteem it an honour that the great Hilaro Frosticos, Don Quixote, Lord Whittington, and the thrice-renowned Baron Munchausen, enter his castle walls."

In short, we entered the castle. The governor sat with all our company to table, surrounded by his friends, of a very fierce and warlike appearance. They spoke but little, and seemed very austere and reserved, until the first course was served up. The dishes were brought in by a number of bears walking on their hind-legs; and on every dish was a fricassee of pistols, pistol-bullets, sauce of gunpowder, and aqua-vitæ. This entertainment seemed rather indigestible by even an ostrich's stomach: when the governor addressed us, and informed me that it was ever his custom to strangers, to offer them for the first course a service similar to that before us; and if they were inclined to accept the invitation, he would fight them as much as they pleased; but if they could not relish the pistol-bullets, &c., he would conclude them peaceable, and try what better politeness he could show them in his castle. In short, the first course being removed untouched, we dined; and after dinner the governor forced the company to push the bottle about with alacrity and to excess. He informed us, that he was the Nareskin Rowskimowmowsky, who had retired amidst these wilds, disgusted with the court of Petersburgh. I was rejoiced to meet him; I recollected my old friend, whom I had known at the court of Russia, when I rejected the hand of the Empress. The Nareskin, with all his knights companions, drank to an astonishing degree, and we all set off upon hobby-horses in full cry out of the castle. Never was there seen such a cavalcade before. In front galloped an hundred knights belonging to the castle, with hunting horns and a pack of excellent dogs; and then came the Nareskin Rowskimowmowsky, Gog and Magog, Hilaro Frosticos, and your humble Servant, hallooing and shouting like so many demoniacs, and spurring our hobby-horses at an infernal rate, until we arrived in the kingdom of Loggerheads. The kingdom of Loggerheads was wilder than any part of Siberia, and the Nareskin had here built a romantic summer-house in a Gothic taste, to which he would frequently retire with his company after dinner. The Nareskin had a dozen bears of enormous stature that danced for our amusement, and their chiefs performed the *minuet de la cour* to admiration. And here the most noble Hilaro Frosticos thought proper to ask the Nareskin some intelligence about Wauwau, in quest of whom we had travelled over such a tract of country, and encountered so many dangerous adventures: and also invited the Nareskin Rowskimowmowsky to attend us with all his bears in the expedition. The Nareskin appeared astonished at the idea; he looked with infinite hauteur and ferocity on Hilaro, and affecting a violent passion, asked him, "Did he imagine that the Nareskin Rowskimowmowsky could condescend to take notice of a Wauwau, let her fly what way she would? Or did he think a chief possessing such blood in his veins could engage in such a foreign pursuit? By the blood of all the bears in the kingdom of Loggerheads, and by the ashes of my great-great-grandmother, I would cut off your head!"

Hilaro Frosticos resented this oration, and in short a general riot commenced. The bears, together with the hundred knights, took the part of the Nareskin; and Gog and Magog, Don Quixote, the Sphinx, Lord Whittington, the bulls, the cr[illegible]ets, the judges, the matrons, and Hilaro Frosticos, made noble warfare against them.

I drew my sword, and challenged the Nareskin to single combat. He frowned, while his eyes sparkled fire and indignation; and bracing a buckler on his left arm, he advanced against me. I made a blow at him with all my force, which he received upon his buckler, and my sword broke short.

Ungenerous Nareskin! seeing me disarmed, he still pushed forward, dealing his blows upon me with the utmost violence, which I parried with my shield and the hilt of my broken sword, and fought like a game-cock.

An enormous bear at the same time attacked me: but I ran my hand, still retaining the hilt of my broken sword, down his throat, and tore up his tongue by the roots. I then seized his carcase by the hind-legs, and whirling it over my head, gave the Nareskin such a blow with his own bear, as evidently stunned him. I repeated my blows, knocking the bear's head against the Nareskin's head, until, by one happy blow, I got his head into the bear's jaws; and the creature being still somewhat alive and convulsive, the teeth closed upon him like nut-crackers. I threw the bear from me, but the Nareskin remained sprawling, unable to extricate his head from the bear's jaws, imploring for mercy. I gave the wretch his life—a lion preys not upon carcases. At the same time, my troop had effectually routed the bears and the rest of their adversaries. I was merciful, and ordered quarter to be given.

At that moment I perceived Wauwau flying at a great height through the heavens, and we instantly set out in pursuit of her, and never stopped until we arrived at Kamschatka; thence passed to Otaheite. I met my old acquaintance Omai, who had been in England with the great navigator Cook; and I was glad to find he had established Sunday-schools over all the islands.

From these islands we set out, attended by a fleet of canoes with fighting-stages, and the chiefest warriors of the islands, commanded by Omai; and altogether we cut a very formidable appearance on our arrival at the Isthmus of Darien. Sensible of what benefit it would be to mankind, I immediately formed a plan of cutting a canal across the Isthmus, from sea to sea.

For this purpose I drove my chariot with the greatest impetuosity repeatedly from shore to shore, in the same track, tearing up the rocks and earth thereby, and forming a tolerable bed for the water. Gog and Magog next advanced at the head of a million of people, from the realms of North and South America, and from Europe: and with infinite labour cleared away the earth, &c., that I had ploughed up with my chariot. I then again drove my chariot, making the canal wider and deeper; and ordered Gog and Magog to repeat their labour as before. The canal being a quarter of a mile broad, and three hundred yards in depth, I thought it sufficient, and immediately let in the waters of the sea. I did imagine that from the rotatory motion of the earth on its axis from west to east, the sea would be higher on the eastern than the western coast; and that on the uniting of the two seas there would be a strong current from the east—and it happened just as I expected. The sea came in with tremendous magnificence, and enlarged the bounds of the caual, so as to make a passage of some miles broad from ocean to ocean, and make an island of South America. Several sail of trading vessels and men-of-war sailed through this new channel to the South Seas, China, &c., and saluted me with all their cannon as they passed.

Thus having wedded the Atlantic Ocean to the South Sea, I returned to England, and found Wauwau precisely in the very spot whence she had set out, after having led us a chase all round the world.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

The Baron goes to Petersburgh, and converses with the Empress—Persuades the Russians and Turks to cease cutting one another's Throats, and in concert cut a Canal across the Isthmus of Suez—The Baron discovers the Alexandrine Library, and meets with Hermes Trismegistus—Besieges Seringapatam, and challenges Tippoo Saib to single combat—They fight—The Baron receives some wounds on his Face, but at last vanquishes the Tyrant—The Baron returns to Europe, and raises the Hull of the Royal George.

SEIZED with a fury of canal-cutting, I took it in my head to form an immediate communication between the Mediterranean and the Red Sea; and therefore set out for Petersburgh.

The sanguinary ambition of the Em press would not listen to my proposals, until I took a private opportunity, taking a cup of coffee with her Majesty, to tell her that I would absolutely sacrifice myself for the general good of mankind; and if she would accede to my proposals, would, on the completion of the canal, *ipso facto*, give her my hand in marriage!

"My dear, dear Baron," said she, "I accede to everything you please; and agree to make peace with the Porte on the conditions you mention. And," added she, rising with all the majesty of the Czarina, Empress of half the world, "be it known to all subjects, that We ordain these conditions, for such is our royal will and pleasure."

I now proceeded to the Isthmus of Suez, at the head of a million of Russian pioneers, and there united my forces with a million of Turks, armed with shovels and pickaxes. They did not come to cut each other's throats, but for their mutual interest, to facilitate commerce and civilisation, and pour all the wealth of India by a new channel into Europe. "My brave fellows," said I, "consider the immense labour of the Chinese to build their celebrated wall: think of what superior benefit to mankind is our present undertaking; persevere, and fortune will second your endeavours. Remember, it is Munchausen who leads you on, and be convinced of success."

Saying these words, I drove my chariot with all my might in my former track, the vestige mentioned by the Baron de Tott; and when I was advanced considerably, I felt my chariot sinking under me. I attempted to drive on, but the ground, or rather immense vault, giving way, my chariot and all went down precipitately. Stunned by the fall, I was some moments before I could recollect myself; when at length, to my amazement, I perceived myself fallen into the Alexandrine Library, overwhelmed in an ocean of books: thousands of volumes came tumbling on my head amidst the ruins of that part of the vault through which my chariot had descended, and for a time buried my bulls and all beneath a heap of learning. However, I contrived to extricate myself, and advanced with awful admiration through the vast avenues of the library. I perceived on every side innumerable volumes and repositories of ancient learning, and all the science of the Antediluvian world. Here I met with Hermes Trismegistus, and a parcel of old philosophers, debating upon the politics and learning of their days. I gave them inexpressible delight, in telling them in a few words all the discoveries of Newton, and the history of the world since their time. These gentry, on the contrary, told me a thousand stories of antiquity, that some of our antiquarians would give their very eyes to hear.

In short, I ordered the library to be preserved; and I intend making a present of it, as soon as it arrives in England, to the Royal Society, together with Hermes Trismegistus, and half a dozen old philosophers. I have got a beautiful cage made, in which I keep these extraordinary creatures, and feed them with bread and honey, as they seem to believe in a kind of doctrine of transmigration, and will not touch flesh. Hermes Trismegistus especially is a most antique-looking being, with a beard half a yard long, covered with a robe of golden embroidery, and prates like a parrot. He will cut a brilliant figure in the Museum.

Having made a track with my chariot from sea to sea, I ordered my Turks and Russians to begin; and in a few hours we had the pleasure of seeing a fleet of British East Indiamen in full sail through the canal. The officers of this fleet were very polite, and paid me every applause and congratulation my exploits could merit. They told me of their affairs in India, and the ferocity of that dreadful warrior, Tippoo Saib; on which I resolved to go to India and encounter the tyrant. I travelled down the Red Sea to Madras, and at the head of a few Sepoys and Europeans pursued the flying army of Tippoo to the gates of Seringapatam. I challenged him to mortal combat; and, mounted on my steed, rode up to the walls of the fortress amidst a storm of shells and cannon-balls. As fast as the bombs and cannon-balls came upon me, I caught them in my hands like so many pebbles, and throwing them against the fortress, demolished the strongest ramparts of the place. I took my mark so direct, that whenever I aimed a cannon-ball or a shell at any person on the ramparts, I was sure to hit him: and one time, perceiving a tremendous piece of artillery pointed against me, and knowing the ball must be so great it would certainly stun me, I took a small cannon-ball, and just as I perceived the engineer going to order them to fire, and opening his mouth to give the word of command, I took aim, and drove my ball precisely down his throat.

Tippoo, fearing that all would be lost if I continued to batter the place, came forth upon his elephant to fight me; I saluted him, and insisted he should fire first. Tippoo, though a barbarian, was not deficient in politeness, and declined the compliment; upon which I took off my hat, and bowing, told him it was an advantage Munchausen should never be said to accept from so gallant a warrier: on which Tippoo instantly discharged his carbine, the ball from which hitting my horse's ear, made him plunge with rage and indignation. In return, I discharged my pistol at Tippoo, and shot off his turban. He had a small field-piece mounted with him on his elephant, which he then discharged at me, and the grape-shot coming in a shower, rattled in the laurels that covered and shaded me all over, and remained pendent like berries on the branches. I then advancing, took the proboscis of his elephant, and turning it against the rider, struck him repeatedly with the extremity of it on either side of the head, until I at length dismounted him. Nothing could equal the rage of the barbarian on finding himself thrown from his elephant. He rose in a fit of despair, and rushed against my steed and myself: but I scorned to fight him at so great a disadvantage on his side, and directly dismounted to fight him hand to hand. Never did I fight with any man who bore himself more nobly than this adversary; he parried my blows, and dealt home his own in return with astonishing precision. The first blow of his sabre I received upon the bridge of my nose; and, but for the bony firmness of that part of my face, it would have descended to my mouth. I still bear the mark upon my nose. He next made a furious blow at my head, but I, parrying, deadened the force of his sabre, so that I received but one scar on my forehead; and at the same instant, by a blow of my sword, cut off his arm, and his hand and sabre fell to the earth; he tottered for some paces, and dropped at the foot of his elephant. That sagacious animal, seeing the danger of his master, endeavoured to protect him by flourishing his proboscis round the head of the Sultan.

Fearless, I advanced against the elephant, desirous to take alive the haughty Tippoo Saib; but he drew a pistol from his belt, and discharged it full in my face as I rushed upon him, which did me no farther harm than wound my cheek-bone, which disfigures me somewhat under my left eye. I could not withstand the rage and impulse of that moment, and with one blow of my sword separated his head from his body.

I returned overland from India to Europe with admirable velocity; so that the account of Tippoo's defeat by me has not yet arrived by the ordinary passage, nor can you expect to hear of it for a considerable time. I simply relate the encounter as it happened between the Sultan and me; and if there be any one who doubts the truth of what I say, he is an infidel, and I will fight him at any time and place, and with any weapon he pleases.

Hearing so many persons talking about raising the Royal George, I began to take pity on that fine old ruin of British plank, and determined to have her up. I was sensible of the failure of the various means hitherto employed, and therefore inclined to try a different method. I got an immense balloon, made of the toughest sail-cloth; and, having descended in my diving-bell, and properly secured the hull with enormous cables, I ascended to the surface, and fastened my cables to the balloon. As soon as I began to fill my balloon with inflammable air, the vessel began to move: but when my balloon was completely filled, she carried up the Royal George with the greatest rapidity. The vessel appearing on the surface occasioned a shout of triumph from the millions assembled on the occasion. Still the balloon continued ascending, trailing the hull after, like a lantern at the tail of a kite, and in a few minutes appeared floating among the clouds. It was then the opinion of many philosophers, that it would be more difficult to get her down than it had been to draw her up. But I convinced them to the contrary, by taking my aim so exactly with a twelve-pounder, that I brought her down in an instant. I thought it safer to take my aim when the balloon was over the sea, and, pointing my twelve-pounder, drove the ball right through the balloon; on which the inflammable air rushed out with great force, and the Royal George descended like a falling star into the very spot from whence she had been taken. There she still remains; and I have convinced all Europe of the possibility of taking her up.

CHAPTER XXXV.

The Baron makes a Speech to the National Assembly, and drives out all the Members—Routs the Fish-women and the National Guards—Pursues them into a Church, where he defeats the National Assembly, &c., with Rousseau, Voltaire, and Beelzebub at their head, and liberates Marie Antoinette and the Royal Family.

Passing through Switzerland, on my return from India, I heard of the sufferings of the amiable Marie Antoinette, and swore to avenge every look that had threatened her with insult. I went to the cavern of these Anthropophagi, assembled to debate, and gracefully putting the hilt of my sword to my lips—"I swear," cried I, "by the sacred cross of my sword, that if you do not instantly reinstate your king and his nobility, and your injured queen, I will cut the one half of you to pieces." On which the President, taking up a leaden inkstand, flung it at my head. I stooped to avoid the blow, and rushing to the tribunal, seized the speaker, who was fulminating against the Aristocrats; and taking the creature by one leg, flung him at the President. I laid about me most nobly, drove them all out of the house, and, locking the doors, put the key in my pocket. I then went to the poor king, and making my obeisance to him—"Sire," said I, "your enemies have all fled; I alone am the National Assembly at present; and I shall register your edicts to recall the princes and the nobility; and in future, if your Majesty pleases, I will be your Parliament and Council." He thanked me, and the amiable Marie Antoinette, smiling, gave me her hand to kiss.

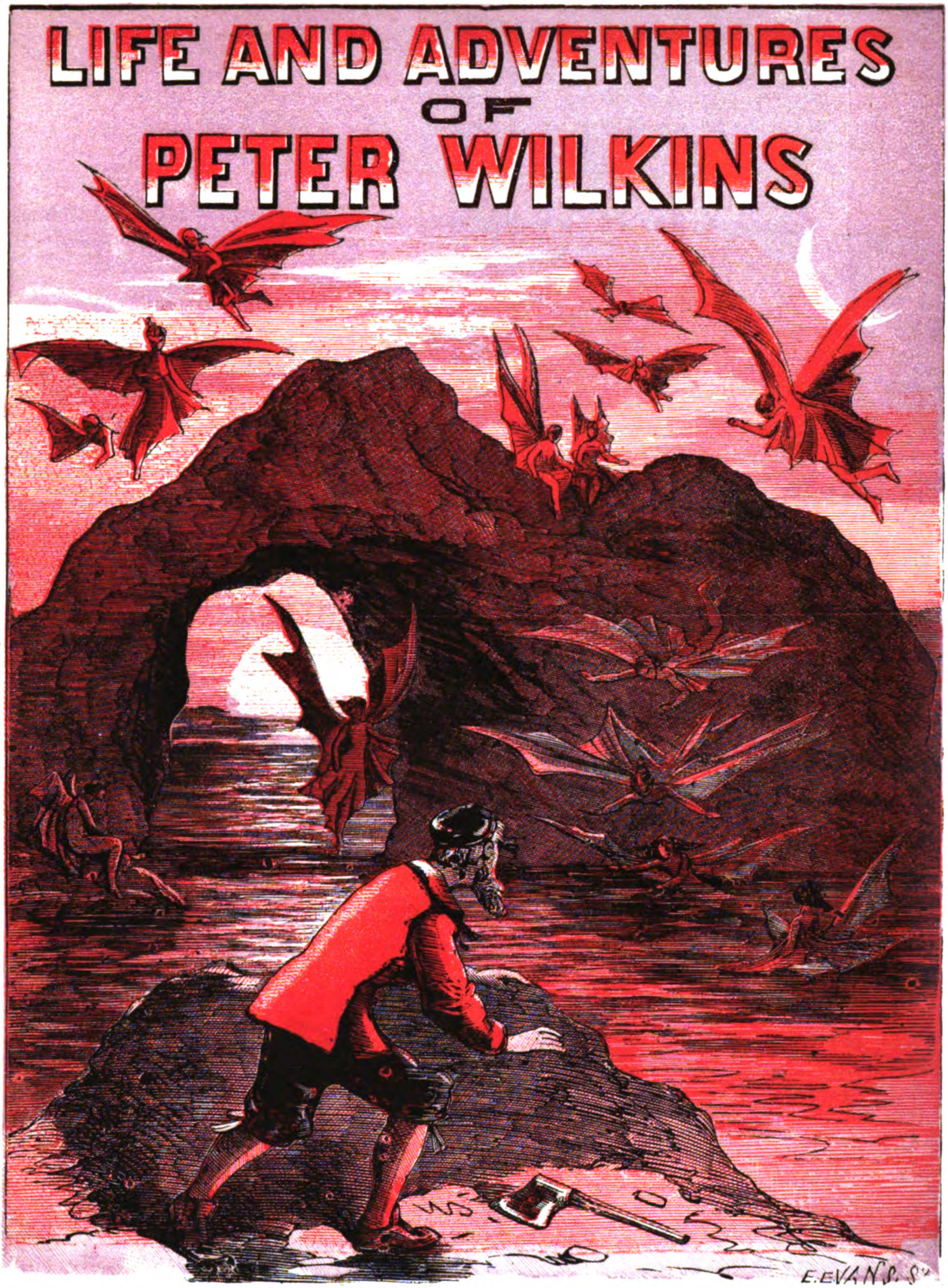
At that moment I perceived a party of the National Assembly, who had rallied with the National Guards, and a vast procession of fish-women, advancing against me. I deposited their Majesties in a place of safety, and with my drawn sword advanced against my foes. Three hundred fish-women, with bushes dressed with ribbons in their hands, came hallooing and roaring against me like so many furies. I scorned to defile my sword with their blood, but seized the first that came up, and making her kneel down, knighted her with my sword; which so terrified the rest, that they all set up a frightful yell, and ran away as fast as they could, for fear of being aristocrated by knighthood.

I then pursued the enemy to the top of a hill, where a most noble edifice dazzled my sight; noble and sacred it was, but now converted to the vilest purposes. I burst open the doors, and entered sword in hand. Here I observed all the National Assembly marching round a great altar erected to Voltaire; there was his statue in triumph, and the fish-women with garlands decking it. I rushed upon these pagans, and sacrificed them by dozens on the spot. Their cries were horrible, like the shrieks of witches and enchanters versed in magic and the black art; while the thunder growled, and storms shook the battlements, and Rousseau, Voltaire, and Beelzebub appeared, three horrible spectres: one all meagre, mere skin and bone, and cadaverous, was Voltaire, and in his hands were a lyre and a dagger. On the other side was Rousseau, with a chalice of sweet poison in his hand; and between them was their father Beelzebub! I shuddered at the sight; and with all the enthusiasm of rage, horror, and piety, rushed in among them. I seized that cursed skeleton Voltaire, and soon compelled him to renounce all the errors he had advanced; and while he spoke the words, as if by magic charm, the whole assembly shrieked, and their pandemonium began to tumble in hideous ruin on their heads.

I returned in triumph to the palace, where the Queen rushed into my arms, weeping tenderly. I bade the lovely creature dry her eyes, and with the King and Dauphin ascend my carriage, and drive post to Mont-Medi, as not an instant was to be lost. They took my advice, and drove away. I conveyed them within a few miles of Mont-Medi, when the King, thanking me for my assistance, hoped I would not trouble myself any farther, as he was then, he presumed, out of danger; and the Queen also, with tears in her eyes, thanked me on her knees, and presented the Dauphin for my blessing. In short, I left the King eating a mutton chop. I advised him not to delay, or he would certainly be taken; and setting spurs to my horse, wished them a good evening, and returned to England. If the King remained too long at table, and was taken, it was not my fault.

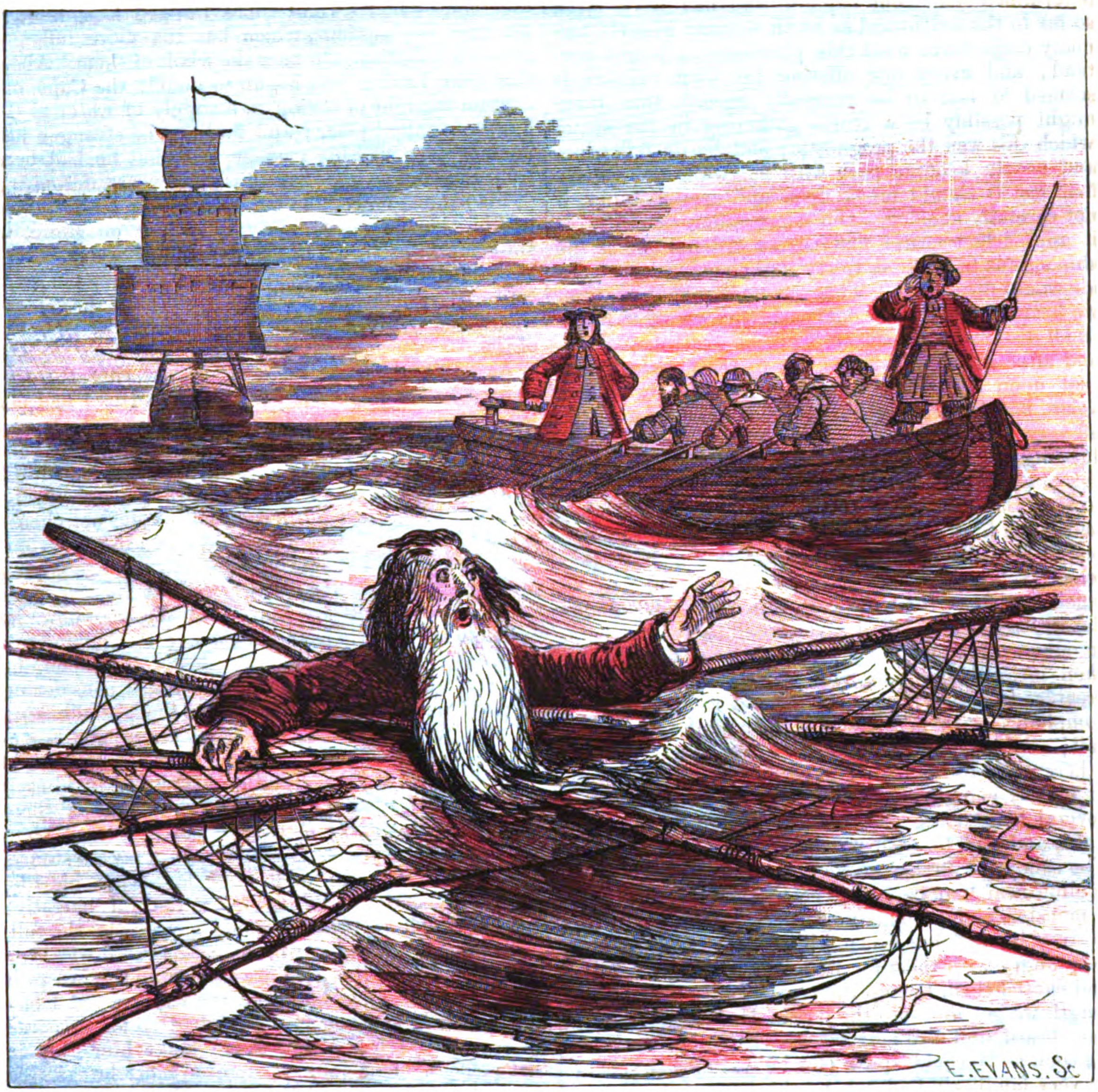
THE END.

Edmund Evans, Engraver and Printer, Raquet Court, Fleet Street.


LIFE AND ADVENTURES
OF
PETER WILKINS
E. EVANS. Sc.

LONDON: GEORGE VICKERS, ANGEL COURT, STRAND.

THE LIFE AND ADVENTURES
OF
PETER WILKINS.



PETER WILKINS, TRAVELLING FROM THE FLYING ISLAND, IS PICKED UP OFF CAPE HORN BY THE SHIP "HECTOR."

INTRODUCTION.

It might be looked upon as impertinent in me, who am about to give the life of another, to trouble the reader with any of my own concerns, or the affairs that led me into the South Seas. Therefore, I shall only acquaint him, that in my return on board the "Hector," as a passenger, round Cape Horn, for England, full late in the season, the wind and currents setting strong against us, our ship drove more southerly, by several degrees, than the usual course, even to the latitude of 75° or 76°; when, the wind chopping about, we began to resume our intended way.

It was about the middle of June, when the days are there at the shortest, on a very starry and moonlight night, that we observed at some distance a very black cloud, but seemingly of no extraordinary size or height, moving very fast towards us, and seeming to follow the ship, which then made great way. Every one on deck was very curious in observing its motions; and observing it frequently to divide, and presently to close again, and not to continue long in any determined shape, our captain, who had never been so far to the southward as he then found himself, had many conjectures what this phenomenon might portend; and every one offering his own opinion, it seemed at last to be generally agreed, that there might possibly be a storm gathering in the air, of which this was the prognostic; and by its following, and nearly keeping pace with us, we were in great fear lest it should break upon and overwhelm us, if not carefully avoided. Our commander, therefore, as it approached nearer and nearer, ordered one of the ship's guns to be fired, to try if the percussion of the air would disperse it. This was no sooner done, than we heard a prodigious flounce in the water, at but a small distance from the ship, on the weather quarter; and after a violent noise or cry in the air, the cloud, that upon our firing dissipated, seemed to return again, but by degrees disappeared. Whilst we were all very much surprised at this unexpected accident, I, being naturally very curious and inquisitive into the causes of all unusual incidents, begged the captain to send the boat, to see, if possible, what it was that had fallen from the cloud, and offered myself to make one in her. He was much against this at first, as it would retard his voyage, now we were going so smoothly before the wind. But in the midst of our debate, we plainly heard a voice calling out for help, in our own tongue, like a person in great distress. I then insisted on going, and not suffering a fellow-creature to perish for the sake of a trifling delay. In compliance with my resolute demand, he slackened sail; and hoisting out the boat, myself and seven others made to the cry; and soon found it came from an elderly man, labouring for life, with his arms across several long poles, of equal size at both ends, very light, and tied to each other in a very odd manner. The sailors at first were very fearful of assisting or coming near him, crying to each other, "He must be a monster, and perhaps might overset the boat, and destroy them;" but hearing him speak English, I was very angry with them for their foolish apprehensions, and caused them to clap their oars under him, and at length we got him into the boat. He had an extravagant beard, and also long blackish hair upon his head. As soon as he could speak (for he was almost spent), he very familiarly took me by the hand, I having sat myself close beside him to observe him, and squeezing it, thanked me very kindly for my civility to him, and likewise thanked all the sailors. I then asked him, by what possible accident he came there; but he shook his head, declining to satisfy my curiosity. Hereupon, reflecting that it might just then be troublesome for him to speak, and that we should have leisure enough in our voyage for him to relate, and for me to hear, his story, (which, from the surprising manner of his falling amongst us, I could not but believe would contain something very remarkable,) I waived any farther speech with him at that time.

We had him to the ship, and taking off his wet clothes, put him to bed in my cabin; and I having a large provision of stores on board, and no concern in the ship, grew very fond of him, and supplied him with everything he wanted. In our frequent discourses together, he had several times dropped loose hints of his past transactions, which but the more inflamed me with impatience to hear the whole of them. About this time, having just begun to double the Cape, our captain thought of taking in a supply of water at the first convenient place; and finding the stranger had no money to pay his passage, and that he had been from England no less than thirty-five years, despairing of his reward for conducting him thither, he intimated to him that he must expect to be put on shore, to shift for himself, when we put in for water. This entirely sank the stranger's spirits, and gave me great concern; insomuch that I fully resolved, if the captain should really prove such a brute, to take the payment of the passage upon myself.

As we came near to the destined watering, the captain spoke the plainer of his intentions (for I had not yet hinted my design to him or to any one else); and one morning the stranger came into my cabin, with tears in his eyes, telling me, he verily believed the captain would be as good as his word, and set him on shore, which he very much dreaded. I did not choose to tell him immediately what I designed in his favour, but asked him if he could think of no way of satisfying the captain, or any one else who might thereupon be induced to engage for him; and farther, how he expected to live when he should get to England,—a man quite forgotten, and penniless. Hereupon, he told me he had, ever since being on board, considering his destitute condition, entertained a thought of having his adventures written; which, as there was something so uncommon in them, he was sure the world would be glad to know; and he had flattered himself with hopes of raising somewhat by the sale of them to put him in a way of living; but as it was plain now he should never see England without my assistance, if I would answer for his passage, and write his life, he would communicate to me a faithful narrative thereof, which he believed would pay me, to the full, any charge I might be at on his account. I was very well pleased with this overture; not from the prospect of gain by the copy, but from the expectation I had of being fully satisfied in what I had so long desired to know: so I told him I would make him easy in that respect. This quite transported him: he caressed me, and called me his deliverer; and was then going open-mouthed to the captain, to tell him so, but I put a stop to that: "For," says I, "though I insist upon hearing your story, the captain may yet relent of his purpose, and not leave you on shore; and if that should prove the case, I shall neither part with my money for you, nor you with your interest in your adventures to me." Whereupon he agreed I was right, and desisted.

When we had taken in best part of our water, and the boat was going its last turn, the captain ordered up the strange man, as they called him, and told him he must go on board the boat, which was to leave him on shore with some few provisions. I happening to hear nothing of these orders, they were so sudden, the poor man was afraid, after all, he should have been hurried to land without my knowledge; but begging very hard of the captain only for leave to speak with me before he went, I was called (though with some reluctance; for the captain disliked me for the liberties I frequently took with him, on account of his brutal behaviour). I expostulated with the cruel wretch on the inhumanity of the action he was about; telling him, if he had resolved the poor man should perish, it would have been better to have suffered him to do so when he was at the last extremity, than to expose him afresh, by this means, to a death as certain, in a more lingering and miserable way. But the savage being resolved, and nothing moved by what I said, I paid him part of the passage down, and agreed to pay the rest at our arrival in England.

Thus having reprieved the poor man, the next thing was to enter upon my new employ of amanuensis; and having a long space of time before us, we allotted two hours every morning for the purpose of writing down his life from his own mouth; and frequently, when wind and weather kept us below, we spent some time of an afternoon in the same exercise, till we had quite completed it. But then there were some things in it so indescribable by words, that if I had not had some knowledge also in drawing, our history had been very incomplete. Thus it must have been, especially, in the description of the *Glumms* (flying men) and the *Gawries* (flying women) therein mentioned. In order to gain (that so I might communicate) a clear idea of these, I made several drawings of them from his discourses and accounts; and, at length, after divers trials, I made such exact delineations, that he declared they could not have been more perfect resemblances if I had drawn them from the life. Upon a survey, he confessed the very persons themselves could not have been more exact.

R. S.

CHAPTER I.

My name is Peter Wilkins. I was born at Penhale, in Cornwall, on the 21st day of December, 1685, about four months after my father, Peter Wilkins, who was a zealous Protestant, had been executed by Jeffreys, in Somersetshire, for joining in the design of raising the Duke of Monmouth to the throne. I was named, after my father and grandfather, Peter, and was my father's only child by Alice, his wife, the daughter of John Capert, a clergyman in a neighbouring village. My grandfather was a shopkeeper at Newport, who, by frugality and application, had raised a fortune of about a hundred and sixty pounds a year in lands, and a considerable sum of ready money, all which at his death devolved upon my father, his only child; he being no less parsimonious than my grandfather, and living upon his own estate, had much improved it in value before his marriage. But he coming to that unhappy end, my mother placed all her affection upon me, and used every method to increase the store for my benefit.

In this manner she went on, till I grew too big, as I thought, for confinement at the apron-string, being then about fourteen years of age; and having met with so much indulgence from her, for that reason, found very little or no contradiction from anybody else. So I looked upon myself as a person of some consequence, and began to take all opportunities of enjoying the company of my neighbours, who hinted frequently that the restraint I was under, was too great a curb upon an inclination like mine of seeing the world; but my mother, still impatient of any little absence, by excessive fondness, and encouraging every inclination I seemed to have, when she could be a partaker with me, kept me within bounds of restraint, till I arrived at my sixteenth year.

About this time I got acquainted with a country gentleman, of a small paternal estate, which had been never the better for being in his hands, and had some uneasy demands upon it. He soon grew very fond of me, hoping, as I had reason afterwards to believe, by a union with my mother, to set himself free from his entanglements. She was then about thirty-five years old, and still continued my father's widow, out of particular regard to me, as I have all the reason in the world to believe. She was really a beautiful woman, but had always carried herself with so much reserve, and given so little encouragement to any of the other sex, that she had passed her widowhood with very few solicitations to alter her way of life. This gentleman observing my mother's conduct, in order to ingratiate himself with her, had shown numberless instances of regard for me; and, as he told my mother, had observed many things in my discourse, actions, and turn of mind, that presaged wonderful expectations from me, if my genius was but properly cultivated.

This discourse from a man of very good parts, and esteemed by everybody an accomplished gentleman, by degrees wrought upon my mother, and more and more inflamed her with a desire of adding what lustre she could to my applauded abilities, and influenced her so far as to ask his advice in what manner most properly to proceed with me. My gentleman then had his desire; for he feared not the widow, could he but properly dispose of her charge; so, having desired a little time to consider of a matter of so much importance, he soon after told her he thought the most useful method of establishing me, would be at an academy, kept by a very worthy and judicious gentleman, about thirty or more miles from us, in Somersetshire; where, if I could but be admitted, (the master taking in but a stated number of students at a time,) he did not in the least doubt but I should fully answer the character he had given her of me, and outshine most of my cotemporaries.

My mother, over-anxious for my good, seeming to listen to this proposal, my friend (as I call him) proposed taking a journey himself to the academy, to see if any place was vacant for my reception, and learn the terms of my admission; and in three days' time returned with an engaging account of the place, the master, the regularity of the scholars, of an apartment secured for my reception, and, in short, whatever else might captivate my mother's opinion in favour of his scheme; and, indeed, though he acted principally from another motive, as was plain afterwards, I cannot help thinking he believed it to be the best way of disposing of a lad of sixteen years old, born to a pretty fortune, and who, at that age, could but just read a chapter in the Testament; for he had before beat my mother quite out of her inclination to a grammar-school in the neighbourhood, from a contempt, he said, it would bring upon me from lads much my juniors in years, by being placed in the first rudiments of learning with them.

Well, the whole concern of my mother's little family was now employed in fitting me out for my expedition; and as my friend had been so instrumental in bringing it about, he never missed a day inquiring how preparations went on; and, during the process, by humouring me, ingratiated himself more and more with my mother, but without seeming in the least to aim at it.

In short, the hour of my departure arrived; and though I had never been master of above sixpence at one time, unless at a fair, or so, for immediate spending, my mother, thinking to make my heart easy at our separation, (which, had it appeared otherwise, would have broke hers and spoiled all,) gave me a double pistole in gold, and a little silver in my pocket to prevent my changing it.

Thus I (the coach waiting for us at the door), having been preached into a good liking of the scheme by my friend, who now insisted on making one of our company to introduce us, mounted the carriage with more alacrity than could be expected from one who had never before been beyond the smoke of his mother's chimney; but the thoughts I had conceived from my friend's discourse, of liberty in the academic way, and the weight of so much money in my pocket, as I then imagined would scarce ever be exhausted, were prevailing cordials to keep my spirits on the wing. We lay at an inn that night, near the master's house, and the next day I was initiated; and, at parting with me, my friend presented me with a guinea. When I found myself thus rich, I must say that I heartily wished they were all fairly at home again, that I might have time to count my cash, and dispose of such part of it as I had already appropriated to several uses then in embryo.

The next morning left me master of my wishes; for my mother came and took her last (though she little thought it) leave of me, and smothering me with her caresses and prayers for my well-doing, in the height of her ardour put into my hand another guinea, promising to see me again quickly.

I shall not trouble you with the reception I met from my master or his scholars; or tell you how soon I made friends of all my companions, by some trifling largesses which my stock enabled me to bestow as occasion required; but I must inform you, that after sixteen years of idleness at home, I had but little heart to my nouns and pronouns, which now began to be crammed upon me; and being the eldest lad in the house, I sometimes regretted the loss of the time past, and at other times despaired of ever making a scholar at my years. I own these thoughts almost overcame me, and threw me into a deep melancholy, of which I soon after, by letter, informed my mother, who (by the advice, as I suppose, of my friend, by this time her suitor) sent me word to mind my studies, and I should want for nothing.

CHAPTER II.

I CONTINUED for some months to pass my time in this melancholy manner; but my mind becoming afterwards easier, I began to keep true tally with my book, and being soon able to comprehend what I heard and read, I could, from the general idea I had of things, form a pretty regular piece of Latin, without being able to repeat the very rules it was done by; so that I had the acknowledgment of my master for the best capacity he ever had under his tuition. This, he not sparing frequently to mention it before me, was the acutest spur he could have applied to my industry; and now, having his good will, I began to disuse set hours of exercise, but at my convenience applied myself to my studies, as I best pleased, being always sure to perform as much, or more, than he ever enjoined me, till I grew exceedingly in his confidence; and by reason of my age, now near nineteen, (though I was but small, yet manly,) I became rather his companion upon parties than his direct pupil.

It was upon one of these parties I took the opportunity to declare the dissatisfaction I experienced at my mother's second marriage, of which I had been informed some time since by a letter from my new father, refusing an application I had made for money. "Sir," says I, "surely I was of age to have known it first, especially, considering the affection my mother had always shown to me, and my never once having done the least thing to disoblige her; but, sir," said I, "something else, I fear, is intended by my mother's silence to me; for I have never received above three letters from her since I came here, which is now, you know, three years, and those were within the first three months." I then showed him the letter I received from my new father-in-law, and assured him that gave me the first hint of this second marriage.

I found, by the attention my master gave to my relation, he seemed to suspect this marriage would prove detrimental to me; but not, on the sudden, knowing what to say to it, he told me he would consider of it; and, by all means, advised me to write a very obliging letter to my new father, with my humble request that he would please to order me home the next recess of our learning. I did so, under my master's dictation; and not long after received an answer to the following effect:

"Son Peter,—Your mother has been dead a good while, and, as to your request, it will be only expensive, and of little use; for a person who must live by his studies cannot apply to them too closely."

This letter, if I had a little hope left, quite subdued my fortitude, and well-nigh reduced me to clay. However, with tears in my eyes, I showed it to my master, who, good man! wishing me well, "Peter," says he, "what can this mean? Here is some mystery concealed in it; here is some ill design on foot!" Then taking the letter into his hand, "A person who must live by his studies," says he; "here is more meant than we think for. Why, have you not a pretty estate to live upon, when it comes to your hands? Peter," says he, "I would advise you to go to your father, and inquire how your affairs are left; but I am afraid to let you go alone, and will, when my students depart at Christmas, accompany you myself with all my heart; for, you must know, I have advised on your affair already, and find you are of age to choose yourself a guardian, who may be any relation or friend you can confide in, and may see you have justice done you." I immediately thanked him for the hint, and begged him to accept of the trust, as my only friend, having very few, if any, near relations. This he with great readiness complied with, and was admitted accordingly.

So soon as our scholars were gone home, my master lending me a horse, we set out together, to possess ourselves of all my father's real estate, and such part of the personal as he had been advised would belong to me. Well, we arrived at the old house, but were not received with such extraordinary tokens of friendship, as would give the least room to suppose we were welcome. For my part, all I said, or could say, was, that I was very sorry for my poor mother's death. My father replied, so was he. Here we paused, and might have sat silent until this time, for me, if my master, a grave man, who had seen the world, and was unwilling any part of our time there, which he guessed would be short, should be lost, had not broken silence. "Mr. G.," says he, "I see the loss of Master Wilkins' mother puts him under some confusion; so that you will excuse me, as his preceptor and friend, in making some inquiry how his affairs stand, and how his effects are disposed, as I don't doubt you have taken care to schedule everything that will be coming to him; and though he is not yet of the necessary age for taking upon himself the management of his estate, he is, nevertheless, of capacity to understand the nature and quantum of it, and to show his approbation of the disposition of it, as if he was a year or two older." During this discourse Mr. G. turned pale, then reddened, was going to interrupt, then checked himself. He kept silence, however, till my master had done; when, with a sneer, he replied, "Sir, I must own myself a great stranger to your discourse; nor can I, for my life, imagine what your harangue tends to; but sure I am, I know of no estate, real or personal, or anything else belonging to young Mr. Wilkins, to make a schedule of, as you call it: but this I know, his mother had an estate in land, near 200*l.* a year, and also a good sum of money, when I married her; but the estate she settled on me before her marriage, to dispose of after her decease as I saw fit; and her money and her goods are all come to my sole use, as her husband."

I was just ready to drop while Mr. G. gave me this relation, and was not able to reply a word; but my master, though sufficiently shocked at what he had heard, replied, "Sir, I am informed the estate, and also the money you mention, was Mr. Wilkins' father's at his death; and I am surprised to think any one should have a better title to them than my pupil, his only child." "Sir," says Mr. G., "you are deceived; and though what you say seems plausible enough, and is in some part true, as that the late Mr. Wilkins had such estate, and some hundreds, I may say thousands, at his death, yet you seem ignorant that he made a deed, just before entering into the fatal rebellion, by which he gave my late wife both the estate, money, and everything else he had, absolutely, without any conditions whatsoever, all which, on his unhappy execution, she enjoyed, and now of right, as I told you before, belongs to me; however, as I have no child, if Peter behaves well under your direction, I have thoughts of paying another year's board for him, and then he must shift for himself."

"Oh!" cried I, "for the mercy of some savage beast to devour me! Is this what I have been cockered up for? Why was I not placed out to some laborious craft, where I might have drudged for bread in my proper station? But I fear it is too late to inquire into what is past, and must submit."

My master, good man! was thunderstruck at what he had heard; and finding our business done there, we took our leaves, after Mr. G. had again repeated, that if I behaved well, my preceptor should keep me another year, which was all I must expect from him; and at my departure he gave me a crown-piece, which I then durst not refuse, for fear of offending my master.

We made the best of our way home again to my tutor's, where I stayed but a week to consider what I should do with myself. In this time he did all he could to comfort me, telling me, if I would stay with him, and become his usher, he would complete my learning for nothing, and allow me a salary for my trouble. But my heart was too lofty to think of becoming an usher, within so little a way from my own estate in other hands. However, since I had not a penny of money to endeavour at recovering my right with, I told my master I would consider of his proposal.

During my stay with him, he used all methods to make me as easy as possible, and frequently moralized with so much effect, that I was almost convinced I ought to submit and be content. Amongst the rest of his discourse, he endeavoured to show me (one day, after I had been loudly condemning my cruel fortune, and saying I was born to be unhappy), that I was mistaken, if I thought or imagined it was chance or accident that had been against me, when I complained of fortune. "For," says he, "Peter, there is nothing done below but is at least foreknown, if not decreed, above, and our business in life is to believe so; not that I would have such belief make us careless, and think it to no purpose to strive, as some do, who being persuaded that our actions are not in our own choice, but that, being pressed by an irresistible decree, we are forced to act this or that, fancy we must be necessarily happy or miserable hereafter; or as others, who, for fear of falling upon that shocking principle, would even deprive the Almighty of fore-knowledge, lest it should consequentially amount to a decree; 'for,' say they, 'what is foreknown will and must be.' But I would have you act so as that, let either of these tenets be true, you may still be sure of making yourself easy and happy; and for that purpose let me recommend to you an uniform life of justice and piety, always choosing the good rather than the bad side of every action; for this, say they what they will to the contrary, is not above the power of a reasonable being to practise; and doing so, you may without scruple say, 'If there is foreknowledge of my actions, or they are decreed, I then am one who is foreknown or decreed to be happy:' and this, without farther speculation, you will find the only means always to keep you so; for all men, of all denominations, fully allow this happy effect to follow good actions. Again, Peter, a person acting in a vicious course, with such an opinion in his head as above, must surely be very miserable, as his very actions themselves must pronounce the decree against him. Whilst, therefore, we have not heard the decree read, you see we may easily give sentence whether it be for good or evil to us, by the tenour and course of our own actions.

"You are not now to learn, Peter, that the crimes of the father are often punished in the children, often in the father himself, sometimes in both, and not seldom in neither in this life; and though at first one should think the future punishment annexed to bad actions was sufficient, still it is necessary some should suffer here also for an example to others, we being much more affected with what the eye sees, than what the heart only meditates upon.

"Now, to bring it to our own case: your father, Peter, rose against the lawful magistrate to deprive him (it matters not that he was a bad one) of his lawful power. Your father's policy was such, and his design so well laid, as he thought, that upon any ill success to himself, he had secured his estate to go in the way of all others he could wish to have it, and sits down very well contented, that, happen what would, he should bite the government in preventing the forfeiture. But lo! his policy is as a wall of sand blown down with a puff; for it is to you it ought, even himself being umpire, to have come, as no one would think he could prize any before you his own child. Now, could he look from the grave, and know what passes here, and see Mr. G. in possession of all he fancied he had secured for you, what a weak and short-sighted creature would he find himself! If it be said he did not know he should have a child, then herein appears God's policy beyond man's, for he knew it, and has so ordered that that child should be disinherited; for, by the way, Peter, take this for a maxim, Wherever the first principle of an action is ill, no good consequence can possibly be ever an attendant upon it. Could he, as I said before, but look up and see you, his only child, undone by the very instrument he designed for your security, how pungent would be his anxiety! I say, Peter, though there is something so unaccountable to human wisdom in such events of things, yet there is something therein so reasonable and just withal, that, by a prying eye, the Supreme Hand may very visibly be seen in them. Now, this being plainly the case before us, and herein the glory of the Almighty exalted, rest content under it, and let not this disappointment, befallen you for your father's faults, be attended with others sent down for your own: but remember this, the Hand that depresses a man is no less able to exalt and establish him."

CHAPTER III.

I SEEMED to be very well satisfied while my master was speaking; but though I thought he talked like an angel, my former uneasiness seized me at parting with him. In short, without more consideration, I rose in the morning early, and marched off. I walked at a great rate, for fear my master's kindness should prompt him to send after me, and taking the bye-ways, I reached by dark a little village, where I resolved to halt: upon inquiry, I found myself thirty-five miles from my master's. I had eaten nothing all day, and was very hungry and weary, but my crown-piece was as yet whole; however, I fed very sparingly, being overpressed with the distress of my affairs and the confusion of my thoughts. I slept that night tolerably, but the morning brought its face of horror with it. I had inquired over-night where I was, and been informed that I was not above sixteen miles from Bristol, for which place I then resolved.

At my setting out in the morning, after I had walked about three miles, and had recollected a little of my master's last discourse, I found by degrees my spirit grew calmer than it had been since I left Mr. G. at my house, (as I shall ever call it,) and looking into myself for the cause, found another set of thoughts was preparing a passage into my mind, which did not carry half the dread and terror with them that their predecessors had, for I began to cast aside the difficulties and apprehensions I before felt in my way, and encouraging the present motions, soon became sensible of the benefit of a virtuous education; and though what I had hitherto done in the immediate service of God, I must own had been performed from force, custom, and habit, and without the least attention to the object of the duty; yet, as under my mother at home and my master at the academy, I had always been used to say my prayers, as they called it, morning and night, I began, with a sort of superstitious reflection, to accuse myself with having omitted that duty the night before, and also at my setting out in the morning, and very much to blame myself for it, and at the same instant even wondered at myself for that blame. "What," says I, "is the real use of praying? and to whom and to what do we pray? I see no one to pray to, neither have I ever thought that my prayers would be answered. It is true they are worded as if we prayed to God; but he is in heaven. Does he concern himself with us, who can do him no service? Can I think that all my prayers, that I have said from day to day so many years, have been heard by him? No, sure; if they had, I should scarce have sustained this hard fate in my fortune. But hold! how have I prayed to him? Have I as earnestly prayed to him as I used to petition my mother for anything, when I wanted it against her inclination? No! I can't say I have: and would my mother have granted me such things, if she had not thought I from my heart desired them when I used to be so earnest with her? No, surely, I can't say she had any reason for it. But I had her, indeed, before me; now I have not God in my view, he is in heaven; yet, let me see—my master (and I can't help thinking he must know) used to say that God is a spirit, and not confined by the incumbrance of a body as we are: now, if it is so, why may he not virtually be present with me, though I don't perceive him? why may not he be at once in heaven and elsewhere? For, if he consists not of parts, nothing can circumscribe him; and truly I believe it must be so; for if he is of that supreme power as he is represented, he could never act in so unconfined a capacity under the restraint of place; but if he is an operative and purely spiritual being, then I can see no reason why his virtual essence should not be diffused through all nature; and then (which I begin to think most likely) why should I not suppose him ever present with me and able to hear me? and why should not I, when I pray, have a full idea of the being, though not of any corporeal parts or form of God, and so have actually somewhat to be intent upon in my prayers? and not do as I have hitherto done, say so many words only upon my knees, which I cannot help thinking may as well be without sense or meaning in themselves, as without a proper object in my mind to direct them into."

These thoughts agitated me at least two miles, working stronger and stronger in me, till at length, bursting into tears, "Have I been doing nothing," says I, "in the sight of God, under the name of prayers, for so many years? Yes, it is certainly so. Well, by the grace of God it shall be so no longer: I will try somewhat more." So, looking round about me to see if I was quite alone, I stepped into an adjoining copse, and could scarce refrain from falling on my knees till I came to a proper place for kneeling in. I then poured forth my whole soul and spirit to God, and all my strength, and every member, every faculty, was to the utmost employed for a considerable time in that most agreeable as well as useful duty. I would, indeed, have begun with my accustomed prayers, and had repeated some words of them, when, as though against and contrary to my design, I was carried away by such rapturous effusions that, to this hour, when I reflect thereon, I cannot believe but I was moved to them by a much more than human impulse. However, this ecstacy did not last above a quarter of an hour; but it was considerably longer before my spirits subsided to their usual frame. When I had a little composed myself, how was I altered; how did I condemn myself for all my past disquiet! what calm thanks did I return for the ease and satisfaction of mind I then enjoyed: and coming to a small rivulet, I drank a hearty draught of water, and contentedly proceeding on my journey, I reached Bristol about four o'clock in the afternoon. Having refreshed myself, I went the same evening to the quay, to inquire what ships were in the river, whither bound, and when they would depart. My business was with the sailors, of whom there were at that time great numbers there; but I could meet with no employ, though I gave out I would gladly enter myself before the mast. After I had done the best I could, but without success, I returned to the little house I had dined at, and went to bed very pensive. I did not forget my prayers, but I could by no means be roused to such devotion as I felt in the morning. Next day I walked again to the quay, asking all I met, who looked like sea-faring men, for employment, but could hear of none, there being many waiting for berths, and I feared my appearance (which was not so mean as most of that sort of gentry is) would prove no small disappointment to my preferment that way. At last, being out of heart with my frequent repulses, I went to a landing-place just by, and as I asked some sailors, who were putting two gentlemen on shore, if they wanted a hand on board their ship, one of the gentlemen, whom I afterwards found to be the master of a vessel bound to the coast of Africa, turned back, and looking earnestly on me, "Young man," says he, "do you want employment on board?" I immediately made him a bow, and answered, "Yes sir." Said he, "There is no talking in this weather," (for it then blew almost a storm,) "but step into that tavern, and I will be with you presently."

I went thither, and not long after came my future master. He asked me many questions, but the first was, whether I had been at sea. I told him, No, but I did not doubt soon to learn the duties of a sailor. He then looked on my hand, and shaking his head, told me it would not do, for I had too soft a hand. I told him I was determined for the sea, and that my hand and heart should go together, and I hoped that my hand would soon harden, though not my heart. He then told me it was a pity to take such a pretty young fellow before the mast; but if I understood accounts tolerably well, and could write a good hand, he would make me his steward, and make it worth my while. I answered in the affirmative, joyfully accepting his offer. But on his asking me where my chest was, ("For," says he, "if the wind had not been so strong against me, I had fallen down the river this morning,") I looked very blank, and plainly told him I had no other stores than I carried on my back. The captain smiled. Says he, "Young man, I see you are a novice: why, the meanest sailor in my ship has a chest, at least, and perhaps something in it: come," says he, "my lad, I like your looks; be diligent and honest; I will let you have a little money to set you out, and deduct it in your pay." He was then pulling out his purse, when I begged him, as he seemed disposed to show me so great a kindness, that he would order somebody to buy what necessaries he knew I should want, or I should be under as great a difficulty to know what to get, and where to buy them, as I should have been at for want of them. He commended my prudence, and said he would buy them, and send them on board himself; so bade me trouble myself no more about them, but go to the ship on the return of his boat, and stay there till he came, giving me a ticket to the boat's crew to take me in. When I came to the shore, the boat was gone off, and at a good distance; but I hailed them, and showing my ticket, they put back and took me safe to the ship, heartily glad that I was entered upon my new service.

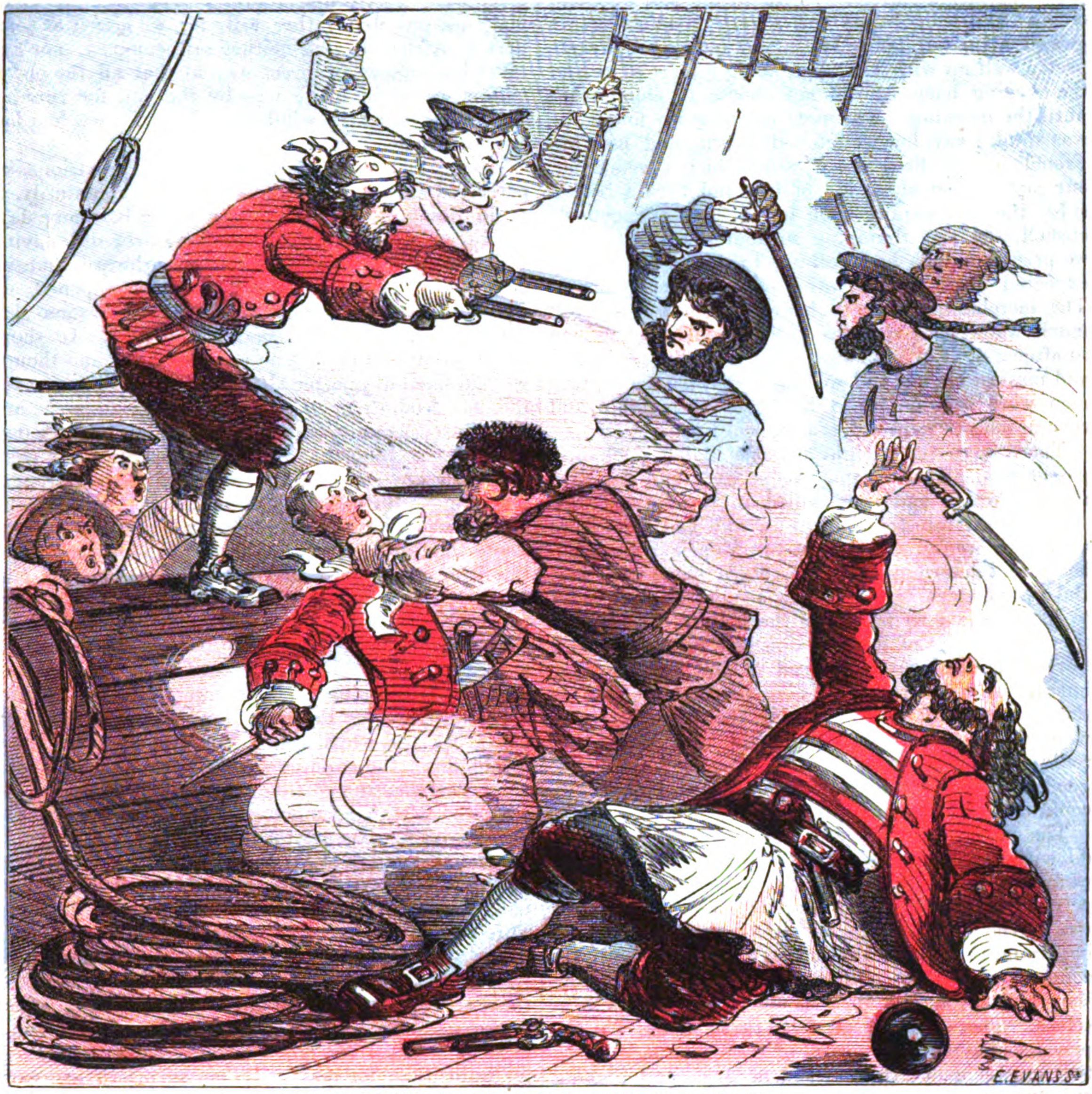
CHAPTER IV.

Being once on board, and in pay, I thought I was a man for myself, and set about considering how to behave; and nobody knowing, as yet, upon what footing I came on board, they took me for a passenger, as my dress did not at all bespeak me a sailor: so every one, as I sauntered about, had something to say to me. By-and-by comes a pert young fellow up. "Sir," says he, "your servant; what, I see, our captain has picked up a passenger at last." "Passenger!" says I; "you are pleased to be merry, sir; I am no passenger." "Why, pray," says he, "what may you be, then?" "Sir," says I, "the captain's steward." "You impertinent puppy," says he, "what an answer you give me; you the captain's steward! No, sir, that place, I can assure you, is in better hands!" and so away he turned. I knew not what to make of it, but was terribly afraid I should draw myself into some scrape. By-and-by, others asked me, some one thing, some another, and I was very cautious what answers I made them, for fear of offence, till a gravish sailor came and sat down by me, and after talking of the weather, and other indifferent matters, "Pray," says I, "sir, who is that gentleman that was so affronted at me, soon after I came on board?" "Oh," says he, "a proud, insignificant fellow,—the captain's steward; but do not mind him," he added; "he uses the captain himself as bad; they have had high words just before the captain went on shore; and had he used me as he did him, I should have made no ceremony of tipping him overboard, a rascal!" Says I, "You surprise me, for the captain sent me on board to be his steward, and agreed with me about it this afternoon." "Hush," says he, "I see how it will go: the captain, if that is the case, will discharge him when he comes on board; and, indeed, I believe he would not have kept him so long, but we have waited for a wind, and he could not provide himself."

The captain came on board at night; and the first thing he did, was to demand the keys of the steward, which he gave to me, and ordered him on shore.

The next morning, the captain went on shore himself; but the wind chopping about, and standing fair about noon, he returned then with my chest, and before night we were got into sailing order, and before the wind, with a brisk gale.

What happened the first fourteen days of our passage, I know not, having been all that time so sick and weak, I could scarcely keep life and soul together; but after, grew better and better. We prosecuted our voyage, touching, for about a week, at Madeira, in our way. The captain grew very fond of me, and never put me to hard duty; and I passed my time, under his favour, very pleasantly. One evening, being within sixty leagues of the Cape of Palmes, calm weather, but the wind we had against us, one of our men spied a sail, and gave the captain notice of it. He not suspecting danger, minded it little, and we made what way the wind would permit; but, night coming on, and the calm continuing, about peep of day we perceived we were infallibly fallen in with a French privateer, who, hoisting French colours, called out to us to strike. Our captain had scarce time to consider what to do, they were so near us; but as he had twenty-two men on board, and eight guns he could bring to, he called all hands on deck, and telling them the consequence of a surrender, asked if they would stand by him. One and all swore they would fight the ship to the bottom, rather than fall into the privateer's hands. The captain immediately gave the word for a clear deck, prepared the fire-arms, and begged them to be active, and obey orders; and perceiving the privateer outnumbered our hands by abundance, he commanded all the small arms to be brought upon deck, loaded, and to run out as many of the ship's guns as she could bring-to on one side, and to charge them all with small shot; then stand-to till he gave directions. The privateer being a light ship, and a small breeze arising, ran up close to us, first firing one gun, then another, still calling out to us to strike; but we neither returned fire nor answer, till he came almost within pistol-shot of us, and seeing us a small vessel, thought to board us directly. But then our captain ordered a broadside, and immediately all hands to come on deck, himself standing there at the time of our first fire, with his fusee in his hand, and near him I stood, with another. We killed eight men, and wounded several others. The privateer then fired a broadside through and through us. By this time our hands were all on deck, and the privateer pushing, in hopes to grapple and board us, we gave them a volley from thence, that did good execution; and then all hands to the ship's guns again, except four, who were left along with me to charge the small arms. It is incredible how soon they had fired the great guns, and were on deck again. This last fire, being with ball, raked the privateer miserably. Then we fired the small arms, and away to the ship's guns. This we did three times successively, without the loss of a man; and I believe, if we could have held it once more, and no assistance had come to the privateer, she had sheered quite off; but our captain spying a sail at some distance behind the privateer, who lay to windward of us, and seeing by his glass it was a Frenchman, was almost dismayed. The same sight put courage into our enemies, who thereupon redoubled the attack; and the first volley of their small arms shot our captain in the breast, upon which he dropped dead, without stirring. I need not say that sight shocked me exceedingly; indeed, it disconcerted the whole action; and though our mate, a man of good courage and experience, did all that a brave man



PETER WILKINS IS CAPTURED BY A FRENCH PRIVATEER.

could do to animate the men, they apparently drooped, and the loss of the ship became inevitable. So we struck, and the Frenchman boarded us.

During the latter part of the engagement, we had two men killed, and five wounded, who died afterwards of their wounds. We, who were alive, were ordered on board the Frenchman, who, after rifling us, chained us two and two, and turned us into the hold. Our vessel was then ransacked; and the other privateer, who had suffered much the day before, in an engagement with an English twenty-gun ship of war, coming up, the prize was sent by her into port, where she was herself to refit.

In this condition did I, and fourteen of our crew, lie for six weeks, till the fetters on our legs had almost eaten to the bone, and the stench of the place had well-nigh suffocated us.

The "Glorieux" (for that was the name of the privateer who took us) saw nothing farther in five weeks worth her notice, which very much discouraged the men; and, consulting together, it was agreed to cruise more northward, between Sierra-Leone and Cape de Verd; but, about noon next day, they spied a sail, coming west-north-west, with a strong gale. The captain thereupon ordered all to be ready, and lie by for her. But, though she discerned us, she kept her way, bearing only more southward, when the wind shifting to north-east, she ran for it, full before the wind, and we after her, with all the sail we could crowd; and though she was a very good sailer, we gained upon her, being laden, and before night came pretty well up with her; but, being a large ship, and the evening hazy, we did not choose to engage her until the morning. The next morning we found she was slunk away, but we fetched her up, and, hoisting French colours, fired a shot, which she not answering, our captain ran alongside of her, and fired a broadside; then slackening upon her, a hard engagement ensued, the shot thumping so against our ship, that we prisoners, who had nothing to do in the action, expected death, one or other of us, every moment. The merchantman was so heavily laden, and drew so much water, that she was very unwieldy in action; so after a fight of two hours, when most of her rigging and masts were cut and wounded, she struck. Twelve men were sent on board her, and her captain and several officers were ordered on board us.

There were thirty-eight persons in her, including passengers, all of whom, except five, and the like number which had been killed in the action, were sent chained into the hold to us, who had lain there almost six weeks. This prize put Monsieur into good heart, and determined him to return home with her. But in two days' time, his new acquisition was found to have leaked so fast near the bottom, that before they were aware of it, the water had risen some feet. Several hands were employed to find out the leak, but all asserted it was too low to be come at; and as the pumps, with all the labour the prisoners, who were the persons put to it, could use, would not reduce it, but it still increased, they removed what goods they could into the privateer, and before they could unload it, the prize sank.

The next thing they consulted upon, was, what to do with the prisoners, who, by the loss of the prize, were now grown too numerous to be trusted in the privateer; fearing, too, as they were now so far out at sea, by the great addition of mouths, they might soon be brought to short allowance; it was, on both accounts, resolved to give us the prize's boat, which they had saved, and turn us adrift to shift for ourselves. There were in all forty-three of us; but the privateer having lost several of their own men in the two engagements, they looked us over, and picking out twenty-two of us, who were the most likely fellows for their purpose, the remaining twenty-one were committed to the boat, with about two days' provisions, and a small matter of ammunition, and turned out.

CHAPTER V.

When we, who were in the boat, came to reflect on our condition, the prospect before us appeared very melancholy; though we had at first readily enough embraced the offer, rather than perish in so much misery as we suffered in our loathsome confinement. We now judged we were about two hundred leagues from land, in about eight degrees north latitude; and it blowing north-east, a pretty stiff gale, we could make no way, but rather lost, for we aimed at some port in Africa, having neither sail, compass, nor any other instrument to direct us; so that all the observation we could make was by the sun for running southward, or as the wind carried us, for we had lost the north pole.

As we had little above two days' provisions, we perceived a necessity of almost starving voluntarily, to avoid doing it quite, seeing it must be many days before we could reach shore, if we ever did, having visibly driven a great deal more southward than we were; nay, unless a sudden change happened, we were sure of perishing, unless delivered by some ship that Providence might send in our way. In short, the ninth day came, but no relief with it; and though we had lived at quarter allowance, and had just saved life, our food, except a little water, was all gone, and this caused us quite to despair. On the twelfth day, four of our company died with hunger, in a very miserable way; and yet the survivors had not strength left to move them to pity their fellows. In truth, we had sat still, attempting nothing in several days; as we found that, unless the wind shifted, we only consumed the little strength we had left to no manner of purpose. On the fourteenth day, and in the night, five more died, and a sixth was near expiring; and yet we, the survivors, were so indolent, we would scarce lend a hand to throw them overboard. On the fifteenth day, in the morning, our carpenter, weak as he was, started up, and as the sixth man was just dead, cut his throat, and whilst warm, would let out what blood would flow; then, pulling off his old jacket, invited us to partake, and cutting a large slice off the corpse, devoured it with as much seeming relish as if it had been ox-beef. His example prevailed with the rest of us, one after another, to taste and eat; and as there had been a heavy dew or rain in the night, and we had spread out everything of linen or woollen we had to receive it, we were a little refreshed by wringing our clothes, and sipping what came from them; after which we covered them up from the sun, stowing them all close together to keep in the moisture, which served us to suck at for two days after, a little and a little at a time; for now we were in greater distress for water than for meat. It has surprised me many times since, to think how we could make so light a thing of eating our fellow-creature, just dead before our eyes; but I assure you, when we had once tasted, we looked on the blessing to be so great, that we cut and eat it with as little remorse as we should have had for feeding on the best meat of an English market; and most certainly, when this corpse had failed, if another had not dropped by fair means, we should have used foul, by murdering one of our number, as a supply for the rest.

Water, as I said before, to moisten our mouths, was now our greatest hardship. Our mouths and tongues were quite flayed with drought, and our teeth just falling from our jaws; for though we had tried, by placing all the dead men's jackets and shirts over one another, to strain some of the sea water through them by small quantities, yet that would not deprive it of its pernicious qualities; and though it refreshed a little in going down, we were so sick, and strained ourselves so much after it, that it came up again, and made us more miserable than before. Our corpse now stunk so, what was left of it, that we could no longer bear it on board, and every man began to look with an evil eye on his fellow, to think whose turn it would be next; for the carpenter had started the question, and preached us into the necessity of it; and we had agreed the next morning to put it to the lot, who should be the sacrifice. In this distress of thought, it was so ordered by good Providence, that on the twenty-first day, we thought we spied a sail coming from the north-west, which caused us to delay our lots till we should see whether it would discover us or not; we hung up some jackets on our oars to be seen as far off as we could, but had so little strength left, we could make no way towards it. However, it happened to direct its course so much to our relief, that, an hour before sunset, it was within a league of us, but seemed to bear away more eastward, and our fear was, that they should not know our distress, for we were not able to make any noise from our throats that might be heard fifty yards; but the carpenter, who was still the best man amongst us, with much ado getting one of the guns to go off, in less than half an hour she came up with us, and seeing our deplorable condition, took us all on board, to the number of eleven. Though no methods were unessayed for our recovery, four more of us died in as many days. When the remaining seven of us came a little to ourselves, we found our deliverers were Portuguese, bound for St. Salvador. We told the captain, we begged he would let us work our passage with him, be it where it would, to shore; and then, if we could be of no farther service to him, we did not doubt of getting into Europe again. But in the voyage, as we did him all the service in our power, we pleased him so well, that he engaged us to stay with him to work the ship home again, he having lost some hands by fevers soon after his setting sail.

We arrived safe in port; and, in a few days, the captain, who had a secret enterprise to take in hand, hired a country coasting vessel, and sent her seventeen leagues farther on the coast, for orders from some factory or settlement there. I was one of the nine men who were destined to conduct her; but, not understanding Portuguese, I knew little of the business we went upon. We were to coast it all the way; but on the tenth day, just at sunrise, we fell in with a fleet of boats, which had waylaid us, and were taken prisoners. Being carried ashore, we were conducted a long way up the country, where we were imprisoned, and almost starved; though I never knew the meaning of it, nor did any of us, unless the mate, who, we heard, was carried up the country much farther, to Angola. But we never heard more of him, though we were told he would be sent back to us.

Here we remained under confinement almost three months, at the end of which time, our keeper told us we were to be removed; and, coupling us two and two together, sent a guard with us to Angola; when, crossing a large river, we were set to work in removing the rubbish and stones of a castle or fortress, which had been lately demolished by an earthquake and lightning. Here we continued about five months, being very sparingly dieted, and locked up every night.

This place, however I thought a paradise to any former dungeon; and, as we were not over-worked, we made our lives comfortable enough, having the air all day to refresh us from the heat, and not wanting for company, for there were, at least, three hundred of us about the whole work; and I often fancied myself at the Tower of Babel, each labourer, almost, speaking in a language of his own.

Towards the latter end of our work, our keepers grew more and more remiss in their care of us. At my first coming thither, I had contracted a familiarity with one of the natives, but of a different kingdom, who was then a slave with me; and he and I being able tolerably to understand each other, he hinted to me, one day, the desire he had of seeing his own country and family, who neither knew whether he was dead or alive, or where he was, since he had left them seven years before, to make war in this kingdom; and insinuated, that as he had taken a great liking to me, if I would endeavour to escape with him, and we succeeded, he would provide for me. "For," says he, "you see now our work is almost over, we are but slightly guarded; and if we stay till the job is once finished, we may be commanded to some new works, at the other end of the kingdom, for aught we know, so that our labours will only cease with our lives; and, for my part, immediate death in the attempt for liberty, is to me preferable to a lingering life of slavery."

These, and such like arguments, prevailed on me to accompany him, as he told me he had travelled most of the country before, in the wars of the different nations; so, having taken our resolution, the following evening, soon after our day's work, and before the time came for locking up, we withdrew from the rest, but within hearing, thinking, if we should then be missed and called, we would appear, and make some excuse for our absence; but if not, we should have the whole night before us.

When we were first put upon this work, we were called over singly by name, morning and evening, to be let out and in, and were very narrowly observed in our motions. But not one of us having ever been absent, our actions were at length much less minded than before, and the ceremony of calling us over was frequently omitted; so that we concluded, if we got away unobserved the first night, we should be out of the reach of pursuers by the next, which was the soonest it was possible for them to overtake us, as we proposed to travel the first part of our journey with the utmost despatch.

CHAPTER VI.

Having now set out with all possible speed, we seemed to each other as joyful as we could; though it cannot be supposed we had no fears in our minds the first part of our journey, for we had many. But as our way advanced, our fears subsided; and having, with scarce any delay, pushed forwards for the first twenty-four hours, nature then began to have two very pressing demands upon us, food and rest. But as one of them was absolutely out of our power to comply with, she contented herself with the other till we should be better able to supply her, and gave a farther time till the next day.

The next morning found us very empty and sharp set, though a very sound night's rest had contributed its utmost to refresh us. But what added much to our discomfort was, that though our whole subsistence must come from fruits, there was not a tree to be found at a less distance than twelve leagues, in the open rocky country we were then in; but a good draught of excellent water we met with did us extraordinary service, and sent us with much better courage to the woods, though they were quite out of the way of our route. There, by divers kinds of fruits, which, though my companion knew very well, I was quite a stranger to, we satisfied our hunger for the present, and took a moderate supply for another opportunity. This retarded our journey very much, for in so hard travel every pound weighed six before night.

I cannot say this journey, though bad enough, would have been so discouraging, but for the trouble of fetching our provisions so far; and then, if we meant not to lose half of the next day in the same manner, we must double load ourselves, and delay our progress by that means. But we still went on, and in about eight days got quite clear of Angola.

On the eighth day, my companion, whose name was Glanlipze, told me we were near the confines of Congo, but there was one little village still in Angola, by which we must pass within half a league; and, if I would agree to it, he would go see what might be got here to supply ourselves with. I told him I was in an unknown world, and would follow wherever he should lead me, but asked him if he was not afraid of the people, as he was not of that country. He told me, as there had been wars between them and his country for assisting their neighbours of Congo, he was not concerned for any mischief he should do them, or they him. "But," says he, "you have a knife in your pocket, and with that we will cut two stout clubs, and then follow me, fear nothing."

We soon cut our clubs, and marching on, in the midst of small shrubs and scattering trees, we saw a little hovel, larger indeed, but worse contrived, than an English hog-sty, to which we boldly advanced; and, Glanlipze entering first, saluted an old man, who was lying on a parcel of rushes. The man attempted to run away, but Glanlipze stopped him, and we tied his hands and feet. He then set up such a hideous howl, that, had not Glanlipze threatened to murder him, and prepared to do it, he would have raised the whole village upon us: but we quieted him; and, rummaging to find provision, which was all we wanted, we, by good luck, spied best part of a goat, hanging up behind a large mat at the farther end of the room. By this time, in comes a woman with two children, very small. This was the old man's daughter, of about five and twenty. Glanlipze bound her also, and laid her by the old man; but the two children we suffered to be untied. We then examined her, who told us the old man was her father, and that her husband, having killed a goat that morning, was gone to carry part of it to his sister; that they had little or no corn; and finding we wanted victuals, she told us there was an earthen pot we might boil some of the goat in, if we pleased.

Having now seen all that was to be had, we were going to make up our bundle, when a muletto very gently put his head into the doorway. Him Glanlipze immediately seized, and, bidding me fetch the great mat and the goat's flesh, he, in the mean time, put a long rope he found there about the beast's neck, and laying the mat upon him, we packed up the goat's flesh, and a little corn in a calabash shell; and then, turning the mat round about, skewered it together, and over all we tied the earthen pot; Glanlipze crying out, at everything we loaded, "It is no hurt to plunder an enemy!" and so we marched off.

I own I had greater apprehensions from this adventure than from anything before. "For," says I, "if the woman's husband returns soon, or if she or her father can release themselves, they will raise the whole village upon us, and we are undone." Glanlipze laughed at me, saying, we had not an hour's walk out of the Angola dominions, and that the King of Congo was at war with them, in helping the King of Loango, whose subject himself was; and that the Angolans durst not be seen out of their bounds on that side the kingdom, for there was a much larger village of Congovians in our way, who would certainly rise and destroy them if they came in any numbers amongst them; and though, the war being carried on near the sea, the borders were quiet, yet, upon the least stir, the whole country would be in arms, whilst we might retire through the woods very safely.

Well, we marched on as fast as we could, all the remainder of the day till moonlight, close by the skirt of a long wood, that we might take shelter therein, if there should be occasion, and my eyes were the best part of the way behind me; but neither hearing nor seeing anything to annoy us, and finding by the declivity of the ground we should soon be in some plain or bottom, and have a chance of water for us all, and pasture for our muletto, which was now become one of us, we would not halt till we found a bottom to the hill, which in half an hour more we came to, and in some few minutes after, to a rivulet of fine clear water, where we resolved to spend the night. Here we fastened our muletto by his cord to a stake in the ground; but perceiving him not to have sufficient range to fill his belly in before the morning, we, under Glanlipze's directions, cut several long strips from the mat, and soaking them well in water, twisted them into a very strong cord of sufficient length for the purpose. And now, having each of us brought a bundle of dry fallen sticks from the wood with us, and gathered two or three flints as we came along, we struck fire on my knife upon some rotten wood, and boiled a good piece of our goat's flesh; and, having made such a meal as we had neither of us made for many months before, we laid us down, and slept heartily till morning.

As soon as day broke, we packed up our goods; and, filling our calabash with water, we loaded our muletto, and got forward very pleasantly that day, and several others following, and had tolerable lodgings.

About noon, one day, travelling with great glee, we met an adventure which very much daunted me, and had almost put a stop to my hopes of ever getting where I intended. We came to a great river, whose name I have now forgot, near a league over, but full, and especially about the shores, of large trees that had fallen from the mountains, and been rolled down with the floods, and lodged there in a shocking manner. This river, Glanlipze told me, we must pass. For my part, I shrunk at the sight of it, and told him, if he could get over, I would not desire to prevent his meeting with his family; but, as for my share, I had rather take my chance in the woods on this side, than plunge myself into such a stream only for the sake of drowning. "Oh!" says Glanlipze, "then you can't swim." "No," says I; "there's my misfortune." "Well," says the kind Glanlipze, "be of good heart, I'll have you over." He then bade me go cut an armful of the tallest reeds that grew there near the shore, whilst he pulled up another where he then was, and bring them to him. The side of the river sloped for a good way with an easy descent, so that it was very shallow where the reeds grew, and they stood very close together upon a large compass of ground. I had no sooner entered the reeds a few yards, to cut some of the longest, (but being about knee-deep in the water and mud, and every step raising my feet very high to keep them clear of the roots, which were matted together,) I thought I had trod upon a trunk of one of the trees, of which, as I said, there was such plenty thereabouts; and, raising my other foot, to get that also upon the tree, as I fancied it, I found it move along with me, upon which I roared out, when Glanlipze, who was not far from me, imagining what was the matter, cried out, "Leap off, and run to the shore to the right." I knew not yet what was the case, but did what I was bid, and gained the shore. Looking back, I perceived the reeds shake and rustle all the way to the shore, by degrees after me. I was terribly frightened, and ran to Glanlipze, who then told me the danger I had escaped, and that what I took for a tree was certainly a large alligator or crocodile.

My blood ran chill within me, at hearing the name of such a dangerous creature; but he had no sooner told me what it was, than out came the most hideous monster I had ever seen. Glanlipze ran to secure the muletto; and then, taking the cord which had fastened him, and tying it to each end of a broken arm of a tree that lay on the shore, he marched up to the crocodile without the least dismay, and beginning near the tail, with one leg on one side and the other on the other side, he straddled over him, still mending his pace as the beast crept forwards, till he came to his fore feet; then, throwing the great log before his mouth, he, by the cord in his hand, bobbed it against the creature's nose, till he gaped wide enough to have taken in the muletto; then of a sudden, jerking the wood between his jaws with all his force by the cord, he gagged the beast, with his jaws wide open up to his throat, so that he could neither make use of his teeth nor shut his mouth; he then threw one end of the cord upon the ground, just before the creature's under-jaw, which as he by degrees crept along over it, came out between his fore-legs on the contrary side; and serving the other end of it in the same manner, he took up those ends and tied them over the creature's back, just within his fore-legs, which kept the gag firm in his mouth, and then calling out to me (for I stood at a good distance), "Peter," says he, "bring me your knife." I trembled at going so near, for the crocodile was turning his head this way and that, very uneasy, and wanting to get to the river again; but yet I carried it, keeping as much behind him as I could, still eyeing him which way he moved, and at length tossed my knife so near that Glanlipze could reach it; and he, just keeping behind the beast's fore-feet and leaning forwards, first darted the knife into one eye and then into the other, and immediately leaping from his back, came running to me. "So Peter," says he, "I have done the business." "Aye! business enough, I think," says I, "and more than I would have done to have been King of Congo." "Why, Peter," says he, "there is nothing but a man may compass by resolution, if he takes both ends of a thing in his view at once, and fairly deliberates on both sides, what may be given and taken from end to end. What you have seen me perform, is only from a thorough notion I have of this beast and of myself, how far each of us has power to act and counteract upon each other, and duly applying the means. But," says he, "this talk will not carry us across the river. Come, here are the reeds I have pulled up, which I believe will be sufficient without any more, for I would not overload the muletto." "Why," says I, "is the muletto to carry them?" "No; they are to carry you," says he. "I can never ride upon these," says I. "Hush!" says he, "I'll not lose you, never fear. Come, cut me a good rough stick, the length of these reeds." "Well," says I, "this is all conjuration; but I don't see a step towards my getting over the river yet, unless I am to ride the muletto upon these reeds, and guide myself with the stick." "I must own, Peter," says he, "you have a bright guess." So, taking an armful of the reeds, and laying them on the ground, "Now, Peter," says he, "lay that stick upon those reeds, and tie them tight at both ends." I did so. "Now, Peter," says he, "lay yourself down upon them." I then laying myself on my back, lengthwise, upon the reeds, Glanlipze laughed heartily at me, and turning me about, brought my breast upon the reeds at the height of my arm-pits, and then taking a handful of the reeds he had reserved by themselves, he laid them on my back, tying them to the bundle close at my shoulders, and again at the ends. "Now, Peter," says he, "stand up," which I did, but it was full as much as I could do. I then, seeing Glanlipze laughing at the figure I cut, desired him to be serious, and not put me upon losing my life for a joke, for I could not think what he would do next with me. He bid me never fear, and looking more soberly, ordered me to walk to the river, and so stand just within the bank till he came; then leading the muletto to me, he tied me to her, about a yard from the tail, and, taking the cord in his hand, led the muletto and me into the water. We had not gone far before my guide began to swim; then the muletto and I were presently chin-deep, and I expected nothing but drowning every moment. However, having gone so far, I was ashamed to cry out; when, getting out of my depth, and my reeds coming to their bearing, up I mounted, and was carried on with all the ease imaginable, my conductor guiding us between the trees so dexterously, that not one accident happened to either of us all the way, and we arrived safe on the opposite shore.

We had now got into a very low, close, swampy country, and our goat's flesh began to be very stale through the heat, not only of the sun, but the muletto's back: however, we pleased ourselves we should have one more meal of it before it was too bad to eat; so, having travelled about three miles from the river, we took up our lodging on a little rising, and tied our muletto in a valley about half a furlong below us, where he made as good a meal in his way as we did in ours.

We had but just stopped, and were sauntering about to find the easiest spot to sleep on, when we heard a rustling and a grumbling noise in a small thicket just on our right, which, seeming to approach nearer and nearer, Glanlipze roused himself, and was on his legs just time enough to see a lioness, and a small whelp which accompanied her, within thirty yards of us, making towards us, as we afterwards guessed, for the sake of our goat's flesh, which now smelt very strong. Glanlipze whipped on the contrary side of the fire to that where the goat's flesh lay, and fell to kicking the fire about at a great rate, which, being made of dry wood, caused innumerable sparks to fly about us; but the beasts still approaching, in a couchant manner, and seizing the ribs of the goat and other bones, (for we had only cut the flesh off,) and grumbling and cracking them like rotten twigs, Glanlipze snatched up a firebrand, flaming, in each hand, and made towards them, which sight so terrified the creatures, that they fled with great precipitation to the thicket again.

Glanlipze was a little uneasy at the thoughts of quitting so good a lodging as we had found, but yet held it best to move farther, for as the lions had left the bones behind them, we must expect another visit if we stayed there, and could hope for no rest, and above all, we might possibly lose our muletto; so we removed our quarters two miles farther, where we slept with great tranquillity.

Reflections on the nature of mankind have often astonished me. I told you, at first, my thoughts concerning prayer, in my journey to Bristol, and of the benefit I received from it, and how fully I was convinced of the necessity of it, which one would think was a sufficient motive to a reasonable creature to be constant in it; and yet it is too true that, notwithstanding the difficulties I had laboured under, and hardships I had undergone, and the danger of starving at sea, or being murdered for food by my fellows, when there was as urgent necessity of begging Divine assistance as can be conceived, I never once thought of it, nor of the object of it, nor returned thanks for my being delivered, till the lioness had just left me; and then I felt near the same force, urging me to return thanks for my escape, as I had impelling me to prayer before, and I think I did so with great sincerity.

I shall not trouble you with a relation of the common accidents of our journey, which lasted two months and better, nor with the different methods we used to get subsistence, but shall at once conduct you to Quamis, only mentioning that we were sometimes obliged to go about, and were once stopped by a cut that my guide and companion received by a ragged stone in his foot, which, growing very bad, almost deprived me of the hopes of his life; but by rest, and constant sucking and licking it, which was the only remedy we had to apply, except green leaves chewed, that I laid to it by his direction, to supple and cool it, he soon began to be able to ride upon the muletto, and sometimes to walk a little.

I say, we arrived at Quamis, a small place on a river of that name, where Glanlipze had a neat dwelling, and left a wife and five children when he went out to the wars. We were very near the town when the day closed, and, as it is soon dark there after sunset, you could but just see your hand at our entrance into it. We met nobody in the way, but I went directly to Glanlipze's door, by his direction, and struck two or three strokes hard against it with my stick; on this there came a woman to it. I asked her, in her own language, if she knew one Glanlipze; she told me, with a deep sigh, that once she did. I asked then, where he was; she said, with their ancestors, she hoped, for he was the greatest warrior in the world, but if he was not dead, he was in slavery. Now, you must know, Glanlipze had a mind to hear how his wife took his death, or slavery, and had put me upon asking these questions before he discovered himself. I proceeded then to tell her I brought some news of Glanlipze, and was lately come from him, and by his order. "And does my dear Glanlipze live?" says she, flying upon my neck, and almost smothering me with caresses, till I begged her to forbear, or she would strangle me, and I had a great deal more to tell her. I then repeated to her that her husband was alive and well, but wanted a ransom to redeem himself, and had sent me to see what she could anyways raise for that purpose. She told me she and her children had lived very hardly ever since he went from her, and she had nothing to sell or make money of but her five children; that, as this was the time for the slaving-trade, she would see what she could raise by them, and if that would not do, she would sell herself, and send him the money, if he would let her know how to do it.

Glanlipze, who heard every word that passed, finding so strong a proof of his wife's affection, could hold out no longer, but, bursting into the room, clasped her in his arms, crying, "No, Zulika!" (for that was her name,) "I am free: there will be no occasion for your or my dear children's slavery, and rather than have purchased my freedom at that rate, I would willingly have died a slave myself; but my own ears have heard the tender sentiments my Zulika has for me." Then, drowned in tears of joy, they embraced each other so close and so long, that I thought it impertinent to be seen with them till their first transports were over; so I retired without the house till Glanlipze called me in, which was not in less than full half an hour.

The bustle we made had by this time awakened the children, who, stark naked as they were born, both boys and girls, and black as jet, came crawling out from behind a curtain at the farther end of the room, which was very long. The father, as yet, had only inquired after them; but upon sight of them he fell into an ecstacy, kissing one, stroking another, dandling a third, for the eldest was scarce fourteen; but not one of them knew him, for seven years make a great chasm in young memories.

CHAPTER VII.

I passed my time with Glanlipze and his wife, who both really loved me, with sufficient bodily quiet, for about two years: my business was chiefly, in company with my patron, to cultivate a spot of ground wherein we had planted grain and necessaries for the family; and once or twice a week we went a-fishing, and sometimes hunted and shot venison. These were our chief employments; for as to excursions for slaves, which is a practice in many of those countries, and what the natives get money by, since our own slavery, Glanlipze and I could not endure it.

Though I was tolerably easy in my external circumstances, yet my mind hankering after England made my life still unhappy, and that infelicity daily increased, as I saw the less probability of attaining my desire. At length, hearing of some European sailors who were under confinement for contraband trade, at a Portuguese fort about two leagues from Quamis, I resolved to go to see them, and, if any of them should be English, at least to inquire after my native country. I went, and found two Dutchmen, who had been sailors in British pay several years, three Scotchmen, an Irishman, and five Englishmen, but all had been long in English merchants' service. They were taken, as they told me, by a Portuguese vessel, together with their ship, as a Dutch prize, under pretence of contraband trade. The captain was known to be a Dutchman, though he spoke good English, and was then in English pay, and his vessel English; therefore they would have it that he was a Dutch trader, and so seized his ship in the harbour, with the prisoners in it. The captain, who was on shore with several of his men, was threatened to be laid in irons if he was taken, which obliged him and his men to abscond and fly overland to an English factory, for assistance to recover his ship and cargo, being afraid to appear and claim it amongst so many enemies without an additional force. They had been in confinement two months, and their ship confiscated and sold. In this miserable condition I left them, but returned once or twice a week, for a fortnight or three weeks, to visit them: these instances of regard, as they thought them, created some confidence in me, so that they conversed with me very freely. Amongst other discourse, they told me, one day, that one of their crew, who went with the captain, had been taken ill on the way, and, being unable to proceed, was returned; but as he talked good Portuguese, he was not suspected to belong to them, and that he had been to visit them, and would be there again that day. I had a mind to see him, so stayed longer than I intended, and in about an hour's time he came. After he was seated, he asked who I was, and (privately) if I might be trusted. Being satisfied I might, for that I was a Cornish man, he began as follows, looking narrowly about, to see he was not overheard: "My lads," says he, "be of good courage; I have hopes for you; be but men, and we shall see better days yet." I wondered to what this preface tended, when he told us, that since his return from the captain, as he spoke good Portuguese, and had sailed on board Portuguese traders several years, he mixed among that people, and particularly among the crew of the "Del Cruz," the ship which had taken them; that that ship had partly unloaded, and was taking in other goods for a future voyage; that he had informed himself of their strength, and that very seldom more than three men and two boys lay on board; that he had hired himself to the captain, and was to go on board the very next day. "Now," says he, "my lads, if you can break prison any night after to-morrow, and come directly to the ship," (telling them how she lay, "for," says he, "you cannot mistake, you will find two or three boats moored in the gut, against the church,") "I will be ready to receive you, and we will get off with her, in lieu of our ship they have taken from us, for there is nothing ready to follow us."

The prisoners listened to this discourse very attentively; but scratched their heads, fearing the difficulty of it, and severer usage if they miscarried, and made several objections; but, at last, they all swore to attempt it the night but one following, upon which the sailor went away to prepare for their reception on board. After he was gone, I surveyed his scheme attentively in my own mind, and found it not so difficult as I first imagined, if the prisoners could but escape cleverly. So, before I went away, I told them I approved of their purpose; and, as I was their countryman, I was resolved, with their leaves, to risk my fortune with them. At this they seemed much pleased, and all embraced me. We then fixed the peremptory night, and I was to wait at the water-side, and get the boats in readiness.

The prison they were in was a Portuguese fort, which had been deserted ever since the building a much better on the other side of the river, a gun-shot lower. It was built with walls too thick for naked men to storm; the captives were securely locked up every night, and two soldiers or sentinels kept watch in an outer room, who were relieved from the main guard in the body of the building.

The expected night arrived; and a little before midnight, as had been concerted, one of the prisoners cried out, he was so parched up, he was on fire, he was on fire! The sentinels were both asleep, but the first that waked called at the door to know what was the matter; the prisoner still crying out, "I am on fire!" the rest begged the sentinel to bring a bowl of water for him, for they knew not what ailed him.

The good-natured fellow, without waking his companion, brought the water, and having a lamp in the guard-room, opened the door, when the prisoners seizing his arms, and commanding him to silence, bound his hands behind him, and his feet together; then serving the other in the same manner, who was now just awake, and taking from them their swords and muskets, they made the best of their way over the fort wall, which, being built with buttresses on the inside, was easily surmounted. Being got out, they were not long in finding me, who had before this time made the boats ready, and was impatiently waiting for them; so in we all got, and made good speed to the ship, where we were welcomed by our companion, ready to receive us.

Under pretence of being a new-entered sailor, he had carried some Madeira wine on board, and treated the men and boys so freely, that he had thrown them into a dead sleep,—which was a wise precaution. There being now, therefore, no fear of disturbance or interruption, we drew up the two boats, and set all hands at work to put the ship under way, and plied it so closely, the wind favouring us, that by eleven o'clock the next morning we were out of sight of land; but we set the men and boys adrift in one of the boats, nigh the mouth of the river.

The first thing we did, after we had made a long run from shore, was to consult what course to steer. Now, as there was a valuable loading on board, of goods from Portugal, and others taken in since, some gave their opinion for sailing directly to India, selling the ship and cargo there, and returning by some English vessel. But that was rejected; for we did not doubt but notice would be given of our escape along the coast, and if we should fall into the Portuguese's hands, we could expect no mercy; besides, we had not people sufficient for such an enterprise. Others, again, were for sailing the directest course for England; but I told them, as our opinions were different, and no time was to be lost, my advice was, to stretch southward till we might be quite out of fear of pursuit, and then, whatever course we took, by keeping clear of all coasts, we might hope to come safe off.

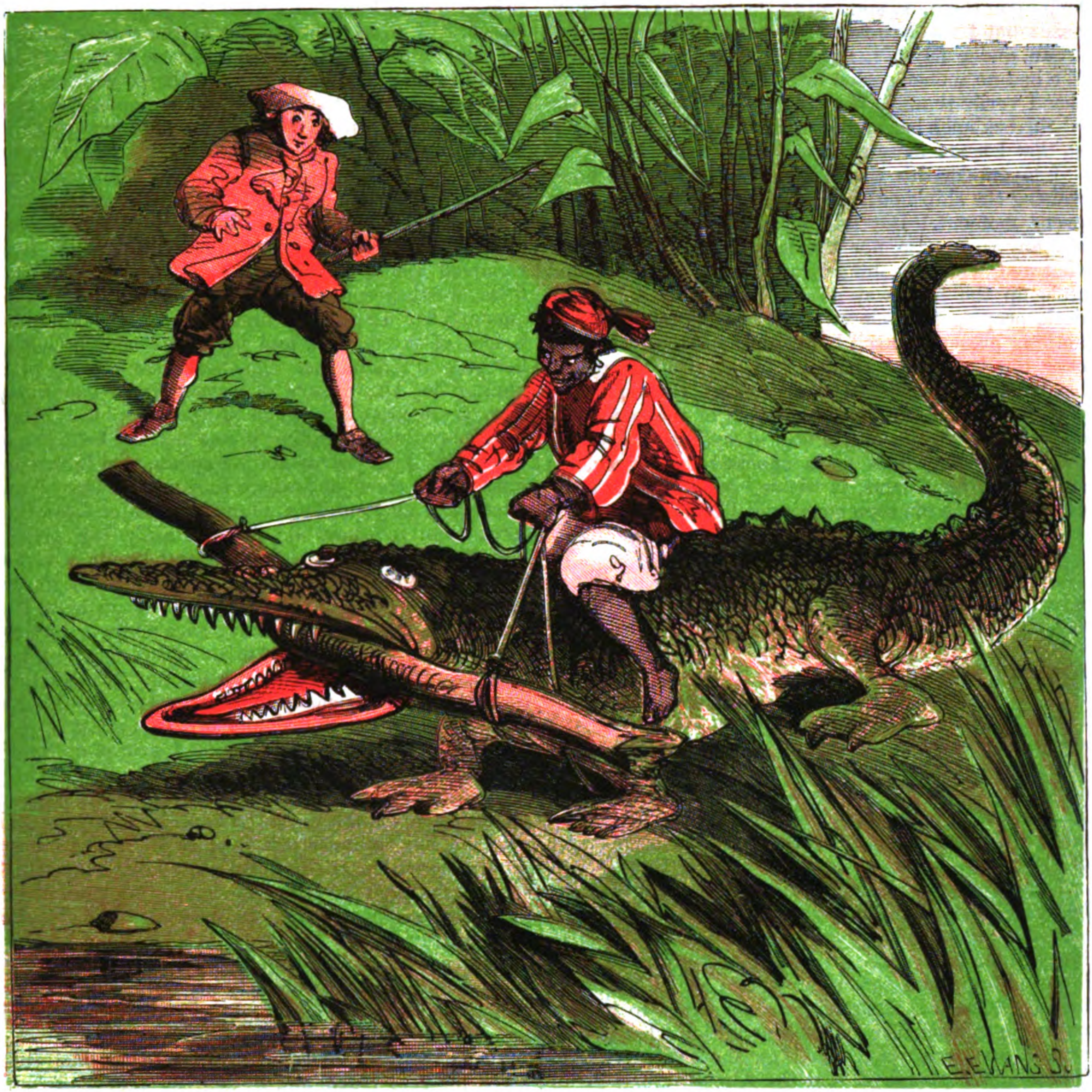
My proposal seemed to please the whole crew; so, crowding all the sail we could, we pushed southward very briskly before the wind for several days. We now went upon examining our stores, and found we had flour enough, plenty of fish, and salt provisions, but were scant of water and wood; of the first whereof there was not half a tun, and but very little of the latter. This made us very uneasy; and being none of us expert in navigation farther than the common working of the ship, and having no chart on board that might direct us to the nearest land, we were almost at our wit's end, and came to a short allowance of liquor. That we must get water if we could, was indisputable; but where to do it puzzled us, as we had determined not to get in with the African shore on any account whatever.

In this perplexity, and under the guidance of different opinions (for we were all captains now), we sometimes steered eastward and sometimes westward, for about nine days, when we espied a little bluish cloud-like appearance to the south-west; this continuing, we hoped it might be land, and therefore made to it. Upon our nearer approach, we found it to be, as we judged, an island; but not knowing its name, or whether it was inhabited, we coasted round it two days, to satisfy ourselves of this last particular. Seeing no living creature on it during that time, and the shore being very broken, we came to an anchor about two miles from it, and sent ten of our crew in our best boat, with some casks, to get water and cut wood. The boat returned at night, with six men and the casks filled, having left four behind to go on with the cutting of wood against next day. Accordingly, next morning the boat went off again, and made two turns with water and wood ere night, which was repeated for two or three days after. On the sixth, she went off for wood only, leaving none but me and one John Adams on board.

The boat had scarce reached the island this last turn, before the day overcast, and there arose such a storm of wind, thunder, lightning, and hail, as I had never before seen. At last our cable broke close to the anchor, and away we went with the wind full southward by west; and not having strength to keep the ship upon a side wind, we were forced to set her head right before it and let her drive. Our hope was, every hour the storm would abate; but it continued with equal violence for many days, during all which time neither Adams nor I had any rest, for one or other of us was forced, and sometimes both, to keep her right before the wind, or she would certainly have overset. When the storm abated, as it did by degrees, neither Adams nor I could tell where we were, or even in what part of the world.

I was sorry I had no better a sailor with me, for neither Adams nor myself had ever made more than one voyage till now, so that we were both unacquainted with the latitude, and scarce knew the use of the compass to any purpose; and, being out of all hope of ever reaching the island to our companions, we neither knew which way to steer nor what to do; and, indeed, had we known where we were, we two only could not have been able to navigate the ship to any part we desired, or ever get to the island, unless such a wind as we had before would of itself have driven us thither.

Whilst we were considering day after day what to do, though the sea was now very calm and smooth,



PETER WILKINS' COMRADE CAPTURES AN ALLIGATOR.

the ship seemed to sail at as great a rate as before, which we attributed to the velocity she had acquired by the storm, or to currents that had set that way by the violence of the winds. Contenting ourselves with this, we expected all soon to be right again; and as we had no prospect of ever seeing our companions, we kept the best look-out we could, to see for any vessel coming that course which might take us in, and resolved to rest all our hopes on that.

When we had sailed a good while after this manner, we knew not whither, Adams called out, "I see land!" My heart leaped within me for joy; and we hoped the current that seemed to carry us so fast, set in for some islands or rivers that lay before us. But still we were exceedingly puzzled at the ship's making such way; and the nearer and nearer we approached the land, which was now very visible, the more speed the ship made, though there was no wind stirring. We had but just time to think on this unexpected phenomenon, when we found that what we had taken for land was a rock of an extraordinary height, to which as we advanced nearer, the ship increased its motion, and all our strength could not make her answer her rudder any other way. This put us under the apprehension of being dashed to pieces immediately, and in less than half an hour, I verily thought my fears had not been groundless. Poor Adams told me he would try, when the ship struck, if he could leap upon the rock, and ran to the head for that purpose; but I was so fearful of seeing my danger, that I ran under hatches, resolving to sink in the ship. We had no sooner parted but I felt so violent a shock, that I verily thought the ship had brought down the whole rock upon her, and been thereby dashed to pieces, so that I never more expected to see the light.

I lay under this terror for at least half an hour, waiting the ship's either filling with water or bulging every moment. But finding neither motion in her, nor any water rise, nor the least noise whatsoever, I ventured, with an aching heart, from my retreat, and stole up the hatchway as if an enemy had been on deck, peeping first one way and then another. Here nothing presented itself but confusion; the rock hung over the hatchway, at about twenty feet above my head, our foremast lay by the board, the mainmast yard-arm was down, and great part of the mainmast snapped off with it, and almost everything upon deck was displaced. This sight shocked me extremely; and calling for Adams, in whom I hoped to find some comfort, I was too soon convinced I had lost him.

CHAPTER VIII.

After I had stood awhile in the utmost confusion of thought, and my spirits began to be a little composed, I was resolved to see what damage the hull of the ship had received. Accordingly, I looked narrowly, but could find none, only she was immovably fixed in a cleft of a rock like a large archway, and there stuck so fast, that though upon fathoming I could find no bottom, she never moved in the least by the working of the water.

I now began to look upon Adams as a happy man, being delivered by immediate death from such an inextricable scene of distress, and wished myself with him a thousand times. I had a great mind to have followed him into the other world; yet, I know not how it is, there is something so abhorrent to human nature in self-murder, be one's condition what it will, that I was soon determined on the contrary side. Now again I perceived that the Almighty had given me a large field to expatiate in upon the trial of his creatures, by bringing them into imminent dangers ready to overwhelm them, and at the same time, as it were, hanging out the flag of truce and mercy to them. These thoughts brought me to my knees, and I poured out my soul to God in a strain of humiliation, resignation to his will, and earnest petitions for deliverance or support in this distress. Having finished, I found myself in a more composed frame; so, having eaten a biscuit and drank a can of water, and not seeing anything to be done whereby I could better my condition, I sat me down upon the deck, and fell into the following soliloquy:—

"Peter," says I, "what have you to do here?" "Alas!" replied I to myself, "I am fixed against my will in this dismal mansion, destined, as rats might be, to devour the provisions only, and having eat all up, to perish with hunger for want of a supply." "Then," says I, "of what use are you in the world, Peter?" "Truly," answered I, "of no other use, that I can see, but to be an object of misery for Divine vengeance to work upon, and to show what a deplorable state human nature can be reduced to, for I cannot think any one else can be so wretched." "And again, Peter," says I, "what have you been doing ever since you came into the world?" "I am afraid," says I, "I can answer no better to this question than to either of the former; for if only reasonable actions are to be reckoned among my doings, I am sure I have done little worth recording; for, let me see what it all amounts to. I spent my first sixteen years in making a fool of my mother, and my three next in letting her make a fool of me. The next year was spent in finding out the misery of slavery from experience. Two years more I repined at the happiness of my benefactor, and at finding it was not my lot to enjoy the same. This year is not yet spent; and how many more are to come, and where they may be passed, and what they may produce, requires a better head than mine even to guess at; but certainly my present situation seems to promise nothing beside woe and misery. But hold a little," says I, "and let me clearly state my own wretchedness. I am here, it is true; but for any good I have ever done, or any advantage I have reaped in other places, I am as well here as anywhere. I have no present want of food, or unjust or cruel enemy to annoy me; so, as long as the ship continues entire, and provisions last, I shall do tolerably. Then, why should I grieve, or terrify myself about what may come? What my frighted imagination suggests may perhaps never happen. Deliverance, though not to be looked for, is yet possible; and my future fate may be as different from my present condition, as this is from the hopes with which I lately flattered myself. Dismal as my present circumstances appear, I may be even now the object of a kind Providence. God may be leading me by affliction to repentance of former crimes, destroying those sensual affections that have all my days kept me from loving and serving Him. I will therefore submit myself to his will, and hope for his mercy."

These thoughts, and many others I then had, composed me very much, and by degrees reconciled me to my destined solitude. I walked my ship, of which I was now both master and owner, and employed myself in searching how it was fastened to the rock, and where it rested; but all to no purpose as to that particular. I then struck a light, and went into the hold, to see what I could find useful, for we had never searched the ship since we took her.

In the hold I found abundance of long iron bars, which I supposed were brought out to be trafficked with the blacks. I observed they all lay with one end close to the head of the ship, which I presumed was occasioned by the violent shock they received when she struck against the rock; but seeing one short bar lying out beyond the rest, though touching at the end one of the long bars, I thought to take it up, and lay it on the heap with the others; but the moment I had raised the end next the other bars, it flew out of my hand with such violence against the head of the ship, and with such a noise, as greatly surprised me, and put me in fear it had broke through the plank.

I just stayed to see no harm was done, and ran upon deck, with my hair stiff on my head; nor could I conceive less than that some subtle spirit had done this prank merely to terrify me.

It ran in my head several days; and I durst upon no account have gone into the hold again, though my whole support had lain there; nay, it even spoiled my rest, for fear something tragical should befall me, of which this amazing incident was an omen.

About a week after, as I was shifting myself, (for I had not taken my clothes off since I came there,) and putting on a new pair of shoes which I found on board, my own being very bad, taking out my iron buckles, I laid one of them upon a broken piece of the mast that I sat upon, when, to my astonishment, it was no sooner out of my hand but up it flew to the rock, and stuck there. I then held several other things, one after another, in my hand, and laid them down where I laid the buckle; but nothing stirred, till I took out the fellow of that from the shoes, when, letting it go, away it also jumped to the rock.

I mused on these phenomena for some time, and could not forbear calling upon God to protect me from the devil, who must, as I imagined, have a hand in such unaccountable things as they then seemed to me. But at length reason got the better of these foolish apprehensions, and I began to think there might be some natural cause of them, and next to be very desirous of finding it out. In order to this, I set about making experiments, to try what would run to the rock, and what would not. I went into the captain's cabin, and opening a cupboard, of which the key was in the door, I took out a pipe, a bottle, a pocket-book, a silver spoon, a tea-cup, &c., and laid them successively near the rock, when none of them answered; but the key which I had brought out of the cupboard on my finger, dropping off while I was thus employed, no sooner it was disengaged, but away it went to it. After that I tried several other pieces of iron-ware, with the like success. Upon this, and the needle of my compass standing stiff to the rock, I concluded that this same rock contained a great quantity of load-stone, or was itself one vast magnet, and that our lading of iron was the cause of the ship's violent course thereto, which I mentioned before.

This quite satisfied me as to my notion of spirits, and gave me a more undisturbed night's rest than I had had before; so that now, having nothing to affright me, I passed the time tolerably well in my solitude, as it grew by degrees familiar to me.

I had often wished it had been possible for me to climb the rock; but it was so smooth in many places, and craggy in others, and overhanging, continuing just the same to the right and left of me, as far as ever I could see, that, from the impossibility of it, I discharged all thoughts of such an attempt.

I had now lived on board three months, and perceived the days grow shorter and shorter, till, having lost the sun for a little time, they were quite dark; that is, there was no absolute daylight, or, indeed, visible distinction between day and night, though it was never so dark but I could see well enough upon deck to go about.

What now concerned me the most was, my water, which began to grow very bad, (though I had plenty of it,) and unsavoury, so that I could scarce drink it, but had no prospect of better. Now and then, indeed, it snowed a little, which I made some use of; but this was far from contenting me. Hereupon I began to contrive; and, having nothing else to do, I set two open vessels upon deck, and drawing water from the hold, I filled one of my vessels, and letting it stand a day and a night, I poured it into the other, and so shifted it every twenty-four hours. This, I found, though it did not bring it to the primitive taste, and render it altogether palatable, was, nevertheless, a great help to it, by incorporating the fresh air with it, so that it became very potable; and this method I constantly used with my drinking-water, so long as I stayed on board the ship.

It had now been sharp weather for some time; and the cold still increasing, this put me upon rummaging the ship farther than ever I thought to do before; when, opening a little cabin under deck, I found a large cargo of fine French brandy, a great many bottles, and some small casks of Madeira wine, with divers cordial waters. Having tasted these, and taken out a bottle or two of brandy and some Maderia, I locked up my door, and looked no farther that time.

The next day, I inquired into my provisions; and some of my flesh having soaked out the pickle, I made fresh pickle, and closed it up again. I that day also found several cheeses, cased up in lead, one of which I then opened and dined upon, but what time of day or night it was when I eat this meal, I could not tell. I found a great many chests well filled, and one or two of tools, which, some years after, stood me in a very good stead, though I did not expect they would ever be of that service when I first met with them.

In this manner I spent my time, till I began to see broad daylight again, which cheered me greatly. I had been often put in hopes, during the dark season, that ships were coming towards me, and that I should once more have the conversation of mankind; for I had, by the small glimmering, seen many large bodies (to my thinking) move at a little distance from me, and particularly toward the reappearing of the light; but though I hallooed as loud as I could, and often fired my gun, I never received an answer.

When the light returned, my days increased in proportion as they had before decreased; and, gathering comfort from that, I determined to launch my small boat, and to coast along the island, as I judged it, to see if it was inhabited, and by whom. I determined also to make me some lines for fishing, and carry my gun to try for other game, if I found a place for landing; for though I had never, since my arrival, seen a single living creature but my cat, except insects, of which there were many in the water and in the air, before the dark weather, and then began to appear again. yet I could not but think there were both birds and beasts to be met with.

Upon launching my boat, I perceived she was very leaky; so I let her fill, and continue thus a week or more, to stop her cracks. Then getting down the side of my ship, I scooped her quite dry, and found her very fit for use; so, putting on board my gun, lines, brandy-bottles, and a clothes-chest for a seat, with some little water, and provisions for a week, I once more committed myself to the sea, having taken all the observation I could to gain my ship again, if any accident should happen; though I resolved, upon no account, to quit sight of the rock willingly.

I had not rowed very long, before I thought I saw an island to my right, about a league distant, to which I inclined to steer my course, the sea being very calm; but, upon surveying it nearer, I found it only a great cake of ice about forty yards high above the water, and a mile or two in length. I then concluded, that what I had before taken for ships were only these lumps of ice. Being thus disappointed as to my island, I made what haste I could back to the rock again, and coasted part of its circumference; but though I had gone two or three leagues of its circuit, the prospect it afforded was just the same.

I then tried my lines, by fastening several very long ones, made of the log-line, to the side of the boat, baiting them with several different baits; but took only one fish of about four pounds weight, very much resembling a haddock, part of which I dressed for my supper, after my return to the ship, and it proved very good. Towards evening I returned to my home, as I may call it.

The next day I made a voyage on the other side of the rock, though but to a small distance from the ship, with intent only to fish, but took nothing. I had then a mind to victual my boat, or little cruizer, and prepare myself for a voyage of two or three days, which I thought I might safely undertake, as I had never seen a troubled sea since I came to the island; for though I heard the wind often roaring over my head, yet, it coming always from the land-side, it never disturbed the water near the shore. I set out the same way I went at first, designing to sail two or three days out, and as many home again, and resolved, if possible, to fathom the depth as I went. With this view I prepared a very long line, with a large shot tied in a rag at the end of it, by way of plummet; but I felt no ground till the second night. The next morning I came into thirty fathom water, then twenty, then sixteen. In both tours, I could perceive no abatement in the height or steepness of the rock.

In about fourteen fathom water I dropped my lines, and lay by for an hour or two. Feeling several jars, I was sure I had caught somewhat; so, pulling up my lines successively, I brought first a large eel, near six feet long, and almost as thick as my thigh, whose mouth, throat, and fins were of a fine scarlet, and the belly as white as snow. He was so strong while in the water, and weighty, I had much ado to get him into the boat, and then had a harder job to kill him; for though, having a hatchet with me, to cut wood in case I met with any landing-place, I chopped off his head the moment I had him on board, yet he had several times after that have like to have broken my legs, and beat me overboard, before I had quite taken his life from him; and, had I not whipped off his tail, and also divided his body into two or three pieces, I could not have mastered him. The next I pulled up was a thick fish, like a tench, but of another colour, and much bigger. I drew up several others, flat and long fish, till I was tired with the sport; and then I set out for the ship again, which I reached the third day.

During the whole time, I had but one shot, and that was as I came homewards, at a creature I saw upon the high crag of the rock, which I fired at with ball, fearing that my small shot would not reach it. The animal being mortally wounded, bounded up, and came tumbling down the rock, very near me. I picked it up, and found it to be a creature not much unlike our rabbits, but with shorter ears, a longer tail, and hoofed like a kid, though it had the perfect fluck of a rabbit. I put it into my boat, to contemplate on when I arrived at the ship, and plying my oars, got safe, as I said, on the third day.

I kept now a whole week or more at home, to look farther into the contents of the ship, bottle off a cask of Madeira which I found leaking, and to consume my new stores of fish and flesh, which being somewhat stale when first salted, I thought would not keep so well as the old ones that were on board. I added also some fresh bread to my provision, and sweetened more water by the afore-mentioned method; and when my necessary domestic affairs were brought under, I then projected a new voyage.

CHAPTER IX.

I HAD for a long time wanted to see the other side of the rock, and at last resolved to try if I could not coast it quite round; for, as I reasoned with myself, I might possibly find some landing-places, and perhaps a convenient habitation on shore. But as I was very uncertain what time that might take up, I determined on having provisions, instruments of divers kinds, and necessary utensils in plenty, to guard against accidents as well as I could. I therefore took another sea-chest out of the hold of the ship, and letting it into my boat, replenished it with a stock of wine, brandy, oil, bread, and the like, sufficient for a considerable voyage. I also filled a large cask with water, and took a good quantity of salt, to cure what fish I should take by the way. I carried two guns, two brace of pistols, and other arms, with ammunition proportionable; also an axe or two, a saw to cut wood, if I should see any, and a few other tools, which might be highly serviceable if I could land. To all these I added an old sail, to make a covering for my goods and artillery against the weather. Thus furnished and equipped, having secured my hatches on board and everything that might spoil by wet, I set out, with a God's speed, on my expedition, committing myself once more to Providence and the main ocean, and proceeding the same way I went the first time.

I did not sail extraordinarily fast, but frequently fished in proper places, and caught a great deal, salting and drying the best of what I took. For three weeks' time and more I saw no entrance into the island, as I call it, nor anything but the same unscaleable rock. This uniform prospect gave me so little hopes of landing, that I was almost of a mind to have returned again, but, on mature deliberation, resolved to go forward a day or two more. I had not proceeded twenty-four hours, when, just as it was becoming dark, I heard a great noise as of a fall of water, whereupon, I proposed to lie by and wait for day, to see what it was; but the stream insensibly drawing me on, I soon found myself in an eddy; and the boat drawing forward beyond all my power to resist it, I was quickly sucked under a low arch, where, if I had not fallen flat in my boat, having barely light enough to see my danger, I had undoubtedly been crushed to pieces, or driven overboard. I could perceive the boat to fall with incredible violence, as I thought, down a precipice, and suddenly whirled round and round with me, the water roaring on all sides, and dashing against the rock with a most amazing noise.

I expected every moment my poor little vessel would be staved against the rock, and I overwhelmed with waters, and for that reason never once attempted to rise up or look upon my peril, till after the commotion had in some measure ceased. At length, finding the perturbation of the water abate, and as if by degrees I came into a smoother stream, I took courage just to lift up my affrighted head; but guess, if you can, the horror which seized me, on finding myself in the blackest of darkness, unable to perceive the smallest glimmer of light.

However, as my boat seemed to glide easily, I roused myself and struck a light: but if I had my terrors before, what must I have now! I was quite stupified at the tremendous view of an immense arch over my head, to which I could see no bounds; the stream itself, as I judged, was about thirty yards broad, but in some places wider, in some narrower. It was well for me I happened to have a tinder-box, or, though I had escaped hitherto, I must have at last perished; for, in the narrower parts of the stream, where it ran swiftest, there were frequently such crags stood out from the rock, by reason of the turnings and windings, and such sets of the current against them, as, could I not have seen to manage my boat, which I took great care to keep in the middle of the stream, must have thrown me on them, to my inevitable destruction.

Happy it was for me, also, I was so well victualled, and that I had taken two bottles of oil (as I supposed, for I did not imagine I had any more), or I certainly had been lost, not only through hunger, for I was, to my guess, five weeks in the vault or cavern, but for want of light, which the oil furnished, and without which all other conveniences could have been of no avail to me. I was forced to keep my lamp always burning; so, not knowing how long my residence was to be in that place, or when I should get my discharge from it, if ever, I was obliged to husband my oil with the utmost frugality; and notwithstanding all my caution, it grew low, and was just spent in little above half the time I stayed there.

I had now cut a piece of my shirt for a wick to my last drop of oil, which I twisted and lighted. I burnt the oil in my brass tobacco-box, which I had fitted pretty well to answer the purpose. Sitting down, I had many black thoughts of what must follow the loss of my light, which I considered as nearly expiring, and that, I feared, for ever. "I am here," thought I, "like a poor condemned criminal, who knows his execution is fixed for such a day, nay, such an hour, and dies over and over in imagination, and by the torture of his mind, till that hour comes: that hour which he so much dreads, and yet that very hour which releases him from all farther dread! Thus do I! Happy minute! Come, then; I only wait for thee!"

My spirits grew so low and feeble upon this, that I had recourse to my brandy-bottle to raise them; but, as I was just going to take a sip, I reflected that would only increase thirst, and, therefore, it were better to take a little of my white Madeira; so, putting my dram-bottle again into the chest, I held up one of Madeira, as I fancied, to the lamp, and seeing it was white (for I had red, too), I clapped it eagerly to my mouth, when the first gulp gave me a greater refreshment, and more cheered my heart, than all the other liquors I had put together could have done, insomuch as I had almost leaped over the boat's side for joy. "It is oil!" cried I, aloud, "it is oil!" I set it down carefully, with inexpressible pleasure, and examining the rest of the bottles I had taken for white Madeira, I found two more of those to be filled with oil. "Now," says I, "here is the counterpart of my condemned prisoner! For let but a pardon come, though at the gallows, how soon does he forget he has been an unhappy villain! And I, too, have scarce a notion now, how a man in my case could feel such a sorrow as I have, for want of a little oil."

After my first transport I found myself grow serious, reflecting upon the vigilance of Providence over us poor creatures, and the various instances wherein it interposes to save or relieve us in cases of the deepest distress, where our own foresight, wisdom, and power have utterly failed, and when, looking all around, we could discover no means of deliverance. And I saw a train of circumstances leading to the incident I have just mentioned, which obliged me to acknowledge the superintendence of Heaven over even my affairs; and as the goodness of God had cared for me thus far, and manifested itself to me now, in rescuing me, as it were, from being swallowed up in darkness, I had ground to hope He intended a complete deliverance of me out of that dismal abyss, and would cause me yet to praise Him in the full brightness of day.

A series of these meditations brought me (at the end of five weeks, as nearly as I could compute it by my lamp,) to a prodigious lake of water, bordered with a grassy down, about half a mile wide, of the finest verdure I had ever seen; this again was flanked with a wood or grove, rising like an amphitheatre, of about the same breadth; and behind, and above all, appeared the naked rock to an immense height.

CHAPTER X.

It is impossible to express my joy at the sight of day once more. I got on the land as soon as possible after my dismission from the cavern, and, kneeling on the ground, returned hearty thanks to God for my deliverance, begging, at the same time, grace to improve his mercies, and that I might continue under his protection, whatever should hereafter befall me, and at last die on my native soil.

I unloaded my vessel as well as I could, and hauled her up on shore, and turning her upside down, made her a covering for my arms and baggage; I then sat down to contemplate the place, and ate a most delightful meal on the grass, being quite a new thing to me.

I walked over the green sward to the wood, with my gun in my hand, a brace of pistols in my girdle, and my cutlass hanging before me; but when I was just entering the wood, looking behind me and all around the plain, "Is it possible," says I, "that so much art" (for I did not then believe it was natural) "could have been bestowed upon this place, and no inhabitant in it? Here are neither buildings, huts, castle, nor any living creature to be seen! It cannot be," says I, "that this place was made for nothing."

I then went a considerable way into the wood, and inclined to have gone much farther, it being very beautiful, but, on second thoughts, judged it best to content myself at present with only looking out a safe retreat for the night; for, however agreeable the place then seemed, darkness was at hand, when everything about me would have more or less of horror in it.

The wood, at its first entrance, was composed of the most charming flowering shrubs that can be imagined, each growing upon its own stem at so convenient a distance from the other, that you might fairly pass between them any way without the least incommodity. Behind them grew numberless tress, somewhat taller, of the greatest variety of shapes, forms, and verdures the eye ever beheld; each, also, so far asunder as was necessary for the spreading of their several branches, and the growth of their delicious fruits, without a bush, briar, or shrub amongst them. Behind these, and still on the higher ground, grew an infinite number of very large tall trees, much loftier than the former, but intermixed with some underwood, which grew thicker and closer the nearer you approached the rock. I made a shift to force my way through these as far as the rock, which rose as perpendicular as a regular building, having only here and there some crags and unevennesses. There was, I observed, a space all the way between the underwood and the rock, wide enough to drive a cart in, and indeed I thought it had been left for that purpose.

I walked along this passage a good way, having tied a rag of the lining of my jacket at the place of my entrance, to know it again at my coming back, which I intended to be ere it grew dark; but I found so much pleasure in the walk, and surveying a small natural grotto which was in the rock, that the daylight forsook me unawares; whereupon, I resolved to put off my return unto the boat till next morning, and to take up my lodging for the night in the cave. I cut down a large bundle of underwood with my cutlass, sufficient to stop up the mouth of the grotto, and laying me down to rest, slept as sound as if I had been on board my ship, for I never had one hour's rest together since I shot the gulf till this. The next morning I awaked sweetly refreshed, and, by the sign of my rag, found the way again through the underwood to my boat. I raised that up a little, took out some bread and cheese, and, having eaten pretty heartily, laid me down to drink at the lake, which looked as clear as crystal, expecting a most delicious draught; but I had forgot it brought me from the sea, and my first gulp almost poisoned me. This was a sore disappointment, for I knew my water-cask was nigh emptied, and, indeed, turning up my boat again, I drew out all that remained, and drank it, for I was much athirst.

However, I did not now despair; I was so used to God's providence, and had a sense of its operations so rivetted in my mind, that though the vast lake of salt water was surrounded by an impenetrable rock or barrier of stone, I rested satisfied that I should rather find even that yield me a fresh and living stream, than that I should perish for want of it.

With this easy mind did I travel five or six miles on the side of the lake, and sometimes stepped into the wood, and walked a little there, till I had gone almost half the diameter of the lake, which lay in a circular, or rather an oval, figure. I had then thoughts of walking back, to be near my boat and lodging, for fear I should be again benighted if I went much farther; but, considering I had come past no water, and possibly I might yet find some, if I went quite round the lake, I rather chose to take up with a new lodging that night, than to return; and I did not want for a supper, having brought out with me more bread and cheese than had served for dinner, the remainder of which was in the lining of my jacket. When it grew darkish, I had some thoughts of eating; but I considered, as I was then neither very hungry nor dry, if I should eat, it would but occasion drought, and I had nothing to allay that with; so I contented myself for that night to lay me down supperless.

In the morning, I set forward again upon my water search, and hoped to compass the whole lake that day. I had gone about seven miles more, when, at a little distance before me, I perceived a small hollow or cut in the grass from the wood to the lake; thither I hasted with all speed, and blessed God for the supply of a fine fresh rill, which, distilling from several small clefts in the rock, had collected itself into one stream, and cut its way through the green sod to the lake.

I lay down with infinite pleasure, and swallowed a most cheering draught of the precious liquid, and, sitting on the brink, made a good meal of what I had with me, and then drank again. I had now got five-sixths of the lake's circumference to go back again to my boat, for I did not suspect any passage over the cavern's mouth where I came into the lake; and I could not without much trouble consider that, if I would have this water for a constant supply, I must either come a long way for it, or fix my habitation near it. I was just going back again, revolving these uneasy thoughts in my breast, when this rose suddenly in my mind: that, if I could possibly get over the mouth of the cavern, I should not have above three miles from my grotto to the water. Now, as I could not get home that night, otherwise than by crossing it, and as, if I lost my labour, I should but be where I was, whereas, if I should get over it, it would very much shorten my journey, I resolved to try whether the thing was practicable; first, however, looking out for a resting-place somewhere near my water, if I should meet with a disappointment.

I then walked into the wood, where, meeting with no place of retreat to my liking, I went to my rill, and taking another sup, determined not to leave that side of the lake till morning; but, having some time to spare, I walked about two miles to view the inlet of the lake, and was agreeably surprised, just over the mouth of the cavern, to see a large stone arch like a bridge, as if it had been cut out of the rock, quite across the opening; this cheered me vastly, and, pushing over it, I found a path that brought me to my boat before night.

I then went up to my grotto, for the third night in this most delightful place; and the next morning, early, I launched my boat, and taking my water-cask and a small dipping-bucket with me, I rowed away for the rill, and returned highly pleased with a sufficiency of water, whereof I carried a bucket and a copper kettle full up with me to the grotto. Indeed, it was not the least part of my satisfaction that I had this kettle with me; for though I was in hopes, in my last voyage, I should have come to some shore where I could have landed and enjoyed myself over some of my fish, and for that reason had taken it, notwithstanding things did not turn out just as I had schemed, yet my kettle proved a most useful piece of furniture.

Having now acquainted myself with the circumference of the lake, and settled a communication with my rill, I began to think of commencing housekeeper. In order thereunto, I set about removing my goods up to the grotto. By constant application, in a few days I had gotten all thither but my two great chests and my water-cask; and how to drag or drive any of these to it, I was entirely at a loss. My water-cask was of the utmost importance to me, and I had thoughts, sometimes, of stopping it close, and rolling it to the place; but the ascent through the wood to the grotto was so steep, that, besides the fear of staving it, which would have been an irreparable loss, I judged it impossible to accomplish it by my strength; so, with a good deal of discontent, I determined to remit both that and the chests to future consideration.

CHAPTER XI.

Having come to a full resolution of fixing my residence at the grotto, and making that my capital seat, it is proper to give you some description of it.

This grotto, then, was a full mile from the lake, in the rock which encompassed the wood. The entrance was scarcely two feet wide, and about nine feet high, rising, from the height of seven feet upward, to a point in the middle. The cavity was about fifteen feet long within, and about five wide. Being obliged to lie lengthwise in it, full six feet of it were taken up at the farther end for my lodging only, as nothing could stand on the side of my bed that would leave me room to come at it. The remaining nine feet of the cave's length were taken up, first, by my fireplace, which was the deepest side of the doorway, ranging with my bed (which I had set close to the rock on one side), and took up near three feet in length; and my furniture and provisions, of one sort or other, so filled up the rest, that I had much ado to creep between them into my bed.

In the chest which I had taken for a seat in the boat, as aforesaid, upon breaking it open by the water side, I found a mattrass, some shirts, shoes, stockings, and several other useful things; a small case of bottles with cordials in them, some instruments of surgery, plaisters and salves; all which, with a large quantity of fish that I had salted, I carried to the grotto.

My habitation being thus already overcharged, and as I could not, however, bear the thoughts of quitting it, or of having any of my goods exposed to the weather on the outside, I was naturally bent upon contriving how I should increase my accommodations. As I had no prospect of enlarging the grotto itself, I could conceive no way of effecting my desire but by the addition of an outer room. This thought pleased me very much, so that the next day I set myself to plan out the building, and traced the foundation of it.

I told you before, there was about the space of a cart-way between the wood and the rock clear; but this breadth, as I was building for life (so I imagined), not appearing to me spacious enough for my new apartment, I considered how I should extend its bounds into the wood. Hereupon, I set myself to observe what trees stood at a proper distance from my grotto, that might serve as they stood, with a little management of hewing and the like, to compose a noble doorway, posts, and supports; and I found that, upon cutting down three of the nearest trees, I should answer my purpose in this respect, and that there were several others about twenty feet from the grotto, and running parallel with the rock, the situation of which was so happily adapted to my intention, that I could make them become, as I fancied, an out-fence or wall; so I took my axe, to cut down my nearest trees, but as I was going to strike, a different scheme presented to my imagination, that altered my resolution.

In conformity with this new plan, I fixed the height of my intended ceiling, and sawed off my nearest trees to that, sloping from the sides to the middle, to support cross beams for the roof to rest on, and left the trunks standing, by way of pillars, both for the use and ornament of the structure. In short, I worked hard every day upon my building for a month, in which time I had cut all my timber into proper lengths for my out-works and covering, but was at a great stand how to fix my side-posts, having no spade or mattock, and the ground almost as hard as flint, for to be sure it had never been stirred since the creation. I then thought I had the worst part of my job to get over; however, I went on, and having contrived in most of my upright side-quarters to take the tops of trees, and leave on the lower parts of their cleft, where they began to branch out and divide from the main stem, I set one of them upright against the rock, then laid one end of my long ceiling-pieces upon the cleft of it, and laid the other end upon a tree on the same side, whose top I had also sawed off with a proper cleft. I then went and did the same on the other side; after which, I laid on a proper number of cross beams, and tied all very firmly together with the bark of young trees stripped off in long thongs, which answered that purpose very well. Thus I proceeded, crossing, joining, and fastening all together, till the whole roof was so strong and firm that there was no stirring any part of it; I then spread it over with small lop-wood, on which I raised a ridge of dried grass and weeds, very thick, and thatched over the whole with the leaves of a tree very much resembling those of a palm, but much thicker, and not quite so broad; the entire surface, I might say, was as smooth as a die, and so ordered, by a gentle declivity every way, as to carry off the wet.

Having covered in my building, I had next to finish and close the walls of it; the skeleton of these was composed of sticks, crossing one another checkerwise, and tied together; to fill up the voids, I wove upon them the longest and most pliable twigs of the underwood I could find, leaving only a doorway on one side, between two stems of a tree, which, dividing in the trunk at about two feet from the ground, grew from thence, for the rest of its height, as if the branches were a couple of trees a little distant from one another, which made a sort of stile-way to my room. When this was all done, I tempered up some earth by the lake side, and mixing it to a due consistence with mud which I took from the lake, applied it as a plastering, to about the thickness of five or six inches; so that by this means I had a wall round my new apartment a foot thick. This plaster work cost me some time, and a great deal of labour, as I had a full mile to go to the lake for every load of stuff, and could carry but little at once, it was so heavy; but there was neither water for tempering, nor proper earth to make it with, any nearer. At last, however, I completed my building in every respect but a door, and for this I was forced to use the lid of my sea-chest, which, indeed, I would have chosen not to apply that way, but I had nothing else that would do; there was, however, this conveniency, that it had hinges ready fixed thereon.

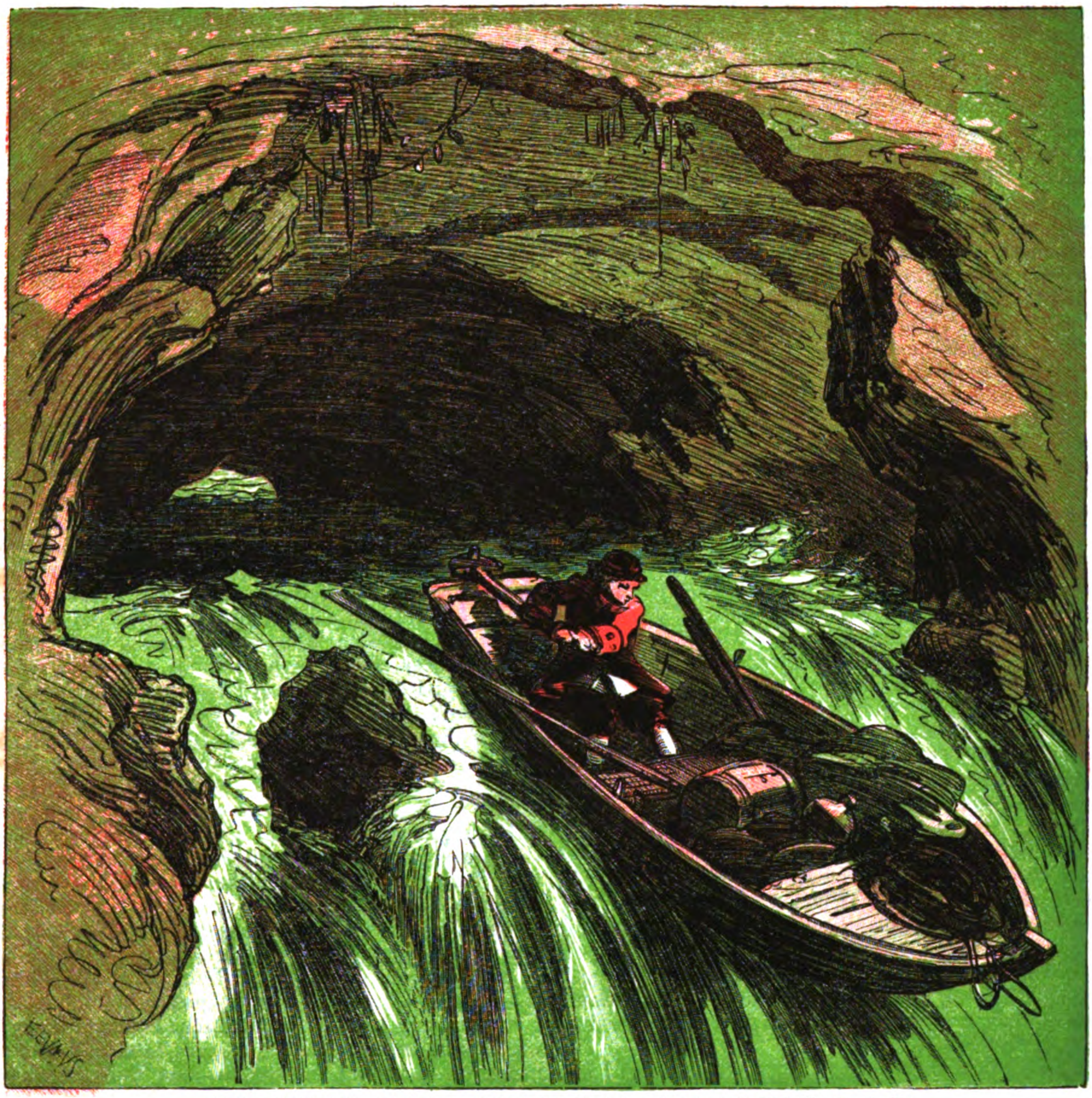
I now began to enjoy myself in my new habitation, like the absolute and sole lord of the country; for I had neither seen man nor beast since my arrival, save a few animals in the trees like our squirrels, and some water-rats about the lake; but there were several strange kinds of birds I had never before seen, both on the lake and in the woods.

That which now troubled me most was, how to get my water nearer to me than the lake, for I had no lesser vessel than the cask, which held above twenty gallons, and to bring that up was a fatigue intolerable. My next contrivance, therefore, was this: I told you I had taken my chest-lid to make a door for an antechamber, as I now began to call it; so I resolved to apply the body of the chest also to a purpose different from that it originally answered. In order to this, I went to the lake where the body of the chest lay, and sawed it through, within about three inches of the bottom. Of the two ends, having rounded them as well as I could, I made two wheels, and with one of the sides I made two more. I burnt a hole through the middle of each; then preparing two axletrees, I fastened them, after setting on the wheels, to the bottom of the chest, with the nails I had drawn out of it. Having finished the machine, on which I bestowed no small labour, I was hugely pleased with it, and only wished I had a beast, if it were but an ass, to draw it; however, that task I was satisfied to perform myself, since there was no help for it, so I made a good strong cord out of my fishing-lines, and fixed that to drag it by. When all was thus in readiness, filling my water-cask, I bound it thereon, and so brought it to the grotto, with such ease, comparatively, as quite charmed me. Having succeeded so well in the first essay, I no sooner unloaded, but down went I again with my cart, or truckle rather, and brought up on it my other chest, which I had left entire.

I had now nothing remaining near the lake but my boat, and had half a mind to try to bring that up too; but having so frequent occasion for her to get my water in, which I used in greater abundance now than I had done at first, a great part going to supply my domestic uses, as well as for drinking, I resolved against that, and sought out for a convenient dock to stow it in, as a preservative against wind and weather, which I soon effected; for, having pitched upon a swampy place, overgrown with long flags or reeds, I soon cut a trench from the lake, with a sort of spade or board, that I had chopped and sharpened for that use.

Thus having stowed my boat, and looked over all my goods, and sorted them, and taken a survey of my provisions, I found I must soon be in want of the last, if I did not forthwith procure a supply; for though I had victualled so well at setting out, and had been very sparing ever since, yet, had it not been for a great quantity of fish I took and salted in my passage to the gulf, I had need to seek for food much sooner; so I thought it prudent to look out before I really wanted.

With this resolution, I accoutred myself, as in my first walk, with my instruments and arms; but, instead of travelling the lake side, I went along the wood, and therein found great plenty of divers kinds of fruits, though I could scarce persuade myself to taste, or try the effects of them, being so much unlike our own, or any I had seen elsewhere. I observed amongst the shrubs abundance of a fruit, or whatever else you may call it, which grew like a ram's horn, sharp at the point next the twig it was fastened to, and circling round and round, one fold upon another, which gradually increased to the size of my wrist in the middle, and then as gradually decreased, till it terminated in a point again at the contrary extreme; all which spiral, if it were fairly extended in length, might be a yard or an ell long. I surveyed this strange vegetable very attentively: it had a rind, or crust, which I could not break with my hand, but taking my knife, and making an opening therewith in the shell, there



PETER WILKINS IS CARRIED UNDERGROUND BY THE CURRENT TO THE INLAND LAKE.

issued out a sort of milky liquor in great quantity, to at least a pint and a half, which having tasted, I found as sweet as honey, and very pleasant. However, I could not persuade myself any more than just to taste it. I then found on the large trees several kinds of fruits, like pears or quinces, but most of them exceeding hard and rough, and quite disagreeable; so I quitted my hopes of them.

About three miles from my grotto, I met with a large space of ground full of a low plant, growing only with a single woody stalk half a foot high, and from thence issued a round head, about a foot or ten inches in diameter, but quite flat, about three-quarters of an inch thick, and just like a cream-cheese standing upon its edge. These grew so close together that, upon the least wind stirring, their heads rattled against each other very musically; for though the stalks were so strong that they would not easily bend or break, yet the fanning of the wind upon the broad heads twisting the stalks, so as to let the heads strike each other, they made a most agreeable sound.

I stood some time admiring this shrub, and then cutting up one of them, I found it weighed about two pounds. They had a tough green rind or covering, very smooth, and the inside full of a stringy pulp, quite white. In short, I made divers other trials of berries, roots, herbs, and what else I could find, but received little satisfaction from any of them, for fear of bad qualities. I returned back, ruminating on what things I had seen, resolving to take my cart the next walk, and bring it home loaded with different kinds of them, in order to make my trials thereof at leisure; but my cart being too flat, and wanting sides, I considered it would carry very little, and that what it would otherwise bear, on that account must tumble and roll off. So I made a fire, and turned smith; for, with a great deal to do, breaking off the wards of a large key I had, and making it red-hot, I by degrees fashioned it into a kind of spindle, and therewith making holes quite round the bottom of my cart, in them I stuck up sticks, about two feet high, that I had tapered at the end to fit them.

Having thus qualified my cart for a load, I proceeded with it to the wood, and cutting a small quantity of each species of green, berry, fruit, and flower, that I could find, and packing them severally in parcels, I returned at night heavy laden, and held a council with myself what use they could most properly be applied to. I had amongst my goods, as I said, a copper kettle, which held about a gallon. This I set over my fire, and boiled something, by turns, of every sort in it, watching all the while, and with a stick stirring and raising up one thing and then another, to feel when they were boiled tender; but, of upwards of twenty greens which I thus dressed, only one proved eatable, all the rest becoming more stringy, tough, and insipid, for the cooking. The one I have excepted was a round, thick, woolly-leafed plant, which boiled tender, and tasted as well as spinach. I therefore preserved some leaves of this, to know it again by, and, for distinction, called it by the name of that herb.

I then began upon my fruits of the pear and quince kind, at least eight different sorts; but I found I could make nothing of them, for they were most of them as rough and crabbed after stewing as before; so I laid them all aside. Lastly, I boiled my ram's horn and cream-cheese, as I called them, together. Upon tasting the latter of these, it was become so watery and insipid, I laid it aside as useless. I then cut the other, and tasted the juice, which proved so exceeding pleasant, that I took a large gulp or two of it, and tossed it into the kettle again.

Having now gone through the several kinds of my exotics, I had a mind to re-examine them after cooling, but could make nothing of any of my greens but the spinach. I tried several berries and nuts, too; but, save a few sorts of nuts, they were all very tasteless. Then I began to review the fruits, and could find but two sorts that I had the least hopes from. I then laid the best by, and threw the others away. After this process, which took me up near a whole day, and clearing my house of good-for-nothings, I returned to re-examine my cheese, that was grown cold, and was now so dry and hard I could not get my teeth into it; upon which I was going to skim it away out of my grotto, saying, "Go, thou worthless!" (for I always spoke my thoughts aloud), when I checked my hand, and, as I could make no impression with my teeth, had a mind to try what my knife could do. Accordingly, I began at the edge of the quarter, for I had boiled but a quarter of it; but the rind was grown so hard and brittle, that my knife slipping, and raking along the cut-edge of it, scratched off some powder as white as possible. I then scraped it backward and forward some time, till I found it would all scrape away in this powder, except the rind; upon which I laid it aside again for farther experiment.

During this review, my kettle and ram's horn had been boiling, till hearing it blubber very loud, and seeing there was but little liquor in it, I whipped it off the fire, for fear of burning its bottom, but took no farther notice of it till about two hours after, when, returning to the grotto, I went to wash out my kettle, but could scarce get my ram's horn from the bottom; and when I did, it brought up with it a sort of pitchy substance, though not so black, and several gummy threads hanging to it, drawn out to a great length. I wondered at this, and thought the shell of the ram's horn had melted, or some such thing, till, venturing to put a little of the stuff on my tongue, it proved, to my thinking, as good treacle as I had ever tasted.

This new discovery pleased me very much. I scraped all the sweet thing up, and laid it near my grotto, in a large leaf of one of the trees, (about two feet long, and broad in proportion,) to prevent its running about. In getting this curiosity out of my kettle, I found in it a small piece of my cheese, which, I suppose, had been broke off in stirring, and biting it, (for it was soft enough,) I think it was the most luscious and delicate morsel I ever put into my lips. This unexpected good fortune put me on trying the best of my pears again; so, setting on my kettle, with very little water, and putting some of my treacle into it, and two of the best pears quartered, I found, upon a little boiling, they also became an excellent dainty.

Having succeeded so well, I was quite ripe for another journey with my cart, which I accordingly undertook, taking my route over the stone bridge, to see what the other side of the lake produced. In travelling through the trees, I met, amongst other things, with abundance of large gourds, which, climbing the trees, displayed their fruit to the height of twenty or thirty feet above the ground. I cut a great many of these, and some very large ones of different hues and forms; which of themselves making a great load, with some new sorts of berries and greens, were the gathering of that day. But I must tell you, I was almost foiled in getting them home; for, coming to my stone bridge, it rose so steep, that I was at a set upon the first entrance, and terribly afraid I should either break my wheels, or pull off my axle-trees. Hereupon, I was forced to unload, and carry my cargo over in my arms to the other side of the bridge, whither having then, with less fear but much caution, drawn my cart, I loaded again, and got safe home.

I was mightily pleased with the acquisitions of this journey. "For now," thought I, "I shall have several convenient family utensils;" so spent the next day or two in scooping my gourds, and cleaning away the pulp. When I had done this, finding the rinds to be very weak and yielding, I made a good fire, and setting them round it at a moderate distance, to dry, I went about something else without doors. But, alas! my hopes were ill-founded; for, coming home to turn my gourds, and to see how dry they were, I found them all warped, and turned into a variety of uncouth shapes. This put me to a stand; but, however, I recovered some pieces of them for use, as the bottom parts of them, after paring away the sides, would hold something, though they by no means answered my first purpose. "Well," thought I, "what if I have lost my gourds, I have gained experience. I will dry them with the pulp in, and having stiffened their rinds in their proper dimensions, then try to cleanse them." So, next morning, (for I was very eager at it,) I set out with my cart for another load, and having handed them over the bridge, got safe with them to the grotto. These, by proper management, proved exceedingly valuable to me, answering the several uses of plates, bottles, pans, and divers other vessels.

I now got a large quantity of the vegetable ram's horn, and filled a great many of my gourds with the treacle it yielded; I also boiled and dried a large parcel of my cheeses, and hung them up for use, for I had now for some time made all my bread of the latter, scraping and bruising the flour, and mixing it with my treacle and water; and this, indeed, made such a sweet and nourishing bread, that I could even have lived wholly upon it; but I afterwards very much improved it, by putting the milky juice of the ram's horn unboiled to my flour in a small quantity, and then baking it on the hearth covered over with embers. This detracted nothing from the sweetness and mellowness of my bread, but made it much lighter than the treacle alone would have done.

Finding there was no fear of starving, but, so far from it, that from day to day I found out something new to add to my repasts, either in substantials or by way of dessert, I set me down very well contented with my condition. I had nothing to do but to lay up store against sickness and the dark weather, which last I expected would soon be upon me, as the days were now exceeding short. Indeed, though I had now been here six months, I had never seen the sun since I first entered the gulf; and though there was very little rain and but few clouds, yet the brightest daylight never exceeded that of half an hour after sunset in the summer time in England, and little more than just reddened the sky. For the first part of my time here there was but little, if any, difference between day and night; but afterwards, what I might call the night, or lesser degree of light, took up more hours than the greater, and went on gradually increasing as to time, so that I perceived total darkness approached, such as I had on board my ship the year before.

CHAPTER XII.

I HAD now well stored my grotto with all sorts of winter provisions; and feeling the weather grow very cold, I expected, and waited patiently for, the total darkness. I went little abroad, and employed myself within doors, endeavouring to fence against the approaching extremity of the cold. For this purpose, I prepared a quantity of rushes, which being very dry, I spread them smoothly on the floor of my bedchamber a good thickness, and over them I laid my mattrass; then I made a double sheet of the boat's awning or sail, that I had brought to cover my goods; and having skewered together several of the jackets and clothes I found in the chest, of them I made a coverlid; so that I lay very commodiously, and made very long nights of it, now the dark season was set in.

As I lay awake one night, or day, I know not which, I very plainly heard the sound of several human voices, and sometimes very loud; but though I could easily distinguish the articulations, I could not understand the least word that was said, nor did the voices seem at all to me like such as I had anywhere heard before, but much softer and more musical. This startled me, and I rose immediately, slipped on my clothes, and taking my gun in my hand (which I always kept charged, being my constant travelling companion,) and my cutlass, I walked into my ante-chamber, where I heard the voices much plainer, till, after some little time, they by degrees died away. After watching here and hearkening a good while, hearing nothing, I walked back into the grotto and laid me down again on my bed. I was inclined to open the door of my ante-chamber, but I own I was afraid; besides, I considered that if I did, I could discover nothing at any distance, by reason of the thick and gloomy wood that inclosed me.

I had a thousand different surmises about the meaning of this odd incident; and could not conceive how any human creatures should be in my kingdom (as I called it) but myself, and I never yet see them, or any trace of their habitation. At length, hearing no more voices nor seeing any one, I began to be more composed in my mind, and at last grew persuaded it was all a mere delusion, and only a fancy of mine, without any real foundation. I had not enjoyed my tranquillity above a week before my fears were aroused afresh, hearing the same sound of voices twice the same night, but not many minutes at a time. What gave me most pain was, that they were at such a distance, as I judged by the languor of the sound, that if I had opened the door, I could not have seen the utterers through the trees, and I was resolved not to venture out; but then I determined if they should come again anything near my grotto, to open my door, see who they were, and stand upon my defence, whatever came of it. Thus had I formed my scheme, but I heard no more of them for a great while; so that at length, growing ashamed of my fears, I became tranquil again.

The day now returning, and with it my labours, I applied to my usual callings; but my mind ran strangely upon viewing the rock quite round, that is, the whole circuit of my dominions. As soon, therefore, as the days grew towards the longest, I prepared for my progress. Having lived so well at home since my settlement, I did not care to trust only to what I could pick up in the woods for my subsistence during this journey, which would not only take up time in procuring, but perhaps not agree with me; so I resolved to carry a supply with me proportionate to the length of my perambulation. Hereupon, considering that, though my walk round the lake was finished in two days, yet, as I now intended to go round by the rock, the way would be much longer, and perhaps more troublesome than that was,—remembering also my journey with Glanlipze in Africa, and how much I complained of the fruits we carried for our subsistence. I resolved to load the cart with a variety of food, bread and fruits especially, and draw that with me.

Thus provided, I sallied forth with great cheerfulness, and proceeded in the main easily, though in some places I was forced to make way with my hatchet, the ground was so overrun with underwood. I very narrowly viewed the rock as I went, but could see nothing like a passage through it, or indeed any more than one opening or inlet, which I entered for about thirty yards, but it was not above three feet wide, and terminated in the solid rock.

After some days' travel (making all the observations I could on the several plants, shrubs, and trees which I met with, particularly where any of these occurred to me entirely new), finding myself a little faintish, I had a mind for a sup of ram's-horn juice; so I cut me one, but upon opening it found therein only a pithy pulp, and no ways fit to taste. I supposed by this I was too early for the milk, it being three months later in the year when I cut them. Hereon, seeing one upon another shrub, which by its rusty colour I judged might have hung all the winter, I opened that, and found it full of milk; but putting some of it into my mouth, it was as sour as any vinegar I ever tasted in my life; and this gave me a hint to store myself with these gourds, to hang by for vinegar next winter.

By this time I had come almost to my rill, when I entered upon a large plot of ground miserably overrun with weeds matted together very thick; these choked up my wheels in such a manner, that I could neither free them with my hands nor get either backwards or forwards, so that I was obliged to cut my way back again with my hatchet, and take a sweep round in the wood on the outside of these weeds.

In all my life I never saw anything of its size (for it was no thicker than a whip-cord) so strong as this weed; and what raised my wonder was the length of it, for I drew out pieces of it nearly fifty feet long, and even they were broken at the end, so that it might be as long again for aught I know, for it was so matted and twisted together, that it was a great trial of patience to untangle it; but that which was driest, and to me looked the rottenest and weakest, I found to be much the strongest. Upon examination of its parts, I discovered it to be composed of an infinite number of small threads, spirally overlaying and infolding one another.

As I saw but few things that I could not find a use for, so this, I perceived, would serve all the common purposes of packthread—a thing I was often in want of. This inclined me to take a load of it home with me. The difficulty of getting a quantity in the condition I desired it puzzled me a little, but I resolved to make a trial of what I could do; so I went to work, and cutting a fibre close to its root, I extricated that thread from all its windings, just as one does an entangled whip-cord. When I had thus disengaged a sufficient length, I cut that off; and in about three hours' time, but with no little toil, I made up my load of different lengths just to my liking. Having finished this task, I filled the gourd, brought for that purpose, with water; and having first viewed the whole remaining part of the rock, I returned over the stone bridge home again.

This journey, though it took me up several days, and was attended with some fatigue, had yet given me great satisfaction; for now I was persuaded I could not have one rival or enemy to fear in my whole dominions. And from the impossibility, as I supposed, of there being any, or of the ingress of any, unless by the same passage I entered at, and by which I was well assured they could never return, I grew contented, and blamed myself for the folly of my imaginary voices, as I called them then, and took it for a distemper of the fancy only.

The next day I looked over my load of mat-weed, having given it that name, and separated the different lengths from each other. I then found I had several pieces between forty and fifty feet long, of which I resolved to get a good number more, to make me a drag-net, that I might try for some fish in the lake. A day or two after, therefore, I brought home another load of it. Then I picked out a smooth level spot upon the green sward, and having prepared a great number of short wooden pegs, I strained a line of the mat-weed about ten feet long, tying it at each end to a peg, and stuck a row of pegs along by that line about two inches asunder; I next strained another line of the same length parallel to that, at the distance of forty feet from it, and struck pegs thereby, corresponding to the former row; and from each peg on one side to the opposite peg on the other I tied a like length of my mat-line quite through the whole number of pegs; I afterwards drove pegs in like manner along the whole length of the two outermost longer lines, and tied shorter lines to them, the corners of each of which squares I tied very tight with smaller pieces of the line, till I had formed a complete net of forty feet long and ten wide.

When I had finished my net, I wrapped several stones in rags, and fastened them to the bottom to sink it, and some of the smallest unscooped dry gourds to the top, to keep that part buoyant. I now longed to begin my new trade, and carried the net to my boat with that intention; but after two or three hauls, I found it would not answer for want of length (though by chance I caught a blackish fish without scales, a little bigger than whiting, but much longer, which stuck by the gills): so I left the net in the boat, resolving to make an addition to it with all speed; and returning to my grotto, I supped on the fish I had taken, and considered how to pursue my enterprize with better effect.

I provided me with another longer parcel of line, and having brought two more lengths to perfection, I joined all together, and fixing one end on shore, by a pole I had cut for that purpose, I launched my boat with the other end in it, taking a sweep the length of my net round to my stick again, and getting on shore, hauled up my net by both ends together. I found now I had mended my instrument, and taken a proper way of applying it; for by this means, in five hauls, I caught about sixteen fish of three or four different sorts, and one shell-fish, almost like a lobster, but without great claws, and with a very small short tail. These fish made me rich in provisions. Some of them I ate fresh, and the remainder I salted down. But my lobster was the most delicious, and made me almost three meals.

Thus finding there were fish to be had, though my present tackle seemed suitable enough to my family, yet could I not rest till I had improved my fishery by enlarging my net; so I set to work, and shortly doubled the dimensions of it. I had then a mind to try it at the mouth of my rill; so taking it with me the next time I crossed the lake for water, and fastening it to my pole, close by the right side of the rill, I swept a long compass round to the left, and closing the ends, attempted to draw up in the hollow cut of the rill. But by the time I had gathered up two-thirds of the net, I felt a resistance that quite amazed me; in short, I was not able to stand against the force I felt. Whereupon, sitting down in the rill, and clapping my feet to the two sides of it, I exerted all my strength, till finally I became conqueror, and brought up so shocking a monster, that I was just rising to run for my life on the sight of it. But recollecting that the creature was hampered, and could not make so much resistance on the land as in the water, I ventured to drag the net up as far from the rill as my strength and breath would permit me, and then running to the boat for my gun, I returned to the net to examine my prize. Indeed, I had not instantly resolution enough to survey it; and when at length I assumed courage enough to do so, I could not perfectly distinguish the parts, they were so discomposed; but taking hold of one end of the net, I endeavoured to disentangle the thing, then drawing the net away, a most surprising sight presented itself: the creature reared upright, about three feet high, covered with long black shaggy hair, like a bear, which hung down from his head and neck, quite along his back and sides. He had two fins, very broad and large, which, as he stood erect, looked like arms, and these he waved and whirled about with incredible velocity; and I found it was the motion of these fins that kept him upright, for I perceived when they ceased their motion, he fell flat on his belly. He had two very large feet, which he stood upon, but could not run, and but barely walk on them, which made me in the less haste to dispatch him; and after he had stood upon his feet about four minutes, clapping his fins to his sides, he fell upon his belly.

When I found he could not attack me, I was moving closer to him; but upon sight of my stirring, up he rose again, and whirled his fins about as before, so long as he stood; and now I viewed him round, and found he had no tail at all, and that his hinder fins, or feet, very much resembled a large frog's, but were at least ten inches broad, and eighteen long from heel to toe, and his legs were so short, that when he stood upright, his breech bore upon the ground. His eyes were small and blue, with a large black sight in the middle, and rather of an oval than round make. He had a long snout, like a boar, and vast teeth. Thus having surveyed him near half an hour living, I made him rise up once more, and shot him in the breast. He fell, and giving a loud howl or groan, expired.

The great creature was so heavy, I was afraid I must have cut him in pieces to get him to the boat; but, with much ado, I tumbled him on board. I then filled my water-cask, and rowed homewards. Being got to land, I was obliged to bring down my cart, to carry my great beast-fish, as I termed him, up to the grotto. When I had got him thither, I had a notion of first tasting, and then, if I liked his flesh, of salting him down, and drying him; so, having flayed him, and taken out the entrails, I broiled a piece of him; but the fat made such a blaze, and the flesh proved so dry and rank, that I could no ways endure it.

I then began to be sorry I had taken so much pains for no profit, and had endangered my net into the bargain (for that had got a crack or two in the scuffle), and was thinking to throw away my large but worthless acquisition. However, as I was now prone to weighing all things, before I threw it away, I resolved to consider a little; whereupon I changed my mind. Says I, "Here is a good warm skin, which, when dry, will make me a rare cushion. Again, I have for a long while had no light beside that of the day; but now, as this beast's fat makes such a blaze in the fire, why may not I boil a good tallow or oil out of it? and, if I can, I have not made so bad use of my time as I thought."

In short, I went immediately to work upon this subject, and boiled as much of the flesh as the kettle would hold, and letting it stand to cool, I found it turned out a very good oil for burning. This success quickened my industry; and I repeated the operation till I got about ten quarts of this stuff, which very well rewarded my labour. After I had extracted as much oil as I could from the beast-fish, the creature having strongly impressed my imagination, I conceived a new fancy in relation to it, and that was, having heard him make a deep howling groan at his death, I endeavoured to persuade myself, and at last verily believed, that the voices I had so often heard in the dark weather, proceeded from numbers of these creatures diverting themselves in the lake, or sporting together on the shore; and this thought contributed to ease my apprehensions.

CHAPTER XIII.

I PASSED the summer (though I had never yet seen the sun's body) very much to my satisfaction, partly in the work I have been describing (for I had taken two more of the beast-fish, and had a great quantity of oil from them); partly, in building me a chimney in my ante-chamber, of mud and earth burnt on my own hearth into a sort of brick; in making a window at one end of the above-said chamber, to let in what little light would come through the trees, when I did not choose to open my door; in moulding an earthen lamp for my oil; and, finally, in providing and laying in stores, fresh and salt (for I had now cured and dried many more fish), against winter. These were my summer enployments at home, mixed with many agreeable excursions. But now the winter coming on, and the days growing very short, or indeed, there being no day, properly speaking, but a kind of twilight, I kept mostly in my habitation, though not so much as I had done the winter before, when I had no light within doors, and slept, or at least lay still, great part of my time; for now my lamp was never out. I also turned two of my beast-fish skins into a rug to cover my bed, and the third into a cushion, which I always sat upon, and a very soft and warm cushion it made.

An indifferent person would now be apt to ask, "What would this man desire more than he had?" To this I answer, that I was contented while my condition was such as I have been describing; but a little while after the darkness or twilight came on, I frequently heard the voices again, sometimes a few only at a time, as it seemed, and then again in great numbers. I was now fully convinced, by a more deliberate attention to them, that they could not be uttered by the beast-fish, as I had before conjectured, but only by beings capable of articulate speech. At length, one night or day, I cannot say which, hearing the voices very distinctly, I took courage, and arming myself with gun, pistols, and cutlass, I went out of my grotto, and crept down the wood. I then heard them plainer than before, and was able to judge from what point of the compass they proceeded. Hereupon I went forward towards the sound, till I came to the verge of the wood, where I could see the lake very well by the dazzle of the water. Thereon, as I thought, I beheld a fleet of boats, covering a large compass, and not far from the bridge. I was shocked hereat beyond expression. I could not conceive where they came from, but supposed there must be some other passage to the lake than I had found in my voyage through the cavern, and that for certain they came that way, and from some place of which, as yet, I had no manner of knowledge.

Whilst I was entertaining myself with this speculation, I heard the people in the boats laughing and talking very merrily, though I was too distant to distinguish the words. I discerned, soon after, all the boats (as I still supposed them) draw up, and push for the bridge. Presently after, though I was sure no boat entered the arch, I saw a multitude of people on the opposite shore, all marching towards the bridge; and what was the strangest of all, there was not the least sign of a boat now left upon the whole lake. I then was in a greater consternation than before, but was still much more so, when I saw the whole posse of people that were marching towards the bridge, coming over it to my side of the lake. At this my heart failed, and I was just going to run to my grotto for shelter; but, taking one look more, I plainly discovered that the people, leaping one after another from the top of the bridge, as if into the water, and then rising again, flew in a long train over the lake, quite out of my sight, laughing, hallooing, and sporting together; so that, looking back again to the bridge, and on the lake, I could neither see person, nor boat, nor anything else, nor hear the least noise or stir afterwards.

I returned to my grotto brim-full of this amazing adventure, bemoaning my misfortune in being at a place where I was like to remain ignorant of what was doing about me. In the height of my distress I had recourse to prayer, begging, that if it pleased not the Almighty Power to remove the object of my fears, at least to resolve my doubts about them, and to render them rather helpful than hurtful to me. I hereupon, as I always did on such occasions, found myself much more placid and easy, and began to hope the best, till I had almost persuaded myself that I was out of danger; and then, laying myself down, I rested very sweetly. Awaking suddenly, I again heard the voices. "Hark!" says I, "here they come again. Well, I am now resolved to face them, come life, come death!" The voices increased, and then by degrees diminished as usual; but I had scarce got my gun in my hand, when I felt such a thump upon the roof of my ante-chamber, as shook the whole fabric, and set me all over in a tremor. I then heard a sort of shriek, and a rustle near the door of my apartment, all which together seemed very terrible. But I, having before determined to see what and who it was, resolutely opened my door and leaped out. I saw nobody; all was quite silent, and nothing that I could perceive, but my own fears, a-moving. I went then softly to the corner of the building, and there looking down by the glimmer of my lamp, which stood in the window, I saw something in human shape lying at my feet. I gave word, "Who's there?" Still no one answered. My heart was ready to force a way through my side. At length recovering, I stepped in, fetched my lamp, and returning, beheld the face of a beautiful woman. She had a sort of brown chaplet like lace round her head, under and about which her hair was tucked up and twined; and she seemed to me to be clothed in a thin hair-coloured silk garment, which, upon trying to raise her, I found to be quite warm, and therefore hoped there was life in the body it contained. I took her in my arms, and conveyed her into my grotto. Presently, I thought I saw her eyes stir a little.

I then set the lamp farther off, for fear of offending them if she should look up; and warming the last glass I had reserved of my Madeira, I carried it to her, but she never stirred. I now supposed the fall had absolutely killed her; when, laying my hand on her breast, I perceived some motion. This gave me infinite pleasure; so, not despairing, I dipped my finger into the wine, and moistened her lips with it two or three times, and I imagined they opened a little. Upon this, taking a tea-spoon, I gently poured a few drops of the wine into her mouth. Finding she swallowed it, I poured in another spoonful, and another, till I brought her to herself so well as to be able to sit up. I then spoke to her, and asked divers questions; in return of which, she uttered a language I had no idea of, though in the most musical tone, and with the sweetest accent I ever heard. It grieved me I could not understand her. However, thinking she might like to be on her feet, I went to lift her off the bed, when she felt to my touch in the oddest manner imaginable; for while, in one respect, it was as though she had been cased up in whalebone, it was at the same time as soft and warm as if she had been naked. I then took her in my arms, and carried her into my ante-chamber again, where I would fain have entered into conversation, but found she and I could make nothing of one another's speech.

You may imagine we stared heartily at each other, and I doubted not but she wondered as much as I by what means we came so near each other. I offered her everything in my grotto which I thought might please her, some of which she gratefully received. But she avoided my lamp, and always placed her back towards it. I observing that, and ascribing it to her modesty in my company, let her have her will, and took care to set it in such a position as seemed agreeable to her. After we had sat a good while, chattering to one another, she got up, and took a turn or two about the room. When I saw her in that attitude, her grace and motion perfectly charmed me, and her shape was incomparable; but the strangeness of her dress puzzled me the most, to conceive either what it was, or how it was put on. Well, we supped together, and I set the best of everything I had before her, nor could either of us forbear speaking in our own tongue, though we were sensible neither of us understood the other. After supper, I gave her some of my cordials, for which she showed great tokens of thankfulness, and often, in her way, by signs and gestures, expressed her gratitude for my kindness.

I treated her for some time with all the respect imaginable, and never suffered her to do the least part of my work. It was very inconvenient to both of us only to know each other's meaning by signs; but I could not be otherwise than pleased to see, that she endeavoured all in her power to learn to talk like me. Indeed, I was not behindhand with her in that respect, striving all I could to imitate her. What I all the while wondered at was, she never showed the least disquiet at her confinement; for I kept my door shut at first, through fear of losing her, thinking she would have taken an opportunity to run away; for little did I then think she could fly.

CHAPTER XIV.

After my visitor had been with me a fortnight, finding my water run low, I was greatly troubled at the thought of quitting her any time to go for more; and having hinted it to her with seeming uneasiness, she could not for a while fathom my meaning; but when she saw me much confused, she came at length, by the many signs I made, to imagine it was my concern for her which made me so; whereupon she expressively enough signified I might be easy, for she did not fear anything happening to her in my absence. On this, as well as I could declare my meaning, I entreated her not to go away before my return. As soon as she understood what I signified to her by actions, she sat down with her arms across, leaning her head against the wall to assure me she would not stir. However, as I had before nailed a cord to the outside of the door, I tied that to the tree for fear of the worst; but I believe she had not the least design of removing. I took my boat, net, and water-cask as usual, desirous of bringing her home a fresh fish dinner, and succeeded so well as to catch enough for several good meals and to spare. What remained I salted; and found she liked that better than the fresh after a few days' salting, though she did not so well approve of that I had formerly pickled and dried.

Thus we spent the remainder of the winter together, till the days began to be light enough for me to walk abroad a little in the middle of them; for I was now under no apprehensions of her leaving me, as she had never once attempted it. When the weather cleared up a little, I took courage to invite her to walk with me to the lake; but she sweetly excused herself from it, whilst there was such a frightful glare of light, as she said (for we now understood each other's language); but, looking out at the door, told me, if I would not go out of the wood, she would accompany me: so we agreed to take a turn only there. I first went myself over the stile of the door, and thinking it rather too high for her, I took her in my arms and lifted her over. But even when I had her in this manner, I knew not what to make of her clothing, it sat so true and close; but seeing her by a steadier and truer light in the grove than my lamp had afforded, I begged she would let me know of what silk or other composition her garment was made. She smiled, and asked me if mine was not the same under my jacket. "No, lady," says I, "I have nothing but my skin under my clothes." "Why, what do you mean?" replied she, somewhat tartly; "but, indeed, I was afraid something was the matter, by that nasty covering you wear, that you might not be seen. Are not you a *Glumm?*" "Yes," says I, "fair creature." (Here, though you may conceive she spoke part English, part her own tongue, and I the same, as we best understood each other, yet I shall give you our discourse in plain English.) "Then," says she, "I am afraid you must have been a very bad man, and have been *crashee*, which I should be very sorry to hear." I told her we were none of us so good as we might be, but I hoped my faults had not, at most, exceeded other men's; but I had suffered abundance of hardships in my time; and that at last Providence having settled me in this spot, from whence I had no prospect of ever departing, it was none of the least of His mercies to bring to my knowledge and company the most exquisite piece of all His works in her, which I should acknowledge as long as I lived. She was surprised at this discourse, and asked me why I should tell her I had no prospect of departing from hence; "Have not you," says she, "the same prospect that I or any other person has of departing? Sir," added she, "I fear you are slit, or you would not wear this nasty cumbersome coat," taking hold of my jacket sleeve, "if you were not afraid of showing the signs of a bad life upon your natural clothing."

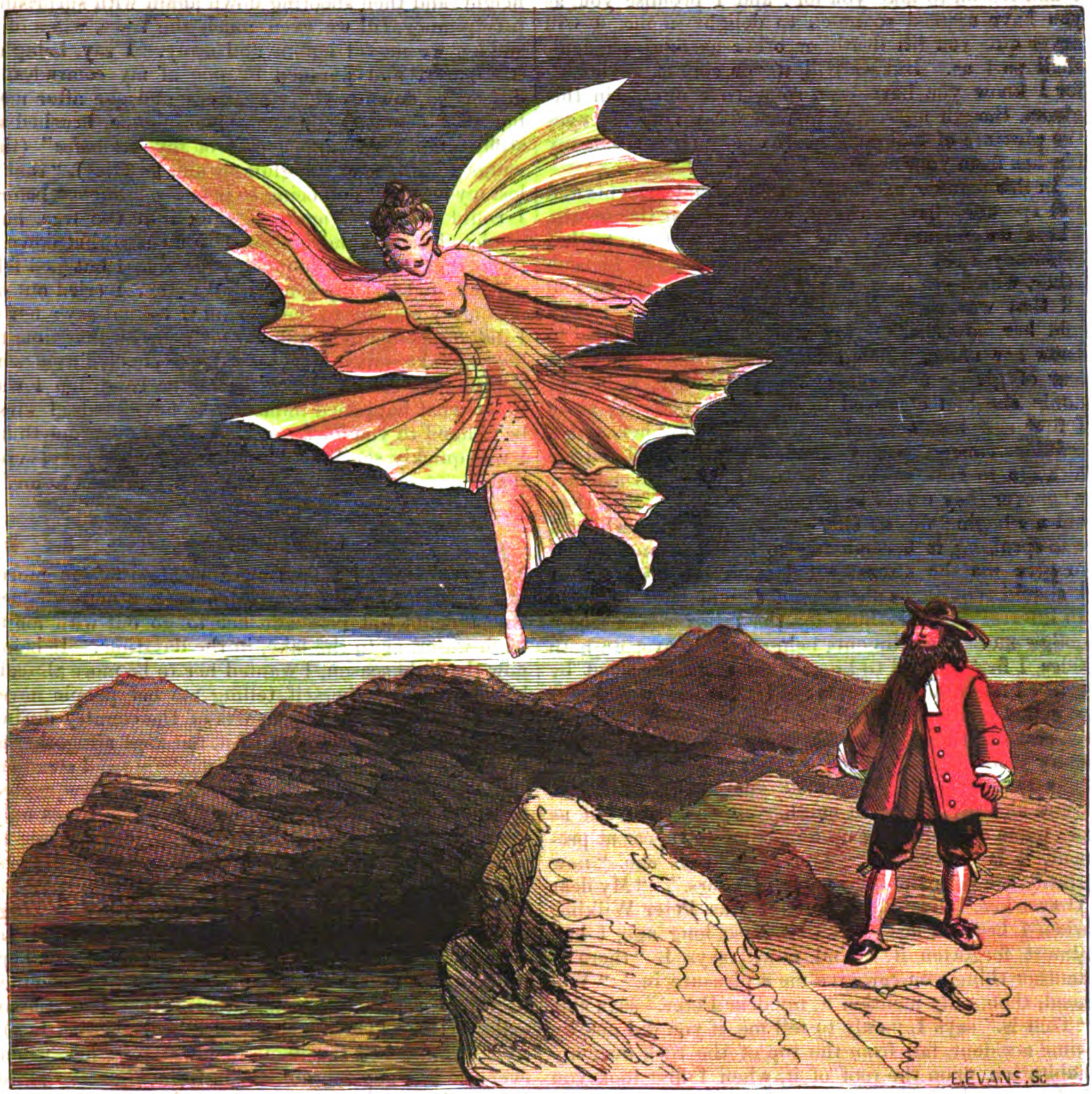
I could not imagine what way there was to get out of my dominions, but thought there must be some or other, or she would not be so peremptory. "But, madam," says I, "pray pardon me, for you are really mistaken; I have examined every nook and corner of this new world in which we now are, and can find no possible outlet—nay, even by the same way I came in I am sure it is impossible to get out again." "Why," says she, "what outlets have you searched for, or what way can you expect out but the way you came in? And why is that impossible to return by again? If you are not slit, is not the air open to you? Will not the sky admit you to patrole in it as well as other people? I tell you, sir, I fear you have been slit for your crimes; and though you have been so good to me, that I can't help loving you heartily for it, yet, if I thought you had been slit, I would not, nay, could not, stay a moment longer with you, no, though it should break my heart to leave you."

I found myself now in a strange quandary, longing to know what she meant by being slit, and had a hundred strange notions in my head whether I was slit or not; for though I knew what the word naturally signified well enough, yet in what manner, or by what figure of speech she applied it to me, I had no idea of. But seeing her look a little angrily upon me, "Pray, madam," says I, "don't be offended if I take the liberty to ask you what you mean by the word *crashee*, so often repeated by you, for I am an utter stranger to what you mean by it." "Sir," says she, "pray answer me first, how came you here?" "Madam," replied I, "if you will please take a walk to the verge of the wood, I will show you the very passage." "Sir," says she, "I perfectly know the range of the rocks all round, and by the least description, without going to see them, can tell from which you descended." "In truth," said I, "most charming lady, I descended from no rock at all; nor would I for a thousand worlds attempt what could not be accomplished but by my destruction." "Sir," says she, in some anger, "it is false, and you impose upon me." "I declare to you," says I, "madam, what I tell you is strictly true. I never was near the summit of any of the surrounding rocks, or anything like it; but as you are not far from the verge of the wood, be so good as to step a little farther, and I will show you my entrance in hither." "Well," says she, "now this odious dazzle of light is lessened, I don't care if I do go with you."

When we came far enough to see the bridge, "There, madam," says I, "there is my entrance, where the sea pours into this lake from yonder cavern." "It is not possible," says she; "this is another untruth. And as I see you would deceive me, and are not to be believed, farewell—I must be gone. But, hold," says she, "let me ask you one thing more: that is, by what means did you come through that cavern? You could not have used to have come over the rock!" "Bless me, madam!" says I, "do you think I and my boat could fly! No, madam; I sailed from the main ocean, in my boat, through that cavern, into this very lake here." "What do you mean by your boat?" says she; "you seem to make two things of your boat, you say you sailed with, and yourself." "I do so," replied I; "for, madam, I take myself to be good flesh and blood, but my boat is made of wood and other materials." "Is it so?" says she; "and pray where is this boat that is made of wood and other materials? under your jacket?" "Lord, madam!" says I, "you put me in fear that you were angry; but now I hope you only joke with me. What, put a boat under my jacket! No, madam; my boat is in the lake." "What, more untruths!" says she. "No, madam," I replied; "if you would be satisfied of what I say (every word of which is as true as that my boat now is in the lake), pray walk with me thither, and make your own eyes judges what sincerity I speak with." To this she agreed, it growing dusk; but assured me, if I did not give her good satisfaction, I should see her no more. We arrived at the lake; and going to my wet-dock, "Now, madam," says I, "pray satisfy yourself whether I spake true or no." She looked at my boat, but could not yet frame a proper notion of it. Says I, "Madam, in this very boat I sailed from the main ocean through that cavern into this lake; and shall at last think myself the happiest of all men if you continue with me, love me, and credit me; and I promise you I'll never deceive you, but think my life happily spent in your service." I found she was hardly content yet to believe what I told her of my boat to be true, till I stepped into it, and pushing it from the shore, took my oars in my hand, and sailed along the lake by her as she walked on the shore. At last, she seemed so well reconciled to me and my boat, that she desired I would take her in. I immediately did so, and we sailed a good way; and as we returned to my dock, I described to her how I procured the water we drank, and brought it to shore in that vessel.

"Well," says she, "I have sailed, as you call it, many a mile in my lifetime, but never in such a thing as this. I own it will serve very well where one has a great many things to carry from place to place; but to be labouring thus at an oar when one intends pleasure in sailing, is, in my mind, a most ridiculous piece of slavery." "Why, pray, madam, how would you have me to sail? for getting into the boat only will not carry us this way or that, without using some force." "But," says she, "pray where did you get this boat, as you call it?" "Oh, madam?" says I, "that is too long and fatal a story to begin upon now: this boat was made many thousand miles from hence, among a people coal-black, a quite different sort from us; and when I first had it, I little thought of seeing this country: but I will make a faithful relation of all to you when we come home." Indeed, I began to wish heartily we were there, for it grew into the night; and having strolled so far without my gun, I was afraid of what I had before seen and heard, and hinted our return; but I found my motion was disagreeable to her, and so I dropped it.

I now perceived, and wondered at it, that the later it grew, the more agreeable it seemed to her; and as I had now brought her into a good humour again by seeing and sailing in my boat, I was not willing to prevent its increase. I told her, if she pleased, we would land, and when I had docked my boat I would accompany her where and as long as she liked. As we talked and walked by the lake, she made a little run before me, and sprang into it. Perceiving this, I cried out, whereupon she merrily called on me to follow. The light was then so dim as prevented my having more than a confused sight of her when she jumped in; and looking earnestly after her, I could discern nothing more than a small boat on the water, which skimmed along at so great a rate that I almost lost sight of it presently; but, running along the shore for fear of losing her, I met her gravely walking to meet me, and then had entirely lost sight of the boat



PETER WILKINS' DELIGHT AT THE RETURN OF THE FLYING WOMAN.

upon the lake. "This," says she, accosting me with a smile, "is my way of sailing, which I perceive, by the fright you were in, you are altogether unacquainted with; and as you tell me you came from so many thousand miles off, it is possible you may be made differently from me, and may no more be able to fly than to sail as I do." "No, charming creature," says I, "that I cannot, I'll assure you." She then, stepping to the edge of the lake for the advantage of a descent before her, sprang up into the air, and away she went, farther than my eyes could follow her. I was quite astonished. "So," says I, "then all is over! all a delusion which I have so long been in—a mere phantom!" I had but very little time for reflection, however; for in about ten minutes after she had left me in this amazement, she alighted just by me.

Her return filled me with a transport not to be concealed, and which, as she afterwards told me, was very agreeable to her. I clasped her in my arms. "Are you returned again, kind angel," said I, "to bless a wretch who can only be happy in adoring you! Can it be, that you, who have so many advantages over me, should quit all the pleasures that nature has formed you for, and all your friends and relations, to take an asylum in my arms! But I here make you a tender of all I am able to bestow—my love and constancy." "Come, come," says she, "no more raptures; I find you are a worthier man than I thought I had reason to take you for; and I promise you, as you have seemed so much to delight in me, I will never quit you till death, or other as fatal accident, shall part us. But we will, if you choose, go home; for I know you have been some time uneasy in this gloom, though agreeable to me; for, giving my eyes the pleasure of looking eagerly on you, it conceals my blushes from your sight."

In this manner, exchanging mutual endearments and soft speeches, hand in hand, we arrived at the grotto, where we solemnized our nuptials, without farther ceremony than mutual solemn engagements to each other, which are in truth the essence of marriage, and all that was there and then in our power. I then told her, now she was my wife, I thought proper to know her name, which I had never before asked, for fear of giving uneasiness; for, as I added, I did not doubt she had observed in my behaviour, ever since I first saw her, a peculiar tenderness for her, and a sedulous concern not to offend, which had obliged me hitherto to stifle several questions I had to ask her whenever they would be agreeable to her. She then bid me begin; for, as she was now my wife, whilst I was speaking, it became her to be all attention, and to give me the utmost satisfaction she could in all I should require, as she herself should have so great an interest in everything for the future which would oblige me. Compliments being a little over on both sides, I first desired to know what name she went by before I found her; "For," says I, "having only hitherto called you madam, and my lady, besides the further expression of my love to you in the word dear, I would know your original name, so that I might join it with that tender epithet." "That you shall," says she, "and also my family, at another opportunity; but as my name will not take up long time to repeat at present, it is Youwarkee. And pray," says she, "now gratify me with the knowledge of yours." "My dear Youwarkee," says I, "my name was Peter Wilkins, when I heard it last; but that is so long ago, I had almost forgotten it. And now," says I, "there is another thing you can give me a pleasure in." "You need, then, only mention it, my dear Peter," says she. "That is," says I, "only to tell me, if you did not, by some accident, fall from the top of the rock over my habitation, upon the roof of it, when I first took you in here; and whether you are of the country upon the rocks?" She, softly smiling, answered, "My dear Peter, you run your questions too thick. As to my country, which is not on the rocks, as you suppose, but at a vast distance from hence, I shall leave that, till I may hereafter, at more leisurse, speak of my family; but as to how I came into this grotto, I knew not, at first, but soon perceived your humanity had brought me in, to take care of me, after a terrible fall I had; not from the rock, for then I must not now have been living to enjoy you, but from a far less considerable height in the air. I will tell you how it happened. A parcel of us young people were upon a merry *swangean* (flight) round this *arkoe* (water surrounded with wood), which we usually divert ourselves with at set times of the year, chasing and pursuing one another, sometimes soaring to an extravagant height, and then shooting down again with surprising precipitancy, till we even touch the trees, when of a sudden we mount again, and away. I say, being of this party, and pursued by one of my comrades, I descended down to the very trees, and she after me; but as I mounted, she over-shooting me, brushed so stiffly against the upper part of my *graundee*" (the wings and dress of the glumms and gawries), "that I lost my bearing; and being so near the branches, before I could recover it again, I sunk into the tree, and rendered my graundee useless to me; so that down I came, and that with so much force, that I but just felt my fall, and lost my senses. Whether I cried out or no, on my coming to the ground, I cannot say; but if I did, my companion was too far gone by that time to hear or take notice of me, as she, probably, in so swift a flight, saw not my fall. As to the condition I was in, or what happened immediately afterwards, I must be obliged to you for a relation of that; but one thing I was quickly sensible of, and never can forget—viz., that I owe my life to your care and kindness to me."

CHAPTER XV.

YOUWARKEE and I talked together almost from morning to night, in order to learn each other's dialect. But I could not persuade her to go out with me to fetch water, or to the lake, in the day-time. It being now the light season, I wanted her to be more abroad; but she excused herself, telling me her people never came into those luminous parts of the country during the false glare, as they called it, but kept altogether at home, where the light was more moderate and steadier; and that the place where I resided was not frequented by them for half the year, and at other times only upon parties of pleasure, it not being worth while to settle habitations where they could not abide always. She said, Normnbdsgrsutt was the finest region in the world, where her king's court was, and a vast kingdom. I asked her twice or thrice more to name the country to me, but not all the art we could use, hers in dictating, and mine in endeavouring to pronounce it, would render me conqueror of that poor monosyllable (for as such it sounded from her sweet lips); so I relinquished the name to her, telling her, whenever she had any more occasion to mention the place, I desired it might be under the style of Doorpt Swangeanti (land of flight), which she promised; but wondered, as she could speak the other so glibly, I could not do so too.

I told her, that the light of my native country was far stronger than any I had seen since my arrival at Grandevolet (for that, I found by her, was the name my dominions went by); and that we had a sun, or ball of fire, which rolled over our heads every day with such a light and such a heat, that it would sometimes almost scorch one, it was so hot, and was of such brightness, that the eye could not look at it without danger of blindness. She was heartily glad, she said, she was not born in so wretched a land; and she did not believe there was any other so good as her own.

She had often lamented to me the difference of our eyesight, and the trouble it was to her that she could not at all times go about with me. At last I told her, that though I believed it would be impossible to reduce my sight to the standard of hers, yet I was persuaded I could bring hers to bear the strongest light I had ever seen in this country. She was mightily pleased with the thought of that, and said she wished I might, for she was sensible of no grief like being obliged to stay at home when I went abroad on my business. I therefore hit on the following invention.

I rummaged over all my old things, and by good luck found an old crape hatband. This I tried myself, single, before my own eyes, in the strongest light we had; but believing I had not yet obscured it enough, I doubled it, and then thought it might do; but for fear it should not, I trebled it, and then it seemed too dark for eyes like mine to discover objects through it, and so I judged it would suit hers. I now only wanted a proper method for fixing it on her, and this I thought would be easily effected, but had much more difficulty in it than I imagined. At first I purposed to tie the crape over her eyes, but trying it myself, I found it very rough and fretting; I then designed fixing it to an old crown of a hat that held my fish-hooks and lines, and so let it hang down before her face, but that also had its inconveniences, as it would flap her eyes in windy weather, and would be not only useless, but very troublesome in flight. At last I thought of a method that answered exceedingly well, the hint of which I took from somewhat I had seen with my master when I was at school, which he called goggles, and which he used to tie round his head to screen his eyes in riding. The thing I made upon that plan was composed of old hat, pieces of ram's horn, and the above-mentioned crape.

When I had finished the whole apparatus, I tried it first upon myself, and finding great reason to believe it would perfectly answer the intention, I ran directly to Youwarkee. "Come," says I, "my dear, will you go with me to the water rill, for I must fetch some this morning?" She shook her head, and with tears in her eyes, wished she could. "But," says she, "let me see how light it is abroad." "No," says I, "my love, you must not look out till you go." "Indeed," says she, "if it did not affect my eyes and head, you should not ask me twice." "Well," says I, "my Youwarkee, I am now come to take you with me; and that you may not suffer by it, turn about, and let me apply the remedy I told you of for your sight." She wanted much to see first what it was, but I begged her to forbear till she tried whether it would be useful or not. She told me she would absolutely submit to my direction, so I adjusted the thing to her head. "Now," says I, "you have it on, let us go out and try it, and let me know the moment you find the light offensive, and take particular notice how you are affected." Hereupon, away we marched, and I heard no complaint in all our walk to the lake.

"Now, my dear Youwarkee," says I, when we got there, "what do you think of my contrivance? Can you see at all?" "Yes, very well," says she; "but, my dear Peter, you have taken the advantage of the twilight, I know, to deceive me; and I had rather have stayed at home than have subjected you to return in the night for the sake of my company." I then assured her it was mid-day, and no later, and, to satisfy her, I untied the string behind, and just let her be convinced it was so. When I had fixed the shade on her head again, she put up her hands and felt the several materials of which it consisted. "So, my dear Peter," says she, "you have now encumbered yourself with a wife, indeed; for since I can come abroad in a glaring light with so much ease, you will never henceforward be without my company."

CHAPTER XVI.

Having laid in our winter stores, my wife and I had nothing to do but enjoy ourselves over a good fire, prattling, and making as good cheer as we could; and truly that was none of the worst, for we had as fine bread as need to be eaten; we had pears preserved, all sorts of dried fish, and once a fortnight, for two or three days together, had fresh fish; we had vinegar, and a biting herb I had found for pepper, and several sorts of nuts; so there was no want.

It was at this time that, having taken several fish, and amongst them some I had not before seen, I asked her, as we were preparing and salting some of them, how they managed fish in her country, and what variety they had of them there; she told me, she neither ever saw or heard of a fish in her life till she came to me. "How!" says I, "no fish amongst you! why, you want one of the greatest dainties that can be set upon a table. Do you wholly eat flesh," says I, "at Doorpt Swangeanti?" "Flesh!" says she, laughingly, "of what?" "Nay," says I, "you know best what the beasts of your own country are. We have in England, where I was born and bred, oxen, very large hogs, sheep, lambs, and calves; these make our ordinary dishes. Then we have deer, hares, rabbits, and these are reckoned dainties; besides numberless kinds of poultry, and fish without stint." "I never heard of any of these things in my life," says Youwarkee, "nor did I ever eat anything but fruits and herbs, and what is made from them, at Normnbdsgrsutt." "You will speak that crabbed word again," says I. "I beg your pardon, my dear," says she; "at Doorpt Swangeanti, I say, nor I, nor any one else, to my knowledge, ever ate any such thing: but seeing you eat fish, as you call them, I made no scruple of doing so too, and like them very well, especially the salted ones, for I never tasted what you call salt neither till I came here." "I cannot think," says I, "what sort of a country yours is, or how you all live there." "Oh!" says she, "there is no want; I wish you and I were there."

Soon after winter had set in, as we were in bed one night, I heard the voices again; and though my wife had told me of her country folks' swangeans in that place, I, being frighted a little, waked her; and she hearing them too, cried out, "There they are! It is ten to one but my sister or some of our family are there. Hark! I believe I hear her voice." I myself hearkened very attentively; and by this time understanding a great deal of their language, I not only could distinguish different speakers, but knew the meaning of several of the words they pronounced.

I would have had Youwarkee have gotten up and called to them. "Not for the world," says she; "have you a mind to part with me? Though I have no intent to leave you, as I am with child, if they should try to force me away without my consent, I may receive some injury, to the danger of my own life, or at least of the child's."

The next summer brought me a *yacom* (a male child) as white as alabaster. I found, to my great satisfaction, that he was provided with the graundee, like his mother. When Youwarkee had gathered strength again, she proved an excellent nurse to my Pedro (for that was the name I gave him), so that he soon grew a charming child, able to go in his twelfth month, and spoke in his twentieth. This and two other lovely boys I had by her within three years, every one of which she brought up with the breast, and they thrived delicately.

I do not mention the little intervening occurrences which happened during this period; they consisting chiefly of the old rota of fishing, watering, providing in the summer for the winter, and in managing my salt-work, which altogether kept me at full employment, comfortably to maintain an increasing family.

In this time I had found out several new sorts of eatables. I had observed, as I said before, abundance of birds about the wood and lake in the summer months. These, by firing at them two or three times on my first coming, I had almost caused to desert my dominions. But as I had for the last two or three years given no disturbance at all to them, they were now in as great plenty as ever, and I made great profit of them by the peace they enjoyed; and yet my table never wanted a supply, fresh in the summer, or salted and pickled in winter.

I took notice it was about October these birds used to come, and most of the month of November they were busy in laying their eggs, which I used at that time to find in great plenty along the banks of the lake in the reeds, and made great collections of them. These furnished our table various ways; for, with my cream-cheese flour, and a little mixture of ram's-horn juice, I had taught my wife to make excellent puddings of them; abundance of them also we eat boiled or fried alone, and often as sauce to our fish. As for the birds themselves, having long omitted to fire at them, I had an effectual means of taking them otherwise by nets, which I set between the trees, and also very large pitfal nets, with which I used to catch all sorts, even from the size of a thrush to that of a turkey.

You may perhaps wonder how I could keep an account of my time so precisely as to talk of the particular months. I will tell you. At my coming from America, I was then exact, for we set sail the fourteenth of November, and struck the first or second day of February. So far I kept perfect reckoning. But after that I was not so exact, though I kept it as well as my perplexity would admit, even then, till the days shortening upon me, prevented it.

Hereupon, I set about making a year for myself. I found the duration of the comparative darkness in the course of the twenty-four hours, or day, gradually increased for six months, after which it decreased reciprocally for an equal time, and the lighter part of the day took its turn, as in our parts of the world, only inversely; so that as the light's decrease became sensible about the middle of March, it was at the greatest pitch the latter end of August, or beginning of September, and from thence, on the contrary, went on increasing to the close of February, when I had the longest portion of light. Hereupon, dividing my year into two seasons only, I began the winter half in March, and the summer half in September. Thus my winter was the spring and summer quarters of us in Europe, and my summer those of autumn and winter.

From my settling this matter, I kept little accounts of days or weeks, but only reckoned my time by summer and winter; so that I am pretty right as to the revolutions of these, though the years, as to their notation, I kept no account of, nor do I know what year of the Lord it now is.

CHAPTER XVII.

As my boy Pedro grew up, though, as I said before, he had the graundee, yet it was of less dimensions than it ought to have been to be useful to him, so that it was visible he could never fly, for it would scarce meet before, whereas it ought to have reached from side to side both ways. The boy's graundee not being a sufficient vestment for him, it became necessary he should be clothed.

I turned over my hoard, but could find nothing that would do. I had described my own country vest for lads to Youwarkee, and she formed a tolerable idea of it, but we had no tackle to alter anything with. "Oh, my dear," says I, "had I but been born with the graundee, I need not be now racking my brains to get my child clothes." "What do you mean by that?" says she. "Why," says I, "I would have flown to my ship, and have brought some such things from thence, as you, not wanting them in this country, can have no notion of." She seemed mighty inquisitive to understand how a ship was made, what it was most like to, how a person who never saw one might know it only by the description, and how one might get into it, with abundance of the like questions. She then inquired what sort of things those needles and several other utensils were, which I had at times been speaking of, and in what part of a ship they usually kept such articles. And I, to gratify her curiosity, as I perceived she took a pleasure in hearing me, answered all her questions to a scruple.

About two days after this, having been out two or three hours in the morning, to cut wood, at coming home I found Pedro crying, ready to break his heart, and his little brother Tommy hanging to him, and crawling about the floor after him. The youngest, pretty baby! was fast asleep upon one of the beast-fish skins, in a corner of the room. I asked Pedro for his mother, but the poor infant had nothing farther to say to the matter, than "Mammy run away, I cry!

Mammy run away, I cry!" I wondered where she was gone, never before missing her from our habitation. However, I waited patiently till bed-time, but no wife. I grew very uneasy then. Yet, as my children were tired and sleepy, I thought I had best go quietly to bed with them. So, giving all three their suppers, we lay down together. They slept, but my mind was too full to permit the closure of my eyes.

Finding I could neither sleep nor lie still, I rose, intending to search all the woods about, and call to her, that if any accident had prevented sight of her, she might at least hear me. But, upon opening the door, how agreeably was I surprised to meet her coming in, with something on her arm. "My dear Youwarkee," says I, "where have you been? The poor children have been at their wit's end to find you; and I, my dear, have been inconsolable, and was now coming in search of you." "My dearest Peter," says she (kissing me), "pray forgive me the only thing I have ever done to offend you, and the last cause you shall ever have, by my good-will, to complain of me; but walk within doors, and I will give you a farther account of my absence. Don't you remember what delight I took the other day to hear you talk of your ship?" "Yes," says I, "you did so; but what of that?" "Nay," says she, "pray forgive me, for I have been to see it." "That's impossible," says I. "I do assure you," says she, "I have; and a wonderful thing it is! But if you distrust what I say, I have brought proof of it; step out with me to the verge of the wood, and satisfy yourself." "But pray," says I, "who presented you with this upon your arm?" "I vow," says she, "I had forgot this; yes, this will, I believe, confirm to you what I have said." I turned it over and over, and looking wistfully upon her, says I, "This waistcoat, indeed, is the very fellow to one that lay in the captain's locker in the cabin." "Say not the very fellow," says she, "but rather say, the very same, for I'll assure you it is so; and had you been with me, we might have got so many things for ourselves and the children, we should never have wanted more, though we lived these hundred years; but as it is, I have left something without the wood for you to bring up." When we had had our talk out, she, hearing the children stir, took them up, and was going to get their breakfasts. "Hold," says I, "this journey must have fatigued you too much already; lay yourself to rest, and leave everything else to me." "My dear," says she, "you seem to think this flight tiresome, but you are mistaken. I am more weary with walking to the lake and back again, than with all the rest. Oh!" says she, "if you had but the graundee, flying would rest you, after the greatest labour; for the parts which are moved with exercise on the earth are all at rest in flight; as, on the contrary, the parts used in flight are, when on earthly travel."

After we had composed ourselves, we walked to the verge of the wood, to see what cargo my wife had brought from the ship. I was astonished at the bulk of it; and seeing, by the outside, it consisted of clothes, I took it with much ado upon my shoulders, and carried it home. But, upon opening it, I found far more treasure than I could have imagined; for there was a hammer, a great many spikes and nails, three spoons, about five plates of pewter, four knives and a fork, a small china punch-bowl, two chocolate cups, a paper of needles, and several of pins, a parcel of coarse thread, a pair of shoes, besides as much linen and woollen, of one sort or another, as made a good package for all the other things; with a great tin porridge-pot, of about two gallons, tied outside; and all these as nicely stowed as if she had been bred a packer.

When I had viewed the bundle, and poised the weight, "How was it possible, my dear Youwarkee," said I, "for you to bring all this? You could never carry them in your hands." "No, no," replied she, "I carried them on my back." "Is it possible," says I, "for your graundee to bear yourself and all this weight too in the air, and to such an height as the tops of these rocks?" "You will always," replies she, "make the height a part of your difficulty in flying, but you are deceived; for as the first stroke (I have heard you say often) in fighting is half the battle, so it is in flying. My method, let me tell you, was this: I climbed to the highest part of the ship, where I could stand clear, having first put up my burden, which you have there; and then getting that on my back near my shoulders, I took the two cords you see hang loose to it in my two hands, and extending my graundee, leaped off flatwise with my face towards the water; when instantly playing two or three good strokes with my graundee, I was out of danger. Now, if I had found the bundle too heavy to make my first strokes with, I should directly have turned on my back, dropped my bundle, and floated in my graundee to the ship again, as you once saw me float on the lake." Says I, "You must have flown a prodigious distance to the ship, for I was several days sailing, I believe three weeks, from my ship, before I reached the gulf; and after that could be little less than five weeks, and at a great rate of sailing, too, under the rock, before I reached the lake; so that the ship must be a monstrous way off." "No, no," says she; "your ship lies but over yon cliff, that rises, as it were, with two points; and as to the rock itself, it is not broader than our lake is long; but what made you so tedious in your passage was, many of the windings and turnings in the cavern returning into themselves again; so that you might have gone round and round till this time, if the tide had not luckily struck you into the direct passage. This," says she, "I have heard from some of my countrymen, who have flown up it, but could never get quite through." "I wish with all my heart," says I, "fortune had brought me first to light in this country, or (but for your sake I could almost say) had never brought me into it all; for to be a creature of the least significancy of the whole race about one, is a melancholy circumstance." "Fear not, my love," says she, "for you have a wife will hazard all for you, though you are restrained. I perceive, indeed," continued she, "you want mightily to go to your ship, and are more uneasy now you know it is safe, than you were before; but that being past my skill to assist you in, if you will command your deputy to go backwards and forwards in your stead, I am ready to obey you."

We sat us down, and sorted out our cargo piece by piece; and having found several things proper for the children, my wife longed to enter upon some piece of work towards clothing Pedro in the manner she had heard me talk of, and laid hard at me to show her the use of the needles, thread, and other things she had brought. Indeed, I must say she proved very tractable, and from the little instruction I was able to give her soon outwrought my knowledge; for I could only show her that the thread went through the needle, and both through the cloth to hold it together; but for anything else, I was as ignorant as she. In much less time than I could have imagined, she had clothed my son Pedro, and had made a sort of mantle for the youngest. But now seeing us so smart, (for I took upon me sometimes to wear the green waistcoat she had brought, under my dirty jacket,) she began to be ashamed of herself, as she said, in our fine company, and afterwards (as I shall soon acquaint you) got into our fashion.

Seeing the advantages of her flight to the ship, and that so many conveniences arose from it, she was frequently at me to let her go again. I should as much have wished for another return of goods as she, but I could by no means think of parting with my factor. But as she so earnestly desired, and assured me she would run no hazards, I was prevailed on at length to let her go, though under certain restrictions, which she promised me to comply with. I then went with her to the confines of the wood, (for I told her I desired to see her mount,) and she, after we had embraced, bidding me stand behind her, took her flight.

CHAPTER XVIII.

I HAD, ever since our marriage, been desirous of seeing Youwarkee fly, but this was the first opportunity I had of it; and indeed the sight was worthy of all the attention I paid it, for I desired her slowly to put herself in proper order for it, that I might make my observation the more accurately.

She first threw up two long branches or ribs of the whalebone, as I called it before, (and indeed, for several of its properties, as toughness, elasticity, and pliableness, nothing I have ever seen can so justly be compared to it,) which were jointed behind the upper bone of the spine, and which, when not extended, lie bent over the shoulders on each side of the neck forwards, from whence, by nearer and nearer approaches, they just meet at the lower rim of the belly in a sort of point; but when extended, they stand their whole length above the shoulders, not perpendicularly, but spreading outwards, with a web of the softest and most pliable and springy membrane that can be imagined in the interstice between them, reaching from their root or joint on the back up above the hinder part of the head, and near half-way their own length; but when closed, the membrane falls down in the middle upon the neck like a handkerchief. There are also two other ribs rising as it were from the same root, which, when open, run horizontally, but not so long as the others. These are filled up in the interstice between them and the upper ones with the same membrane; and on the lower side of this is also a deep flap of the membrane, so that the arms can be either above or below in flight, and are always above it when closed. This last rib, when shut, flaps under the upper one, and also falls down with it before to the waist, but is not joined to the ribs below. Along the whole spine-bone runs a strong, flat, broad, grisly cartilage, to which are joined several other of these ribs, all which open horizontally, and are filled in the interstices with the above membrane, and are jointed to the ribs of the person just where the plane of the back begins to turn towards the breast and belly, and when shut, wrap the body round to the joints on the contrary side, folding neatly one side over the other. At the lower spine are two more ribs, extended horizontally when open, jointed again to the hips, and long enough to meet the joint on the contrary side; and from the hip-joint, which is on the outermost edge of the hip-bone, runs a pliable cartilage quite down the outside of the thigh and leg to the ankle; from which there branch out divers other ribs horizontally also when open, but when closed they encompass the whole thigh and leg, rolling inwards across the back of the leg and thigh, till they reach and just cover the cartilage. The interstices of these are also filled up with the same membrane. From the two ribs which join to the lower spine-bone there hangs down a sort of short apron, very full of plaits, from hip-joint to hip-joint, and reaches behind half-way or more to the hams. This has also several small limber-ribs in it. Just upon the lower spine-joint, and above the apron, as I call it, there are two other long branches, which, when close, extend upon the back from the point they join at below to the shoulders, where each rib has a clasper, which, reaching over the shoulders just under the fold of the uppermost branch of ribs, hold up the two ribs flat to the back like a V, the interstices of which are also filled up with the aforesaid membrane. This last piece, in flight, falls down almost to the ankles, where the two claspers, lapping under each leg withinside, hold it very fast; and then also the short apron is drawn up, by the strength of the ribs in it, between the thighs forward, and covers as far as the rim of the belly. The whole arms are covered also from the shoulders to the wrist with the same delicate membrane, fastened to ribs of proportionate dimensions, and jointed to a cartilage on the outside in the same manner as on the legs.

It is very surprising to feel the difference of these ribs when open and when closed; for closed they are as pliable as the finest whalebone, or more so, but when extended, are as strong and stiff as bone. They are tapering from the roots, and are broader or narrower, as best suits the places they occupy and the stress they are put to, up to their points, which are almost as small as a hair. The membrane between them is the most elastic thing I ever met with, occupying no more space when the ribs are closed than just from rib to rib, as flat and smooth as possible, but when extended in some postures, will dilate itself surprisingly.

As soon as my wife had expanded the whole graundee, being then upon plain ground, she stooped forward, moving with a heavy wriggling motion at first, which put me in some pain for her; but after a few strokes, beginning to rise a little, she cut through the air like lightning, and was soon over the edge of the rock and out of my sight.

It is the most amazing thing in the world to observe the large expansion of this graundee when open, and when closed (as it all is in a moment upon the party's descent), to see it sit so close and compact to the body as no tailor can come up to it; and then the several ribs lie so justly disposed in the several parts, that instead of being, as one would imagine, a disadvantage to the shape, they make the body and limbs look extremely elegant; and by the different adjustment of their lines on the body and limbs, the whole, to my fancy, somewhat resembles the dress of the old Roman warriors, in their buskins, and in appearance seems much more noble than any factitious garb I ever saw, or can frame a notion of to myself.

Though these people in height, shape, and limb very much resemble the Europeans, there is yet this difference—that their bodies are rather broader and flatter, and their limbs, though as long and well-shaped, are seldom so thick as ours, and this I observed generally in all I saw of them during a long time among them afterwards; but their skin, for beauty and fairness, exceeds ours very much.

My wife having now taken her second flight, I went home, and never left my children till her return. This was three days after our parting. The news she brought me was very agreeable. She told me, she first went and pried into every nook in the ship, where she had seen such things, could we get at them, as would make us very happy. Then she set out the way I told her to go, in order to find the gulf. She was much afraid she should not have discovered it, though she flew very low that she might be sure to hear the waterfall, and not overshoot it. It was long ere she came at it, but when she did, she perceived she might have spared most of her trouble had she set out the other way; for after she had flown almost round the island, and not before, she began to hear the fall, and upon coming up to it, found it to be not above six minutes' flight from the ship. She said the entrance was very narrow, and, she thought, lower than I represented it, for she could scarce discern any space between the surface of the water and the archway of the rock. I told her, that might happen from the rise or fall of the sea itself. But I was glad to hear the ship was no farther from the gulf, for my head was never free from the thoughts of my ship and cargo. She then told me she had left a small bundle for me without the wood, and went to look after her children. I brought up the bundle, and though it was not near so large as the other, I found several useful things in it, wrapped up in four or five yards of dark blue woollen cloth, which I knew no name for, but which was thin and light, and about a yard wide. I asked her where she met with this stuff. She answered, where there was more of it, under a thing like our bed, in a cloth like our sheet, which she cut open and took it out of. "Well," says I, "and what will you do with this?" "Why, I will make me a coat like yours," says she, "for I don't like to look different from my dear husband and children." "No, Youwarkee," replied I, "you must not do so. If you make such a jacket as mine, there will be no distinction between glumm and gawrey. The *gowren praave*" (modest women) "in my country would not, on any account, go dressed like a glumm; for they wear a fine flowing garment called a gown, that fits tight about the waist, and hangs down from thence in folds, like your *barras*" (the apron, or flap, behind), "almost to the ground, so that you can hardly discern their feet, and no other part of their body but their hands and face, and about as much of their necks and breasts as you see in your graundee."

Youwarkee seemed highly delighted with this new-fancied dress, and worked day and night at it against the cold weather. Whilst she employed herself thus, I was busied in providing my winter stores. About a fortnight after she had begun mantua-making, she presented herself to me one day, as I came from work, in her new gown; and truly, considering the scanty description I had given her of such a garment, it appeared a good comely dress. Though it had not one plait about the body, it sat very tight thereto, and yet hung down full enough for a countess, for she would have put in all the stuff she had, had there been as much more of it. I could see no opening before, so asked her how she got it on. She told me she laid along on the ground and crept through the plaits at the bottom, and sewed the body round her after she had got her hands and arms through the sleeves. I wondered at her contrivance, and smiling, showed her how she should put it on, and also how to pin it before; and after she had done that, and I had turned up about half a yard of sleeve which then hung down to her finger-ends, I kissed her, and called her my countrywoman, of which and her new gown she was very proud for a long time.

CHAPTER XIX.

ONE day, as I was traversing the woods to view my bird-traps, looking into the underwood among the great trees on my right hand, I saw a wood-hen (a bird I used to call so, from its resemblance in make to our English poultry) come out of a little thicket. When she was fairly out of sight, I stepped up, and found she had a nest and sixteen eggs there. I exactly marked the place; and taking away one of the eggs, I broke it at some distance from the nest, to see how forward they were; and I had no sooner broke the shell but out came a young chicken. I then looked into the nest again, and taking up more of the eggs, I found them all just splintered in the shell and ready for hatching. I had immediately a desire to save them and bring them up tame; but I was afraid if I took them away before they were hatched and a little strengthened under the hen, they would all die, so I let them remain till next day. In the meanwhile, I prepared some small netting, and with this I contrived, by fastening it to stakes which I fixed in the ground, to surround the nest and me on the outside of it. All the while I was doing this the hen did not stir, so that I thought she had either been absent when I came, or had hatched and gone off with the young ones. As to her being gone, I was under no concern, for I had no design to catch her, but only to confine the chickens within my net, if they were hatched. But however, I went nearer, and peeping in, found she sat still, squeezing herself as flat to the ground as she could. I was in twenty minds whether to take her first and then catch the chickens, or to let her go off and then clap upon them; but as I proposed to let her go. I thought if she would sit still till I had got the chickens, that would be the best way; so I softly kneeled down before her, and sliding my hand under her, I gently drew out two, and put them in a bag I had in my left hand. I then dipped again, and again, taking two every turn; but going a fourth time, as I was bringing out my prize, the hen jumped up, flew out, and made such a noise, that though I the minute before saw six or seven more chicks in a lump where she had sat, and kept my eye upon them, yet before I could put the last two I had got into my bag, these were all gone; and in three hours' search I could not find one of them, though I was sure they could not pass my net, and must be within the compass of a small room, my toils inclosing no more. After tiring myself with looking for them, I marched home with those eight I had got.

I told Youwarkee what I had done, and how I intended to manage the little brood, and, if I could, to bring them up tame. We kept them some days very warm by the fire, and fed them often, and in a fortnight's time they were as stout and familiar as common poultry. We kept them a long while in the house, and when I fed them, I always used them to a particular whistle, which I also taught my wife; and in a very short while they would come running, upon the usual sound, like barn-door fowls to the name of Biddy.

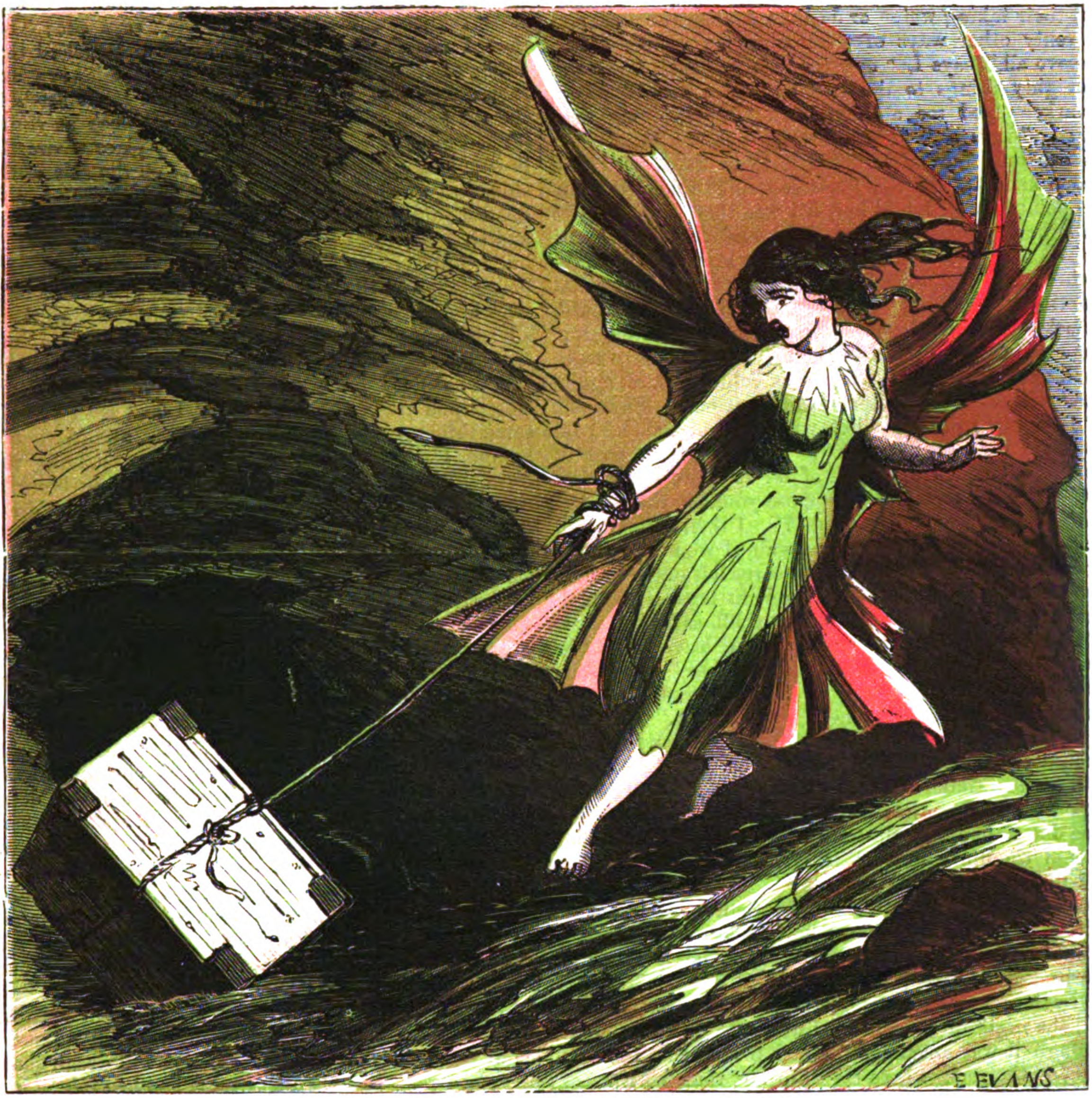
There happened to be in this brood five hens and three cocks; and they were now so tame that, having cut their wings, I let them out, when the weather favoured, to my door, where they would pick about in the wood and get best part of their subsistence; and having used them to roost in a corner of my ante-chamber, they all came in very regularly at night and took their places. My hens, at the usual season, laid me abundance of eggs, and hatched me a brood or two each of chickens; so that now I was at a loss to know what to do with them, they were become so numerous. The ante-chamber was no longer a proper receptacle for such a flock, and therefore I built a little house, at a small distance from my own, on purpose for their reception. I had by this time cleared a spot of ground on one side of my grotto; this I inclosed, and within that inclosure I raised my aviary, and my poultry thrived very well there, seemed to like their habitation, and grew very fat.

My wife and I took much delight in visiting and feeding them, and it was a fine diversion also to my boys; but at the end of summer, when all the other birds took their annual flight, away went every one of my new-raised brood with them, and one of my old cocks, the rest of the old set remaining very quiet with me all the winter. The next summer, when my chicks of that year grew up a little, I cut their wings, and by that means preserved all but one, which I suppose was either not cut so close as the rest, or his wings had grown again. From this time, I found that not two out of a hundred that had once wintered with me would ever go away, though I did not cut their wings; but all of the same season would certainly go off with the wild ones, if they could anyways make a shift to fly. I afterwards got a breed of black-necks, which was a name I gave them from the peculiar blackness of their necks, let the rest of their bodies be of what colour they would, as they are indeed of all colours. These birds were as big or bigger than a turkey, of a delicious flavour, and were bred from turkey eggs, hatched under my own wood-hens, in great plenty. I was forced to clip these as I did the other young fowl, to keep them; and at length they grew very tame, and would return every night during the dark season. The greatest difficulty now was to get meat for all these animals in the winter, when they would sit on the roost two days together, if I did not call and feed them, which I was sometimes forced to do by lamp-light, or they would have starved in cloudy weather. But I overcame that want of food by an accidental discovery; for I observed my black-necks in the woods jump many times together at a sort of little round heads or pods, very dry, which hung plentifully upon a shrub that grew in great abundance there. I cut several of these heads, and carrying them home with me, broke them, and took out a spoonful or more from each head, of small yellow seeds; which giving to my poultry, and finding they greedily devoured them, I soon laid in a stock for twice my number of mouths, so that they never after wanted.

I tried several times to raise a breed of water-fowl by hatching their eggs under my hens; but not one in ten of the sorts, when hatched, were fit to eat, and those that were would never live and thrive with me, but got away to the lake; so I dropped my design of water-fowl as impracticable. But by breeding and feeding my land-fowl, I never wanted of that sort at my table, for my whole side of the lake in a few years was like a farm-yard, so full of poultry that I never knew my stock; and with the usual whistle, they would flock round me from all quarters. I had everything now but cattle, not only for the support, but convenience and pleasure of life; and so happily should I have fared here, if I had had but a cow and bull, a ram and sheep, that I would not have changed my dominions for the crown of England.

CHAPTER XX.

STRANGE is the temper of mankind, who, the more they enjoy, the more they covet. Before I received any return from my ship, I rested tolerably easy, and but seldom thought upon what I had left behind me in her, thinking myself happy in what I had, and completely so since my union with my dear wife; but after



THE FLYING WOMAN REMOVES THE STORES FROM THE SHIP.

I had got what I could never have expected, I grew more and more perplexed for want of the rest, and thought I should never enjoy true happiness while even a plank of the ship remained. I was even mad enough to think of venturing up the cavern again, but was restrained from the attempt by the certain impracticableness of it. Then I thought Youwarkee should make another trip to the ship: "But what can she bring from it," says I to myself, "in respect of what must be left behind? Her whole life will not suffice to clear it in, at the rate she can fetch the loading hither in parcels."

In the height of my soliloquy, in comes Youwarkee; and seeing my dejected look, would needs know the meaning of it. I told her plainly that I could get no rest from day to day, ever since she first went to the ship, to think such a number of good things lay there to be a prey to the sea as the ship wasted; and that since her last flight I had suffered the more, when I thought how near the gulf was to the ship, so that could I but get thither myself with my boat, I would contrive to pack up the goods in the chests that were on board, and, carrying them in the boat, drop them near the draught of the water, which of itself would suck them under the rock down the gulf; and when they were passed through the cavern, I might take them up in the lake. "Well," says she, "Peter, and why cannot I do this for you?" "No," says I, "even this has its objections." Then I told her what I feared of their taking water, or dashing against the rock, and twenty other ways of frustrating my views; "But, above all," says I, "how can you get such large and weighty things to the gulf without a boat?" Youwarkee eyed me attentively. "Pr'ythee, my dear Peter," says she, "set your heart at rest about that. I can only try; if no good is to be done, you shall soon know it, and must rest contented under the disappointment." I told her, if I was there, I could take all the things out of the chest, and then melt some pitch, and pour into every crack, to keep out the water when they were set afloat. "Pitch!" says she, "what is that?" "Why," says I, "that is a nasty, hard, black, sticking thing, that stands in tubs in the ship, and which being put over the fire in anything to melt, will grow liquid, and when it is cold, be hard again, and will resist the water, and keep it out." Says she, "How can I put this pitch withinside of the chest lid when I have tied it up?" "It is to no manner of purpose," says I, "to talk of it: so there's an end of it." "But," says she, "suppose yourself there, what things would you bring first?" I then entered into a long detail of particulars, saying, I would have this and that, and so on, till I had scarce left out a thing I either knew of or could suppose to be in the ship; and, for fear I had not mentioned all, says I, at last, "If I was there, I believe I should leave but little portable behind me." "So, so, my dear," says Youwarkee, "you would roll in riches, I find; but you have never mentioned a new gown for me." "Why, aye," says I, "I would have that, too." "But how would you melt the pitch?" says she. "Oh," says I, "there is a tinder-box and matches in a room below, upon the side of the fire-hearth." And then I let her see one I had brought with me, and showed her the use of the flint and steel. "Well, my dear," says she, "will you once more trust me?" I told her, that her going would be of little more use than to get a second gown, or some such thing; but if she was desirous, I would let her make another flight, on her promise to be back as soon as possible.

In the evening she set out, and stayed two days, and till the night of the third. I would here observe, that though it was much lighter and brighter on the outside of the rock, where the ship lay, than with us at Grandevolet, yet having always her spectacles with her, I heard no more complaint of the glare of light she used to be so much afraid of.

Upon her return again, she told me she had shipped some goods to sea for me, which she hoped would arrive safe, and that they were in six chests, which she had pitched after my directions. "Aye!" says I, "you have pitched them in the sea, perhaps; but after my directions, I am satisfied, was beyond your ability." "You glumms," says she, "think us gawreys very ignorant. Did not you show me one day how your boat was tarred and caulked, as you call it?" "I did," says I; "what then?" "I'll tell you," says she. "When I had emptied the first chest, and set it properly, I looked about for your pitch, which at last I found by its sticking to my fingers; I then put a good piece into a sort of little kettle, with a long handle, that lay upon the pitch." "Oh, the pitch-ladle!" says I. "I know not what you call it," says she; "but then I made a fire, as you told me, and melted that stuff; afterwards turning up the chest sideways, and then endways, I poured it into it, and let it settle in the cracks, and with an old stocking, such as yours, dipped into the pitch, I rubbed every place where the boards joined. I then set the chest on the side of the ship, and when the pitch was cold and hardened in it, filled it top-full of things: but when I had done thus, and shut the lid, I found that would not come so close but I could get the blade of a knife through anywhere between it and the chest; whereupon, I cut some long slips of the cloth I was packing up, and fitting them all round the edge of the chest, I dipped them into the pitch and laid them on hot; and where one slip would not do, I put two; and shutting the lid down close upon them, I nailed it, as I had seen you do some things, quite round; then tying a rope to the handle, I tipped the chest into the sea, holding the rope. I watched it some time, and seeing it swim well, I took flight with the rope in my hand, and drew the chest after me to the gulf, when, letting go the rope, away it went. I served five more in the same manner; and now, my dearest, I am here to tell you I hope you will be able to see at least some of them, one time or other, in the lake."

After what I had heard from Youwarkee, I grew much more cheerful, which she, poor creature! was remarkably pleased with. She went with me constantly once, and sometimes twice, a-day, for several days together, to see what success at the lake; till at length she grew very impatient, for fear, as she afterwards told me, I should either think she had not done what she said, or had done it in an ineffectual manner. But one day, walking by the lake, I thought I saw something floating in the water at a very great distance. "Youwarkee," says I, "I spy a sail!" Then running to my boat, and taking her in, away we went, plying my oars with all my might, for I longed to see what it was. At nearer view, I perceived it to be one of my wife's fleet.

When we came close to it, up she started. "Now, my dear Peter," says she, "torment yourself no more about your goods on board; for if this will do, all shall be your own." She then lent me a hand to take it in; but we had both work enough to compass it, the wood had soaked in so much water. We then made the best of our way homewards to my wet-dock, when, just as we had landed our treasure, we saw two more boxes coming down the stream, both together, whereupon we launched again, and brought them in one by one.

We had now made a good day's work of it; so, mooring the boat, we went home, intending to be out next morning early with the cart, to convey our imports to the grotto.

After supper, Youwarkee looking very earnestly at me, with tears just glittering in her eyes, broke out in these words: "What should you have thought, Peter, to have seen me come sailing, drowned, through the cavern, tied to one of your chests?" "Heaven forbid such a thought, my charmer!" says I; "but, as you know I must have been rendered the most miserable of all living creatures by such a sight, pray tell me how you could possibly have such a thought in your head?" "Nothing, nothing," says she, "my dear! it was only a fancy just come into my head." "My dear Youwee," says I, "you must let me know what you mean, for I am sure there is something more in what you say than fancy; therefore, pray, if you love me, keep me on the rack no longer." "Ah, Peter!" says she, "there was but a span between me and death not many days ago; and when I saw the line of the last chest we took up just now, it gave me so much horror, I could scarce keep upon my feet." "My dear Youwee, proceed," says I; "for I cannot bear my torment till I have heard the worst." "Why, Peter," says she, "now the danger is over, I shall tell you my escape with as much pleasure as I guess you will take in hearing of it. You must know, my life," says she, "that having cast that chest into the sea, as I was tugging it along by that very line, it being one of the heaviest, and moving but slowly, I twisted the string several times round my hand, one fold upon another, the easier to tow it; when, drawing it rather too quick into the eddy, it pulled so hard against me, towards the gulf, and so quick, that I could no way loosen or disengage the cord from my fingers, but was dragged thereby to the very rock, against which the chest struck violently. My last thought, as I supposed it, was of you, my dear; when, taking myself for lost, I forbore farther resistance; at which instant, the line, slackening by the rebound of the chest, fell from my hand of itself, and the chest, returning to the rock, went down the current. I took a turn or two round on my graundee, to recollect my past danger, and went back to the ship, fully resolved to avoid the like snare for the future. Indeed, I was so terrified with the thought, that I had half a mind to have left the two remaining chests behind; but as danger overcome gives fresh resolution, I again set to work, and discharged them also down the gulf, as I hope you will see in good time.

My heart bled within me all the while she spoke, and I even felt ten times more than she could have suffered by the gulf. "My dearest Youwee," says I, "why did not you tell me this adventure sooner?" "It is too soon, I fear, now!" says she; for she then saw the colour forsake my lips, my eyes grow languid, and myself dropping into her arms. She screamed out, and ran to the chest, where all was empty; but turning every bottle up, and from the remaining drops in each collecting a small quantity of liquor, and putting it by little and little to my lips, and rubbing my wrists and temples, she brought me to myself again; but I continued so extremely sick for some days after, that it was above a week before I could get down with my cart to fetch up my chests.

When I was able to go down, Youwarkee would not venture me alone, but went herself with me. We then found two more of the chests, which we landed; and I had work sufficient for two or three days in getting them all up to the grotto, they were so heavy, and all the way through the wood being up hill.

We had five in hand, and watched several days for the sixth, when, seeing nothing of it, we gave it over for lost; but one day, as I was going for water, Youwarkee would go with me, and urged our carrying the net, that we might drag for some fish; accordingly we did so; and now, having taken what we wanted, we went to the rill, and pushing in the head of the boat (as I usually did, for by that means I could fill the vessel as I stood on board), the first thing that appeared was my sixth chest. Youwarkee spied it first, and cried, "Oh, Peter! what we have long wished for, and almost despaired of, is come at last; let us meet and welcome it." I did as she desired; we got it into the boat, and so returned home. It took us up several days' time in searching, sorting, and disposing our cargo, and drying the chests; for the goods themselves were so far from being wetted or spoiled, that even those in the last chest, which had lain so long in the water, had not taken the least moisture.

Youwarkee was quite alert at the success of her packing, but left me to ring her praises, which I did not fail of doing more than once at unpacking each chest, and could see her eyes glow with delight to see she had so pleased me. She had been so curious as to examine almost everything in the ship; and as well of things I had described, and she did know, as of what she did not, brought me something for a sample; but, above all, had not forgot the blue stuff, for the moment she had seen that, she destined it to the use of herself and children.

CHAPTER XXI.

YOUWARKEE and I, having fixed ourselves by degrees into a settled rota of action, began to live like Christians, having so great a quantity of most sorts of necessaries about us. But I say we lived like Christians on another account, for you must not think, after what I have said before, that I and my family lived like heathens; no, I will assure you, they by degrees knew all I knew, and that, with a little artificial improvement, and a well-regulated dispositon, I hoped, and did not doubt, would carry them all to heaven. I would many a time have given all my interest in the ship's cargo for a Bible; and a hundred times grieved that I was not master of a pocket one, which I might have carried everywhere about me. I never imagined there was one aboard; and if there were, and Youwarkee should find it, I supposed it would be in Portuguese, which I knew little of, so it would be of small service to me if I had it.

After we were married, as I call it—that is, after we had agreed to become man and wife—I frequently prayed before her, and with her (for by this time she understood a good deal of my language), at which, though contrary to my expectation, she did not seem surprised, but readily kneeled by and joined with me. This I liked very well; and upon my asking her one day, after prayer, if she understood what I had been doing, "Yes, verily," says she, "you have been making petitions to the image of the great Collwar." "Pray," says I (willing gently to lead her into a just sense of a Supreme Being), "who is this Collwar? and where does he dwell?" "He it is," says she, "that does all good and evil to us." "Right," says I, "it is in some measure so; but he cannot of himself do evil." "Yes," says she, "he can; for he can do all that can be done, and as evil can be done, he can do it." Thinks I, "She will run me aground presently, and I shall become but a pupil to my own scholar." I then asked her where the great Collwar dwelt. She told me, "In heaven, in a charming place." "And can he know what we do?" says I. "Yes," replied she, "his image tells him everything; and I have prayed to his image, which I have often seen; and it is filled with so much virtue, that it is his second self, for there is only one of them in the world who is so good; he gives several virtues to other images of himself, which are brought to him, and put into his arms to breathe upon; and the only thing I have ever regretted since I knew you is, that I have not one of them here to comfort and bless us and our children."

"Pray, Youwee," says I, "what is your God made of?" "Why, of clay," says she, "finely painted, and looks so terrible, he would make you tremble to behold him." "Do you think," says I, "that is the true Collwar's real shape, if you could see himself?" She told me, "Yes; for that some of his best servants had seen him, and took the representation from himself." "And pray, do you think he loves his best servants, as you call them, and is kind to them?" "You need not doubt it," says she. "Why, then," replied I, "how came he to look so terrible upon them when they saw him, as you say they did? I should rather think, as you say he is kind to them, that he should have two images, a placid one for his good, and a terrible one for his bad servants; or else, who by seeing him can tell whether he is pleased or angry? for even you yourself, Youwee, when anything pleases you, have a different look from that you have when you are angry; and little Pedro can tell whether he does well or ill by your countenance; whereas, if you looked with the same face on all his actions, he would as readily think he did well as ill in committing a bad action." Youwarkee could not tell what to say to this.

I then asked her, if she thought the image itself could hear her petitions. She replied, "Yes." "And can he," says I, "return you an answer?" She told me, he only did that to his best servants. "Did you ever hear him do it?" says I; "for, unless he can speak too, I should much suspect his hearing; and you being one of his best servants, seeing you love him, and pray heartily to him, why should you not hear him as soon as others?" "No," says she, "there are a great number of glumms on purpose to serve him, pray for us to him, and receive his answers." "But to what purpose, then," says I, "is your praying to him, if their prayers will serve your turn?" "Oh," says she, "the image hears them sooner than us, and sends the petitions up to the great Collwar." "But, suppose," says I, for argument's sake, "that you could see the great Collwar, or know where he was, and should pray to himself, without going about to his image first, do you think he could not hear you?" "I cannot tell that," says she. "But how then," says I, "can he tell what (if it could speak) his image says, which is as far from him as you are? And, pray, do you think he can hear an image which he did not make, which could not make itself, and which can neither hear, nor see, nor speak, better than he can hear a glumm whom he did make, and who made that image, and who himself can hear, and see, and speak to him?" She paused here a good while. At last, says she, "Why truly, I cannot think but he might better hear me than the image." "Why, then," said I, "don't you make your petitions to himself? It is for the reason I have given you, my dear Youwarkee, that I pray to him and not to his image, and, consequently, am more sure of being heard and answered." "Indeed," says she, "I never thought of that before, for our *ragans* (priests) always charged me to pray to the image, or to let them know what I wanted, and they would pray to him for me, and they have had many a roppin of me for so doing; but you have convinced me it is better to pray to himself, and I shall always do it hereafter."

Having conducted my scholar thus far, I left off, thinking now that I had laid a solid basis, I need be in no fear for my superstructure; and, as the slower you build, the firmer it settles, I thought fit to let this first work settle into a firm principle, before I raised any farther doctrine upon it, which, as occasion offered, I determined to pursue. Having brought my wife firmly to believe in a Supreme Being, who could hear our prayers, see our actions, and answer our petitions as he sees fit, and to an assurance that his love to us is so great that he will do what is most beneficial for us, though it should not always prove what we think so; the great truths concerning his dispensations in our creation and redemption, and our duty towards him, followed of course, as direct consequences of such his love and knowledge of us, and she easily came into them.

By these means, and the Divine blessing thereon, in a few years, I may fairly say, I had a little Christian church in my own house, and in a flourishing way, too, without a schismatic or heretic among us.

CHAPTER XXII.

I HAD now lived here almost fourteen years, and besides the three sons before mentioned, had three girls and one boy. Pedro, my eldest, had the graundee, but too small to be useful; my second son, Tommy, had it complete; so had my three daughters; but Jemmy and David, the youngest sons, none at all. My eldest daughter I named Patty. My second daughter my wife desired might be called by her sister's name, Hallycarnie; and my youngest I named Sarah, after my mother.

My wife now took great delight in exercising Tommy and Patty in flight, and would often skim round the whole island with them before I could walk half through the wood; and she would teach them also to swim or sail. I own I often envied them this exercise, which they seemed to perform with more ease than I could only shake my leg, or stir an arm.

Though we had perpetually swangeans about us, and the voices, as I used to call them, I could never once prevail on my wife to show herself, or to claim any acquaintance with her country-folks. And what is very remarkable in my children is, that my three daughters and Tommy, who had the full graundee, had exactly their mother's sight; Jemmy and David had just my sight, and Pedro's sight was between both, though he was never much affected with any light. But I was obliged to make spectacles for Tommy and all my daughters, when they came to go abroad.

I had in this time twice enlarged my dwelling, which the increase of my family had rendered necessary. The last alteration I was enabled to do in a much better manner than the first; for, by the return of my flota, I had gotten a large collection of useful tools, several of iron, where the handles or wood-work preponderated the iron; but such as were all or greatest part of that metal, had got either to the rock, or were so fast fixed to the head of the ship, that it was difficult to remove them; so that my wife could get comparatively few of this latter sort, though some she did. It was well, truly, I had these instruments, for I was forced to work harder now than ever, in making provision for us all; and my sons Pedro and Tommy commonly assisted. I had also had another importation of goods through the gulf, which still added to my convenience. But my boat made me shudder every time I went into her. She had leaked again and again, and I had patched her till I could scarce see a bit of the old wood. She was of unspeakable use to me, and yet I could not venture myself in her but with the utmost apprehension and trembling. I had been intending a good while, now I had such helps, to build a new one, but had been diverted by one avocation or other.

About this time, Youwarkee, who was now upwards of thirty-two years of age, the fondest mother living, and very proud of her children, had formed a project of taking a flight to Arndrumnstake, a town in the kingdom of Doorpt Swangeanti, as I called it, where her father, if living, was a *colamb* (governor), under Georigetti, the prince of that country. She imparted her desire to me, asking my leave; and she told me, if I pleased, she would take Patty and Tommy along with her. I did not much dislike the proposal, because of the great inclination I had for a long time to a knowledge of, and familiarity with, her countrymen and relations; and now I had so many of her children with me, I could not think she would ever be prevailed on, but by force, to quit me and her offspring; so I told her she should go.

I expected continually I should hear of her departure, but she saying no more of it, I thought she had dropped her design, and I did not choose to mention it. But one day, as we were at dinner, she said, "My dear, I have considered of the journey you have consented I should take, but in order thereto it is necessary that I prepare several things for the children, especially those who have no graundee, and I am resolved to finish them before I go, that we may appear with decency both here and at Arndrumnstake; for I am sure my father, whose temper I am perfectly acquainted with, will, upon sight of me and my little ones, be so overjoyed, that he will forgive my absence and marriage, provided he sees reason to believe I have not matched unworthily, unbecoming my birth; and after keeping me and the children with him, it may be two or three months, will accompany me home again himself, with a great retinue of servants and relations; or, at least, if he is either dead or unable for flight, my other relations will come or send a convoy to take care of me and the children: and, my dear, as I shall give them all the encomiums I can of you, and of my situation with you, while I am among them, I would have them a little taken with the elegance of our domestic condition when they come hither, for I would not only put my family into a condition to appear before them, but to surprise the old gentleman and his company, who never in their lives saw any part of mankind with another covering than the graundee." When she had done, I expressed my approbation of her whole system; and she proceeded immediately to put it in execution. To work she went, opened every chest, and examined its contents. But while she was upon the hunt, and selecting such things as she thought fit for her purpose, she recollected several articles she had observed in the ship, which she judged far more for her turn than any she had at home. Hereupon she prayed me to let her take another trip to the vessel, and to carry Tommy with her.

After such happy experience of her wise and fortunate conduct, I consented to her flight; and away went she and her son. Upon their return, she told me what they had been doing, and said, as she so often heard me complain of the age of my boat, she had fitted me out a little ship, and hoped it would in due time arrive safely. As she quickly passed on to other things, I never once thought of asking her what she meant by the little ship she spoke of, but must own that, like a foolishly fond parent, I was more intent on her telling me how Tommy had found a hoard of playthings, which he had packed up for his own use.

As to this last particular, I learned by the sequel of the story, that he had been peeping about in the cabin whilst his mother was packing the chests, and seeing a small brass knob in the wainscot, took it for a plaything, and pulling to get it out, opened a door of a cupboard, where he had found some very pretty toys that he positively claimed for himself, among which were a small plain gold ring and a very fine one set with diamonds, which he showed me upon two of his fingers. I wondered how the child, who had never before seen such things, should happen to apply these so properly; but he told me, in playing with this, meaning the diamond ring, about his fingers, it slipped over his middle finger joint, and he could not get it off again, so he put the other upon another finger to keep it company.

We watched daily for the arrival of our fleet. It was surprising that none of the chests which Youwarkee shot down the gulf were ever half so long in their passage as I was myself, but some came in a week, some in a few days more, and even some in less, which I attributed to their following directly the course of the water, shooting from shelf to shelf as the tide sat; and I believe my keeping the boat I sailed in so strictly in the middle of the stream, was the reason of my being detained there so long. In less than a fortnight, everything came safe but one chest, which, as we never heard of it, I suppose was either sunk or bulged.

Being one day upon shore watching to see if anything more was come through the cavern, I spied at a distance somewhat looking very black and very long, and by the colour and shape thereof I took it for a young whale. Having observed it some time making very little way, I took my old boat and followed it, but was afraid to go near it, lest a stroke with its tail might endanger my boat and myself too; but creeping nearer and nearer, and seeing it did not stir, I believed it to be dead; whereupon, I drew so close, that at length I plainly perceived it was the ship's second boat turned upside down. It is not easy to express the joy I felt on this discovery. It was the very thing I was now, as I have said, in the greatest want of. I presently laid hold of it and brought it ashore; and it was no small pleasure to find on examining, that though it had lain so long dry, it was yet quite sound, and all its chinks filled up in its passage; and it proved to me afterwards the most beneficial thing I could have had from the ship.

I got all my goods home from the lake to my grotto by means of the cart, as usual. My wife and daughters waited with impatience for me to unpack, that they might take possession of such things as would be needful for rigging out the family against the supposed reception of the old glumm. But Tommy running to me with a "Pray, daddy, open my chest first! Pray give me my playthings first!" it was, to satisfy him, concluded in favour of his demand. So, he pointing to the chest which he regarded as his property, I opened it, whilst his eyes were ready to pierce through it till I came to his treasure. "There, there they are, daddy!" says he, as soon as I had uncovered them. And indeed I could not but much commend the child for his fancy; for the first things that appeared were a silver punch or wine can and ladle, then a gold watch, a pair of scissors, a small silver chafing-dish and lamp, a large case of mathematical instruments, a flageolet, a terrella or globular load-stone, a small globe, a dozen of large silver spoons; in short, there was, I believe, the greatest part of the Portuguese captain's valuable effects.

These Tommy claiming as his own proper chattels, I could not help interposing somewhat of my authority in the affair. "Hold, hold, son!" says I, "these things are all mine; but as I have several of you who will all be equally pleased with them, though, as the first finder, you may be entitled to the best share, you are not to grasp the whole; and as to some things which may be equally useful to us all, they must be considered as mine and your mother's property." I thereupon gave each of them a large silver spoon, and with a fork I scratched the initials of their names respectively on them, and divided several of the trifles amongst them equally. "And now, Tommy," says I, "you, for your pains, shall have this more than the rest," offering him the flageolet. Tommy looked very gloomy, and though he durst not find fault, his dissatisfaction was very visible by coolly taking it, tossing it down, and walking gravely off. "I thought," says I, "Tommy, I had made a good choice for you; but, as I find you despise it—here, Pedro, do you take that pretty thing, since your brother slights it." Tommy replied, "Let him take it, if he will; I can get bits of sticks enough in the wood."

My method had always been, to avoid either beating or scolding at my children for preferring their own opinion to mine; but I ever let things turn about so, that from their own reason they should perceive they had erred in opposing my sentiments. Tommy, therefore, having shown a disapprobation of my doings, I took the flageolet from Pedro; "And now, Pedro," says I, "let me teach you how to manage this piece of wood, as Tommy calls it, and then let me see if in all the grove he can cut such another." On this, I clapped it to my mouth, and immediately played several country-dances and hornpipes on it; for though my mother had scarce taught me to read, I had learned music and dancing, being, as she called them, gentleman-like accomplishments. My wife and children, especially Tommy, all stared as if they were wild, first on me, then on one another, whilst I played a country-dance; but I had no sooner struck up a hornpipe, than their feet, arms, and heads had so much twitchings and convulsive motions, that not one quiet limb was to be seen amongst them; till, having exercised their members as long as I saw fit, I almost laid them all to sleep with Chevy Chase, and so gave over.

They no sooner found themselves free from this enchantment, than the children all hustled round me in a cluster, all speaking together, and reaching out their little hands to the instrument. I gave it to Pedro. "There," says I to him, "take this slighted favour, as no such contemptible present."

Poor Tommy burst into a flood of tears at my last words, and running to me, fell on his knees and begged my pardon. I took him up, and kissing him, told him he had very little offended me; for, as he knew, I had more children to give anything to which either of the rest despised. I found that did not satisfy; still in tears, he said, might he not have the stick again, as I gave it to him first. "Tommy," says I, "you know I gave it to you first, but you disapproving my kindness, I have now given it to Pedro; and therefore, Tommy, as I am determined to acquaint you as near as I can with the strict rules of justice, there must no more be said to me of this matter."

Though I say the affair ended so, with regard to what I had to do in it, yet it ended not so with Tommy; for though he knew he had no hopes of moving me, he set all his energies at work to recover his stick (as he called it) by his mother's and sister's interest. At length, Pedro, being a boy of a most humane disposition, generously yielded it. And indeed, he could not have bestowed it more properly; for Tommy had the best ear for music I ever knew, and in less than a twelvemonth could far outdo me, his instructor, in softness and easiness of finger, and was also master of every tune I knew.

Youwarkee, with her daughters, sat close to work, and had but just completed her whole design for the family clothing, when she told me she found herself with child again. As that circumstance ill suited a journey, she deferred her flight for about fifteen months; in which time she was brought to bed, and weaned the infant, which was a boy, whom I named Richard, after my good master at the academy. The little knave thrived amain, and was left to my farther nursing during its mammy's absence; who, still firm to her resolution, after she had equipped herself and companions with whatever was necessary to their travelling, and locked up all the apparel she had made till her return, because she would have it appear new when her father came, set out with her son Tommy, and my two daughters, Patty and Hallycarnie, the last of which by this time being big enough also to be trusted with her mother.

CHAPTER XXIII.

My wife was now upon her journey to her father's; but where that was, or how far off, it was impossible for me to conceive by her description of the way; for she distinguished it, not by miles or leagues, but by swangeans, and names of rocks, seas, and mountains. I understood by her, indeed, there was a great sea to be passed, which would take her up almost a day and night, having the children with her, before she reached the next arkoe, though she could do it herself, she said, and strain hard, in a summer's night; but if the children should flag by the way, as there was no resting-place between us and Battringdrigg, the next arkoe, it might be dangerous to them; so she would take the above time for their sakes. After this, I found, by what she said, there was a narrow sea to pass, and a prodigious mountain, before she reached her own country, and that her father's was but a little beyond that mountain. This was all I could know in general about it. At their departure, she and the children had taken each a small provision for their flight, which hung about their necks in a sort of purse.

I cannot say that I was perfectly easy when they were gone; for my affection for them all would work up imaginary fears too potent for my reason to dispel, and which at first sat with no easy pressure upon my mind. But as the winter set in I went little abroad, and then we employed ourselves within doors in preparing several things which might not only be useful and ornamental, if the old glumm should come to see us, but might also divert us, and make the time pass less tediously. The first thing I began upon was a table, which I intended to make big enough for us all. With that view, I broke up a couple of chests, and taking the two sides of one of them, I nailed them edge to edge by strong thick pieces underneath at each end and in the middle; then I took two chest lids with their hinges, nailing one to each side of my middle piece, which made two good flaps; after this, with my tools, of which I had now a chest full, I chopped out of new stuff and planed four strong legs quite square, and nailed them strongly to each corner of my middle board; I then nailed pieces from one leg to the other, and nailed the bed likewise to them; then I fastened a border quite round, within six inches from the bottom from foot to foot, which held all fast together. When all this was done, still my table was imperfect—I could not put up the flaps, having no proper support. To remedy this, I sawed out a broad slip from a chest side, and boring a large hole through the centre, I spiked it up to the under side of the table's bed with a spindle I contrived, just loose enough to play round the head of the spike, filing down that part of the spindle which passed through the bed of the table, and rivetting it close; so that when my flaps were set up, I pulled the slip crossways of the table, and when the flaps were down, the slip turned under the table lengthways; next, under each flap I nailed a small slip lengthways of the flaps, to raise them on a level, when up, with the top of the table. When I had thus completed this needful utensil, I spent some time and pains, by scraping and rubbing, to render it all as elegant as could be, and I was not a little proud of the performance; and what rendered my work thereon a still more agreeable task, was my pretty infants' company, who stood by, expressing their wonder and approbation at every stroke.

Now I had gotten a table, I wanted chairs to it; for as yet we had only sat round the room upon chests, which formed a bench of the whole circumference, they stood so thick. There was no moving them without a monstrous trouble every time I might have occasion to set out my table; besides, they were too low to be commodious for seats. So I resolved to make some chairs and stools, also, that might be manageable. I will not trouble you with the steps I took in the formation of these; only, in general, you must know that some more chests I broke up for that purpose served me for timber, out of which I framed six sizeable handsome chairs and a sufficient number of stools. But now that I was turned joiner, I had another convenience to provide for. I had nothing wherein to inclose things, and preserve them from dust, except the chests, and they were quite unfit for holding liquors, victuals, and such like matters, in open shells, as most of my vessels were. Wherefore, having several boards now remaining of the boxes I had broken up for chairs and stools, I bethought me of supplying this great deficiency; so of these spare boards I composed a very tight closet, holding half a dozen broad shelves, shut up by a good pair of doors, with a lock and key to fasten them.

These jobs took me up almost three months. I was now again at leisure for further projects. I was uncertain as to my wife's return, but I was sure I could do nothing more grateful than increasing, by all means in my power, the accommodations of my house, for the more polite reception of her father, or any one else who might accompany her home in the way of a retinue, as she talked of. I saw plainly I had not room for lodging them, so I thought of adding a long apartment to one of my outer rooms, to range against the side of the rock; but reflecting that such a thing would be quite useless, unless I could finish it before my guests came, and not knowing how soon that might be, I resolved to quit this design; and I fell upon another, which required much less labour to perfect.

I remembered, that amongst those things my wife had packed up on board the ship, there were two of the largest sails, and a couple of smaller size. These I carried to the wood, and tried them in several places, to see where they might be disposed to most advantage in the nature of a tent; and, having found a convenient spot to my purpose, I cut divers poles for supporters, and making straining-lines of my mat-weed, I pitched a noble one, sufficient to entertain a numerous company, and so tight everywhere as to keep out the weather. The front of this new apartment I hung with blue cloth, which had a very genteel effect. I had almost forgotten to tell you, that I contrived (by hanging one of the smaller sails across, just in the middle, which I could let down or raise up at pleasure,) to divide the tent occasionally into two distinct rooms. When I had proceeded thus far, there were still wanting seats; so I took my axe and felled a couple of great trees, one from each side of the tent, sawed off the tops, and cut each of the trunks into two about the middle. These huge cylinders I rolled into the tent, with a good deal of toil and difficulty. Two of them I thrust into the inner division, and left two in the outer. I placed them as benches on both sides; then I shaved the upper face of each smooth and flat, and pared off all the little knots and roughnesses of the front; so that they were fitted to sit on, and their own weight fixed them in the place where I intended them to be. At the upper end of the farther chamber I set three chests lengthwise, for seats or any other use I might see fit to put them to.

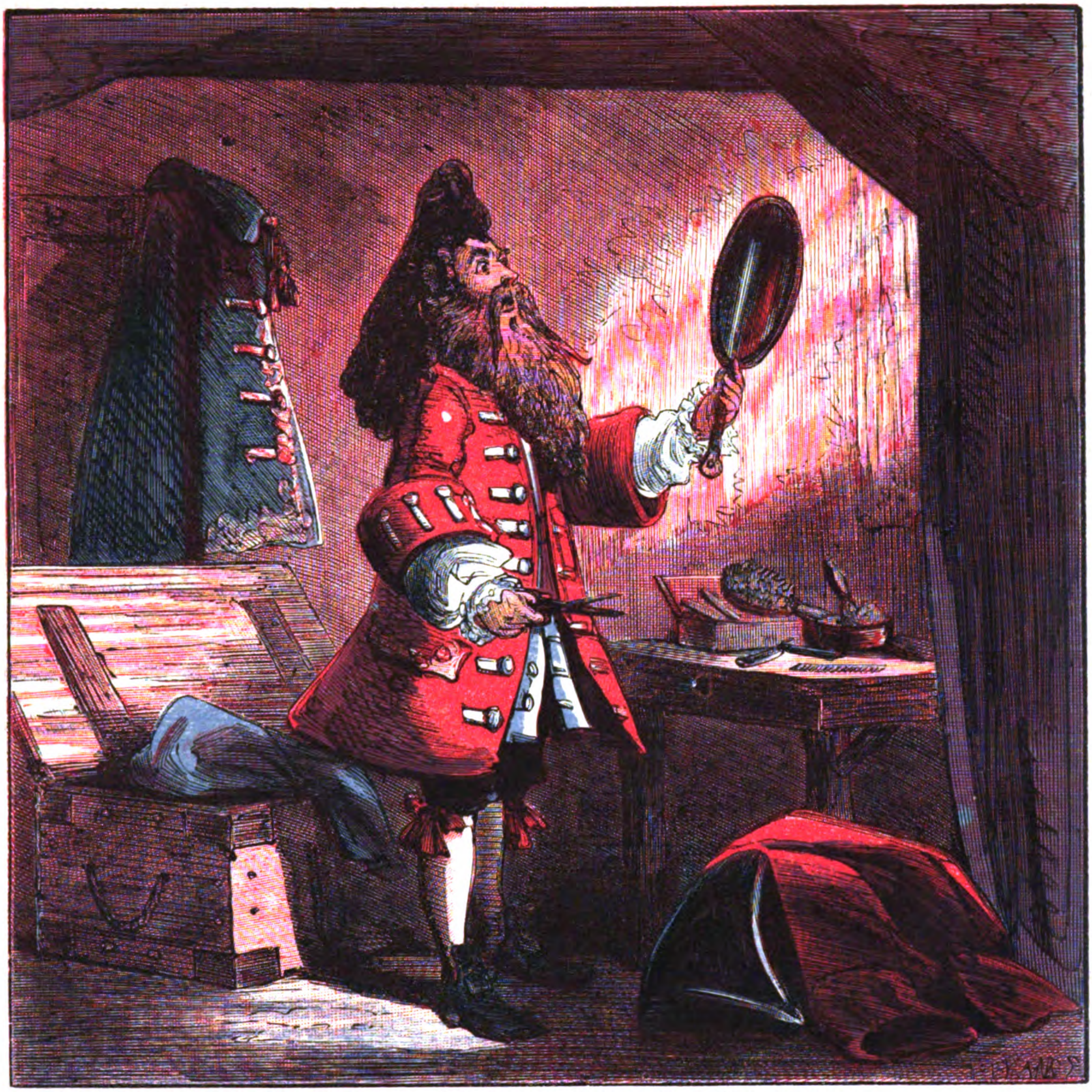
During these operations we were all hard at it, except Dicky in arms, and Sally, whom he kept in full employ; but Pedro, being a sturdy lad, could drive a nail, and lift or carry the things I wanted; and Jemmy and David, though so young, could pick up the chips, hold a nail or the lamp, or be in some way useful.

The nights being pretty long, after work was over, we used to sit all down to enjoy ourselves at a good meal; and then, after supper, my wife being absent, one or other of the young ones would begin with something they had before heard me speak of, by saying, "Daddy, how did you use to do this or that in England?" Then all ears were immediately open to catch my answer; and by their little questions and my answers they would sometimes draw me into a story of three hours long, till, perhaps, two out of three of my audience were falling asleep, and then we all went to bed. I frequently observed, that when we had begun upon Cornwall, and traversed the mines, the sea-coast, or talked of the fine gentlemen's seats, and such things, one would start up, and cry, "Aye, but daddy, what did you do when the crocodile came after you out of the water?" And another, before that subject was half ended, would be impatient for the story of the lion; and I always took notice, that the part each had made the most reflections on was always most acceptable to the same person; but poor Sally would never let the conversation drop without some account of the muletto,—it was such a pretty, gentle creature, she said.

CHAPTER XXIV.

My head, as well as my hands, had now been employed for five months, in adjusting all things in the most suitable manner for the reception of Youwarkee and her friends; but nobody coming, and light days getting forward apace, I began to grow very uneasy. Thought I, "I am afraid all the pains I have been taking will be to no purpose; for either her father will not let her return, or she has of herself come to such a resolution; for she knows I cannot follow her, and had rather, perhaps, live and enjoy the three children she has with her, amidst a number of her friends and acquaintance, than spend the remainder of her days with me and all our offspring in this solitude." But then I reflected she chose it herself, or at least declared herself perfectly satisfied, yea, delighted therewith. "And here are her children with me, the major part of them; yet, what can I think? since her return is put off till the swangeans are over at this arkoe, she will never bring her relations now in this unseasonable time for flight; therefore I must think, if she intended to return at all, it would have been before now, and as the case is not so, my fear of losing her entirely prevails greatly."

I had hardly finished my reflections, when I heard a musical voice call "Peter! Peter!" I started. "What's this?" says I; "it is not Youwarkee's voice!" Listening, I heard it again, but at so great a distance, I could but just perceive the sound. "Be it where it will," says I, "I will face it!" I then ran for my gun, and walked through the wood as fast as I could to the plain; but still I neither saw nor heard anything. I was then in hopes of seeing somebody on the lake, but no one appeared; for I was fully determined to make myself known to whomsoever I should meet; and, if possible, to gain some intelligence of my wife. But my hopes being at an end, I was returning, when I heard "Peter! Peter!" again, at a great distance, the sound coming from a different quarter than at first. Upon this I stopped, and heard it repeated; and it was as if the speaker approached nearer and nearer. Hereupon I stepped out of the wood (for I had just re-entered it upon my return home), when I saw two persons upon the swangean just over my head. I cried out, "Who's that?" and they immediately called again, "Peter! Peter!" "*Ors clam gee*," says I; that is, "Here am I." On this they directly took a small sweep round, and alighted just by me, when I perceived them to be my wife's countrymen, being dressed like her, with only broader chaplets about their heads, as she told me the glumms all wore. After a short obeisance, they asked me if I was the glumm Peter, *barkatt* (husband) to Youwarkee. I answered I was. They then told me they came with a message from Pendlehamby, colamb of Arndrumnstake, my *goppa* (father-in-law), and from Youwarkee, his daughter. I was vastly rejoiced to see them, and to hear only the name of my wife.



PETER WILKINS PREPARES FOR A VISIT FROM HIS WIFE'S RELATIONS.

But though I longed to know their message, I trembled to think of their mentioning it, as one of them was just going to do, for fear of hearing some things very displeasing; so I begged them to go through the wood with me to the grotto. But though I had thus put off their message, I could not forbear inquiring by the way after the health of my goppa, and my wife and children, how they got to Arndrumnstake, and how they found their relations and friends. They told me all were well; and that Youwarkee desired I would think on her with true affection, as she did on me.

Being arrived at the grotto, I desired my guests to sit down, and take such refreshments as I could prepare them. When they were seated, I went to work in order to provide them a repast. Seeing my fire piled up very high, and burning fierce, and the children about it, they wondered where they were got, and who they had come to, and turned their faces from it; but I setting some chairs, so that the light might not strike on their eyes, they liked the warmth well enough.

Whilst I was cooking, the poor children got all up in a corner, and stared at the strangers, and, by degrees, crept all backwards into the bedchamber, and hid themselves, for they had never before seen anybody but my own family.

I observed that one of my guests paid more than ordinary respect to the other; and though their graundees made no distinction between them, yet there was something much more noble in the address and behaviour of the latter; and I judged it proper to pay my respects to him in a somewhat more distinguishing manner, though so as not to offend the other if I should be mistaken.

I first presented a can of my Madeira, and took care, as if by accident, to give it to Mr. Uppermost, as I thought him, who drank half of it, and would have given the remainder to his companion, but I begged him to drink it all up, and his friend should be served with some presently. He did so, and thanked me by lifting his hand to his chin. I then gave the other a can of the same liquor, which he drank, and returned thanks as his companion had before. I then took a can myself, and telling them I begged leave to use the ceremony of my own country to them, I drank, wishing their own health and that of all relations at Arndrumnstake. He that I took for a superior fell a-laughing heartily. "Ha, ha, ha!" says he, "this is the very way my sister does every day at Arndrumnstake." "Your sister, sir," says I; "pray has she ever been in Europe or in England?" "Well," says he, "I have plainly discovered myself, which I did not intend to do yet; but truly, brother Peter, I mean none other than your own wife, Youwarkee."

The moment I knew who he was, I rose up, and taking him by the right hand, lifted it to my lips and kissed it. He likewise immediately stood up, and we embraced each other with great tenderness. I then begged him that he would not delay the happiness I hoped for, in a narrative from his mouth, how it fared with my father, wife, and children, and all their kinsfolks and friends, whom I had so often heard mentioned by my dearest Youwarkee, and so earnestly desired to see.

My brother Quangrollart (for that he told me was his name) was preparing to gratify my impatience; but seeing I had set the entertainment on the table, which consisted chiefly of bread, several sorts of pickles and preserves, with some cold salted fish, he said that eating would but interrupt the thread of his discourse, and therefore, with my leave, he would defer the relating of what I desired for a little while; which we all thinking most proper, I desired him and his friend (who might be another brother for aught I knew) to refresh themselves with the poor modicum I was able to provide them.

Whilst my brother Quangrollart was looking upon and handling his plate, being what he had never before seen, his friend had got the handle of one of the knives in his mouth, biting it with all his force; but finding he could make nothing of that end, he tried the other, and got champing the blade. Perceiving what he was at, though I could not help laughing, I rose, and begging pardon, took the knife from him, telling him I believed he was not acquainted with the use of that instrument; and that the design of it, which was called a knife, and of that other, called a fork, was the one to reduce the food into pieces proper for chewing, and the other to convey it to the mouth without daubing the fingers. I then showed him what use I put them to, by helping each of them therewith to somewhat, and by cutting a piece for myself, and putting it to my mouth with the fork.

They both smiled, and looked very well pleased; and then I told them that the plate was the only thing that need be daubed, and when that was taken away, the table remained clean. So, after I had helped each of them for the first time, I desired them to help themselves where they liked best; and, to say the truth, they did so more dexterously than I expected.

I took particular notice which part of my entertainment they ate most of, that I might bring a fresh supply of that when wanted; and I found, that though they tasted almost of everything else, they never once touched the fish, which put me upon desiring I might help them to some. At this they looked upon each other, which I readily knew the meaning of, and excused themselves. I took, however, a piece of fish on my own plate, and eating very heartily thereof, my brother desired me to give him a bit of it. I did so, taking care to cut it as free from bones as I could. He had no sooner put a piece in his mouth, but, "Rosig," says he to his friend, "this is *padsi*" (a fruit tasting like a fish). I thought indeed I had puzzled my brother when I gave him the fish, but by what he said of it he puzzled me; for I knew not what he meant by padsi, my wife having told me they had no fish. However, I cut Rosig a slice; and he agreeing it was padsi, they both ate heartily of it.

While we were at dinner, my brother told me he thought he saw some of my children just now, for his sister had informed him she had five more at home; and he asked me why they did not appear and eat with us. I excused their coming, and said, when we had done they should have some victuals. But he would not be put off, and entreated me to admit them. So I called them by their names, and they came, all but Dicky, who was asleep in his hammock. I told them, that the gentleman, pointing to Quangrollart, was their uncle, their mamma's brother, and ordered them to pay their obeisance to him, which they severally did. I then made them salute Rosig, who would have had them sit at our table, but I positively forbade it; and giving each of them a little of what we had before us, they carried it to the chests, and ate it there.

When we had done, the children helped me to clear the table, and were retiring out of the room; but then I recalled them, and desired their uncle to excuse their stay, for as he had promised me news of their mammy and her family, it would be the height of pleasure to them to hear him. He seemed very much pleased with this motion, desiring by all means they might be present while he told his story.

CHAPTER XXV.

Having set on the table some brandy and Madeira, and each of us taken one glass of both, I showed, by the attentiveness of my aspect, how desirous I was he should proceed to what he had promised. Observing this, he went on in the following manner: "Brother Peter," says he, "my sister Youwarkee, arrived very safe at

Arndrumnstake the third day after she left you, and after a very severe flight to the dear little Hallycarnie, who was a full day and a night on her graundee, and at last would not have been able to have reached Battringdrigg but for my sister's assistance; but from Battringdrigg, after some hours' rest, they came with pleasure to the White Mountains, from whence, after a small stay, they arrived at Arndrumnstake.

"They alighted at our *coovett* (mansion), but were opposed at their entrance by the guards, to whom they did not choose to discover themselves till notice was given to my father; who, upon hearing that some strangers desired admittance to him, sent me to introduce them.

"When I came to the guard, I found three gawreys and a *glumm-boss* (young man), whose appearance prejudiced me very much in their favour. I then asked their business with the colamb. Youwarkee told me they came not about business of public concern, relating to the colamb's office, but out of a dutiful regard, as relations, to kiss his knees. 'My father,' said I, 'shall know it immediately; but first, pray inform me of your name?' 'Your father!' replied Youwarkee; 'are you my brother Quangrollart?' 'My name is so,' says I, 'but I have only one sister, now with my father, and how I can be your brother I am not able to guess.' 'Have you never had another sister?' says she. 'Yes,' says I, 'but she is long since dead; her name was Youwarkee.' At my mentioning her name she fell upon my neck in tears, crying, 'My dear brother, I am that dead sister Youwarkee, and these with me are some of my children, for I have five more; but pray how does my father and sister?'

"The guard, observing the several passages between us, were amazed to think who it could be had so familiarly embraced me; especially as they plainly saw I only played a passive part in it.

"When I went in, I did not think proper directly to inform my father what had happened, but calling my sister Hallycarnie, desired her advice what to do; 'For,' says I, 'surely this must be some impostor; and as my father has scarce subdued his sorrow for my sister's loss, if this gawrey should prove a deceiver, it will only revive his affliction; therefore let's consider what had better be done in the matter.'

"Hallycarnie seemed to think it was some cheat, as well as I did, for we could neither of us conceive that anything but death, or being slit, could have kept Youwarkee so long from the knowledge of her relations. 'Besides, brother,' says Hallycarnie, 'she cannot surely be so much altered in fifteen years but you must have known her; and yet, now I think, it is possible, you being so much younger, may have forgot her; but I so well recollect her, that I think I could hardly be imposed upon by any deceiver.'

"I then desired her to go with me to the strangers, and see if she could make any discovery. She did so, and had no sooner entered the *abb* (room) but Youwarkee called out, 'My dear sister Hallycarnie!' and she as readily recollecting Youwarkee, they in transport embraced each other; and then your wife presented to us her three children. It proved the tenderest scene, except the following, I ever saw.

"My father having kept his chamber some time with a fever, we consulted how we might introduce our sister and her children to him with as little surprise as might be, for fear of a relapse by too great a hurry of his spirits. At length, we concluded I should go tell him that some strangers had arrived, desiring to see him, but on inquiry, finding their business was too trifling to trouble him upon, I had dispatched them. I was then to say, how like one of them was to my sister Youwarkee; and whilst I was speaking, Hallycarnie was to enter and keep up the discourse till we should find a proper opportunity of discovery. I went in, therefore, as had been agreed; and upon mentioning the name of Youwarkee, my father fetched a deep sigh, and turned away from me in tears. At that instant Hallycarnie came in as by accident. 'Sir,' says she, 'what makes you so sad?' 'Oh!' says he, 'I have heard a name that will never be out of my heart till I am in *hoximo*' (place of burial). 'What, I suppose, my sister?' ''Tis true,' replied he, 'the same.' Says she, 'I fancied so, for I have just seen a stranger as like her as could be, and would have sworn it was she if that had been possible. I thought my brother had been so imprudent as to mention her to you. He did not do well to rip up an old sore he knew was almost healed, and make it break out afresh.' 'Ah! no, child,' says my father, 'that sore never has nor can be healed. O Great Image? why can't I, by some means or other, ascertain what end she came to?'

"'Sir,' says my sister, 'I think you are much to blame for these exclamations after so long absence; for if she be dead, what use are they of? and if she be not, all may be well, and you may still see her again.' 'Oh! never, never!' says my father, 'but could I be sure she was alive, I would take a swangean, and never close my graundee till I found her, or dropt dead in the search.' 'And suppose you could meet with her, sir,' says I, 'the very sight would overcome you and be dangerous.' 'No; believe me, boy,' says he, 'were she to come in this moment, I should suffer no surprise, but pleasure.' 'Then, sir,' says Hallycarnie, 'will you excuse me if I introduce her?' and went out directly, without staying for an answer.

"When she was gone, 'Quangrollart,' says my father, sternly, 'what is the meaning of your and your sister's playing thus upon my weakness? This is a disobedience I never expected from either of you.'

"'The Great Image attend me!' says I. 'Sir, you have much mistaken me; but I will not leave you in doubt, even till Hallycarnie's return: you shall see Youwarkee with her; for all our discourse has been concerted to prepare you for her reception with three of her children.' 'And am I, then,' says he, in a transport, 'still to be blessed?'

"By this time we heard them coming, but my poor father had not power to go to meet them; and upon Youwarkee's nearer approach to fall at his knees, his limbs failing him, he sunk and fell backwards on the couch which stood behind him, and being quite motionless, we concluded him to be stone-dead. On this the women became entirely helpless—screaming only, and wringing their hands in extravagant postures. But I called for the *callentar* (doctor), who, by holding his nose, pinching his feet, and other applications, in a little time brought him to his senses again.

"You may easily conceive both the confusion we were all in during my father's disorder, and the congratulations upon his recovery; so I shall pass them by, and come to our more serious discourse after my father and your wife had, without speaking a word, wept themselves quite dry on each other's necks.

"My father then looking upon the three children (who were also crying to see their mammy cry), 'And who are these?' says he. 'These, sir,' says Youwarkee, 'are three of eight of your grandchildren.' 'And where is your barkatt?' says he. 'At home with the rest, sir,' replied she, 'who are too small to come so far yet. But, sir,' says she, 'pray excuse my answering you any more questions, till you are a little recovered from the commotion I perceive my presence has brought upon your spirits.' My father was with much difficulty prevailed upon to part with her out of his sight; but the callentar pressing it, we were all dismissed, and he laid down to rest."

My brother would have gone on, but I told him, as it grew near time for repose, and he and Rosig must needs be fatigued with so long a flight, if they pleased we would defer his farther relation till the next day, which they both agreed to. I laid them in my own bed, myself sleeping in a spare hammock.

CHAPTER XXVI.

THE next day, I prepared again of the best of everything for my new guests. I killed three fowls, and ordered Pedro (who was as good a cook almost as myself) to get them ready for boiling, whilst we took a walk to the lake. Though we went out in the clearest part of the morning, I heard no complaint of the light. I took the liberty to ask my brother if the light did not offend him, for I told him my wife could not bear so much without spectacles. "What is that spectacle?" says he. "Something I made your sister," says I, "to prevent the inconvenience of too much light upon her eyes." He said the light was scarce at all troublesome to him, for he had been in much greater, and was used to it; and that the glumms, who travelled much abroad, could bear more light than the gawreys, who stayed at home, and very rarely admitted glumms amongst them before marriage. For his own part, he said, he had an office at Crashdoorpt, which, though he executed chiefly by a deputy, obliged him to reside there sometimes for a long season together; and that being a more luminous country than Arndrumnstake, light was become familiar to him.

I was upon the tenter whilst he spoke, lest, before he had done, a question I had a thousand times thought to have asked my wife should slip out of my head, as it had so often done before—viz., what the meaning of the word slit was when applied to a man. So, on his pausing, I said, that his mention of Crashdoorpt reminded me of inquiring what crashee meant, when applied to a glumm or gawrey. It would be no hard task, he said, to satisfy me in respect of that, as I already understood the nature of the graundee; whereupon, he went on thus: "Slitting is the only punishment we use to incorrigible criminals; our method is, where any one has committed a very heinous offence, he has a long string tied round his neck in the manner of a cravat; and then two glumms, one at each end, take it in their hands, standing side by side with him; two more stand before him, and two behind him; all which in that manner take flight, so that the string keeps the criminal in the middle of them; thus they conduct him to Crashdoorpt, which lies farther on the other side of Arndrumnstake than this arkoe does on this side of it, and is just such an arkoe as ours, but much bigger within the rocks. When they come to the coovett they alight, where my deputy immediately orders the malefactor to be slit, so that he can never more return to Normnbdsgrutt, or indeed by any means get out of that arkoe, but must end his days there. The method of slitting is thus: the criminal is laid on his back with his graundee open, and after a recapitulation of his crimes and his condemnation, the officer with a sharp stone slips the gume between each of the filuses of the graundee, so that he can never fly more. But what is still worse to new comers, if they are not very young, is the light of the place, which is so strong, that it is some years before they can overcome it, if they ever do."

"But pray, brother," says I, "how comes that light country to agree so well with you?" "Why," says he, "the colambat of Crashdoorpt is reckoned one of the most honourable employments of the state, by reason of the hazard of it, and the person accepting it must be young; it was, by my father's interest at court, given to me at nine years of age; my friend Rosig has followed my fortune in it ever since, being much about my age, and has a post under me there; in short, by being obliged to be so much there, and from so tender an age too, I have pretty well inured myself to any light."

By this time we had got home again to dinner, which Pedro had set out as elegantly as my country could afford, consisting of pickles and preserves, as usual, a dish of hard eggs, and boiled fowls with spinach.

My guests stared at the fowls, but never offered to touch them, or seemed in the least inclined to do so. I put a wing on each of their plates, and a leg on my own; but perceiving they waited to see how I managed it, I stuck in my fork, cut off a slice, dipped it in the salt, and put it in my mouth. Just as I did they did, and appeared very well pleased with the taste. "I never in my life," says Rosig, "saw a *crallmott*" (fruit tasting like fowl) "of this shape before;" and laid hold of a leg (taking it for a stick I had thrust in, as he told me afterwards), intending to pull it out; but finding it grew there, "Mr. Peter," says he, "you have the oddest shaped crallmotts that ever I saw; pray what part of the woods do they grow in?" "Grow in?" says I. "Aye," says he; "I mean, whether your crallmott trees are like ours or not?" "Why," says I, "these fowls are about my yard and the wood too." "What!" says he, "is it a running plant like a *bolt*" (gourd). "No, no," says I; "a bird that I keep tame about my house; and these" (showing him the eggs) "are the eggs of these birds, and the birds grow from them." "Pr'ythee," says Quangrollart, "never let's inquire what they are till we have dined; for my brother Peter will give us nothing we need be afraid of."

It growing into the night by that time, we rose from the table. I set a bowl of punch before them, made with my treacle and sour ram's-horn juice, which they pulled off plentifully. After some bumpers had gone round, I desired my brother to proceed where he left off in the account of my wife's reception by her father.

"When my father," says he, "had recovered himself by some hours' repose, the first thing he did was to order my sister Youwarkee to be called; who coming into his presence, he took her from her knees, kissed her, and ordered all to depart but myself and Hallycarnie. Then bidding us sit down, says he to your wife, 'Daughter, your appearance has given me the truest cordial I could have received, and I hope will add both to my health and years. I have heard you suspect my anger for some part of your past conduct' (for she had hinted so to her sister and me); 'but, my dear life! I am this day a father of a new-born child, and not of one only, but of many; and this day shall not be spent in sorrow and excuses, neither will I hereafter permit you to beg my forgiveness; for know, child, that a bevevolence freely bestowed, is better than twice its value obtained by petition: I therefore, as in the presence of the Great Image, at this instant erase from my mind for ever what thoughts I may have had prejudicial to the love I ever bore you, as I will have you to do all such as may cloud the unreserved complacency you used to appear with before me. And now, Quangrollart,' says he, 'let the guard be drawn out before my coovett, and let the whole country be entertained for seven days; proclaim liberty to all persons confined, and let no sorrow appear in any face throughout my colambat.'

"I retired, and gave the necessary orders for the speedy despatch of my father's commands; and nothing for seven days was to be heard through the whole district of Arndrumnstake, but joy and the name of Youwarkee.

"My father, so soon as he had despatched the above orders, sent for the children before him, whom he kissed and blessed; and then he ordered Youwarkee to let him know what had befallen her in her absence, and where she lived, and with whom.

"Youwarkee was setting out with some indirect excuses; but my father absolutely forbade it, and charged her only to mention plain facts. So she began with her swangean, and the accidental fall she had, your taking her in after it, and saving her life. She told him your continued kindness so wrought upon her, that she found herself incapable of disesteeming you, but never showed her affection, till having examined every particular of your life, and finding you a worthy man, she could not avoid becoming your wife; and she said, the reason why she always declined being seen by her friends in their swangeans, was for fear she should be forced from you, though she longed to see us; and that at last she was come by your consent, and that had it rested there only, she might have come much sooner, for that you would often have had her show herself to her friends when you heard them, having strong desires yourself to be known to them. My father, upon hearing this, was so charmed with your tenderness to his daughter, that you already rival his own issue in his esteem; and he is persuaded he can never do enough for you or your children.

"The noise of Youwarkee's return soon spread over all Normnbdsgrsutt; and King Georigetti sent express to my father, to command him to attend with your wife and children at Brandleguarp, his capital. Thither accordingly we all went with a grand retinue, and stayed twenty days. The king took great delight, as well as the ladies of the court, to hear Youwarkee and her children talk English, and in being informed of you and your way of life; and so fond was Yaccombourse (who, though not the king's wife, is instead of one) of my nephew Tommy, that upon my father's return she took him to herself, and assured my sister he should continue near her person till he was qualified for better preferment. The king's sister, Jahamel, would also have taken Patty into her service, but she begged to be permitted to attend her mother to Arndrumnstake; so Hallycarnie, her sister, who chose to continue with Jahamel, was received in her room.

"Upon my father's return to Arndrumnstake, he found no less than fifteen expresses from several colambs, desiring to rejoice with him on the return of his daughter, with particular invitations to him and her to spend some time with them. My father could do no less than severally visit them with Youwarkee, attended by a grand retinue, spending more or less days with each, hoping, when that was over, he should have some little time to spend in retirement with his daughter before her departure, who now began to be uneasy for you. But upon their return from those visits, at the end of four months' progress, they found themselves in as little likelihood of retirement as the first day; for the inferior colambs were continually posting away, one after the other, to perform their respects to my father, and all the inferior magistrates of smaller districts sending to know when they might be permitted to do the same. Poor Youwarkee, who saw no end of it, expressed her concern for you in so lively a manner to my father, that he resolved to keep her with him till the next winter set in in these parts, and then to accompany her himself to Grandevolet. In the meanwhile, that you might not remain in suspense, he ordered me to despatch messengers express to inform you of the reasons of her stay; but I told him I would execute that office myself, with my friend Rosig, with which he was very well pleased; enjoining me to assure you of his affection, and that he himself was debtor to you for the love you had shown his daughter.

"Thus, brother," says Quangrollart, "I hope I have acquitted myself of my charge to your satisfaction; and it only now remains that I return you my acknowledgments for your hearty welcome to myself and friend, which (with concern I speak it) I am afraid I shall not have an opportunity to return at Arndrumnstake, the distance being so immensely great, and you not having the graundee. To-morrow my friend and I will set out on our return home."

Quangrollart having done, I told him I could not but blush at the load of undeserved praises he had laid on me; and though it gave me pain to think of losing my wife so long, yet his account of her health, and the company he assured me she should return in, would doubly compensate my loss; and I begged of him, if it might be with any convenience, he would let some messenger come the day before her, to give me notice of her approach. As to their departure on the morrow, I told them I could by no means think of that, as I had proposed to catch them a dinner of fresh fish in the lake, and to show them my boat, and how and where I came into this arkoe, believing, by what I had observed, it would be no small novelty to them. So having engaged them one day more, we parted for that night to rest.

CHAPTER XXVII.

I WAS heartily sorry to lose my brother thus quickly; however, I was resolved to omit nothing I could do the few remaining hours of Quangrollart's stay with me, to rivet myself thoroughly in his esteem, and to dismiss him with a most cordial affection to me and the rest of my children here with him. I rose early to provide a good breakfast for my guests, and considering we should be in the air most part of the day, I treated them with a dish of hot fish soup, and set before them on the table a jovial bottle of brandy and my silver can. This last piece I chose to shew them as a specimen of the richness of my household furniture, concealing most of my other curiosities till Pendlehamby, my father-in-law's, arrival.

After a plenteous meal, we set out on our pleasure expedition, having told Pedro what to get for dinner. We first took a turn in the wood, but I did not lead them near my tent, because I did not choose my wife should hear of that till she came. I then showed them my farm-yard and poultry, which they were strangely surprised at. They asked me a hundred questions about the fowl, which I answered, and told them these were some such as they had eaten and called crallmotts the day before. I afterwards carried them to hear the music of those plants that I call my cream-cheese, which, as there happened to be a small breeze stirring, made their usual melody.

When we had diverted ourselves some time in the wood, I showed them my boat. At first view, they wondered what use it was for. To satisfy them in that, I stepped in, desiring them to follow me, but they did not choose to venture till I assured them they might come with the greatest safety. At length, with some persuasion, I prevailed on them to trust themselves with me.

We first rowed to the bridge, where I informed them by what accident I was drawn down the stream on the other side of the rock, and, after a tedious and dangerous passage, discharged safe in the lake through that opening.

I then told them how surprised I had been, just before I knew Youwarkee, with the sight of her country folks, first on the lake, and then taking flight from that bridge.

After we had viewed the bridge, I took them to my rill, (for by this time they were reconciled to the boat, and would help me to row it,) and showed them how I got water. I then landed them to see the method of fishing, for which purpose I laid my net in proper order, and fixing it as usual, I brought it round at the rill, and had a very good haul, with which I desired them to help me up, for I had a mind to let them have a hand in the sport, with which they were pleased. I perceived, however, the fish were not agreeable to them; for when any one came near their hands, they avoided touching it. Notwithstanding, having got the net on shore, I laid it open; but to see how they stared at the fish, creeping backwards, and then at me and the net, made me very merry to myself, though I did not care to show it.

I drew up at that draught twenty-two fishes in all, of which a few were near an ell long, several about two feet, and some smaller. When they saw me take up the large ones in my arms, and tumble them into the boat, they both, unrequested, took up the small ones, and put them in likewise; but dropping them every time they struck their tails, the fish had commonly two or three falls ere they came to the boat.

I asked them how they liked that sport, and they told me it was something very surprising that I should know just where the fish were, as they could see none before I pulled them up, and yet they did not hear me whistle. I perceived by this they imagined I could whistle the fish together as well as the fowls.

Upon our return, as there were too many fish to carry up by hand to the grotto, I desired them to take a turn upon the shore till I fetched my cart for it. I made what haste I could, and brought one of my guns with me, which I determined, upon some occasion or other, to fire off; for I took it they would be more surprised at the explosion of that than at anything they had yet seen. Having loaded my fish and marched backwards, they eyed my cart very much, and wondered what made the wheels move about so, till I explained the reason of it, and then they desired to draw it, which they did with great eagerness, one at a time, the other observing its motion.

As we advanced homewards, there came a large water-fowl, about the size of a goose, flying across us. I bid them look at it, which they did. Says my brother, "I wish I had it!" "If you have a mind for it," says I, "I'll give it you." "I wish you would," says he, "for I never saw anything like it in my life!" "Stand still, then," says I; and stepping two or three yards before them, I fired, and down it dropped. I then turned about to observe what impression the gun had made on them, and could not help laughing to see them so terrified. Rosig had got fifty paces from me, and my brother was lying behind the cart of fish. I called, and desired them to come to me, telling them they should receive no harm, and offered my brother the gun to handle; but he, thanking me as much as if he had, retired to Rosig.

Finding they made a serious affair of it, I was under some apprehensions for the consequences of my frolic. So I laid down the gun by the fish, and moving slowly towards them, expostulated with them upon their disorder, assuring them, that though the object before them might surprise them, it was but a common instrument in my country, which every boy used to take birds with. This, and a great deal more, brought us together again; and when we came to reasoning coolly, they blamed me for not giving them notice. Says I, "There was no room for me to explain the operation of the gun to you whilst the bird was on the wing, for it would have been gone out of my reach before I could have made you sensible of that, and so have escaped me. But surely you could have no diffidence in me; that is highly unbecoming of man to man, especially relations; and, above all, a relation to whom you have brought the welcomest news upon earth, in the love of my dear father, and his reconciliation to my wife."

At last, I brought them to confess that it was only a groundless terror which suppressed their reason for a while. I then stepped for the bird, and brought it to them: it was a very fine feathered creature, and they were very much delighted with it, and desired it might be laid upon the cart and carried home.

All the way we went, nothing was to be heard from them but my praises, and what a great and wise man brother Peter was. "And no wonder now, sister Youwarkee," says Quangrollart, "could never leave him."

I once more had the pleasure of entertaining them with the old fare, and some of the fresh fish, part boiled and part fried, which last they chose before the boiled. We made a very cheerful supper, talking over that day's adventures, and of their ensuing journey home, after which we retired to rest, mutually pleased. We all arose early the next morning. We took a short breakfast, after which Quangrollart and Rosig stuck their chaplets with the longest and most beautiful feathers of the bird I shot, thinking them a fine ornament. Being now ready for departure, they embraced me and the children, and were just taking flight, when it came into my head, that as the king's mistress had taken Tommy into her protection, it might possibly be a means of ingratiating him in her favour if I sent him the flageolet (for I had, in my wife's absence, made two others nearly as good, by copying exactly after it). So I stepped in, and fetching the flageolet, presented it to Rosig. My brother, seeing it look very oddly, with holes in it, desired (after he had asked if it was not a little gun) to have the handling of it. Being inquisitive into the use of it, I told him it was a musical instrument, and played several tunes upon it, with which he and his companion were in raptures. I doubt not they would have sat a week to hear me, if I would have gone on; but I desiring the latter to take care of its safety, he put it in his *colapet* (provision bag), and away they went.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

The news my late visitors had brought me set my mind quite at ease; and now I began to consider what preparations I must make against the return of my wife; for I concluded there would be a great number of attendants; and, as her father would no doubt pique himself upon the grandeur of his equipage, if his followers should see nothing in me but a plain dirty fellow, I should be contemned, and perhaps my wife, through my means, lose that respect the report of me had in a great measure procured her.

The first thing I did was to look into my chests again, wherein I knew there were many of the Portuguese captain's clothes, and take out such as would be most suitable to the occasion. I found a blue cloth laced coat, double-breasted, with very large gold buttons, and very broad gold button-holes, lined with white silk; a pair of black velvet breeches, a large gold-laced hat, and a point neckcloth, with two or three very good shirts, two pairs of red-heeled shoes, a pair of white and another of scarlet silk stockings, two silver-hilted swords, and several other good things. But upon examination of these clothes, and by a letter or two I found in the pockets of some of them, directed to Captain Jeremiah Vauclaile, in Threadneedle Street, London, I judged these belonged to the English captain taken by the Portuguese ship in Africa. I immediately tried some of them on, and thought they became me very well, and laid all those in particular chests, to be ready when the time came.

Upon examining the contents of another chest, I found a long scarlet cloak, laced, a case of razors, a pair of scissors and shaving-glass, a long wig, and two bob wigs; and laid them by, for I was determined to make myself appear as considerable as I could.

When I had laid them in proper order, Pedro and I went several days to work with the net, and caught abundance of fish, which I salted and dried; and we cut a great quantity of long grass, to dry and spread in my tent for the lower gentry, and made up a little cock of it; we also cut and piled up a large parcel of fire-wood; and as I had now about thirty of the best fish-skins, I nailed some on for cushions to my chairs, and the rest I made rugs of.

I had observed, that my brother Quangrollart and Rosig neither of them had beards; I therefore conjectured that none of their countrymen had any. "So," says I, "if that is the case, as I have now both scissors and razors, I will e'en cut off mine to be like them." I then set up my glass, taking my scissors in hand; but had not quite closed them for a snip, when I considered, that as I was not of their country, whether it would not add to my dignity to appear with my beard before them. This I debated some time, and then determined in favour of my beard; but as this question still ran in my mind, I some days after prepared again for execution, and took a large snip off; when says I, "How can I tell whether I can shave, after all? I have not tried yet; and if I can't, how much more ridiculous shall I look with stubbed hair here and there, than with this comely beard?" I must say, I never in my life had so long a debate with myself, it holding upwards of two months; till one day, dressing myself in a suit I had not before tried on, and looking in the glass; "It can never be," says I, "that this grave beard should suit with these fine clothes; no, I will have it off, I am resolved." I had no sooner given another good snip, than spying the cloak, I had a mind to see how I looked in that. "Aye," says I, "now I see I must either wear this beard or not this cloak. How majestic does it look!" I had no sooner fixed on this, than I took up all the implements to put again into the chest, and the last of them being the glass, I would have one more look before I parted with it; but my beard made such a frightful figure with the three great cuts in it, that though it grieved me to think I must part with it, I fell to work with my scissors, and off it came.

Winter coming on, as I knew I must soon have more occasion than ever for a stock of provisions, I laid in enough for a little army, and when the hurry of that was over, I kept a sharp look-out upon the level, in expectation of my company, and had once a mind to have brought my tent thither to entertain them in; but it was too much trouble for the hands I had, so I dropped the design. I took one or two of the children with me every day, and grew more and more uneasy at hearing nothing of them.

Thinks I, "Youwarkee, I am sure, would come if she could; but then," says I, "here is a long flight, and to be undertaken by an old man, too, who is now safe and quiet at home, and, having his daughter with him, is no doubt desirous of continuing so: now what cares he for my uneasiness? Nay, it is not impossible, but as I have already had one message to inform me Tommy and Hallycarnie are provided for, so much as to say in plain English I shall see them no more, so I may soon have another by some sneaking puppy or other, whom I suppose I am to treat for the news, to tell me my wife and Patty are provided for, too, and I am to thank my kind benefactors for taking so great a charge off my hands. Am I? No! I'll first set my tent, clothes, chairs, and all other mementoes of my stupidity on fire, and by perishing, what's left of us, in the blaze, exterminate at once the wretched remains of a deserted family. I hate to be made a fool of!"

I had scarcely finished my soliloquy, when I heard a monstrous sort of groan or growl in the air, like thunder at a distance. "What's that, Pedro?" says I; "look about, boy; do you see anything?" We heard it again. "Hark!" says Pedro, "it comes from that end of the lake." Whilst we were listening to the third sound, says Pedro, "Daddy, yonder is something black upon the rock I did not see just now." "Why, it moves," says I, "Pedro; here is news, good or bad." "Hope the best, daddy," says Pedro; "I wish it may be mammy." "No," says I, "Pedro, I don't expect her before I hear from her." "Why, then," says Pedro, "here they come; I can plainly discern three of them. If my brother Tommy should be there, daddy!" "No," says I, "Pedro, no such good news."

By this time the three persons were so near, that seeing us, they called out "Peter!" and I making signs for them to alight, they settled just before me, and told me that Pendlehamby and Youwarkee would be with me by light next day.

I had no sooner heard this, but so far was I from firing my tent, that I invited them to my grotto, and set the best cheer before them.

I asked them who came with my father; and they told me about two hundred guards. That knocked me up again, as I had but prepared for about sixty. I then asked them, what loud noise it was, and if they heard it just before I saw them over the rock. They told me they heard only the *gripsack* (trumpet) they brought with them to distinguish them from ordinary messengers; and then one of them showed it me, for I had before only taken it for a long staff in his hand. "But," says he, "you will hear them much louder tomorrow, and longer, before they come to you."

Having entertained them to their content, I sent them to rest, not choosing to ask any questions; for I avoided anticipating the pleasure of hearing all the news from Youwarkee herself. However, the boys and I prepared what provisions of fowl and fish we could in the time, to be ready cold against they came, and then laid down ourselves.

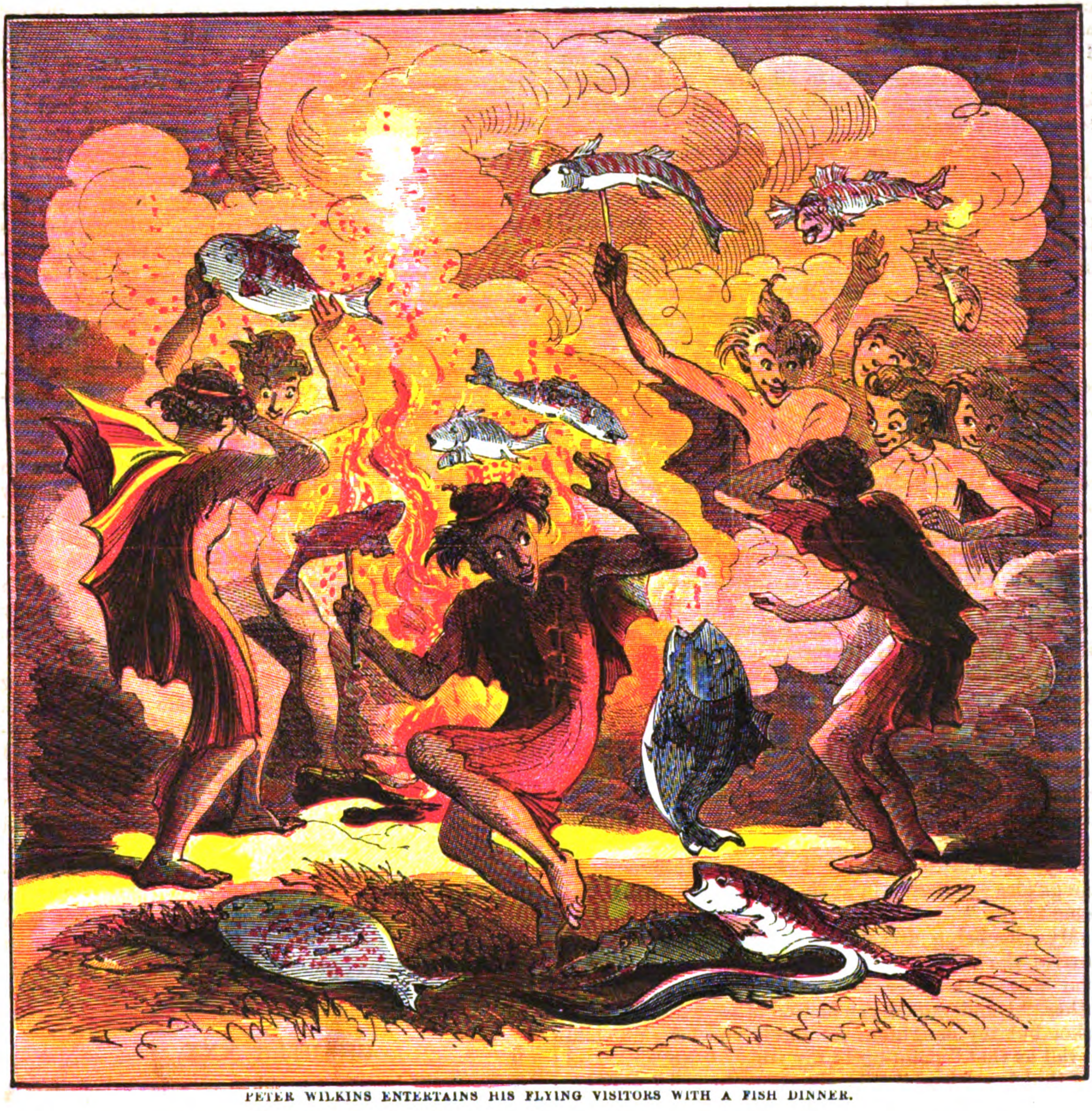
CHAPTER XXIX.

My mind ran so all night upon the settling the formality with which I should receive Pendlehamby, that I got little or no rest. In the morning, I spread my table in as neat a manner as I could, and having dressed myself, Pedro, Jemmy, and David, we marched to the plain, myself carrying a chair, and each of them a stool. I was dressed in a cinnamon-coloured gold-button coat, scarlet waistcoat, velvet breeches, white silk stockings, the campaign-wig flowing, a gold-laced hat and feather, point cravat, silver sword, and over all my cloak. As for my sons, they had the clothes my wife made before she went.

When we heard them coming, I marshalled the children in the order they were to sit, and charged them to do as they saw me do, but to keep rather a half-pace backwarder than me; and then sitting down in my chair, I ordered Pedro to his stool on my right hand, and Jemmy to his on my left, and David to the left of Jemmy.

I then sent two of the messengers to meet them, with instructions to let Youwarkee know where I waited for them, that they might alight at a small distance before they came to me. This she having communicated to her father, the order ran through the whole corps immediately when and where to alight.

After we had heard for some time a sound as of distant rumbling thunder, or of a thousand bears in consort, serenading in their hoarsest voices, we could just perceive by the clearness of the dawn gilding the edge of the rock, a black stream arise above the summit of it, seemingly about forty paces broad; when, the noise increasing very much, the stream arose broader and broader, and then you might perceive rows of poles, with here and there a streamer; and as soon as ever the main body appeared above the rock, there was such a universal shout as rent the air, and echoing from the opposite rock, returned the salute to them again. This was succeeded by a most ravishing sound of voices in song, which continued till they came pretty near me; and then the first line, consisting of all the trumpets, mounting a considerable height, and still blowing, left room for the next ranks, about twenty abreast, to come forward beneath them; each of which dividing in the middle, alighted in ranks at about twenty paces distant from my right and left,



PETER WILKINS ENTERTAINS HIS FLYING VISITORS WITH A FISH DINNER.

making a lane before me, at the farther end of which Pendlehamby and his two daughters alighted, with about twenty of his guards behind them; the remainder, consisting of about twenty more, coming forward over my head, and alighting behind me; and during this whole ceremony the gripsacks sounded, with such a din, it was astonishing.

Poor Youwarkee, who knew nothing of my dress, or of the loss of my beard, was thunderstruck when she saw me, not being able to observe any visage I had for my great wig and hat; but putting a good face on the matter, and not doubting but if the person she saw was not me, she should soon find her husband, for she knew the children by their clothes, she came forward at her father's right hand, I sitting as great as a lord, till they came within about thirty paces of my seat; and then gravely rising, I pulled off my hat and made my obeisance, and again at ten steps forwarder; so that I made my third low bow close at the feet of Pendlehamby, the children all doing the same. I then kneeling with one leg, embraced his right knee; who raising me up, embraced me. Then retiring three steps, and coming forward again, I embraced Youwarkee some time, during which the children observed my pattern with Pendlehamby, who took them up and kissed them.

I whispered Youwarkee to know if any more of her relations were in the train, to whom I ought to pay my compliments; she told me only her sister Hallycarnie, just behind her father. I then saluted her, and stepping forward to the old gentleman's left hand, I ushered him through the lines of guards to my chair, where I caused him to sit down, with Youwarkee and Hallycarnie on each side, and myself on the left of Hallycarnie.

After expressing the great honour done me by Pendlehamby in this visit, I told him I had a little grotto about half a mile through the wood, to which, if he pleased to command, we would retire; for I had only placed that seat to relieve him immediately upon his descent.

Pendlehamby rose, and all the gripsacks sounded; he leading Youwarkee in his right hand, and I Hallycarnie in mine.

At the grotto, my father being seated, taking Youwarkee in my hand, we paid our obedience to him. I would have asked his pardon for taking his daughter to wife without his leave, but he refused to hear me, telling me I was mistaken, he had consented. I was replying I knew he had been so good as to pass it over, but that would not excuse—when he again interrupted me, by saying, "If I did approve it, and esteem you, what can you desire more?"

I then gave each of them a silver can of Madeira, and Youwarkee retired. I soon made an excuse to follow her, to learn if she was pleased with what I had done. Says she, "My dearest, what is come to you? I will promise you, but for fear of surprising my father, I had disowned you for my husband." "Dear Youwarkee," says I, "do you approve my dress, for this is the English fashion?" "This, Peter," says she, "I perceived attracted all eyes to you, and, indeed, is very showy, and I approve it in regard to those we are now to please; but you are not to imagine I esteem you more in this than in your own old jacket, for it is Peter I love, in this and all things else; but step in again, I shall only dress, and come to you."

My wife being dressed in her English gown, just crossed the room where my father sat, to see Dicky, who was in another side-room. "Son," says my father, "I understood you had no other woman in this arkoe but my daughter; for surely you have no child so tall as that," pointing to my wife. "No, sir," said I, "that is a friend." "Is she come to you," says he, "in my daughter's absence?" "Oh, sir," says I, "she is very well known to my wife."

Whilst we were talking, in comes Youwarkee, with the child in her arms, which she kept covered to her wrists with her gown-sleeve to hide her graundee; and playing with the child, talked only in English to it. "Is this your youngest son?" says my father. I told him "Yes." "Pray, madam," says I, "bring the child to my father." "Madam," says he, "you have a fine baby in your arms; has his mother seen him since she came home?" He speaking this in his own tongue, and Youwarkee looking at me as if she could not understand him, I interpreted it to her. My sister then desired to see the child, but I was forced again to interpret there too. In short, they both talked with my wife near half an hour, but neither of them knew her; till at last, saying in her own language, "That is your grand-daddy, my dear Dicky!" the old gentleman smoked her out. "I'll be slit," says he, "if that is not Youwarkee!" "It's impossible," says Hallycarnie. "Indeed, sister," says Youwarkee, "you are mistaken!" and my father protesting he had not the least suspicion of her till she spoke in his tongue, rose, and kissing her and the child, desired her to appear in that habit during his stay.

I asked Pedro what provision had been made for the guards. "Son," says my father, "I bring not this number of people to eat you up; they have their subsistence with them;" and he would by no means suffer me to allow them any. I then desired to know if there were any officers or others to whom he would have shown any particular marks of distinction. "Son," says the old glumm, "you seem to have studied punctilios; and though I should be sorry to incommode you for their sakes, if you could procure some shelter and sleep-room for about twenty of them, who are superiors, ten at a time, while the rest are on duty, I should be glad." I told him I had purposely erected a tent, which would with great ease accommodate a greater number; and as they were of distinction, with his leave, I insisted upon providing for them.

When Pendlehamby was refreshed, he would go with me to see the officers' quarters; and showing him my tent, he, having never seen such a thing before, was going to climb up the outside of it, taking it for earth. "Hold, sir," says I, "you cannot do so!" Then taking him to the front of it, I turned aside the blue cloth, and desired him to walk in, at which he seemed wonderfully pleased, and asked me how it was made. I told him in as few words as I could. He mightily approved it; and calling the chief officer, I desired he would command my house, and that provision should be supplied to his quarters daily.

I then asked him if he had any clever fellows under him, to serve them and dress their provisions; but he hoped, he said, they were ready dressed, as his men knew little of that matter; but for any other piece of service, as many as I pleased should be at my command.

CHAPTER XXX.

Pendlehamby having a mind to view my arkoe, took a long walk with Hallycarnie in the wood till dinner-time; and he having before told me that some of his guards always waited on him at meals, I ordered their dinner before his return, sending a large dish of cold fowls, cut into joints, into the tent, to be spread on clean leaves I had laid on the chests; and setting a sufficient quantity of bread and fish there also, I desired the officers present to refresh themselves now, and the rest, when relieved, should have a fresh supply. I saw there was an oddity in their countenances, but presently turning about to the superior, "Sir," says I, "though this food may look unusual to you, it is what my island affords, and you will be better reconciled to it after tasting." So taking a piece of fowl, and dipping it in the salt, I ate a bit myself, and recommended another to him, who, eating it, they all fell to without farther scruple.

I then told them where my supply of water came from, and that they must furnish themselves with that by their own men.

Upon the return of my father and sister, the gripsack sounded for dinner, when four officers on duty entering, desired, as their posts, to have the serving up of the dishes; one of them I perceived, having set on the first dish, never stirred from behind Pendlehamby, but upon his least word or sign ordered the others what to do or bring, which he only presented to my father; and he frequently gave him a piece from his own plate; but the other officers served at the table promiscuously.

After dinner, I brought in a bowl of punch, when, begging leave to proceed in my country method, I drank to my father's health. "So, daughter," says he to my wife, "we are at the old game again. Son," says he, "this is no novelty to me, Youwarkee constantly drinking to the health of her dear Peter, and the children at Grandevolet, and obliging us to pledge her, as she called it; but I thank you, and will return your civility;" so, taking a glass, "Son and daughter," says he, "long life, love, and unity, attend you and my grandchildren!" Youwarkee and I both rising till he had done, returned him our thanks.

When we had sat some time, "Son," says my father, "you and your wife having lived so retired, I fear my company and attendants must put you to an inconvenience; now, as my son intends you a visit also, in company with several of my brother colambs, if we shall be too great a load upon you, declare it; for they will be at Battringdrigg arkoe to-morrow, to know whether it will be agreeable for them to proceed.

"You know, son," says my father, "the mouth is a great devourer, and that the stock your family cannot consume in a year, by multiplying their numbers may be reduced in a day. Now freely let me know how your stock stands, that you may not only pleasure us, but we not injure you."

I told him, as for dried fish I had a vast quantity, and that my fowls were so numerous I knew not my stock; as to bread, I had a great deal, and might have almost what more I would; and then for fresh fish, the whole province of Arndrumnstake could not soon devour them; but for my pickles and preserves, I had neither such large quantities, nor convenience to bestow them if I had.

"If this be the case, son," says my father, "I may send your brother word to proceed;" and dispatched ten messengers with a gripsack to hasten his son's arrival.

It now began to be time for rest; and the old gentleman growing pretty mellow with the punch, which, by the heavy pulls he took at it, I perceived was no disagreeable entertainment to him, I conducted him to his repose; and disposing of the rest of the family, Youwarkee and I with great impatience retired.

You may imagine I was sincerely glad to find myself once more along with my Youwarkee; when, after a transport of mutual endearments, I desired to know how Pendlehamby first received her, which she told me, with every circumstance, in so affecting a manner, that I loved the dear man ever after as my own father.

She told me Tommy was in great favour at court before her brother returned from me; but ever since I sent him the flageolet, he had been caressed above measure, and would soon be a great man; that Hallycarnie was a constant attendant on Jahamel, and, she did not doubt, would in time marry very well; as for Patty, she said her father intended, with my leave, to adopt her as his own child.

Rising early the following morning, I went for water and fish, and returned before the family were up.

I took care to-day, also, that the officers should be as well served as possible, and where an accommodation must be wanting, I rather chose to let it fall on my father than on them; for I had ever observed it to be an easier thing to satisfy the master than the man.

My company being abroad, about the time I expected their return I dressed myself as the day before, only without my cloak, and in a black bob-wig, and took a turn to meet them.

Pendlehamby spying me first among the trees, "Daughter Youwarkee," says he, "you have a husband, I think, for every day in the week. Who's this? my son Peter? Why, he is not the same man he was yesterday!" She told him she had heard me say we changed our apparel almost every day in England; nay, sometimes twice or thrice the same day.

By this time I was come up, and after paying due compliments, says Youwarkee, "My father did not know you, my dear, you are so altered in your other wig; and I told him in your country they not only change wigs, but their whole clothing, two or three times a-day sometimes." "Son," says my father, "if it be so, I cannot guess at the design of a man's making himself unlike himself." "Oh, sir," says I, "it is owing to the different functions he is to perform that day: as, suppose, in the morning he is to pursue business with his inferiors, or meet at our coffee-houses to hear and chat over the news of the day, he appears in a light easy habit proper for dispatch, and comes home dirty; then, perhaps, he is to dine with a friend at mid-day, before whom, for respect's sake, he puts on something handsomer; and, after spending some time there, he has, it may be, an appointment at court, at play, &c., in all which last cases, if he has anything better than ordinary, it is a part of good breeding to appear in that; but if the very best was to be used in common, it might soon become the worst, and not fit for a nice man to stir abroad in." "The different custom of countries you have told me of," says my father, "is surprising. Here are we born with our clothes on, which always fit, be we ever so small or large; nay, are never the worse for constant wearing; and you must be eternally altering and changing colour, shape, and habit. But," says he, "where do they get all these things? Does every man make just what he likes?" "No," says I, "there are a particular set of men whose business it is to make for all the rest." "What," says he, "I suppose their *lasks* (slaves) make them?" "No, sir, they are *filgays*," (freemen) says I; "it is their trade; they do it for a livelihood, being paid by them they work for. A suit of these clothes,' says I, taking up the flap of my coat, "will cost what we call twelve or fourteen pounds in money." "I don't understand you," says he. "Why, sir," says I, "that is as much as will provide one moderate man with all the necessary things of life for two months." "Then," says he, "these nice men must be very rich." "No, sir," said I, "there you are under a mistake; for if a man very rich, and who is known to be so, neglects his habit, it is taken to be his choice; but one who is not known to be rich, and is really not so, is, by appearing gay sometimes, thought to be so; for he comes little abroad, and pinches miserably at home, first to get that gay suit, and then acts on the same part to preserve it, till some lucky hit may help him to the means of getting another, as it frequently happens by a good marriage; for though he is but seldom seen in public, yet always appearing so fine when he is, the ladies, whose fancies are frequently more tickled with show than sense, admitting him only at first as a companion, are, at last, if worth anything, taken in the toils he is ever spreading for them, and, becoming his wife, produce a standing fund to make him a rich man in reality, which he but personated before."

CHAPTER XXXI.

Sleeping longer than usual, I was awakened next morning by a gripsack from Quangrollart, upon hearing of which I roused immediately, thinking they were at my door; but the messenger told me they could not be there in what I understood by his signs to be about two hours, for they have no such measure for time as hours; so I dressed at leisure, and then went to Youwarkee, and waked her. "Youwee," says I, "your brother will be here presently, and I, having a mind you should appear as my countrywoman, would have you dress yourself."

We walked down to the level, and but just saved our distance; for the van of them were within the arkoe before we arrived, and with such a train after them, as seemed to reach the whole length of the arkoe. The regularity and order of their flight was admirable, and the break of the trumpets so great, sounding all the way they came, (for we had not only one set of them, but at least thirty, there being so many colambs and petty princes in the train, each with fifty attendants,) that I wondered how they could bear it. As the principals alighted, which was at least a hundred paces from me, the gripsacks still kept wing, sounding as long as we stayed.

This was a very tedious ceremony, for the guards, alighting with their colambs, ranged just as Pendlehamby's had done, but reached as far as the eye could see. As they moved towards us, Youwarkee and I, having stood still some time, moved slowly forward to meet them.

It would have surprised you to have seen the deference they paid us; and I believe the guards took us for something above the mortal race. Youwarkee showed no part of her graundee, having on sleeves down to her wrists, white silk stockings, and red-heeled shoes; so that none of them knew her for one of them.

The first that we met was my brother, to whom we had only an opportunity of paying our compliments *en passant*, before another grandee came up, who was succeeded by another and another, to the number of thirty, some out of respect to my father and brother, and some out of mere curiosity to see me; and as fast as each had paid his salutes, he passed us, till we found we had no more to meet, when we turned about, and fell in with the company.

When we came to the grotto, I was very much put to it for room, we scarce being able to stand upright by each other, much less to sit down; which my father perceiving, "My dear friends," says he, "had my son known in time of so much good company, he would have been better provided with seats for us all; but, considering all we see is the labour only of his own hands, we should rather admire at the many conveniences we see here, than be uneasy there are no more. And son," says he, "as we are now so large a body, I propose that we adjourn to the officers' quarters, and let them take ours." I returned my father thanks for the hint, and led the way, the rest following, where we found room enough, and to spare.

Though Youwarkee was with us all dinner-time, helping the guests, we had no sooner done, but says Quangrollart, aloud, "Brother Peter, are we not to see my sister?" "Sir!" says I. "My sister Youwarkee!" says he; "why won't she appear? Here are several of her good friends, as well as myself, will be glad to see her." My father then laughed so heartily, that my poor brother was put to the blush. "Son," says my father, "don't you know your own sister?" "We have not seen her yet," says one of the colambs, "or any other lady, but your daughter Hallycarnie and that attendant." My brother then seeing how it was, came up to salute my wife; but even then had his scruples, till he saw her smile, and then begged pardon for his oversight, as did all the colambs upon saluting her; my brother declaring, that as she was somewhat behind me on the level, he had only paid her the respect of his chin, taking her for some one attending me. The colamb following my brother, assured her the little regard shown her by Quangrollart, who he thought should know best where to bestow his respects, was the reason of his taking no more notice of her; and each confessing his mistake arose from too nearly copying the steps of his immediate predecessor, they all made excuse, and the mistake made us very merry, till they proposed taking a turn in the woods, it being a great novelty to them, they said; but I begged they would leave me behind to prepare for their return.

Having refreshed themselves after they came home, Quangrollart (being put upon it by some of the colambs) told me I could not render a more acceptable favour to the whole company, than to relate to them an account of my adventures.

All the colambs immediately seconded the motion, and desired me to begin. I then ordered a clear table and a bowl of punch, and having drank all the company's healths, began my narration, hoping to have finished it before bed-time; but they pressing me to be very particular, and then one making a remark upon something, which another answered, and a third replied to, they got the talk out of my hands so long, that I was frequently obliged to begin half-way back again. This method not only spun out my story to a very great length, but, instead of its being finished that evening, it was scarce well begun before bed-time drew on; so, I just having brought them to Angola, told them, as it grew late, if they pleased I would finish the remainder next night, which they agreed to.

Quangrollart then asked my father if he had been fishing since he came; but he told him he knew not what he meant. Then all the company desired I would show them what that was. I told them they might command me as they pleased. "But, gentlemen," says I, "your lodging to-night gives me the greatest pain, for I know not what I shall do about that. I have a few beast-fish skins, which are very soft and hairy, but not a sufficiency for so many friends as I would at present be proud to oblige; but I can lay them as far as they will go, upon as much dry reeds and grass as you please." I then sent a servant to Youwarkee for the skins, after which, they one and all crying out if they had but good dry reeds they desired no better lodging, I dispatched hands to bring away a large parcel of them to the tent, which they did in a trice. Then waiting on those few who lay at the grotto to their quarters, and having sent Youwarkee to her sister, I returned to the tent to take up my own lodging with those I had left there.

I had not yet entered the tent, when I heard a perfect tumult within, every one talking so loud, and all together, that I verily thought they had fallen out, and were going to handy-cuffs; when just entering, and they spying me, several ran to me, with each a skin in his hand. "Gentlemen," says I, "I hoped to have found you all at rest." "So we should have been," says one of them, "but for these what you call 'ems." "It is my unspeakable misfortune," says I, "that I have no more at your service, and am sorry I should cause them to be brought, since each of you cannot have one." Says one of them, "I don't want one; I have seen enough of it." "Then, gentlemen," says I, "it is possible there may be so many more of that colamb's mind, that there may be sufficient for those who desire them." They neither knew what to make of me, nor I of them; till an old colamb, perceiving our mistake, "Mr. Peter," says he, "we have only had a dispute." "I am sorry at my heart for it," says I; "but I am in great hopes of compromising matters to all your satisfactions." "I was going," says the same colamb, "to tell you we had a dispute about what these things were—nothing else." I was then struck on a heap, being quite ashamed they should think I suspected they had been quarrelling for the skins. "You'll excuse me, sir," says I, "for expressing a concern that you could not each have one to examine into at the same time, so that one of you need not have waited to make your remarks till the other had done." "No occasion, no occasion for that, Mr. Peter," said they all together; "but we want to know what they are, and where they grow." "Gentlemen," says I, "each of these is the clothing of a particular fish." "And where do they grow?" said they. "In the lake," says I; "they are a living creature, who inhabit that great water; I often catch them when I am fishing—the same exercise we shall go upon to-morrow."

I had much ado to persuade them they did not grow on trees, which I was then much more surprised at than some time after, when I returned their visit; but having satisfied them, and given them some possible hopes they might see one alive next day, they were very well contented, and we all lay down to rest.

CHAPTER XXXII.

I APPEARED before them, in the morning, in my old jacket, and an old hat with brims indented almost to the crown, a flannel nightcap, and chequered shirt. "How now, son!" says my father, "what have we here?" "Sir," says I, "this will show you the use of our English fashion. You see me in this indifferent habit, because my next business requires it; but when I have no farther dirty work to do, I shall then dress, as near as I can, to qualify me for your company."

"Are you moving, gentlemen?" says my brother; "I believe it is time." They then all arising, we went to the lake, where, getting into my boat, and telling them that any six of them might go with me, they never having seen such a thing before, and not much liking the looks of it, all made excuses; till my brother, assuring them it was very safe, three or four, with my father and Hallycarnie, got in; and we sailed a great way up the lake, taking my gun with me.

It gave me exceeding delight to see the whole body of the people then in the arkoe on the graundee; some hovering over our heads, and talking with us; others flying this way, others that, till I had pitched upon a spot to begin my operation; when, rowing to shore and quitting my boat, the whole body of people settled just by me, staring at me and my net. I then taking a sweep as usual, got some of the soldiers to assist me to shore with it; but when the cod of the net landed, and the fish began to dash with their tails at the water's edge, away ran all my soldiers, frighted out of their wits to think what was coming; but it being a large haul and a shelving bank, I could not lift it to the level myself, which my brother, who had seen the spot before, perceiving, lent me a hand, and we got it up.

You cannot imagine what surprise appeared in every face upon opening the net, and seeing all the fish naked; they drew up by degrees closer and closer, but seeing the large fish flap their tails, they very expeditiously retired again. I then tossed several of them into the boat; but two of them being very large, and rough-scaled ugly fish, I did not think I could lift them myself, so desired assistance, but nobody stirred; I expected some of the colambs would have ordered their men to have helped me, but they were so terrified with seeing me handle them, that they could not have the conscience to order their men on so severe a duty, till a common man came to me, and taking the tail, and I the head, we tossed them both into the boat.

I went higher up the lake than usual, in hopes of a beast-fish to show them; but though I could not meet with one, I had several very great hauls, and took three or four of my lobsters, very large ones.

Having had so good success, I had a design of returning, but thought, as I could now so easily entertain a multitude, I might as well take another haul or two, and make a handsome treat for the soldiery; then coming up to my rill's mouth, I fixed my implements for a draught there, and beginning to draw up, I found great resistance in the net, and got two or three to help me; but coming near shore, when the company saw the net tumble and roll, and rise and fall, they all ran as if they were mad, till I called them, and told the colambs it was only one of the fish whose skins I had shown them; upon which, by the time I had discharged the fish from the net, they were all round me again; but no sooner had he got loose, than up he rose, whirled his wings, and at the same instant uttered such a groan that my whole company retreated again, thinking me somewhat more than a man, who could face so dreadful an enemy. I entreated them to come and view it; but finding no arguments could bring them nearer, I edged round till I got him between me and the water, and shot him dead.

Upon the report of my gun, the whole field was in the air, darting and screaming; and I am apt to believe some of them never returned again, but went directly home.

I was a little concerned to see the confusion I had caused; and laying down my gun, my brother, knowing what I was at, and coming up to me, it put the rest upon their comsideration, and they alighted one by one, at a distance, till they were all on the level again.

My father and the colambs, who were the first that durst approach, wondered what I had done, and how the fish came to be dead, and whence so much fire and smoke proceeded, and asked me abundance of questions; but I deferred giving them satisfaction till we came home, when all at once might be capable of hearing what was said. So I told them the most necessary thing at present was to stow the fish in the boat, for it was the largest I had ever taken, and I could not wholly do it myself. I made several efforts for help, but in vain, till the same soldier who had helped me with one of the first fish came to my relief, and the rest seeing the difficulty we both had to manage it, one or two more of them came up, and we shipped it on board.

I then called the colambs to me, telling them I was sorry I had given such a general disturbance to them by shooting the fish; but as they kept at too great a distance from me to have notice of my design, and if I had followed them the fish might have escaped before my return, I was obliged to do as I did, which was without any possibility of hurting them. But, as I had given them such a fright, I hoped they would this one day give me an opportunity of complimenting their guards with a fish dinner, if we could any way contrive to dress it; for whoever did that must be able to bear the close light of a large fire. They all shook their heads but my brother, who told me he had in his retinue six men from Mount Alkoe, purposely retained for their strong sight, to attend him always to Crashdoorpt, who, he believed, would undertake the cookery, if I would show them how. I desired he would give them orders to attend me on the other side the lake, and I would instruct them at my landing; and then I crossed over with my booty.

Finding the Mount Alkoe men waiting for my landing, I asked if they could bear the sight of fire; they told me they were used to much greater light and flames than I had ever seen, they believed. "Very good," said I; "then get into my boat, three of you, and hand out that fish to the shore." I found they were more afraid of the fish than of the fire, for not one of them stirred till I got in and tossed out several small ones; and then taking up a large one, "Help me, somebody!" says I, they looking a little at one another, till one of them venturing to take it, the rest fell heartily to work, and dispatched the whole lading presently. I then laid a small parcel upon my cart, for our own eating and the officers', and sending them to the grotto, I gave the cooks their charge.

"Now," says I, "my lads, do you serve all the rest of the fish as I do this," cutting it open at the same time, and throwing away the guts; "and I will send each of you such an instrument as I use here," pointing to my knife. "I shall order six large heaps of wood to the level, to be piled up there; when you have done the fish, do you set fire to the heaps, and let them burn till the flame is over and the coals are clear; then lay on your fish, and if any are too large to be manageable, cut them in proper pieces, and with sticks, which I will send you, turn them over and over, walking round the fire, and with the forked end of the stick toss the least off first, and afterwards the greater; but be sure to throw the fish as far as ever you can from the fire, amongst the men, that they may not be obliged to come too near it; and in this manner go on, till either they have enough, or your fish are gone; and when you have done, come to the grotto for your reward."

While these preparations were making, my tent-visitors had all dined, and my cart had returned with the beast-fish, which the company desired might be brought in; when every one passed his judgment on it, and a long dissertation we had on the marvellous works of the Collwar.

In the height of our disputations on the beast-fish, came news that the broil was going to begin; and, as I expected very good diversion at it, I invited the company to go see it, telling them, in my opinion, it would exceed the sport in taking them. We passed through the wood till we came amongst the shrubs, where I placed them to be out of harm's way; and the fire, which was now nothing but cinders, was of no inconvenience to them. They were pleased with it to perfection; for, first, the six men who walked round the fires, by the glowing light of the embers, and the shining of their graundees, looked like men in fire; then, to see each fire surrounded with a circle of men at the diameter of near two hundred paces, as close as they could well stand, by a more distant shine of the fire, had a very pleasing effect; but, when the broilers began to throw the fish about, (for each man stood with some salt and a cut of bread in his hand,) to see a body of a hundred men running for it, and whilst they were stooping and scrambling for that, to see a hot fish fall on the back of one, which was whipped off by another, who, scalding his mouth with it, threw it in the face of a third, when a fourth, fifth, and sixth, pulling it in pieces, ran away with it, was the most agreeable farce my guests had ever seen in their lives; and, to the great saving of my liquors, kept us in the wood for full three hours.

We spent the best part of this evening in discourse on the passages of the day, the reflections on which not being concluded till bedtime, my adventures were postponed till the next night; but we had first concluded upon a shooting for the next morning, (for they were all extremely desirous of knowing how I did it); and I, being unwilling they should think me a conjuror, agreed to make them masters of part of the mystery of powder and ball.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

This being the fifth morning, I cleaned up my best gun and prepared my balls, and we all took a walk towards the bridge, every one admiring my gun as we went; but I could get none of them to carry it, and we had at least five hundred questions proposed about it. I told them they need not be afraid of it, for it was only wood and iron; but they knew nothing of iron. I then showed them how I made it give fire, by snapping the cock; they thought it was very strange. I then put a little in the pan, and made it flash, and showing them the empty pan, they would not be persuaded but I had taken away the powder before the flash, or else, they said, it was impossible that should be all gone upon flashing only; for they said it was a little nut. I then desired one of them to put in some powder, and snap it himself; but having prevailed with him to try the experiment, if I had not through caution held my hand upon the barrel, the gun had been on the ground, for the moment it flashed, he let go and ran for it.

I had a great inclination to gain the better of their prejudices, and used abundance of arguments to prove the gun as innocent a thing as a twig I took up, and that it was the powder which, when set on fire, the flame thereof wanting more room than the powder itself did, forced itself and all that opposed it out of the mouth of the gun, with such fury as to make the noise they heard; and being just come to the rock, "Now," says I, "you shall see that what I tell you is true." They told me they desired nothing more than that I would make them understand it. "Well, then," says I, "observe; I put in this much powder only, and with this rag I stop it down close. Now," says I, "you see by the length of this stick that the rag and powder take up the space of only a finger's depth on the inside of the gun." They saw that plainly, they said; but how could that kill anything? "Now, look again," says I; "I put in a little more powder, as I did before when I made a flash, and you see there is a little hole from this powder through the side of the gun to the powder within. Do you observe that this communicates with that through this hole?" Yes, they said, they did. "Now," says I, "when I put fire to this, it sets fire to that within, which fire turning to flame, and wanting room, bursts out at the mouth of the gun; and to show with what force it comes out, here, handle this round ball," giving them a bullet to handle; "you feel how heavy it is; now, can any of you throw this ball as far as that rock?" for I stood a good hundred paces from it. They told me, no. "And don't you think," says, I, "that if the force of the fire made by this powder can throw this ball to that rock, that force must be very great?" They said, they thought it must, but believed it to be impossible. "But," says I, "if it not only throws it to the rock, but beats out a piece of the stone, must not that be much more violent?" They agreed it must. Then putting in the ball, "Now," says I, "we will try." I then ordered one to daub a part of the rock, about breast high, with some mud, and first to observe about it, if the rock was anywhere fresh broken or not; who, returning, reported that the rock was all of a colour and sound, but somewhat ragged about the mud. "Did you lay the mud on smooth?" says I. He replied "Yes." Then lifting up my gun, I perceived they were creeping off; so I took it down again, and calling, reasoned with them upon their fears. "What mischief," says I, "can you apprehend from this gun in my hand? Should I be able to hurt you with it, are you not all my friends or relations? could I be willing to do it? If the gun of itself could hurt, would I handle it as I do?

By suchlike persuasions, I prevailed upon the major part of the colambs and officers to stand near me to see me fire, and then I shot; but I had no sooner snapped but the graundees flew all open, though they closed again immediately; and then we fell to question and answer again. I desired them to walk up to the rock; and sent the person who put up the mark before, to see and show us exactly what alteration there was; he told us there was a round hole in the mud, pointing to it, which he did not leave there, and taking away the mud, a thick shiver of the rock followed it. They then all agreed, that the ball must have made both the hole in the mud and also splintered the rock, and stood in amaze at it, not being able to comprehend it; but I could not prevail with a man of them to fire the gun himself, till it had been buzzed about a good while, and at last came to my ears, that a common soldier behind said he should not be afraid of it, if the gentleman would show him how.

I then ordered the fellow to me, and he told me, with a composed look, that it had always been his way of thinking, that what he saw another do he could do himself. "And, sir," says he, "if this gun, as you call it, does not hurt you, why should it hurt me? And if you can make it hit that rock, why should not I, when you have told me how you manage it?" "Are not you the man that first helped me up with the large fish yesterday?" says I. He told me he was.

I was prodigiously pleased with the fellow's spirit; and, says I, "My friend, if you will, and I live, you shall hit it before you have done." I then showed him the sight of the gun, and how to hold it; and being perfect in that, "Now," says I, "shut your left eye, and observe with your right, till this knob and that notch are exactly even with each other and the middle of that mark; and when they are so, pull this bit with your fore-finger, holding the gun tight to your shoulder." He so exactly pursued my directions, that he hit the very middle of the mud; and then, without any emotion walked up with the gun in his hand, as I had done before; and turning to me very gravely, "Sir," says he, "it is hit." I told him, the best marksman on earth could not be sure of coming so near his mark. He stroked his chin, and giving me the gun again, was walking to his place; but I stopped him, and seeing something so modest and sincere in his countenance and behaviour, and so generous in his spirit, I asked him to which colamb he belonged. He told me to Colamb Pendlehamby. "To my father?" says I; "then sure I shall not be denied."

I took him with me to my father. "Sir," says I, "there is a favour I would beg of you." "Son," says he, "what is it you can ask that I can refuse you?" Says I, "This man belongs to your guards; now there is something so noble and daring in his spirit, and yet so meek is his deportment, that if you will load me with obligation, it is to make him an officer; he is not deserving of so ill a station as a private man."

My father looking at me, "Son," says he, "there is something to be done before he can be qualified for what you require." "This," thinks I, "is a put off." "Pray, sir," says I, "what can a man of courage, sense, and a cool temper, want to qualify him for what I ask?" "Something," says he, "which none but myself can give; and that, at your desire, I will supply him with." Then, my father calling him, "Lask Nasgig, bougee," says he; that is, "Slave Nasgig, lie down." Nasgig (for that was his name) immediately fell on his face, with his arms and hands straight by his sides; when my father, setting his left foot on Nasgig's neck, pronounced these words: "Lask, I give thee life; thou art a filgay!" Then Nasgig, raising himself on his knees, made obeisance to my father, and standing up, stroked his chin; and my father taking him by the hand, in token of equality, the ceremony ceased.

"Now, son," says my father, "let me hear your request?" "It is only, sir," said I, "preferment for the deserving equal to his merit." My father asked him if he understood the duty of a *gorpell* (ensign). He did not reply "Yes," but beginning, gave a compendious sort of history of his whole duty; at which all the colambs were very much surprised, for even his comrades were not apprised, or ever imagined, he knew more of military affairs than themselves. My father then asked him if he knew how to behave as a *cluff* (captain); but he made as little difficulty of that as the other, going through the several parts of duty in all the different branches, in peace and war, at home and abroad. "Son," says my father, "it is a mystery to me, you should have found out more in an hour than I myself could in half an age; for this man was born in my *valang* (town), of my own lask, and has been mine and my father's these forty years. I shall be glad if you will look on the rest of my lasks, and give me your opinion; I may have more as deserving." I told him, such as Nasgig were not to be met with very often, and when they were found, ought to be cherished accordingly.

My father then turning to me, "Son," says he, "you have put me on a new way of thinking, for which I am to return you many thanks." And the whole company doing the same, says my father, "I lost a brave general officer lately, who was destined to the western wars, which are breaking out, and have been long debating in my mind to whom I should commit his corps; and, but for the hazard of the enterprise, I would have now given it to Nasgig, but shall be loth to lose him so soon after I am acquainted with his worth; so will think of some other post nearer my person for him, less dangerous, though perhaps not so honourable." "Great sir," says Nasgig, "I am too sensible of the honour already done me, to think any post wherein I may continue to serve you either too mean or too hazardous for me; and as valour is nowhere so conspicuous as in the greatest dangers, I shall esteem my blood spent to great advantage in any enterprise where my duty under your command leads me. I therefore the rather humbly request this dangerous post, that I may either lose my life in your service, or live to see you justified in your advancement of me by the whole nation." Here the whole level rang with applause to Nasgig.

My father then giving his hand to Nasgig, and his word for investiture in the command of that vacant post, the whole level again resounded with, "Long live Pendlehamby, and his servant Nasgig!"

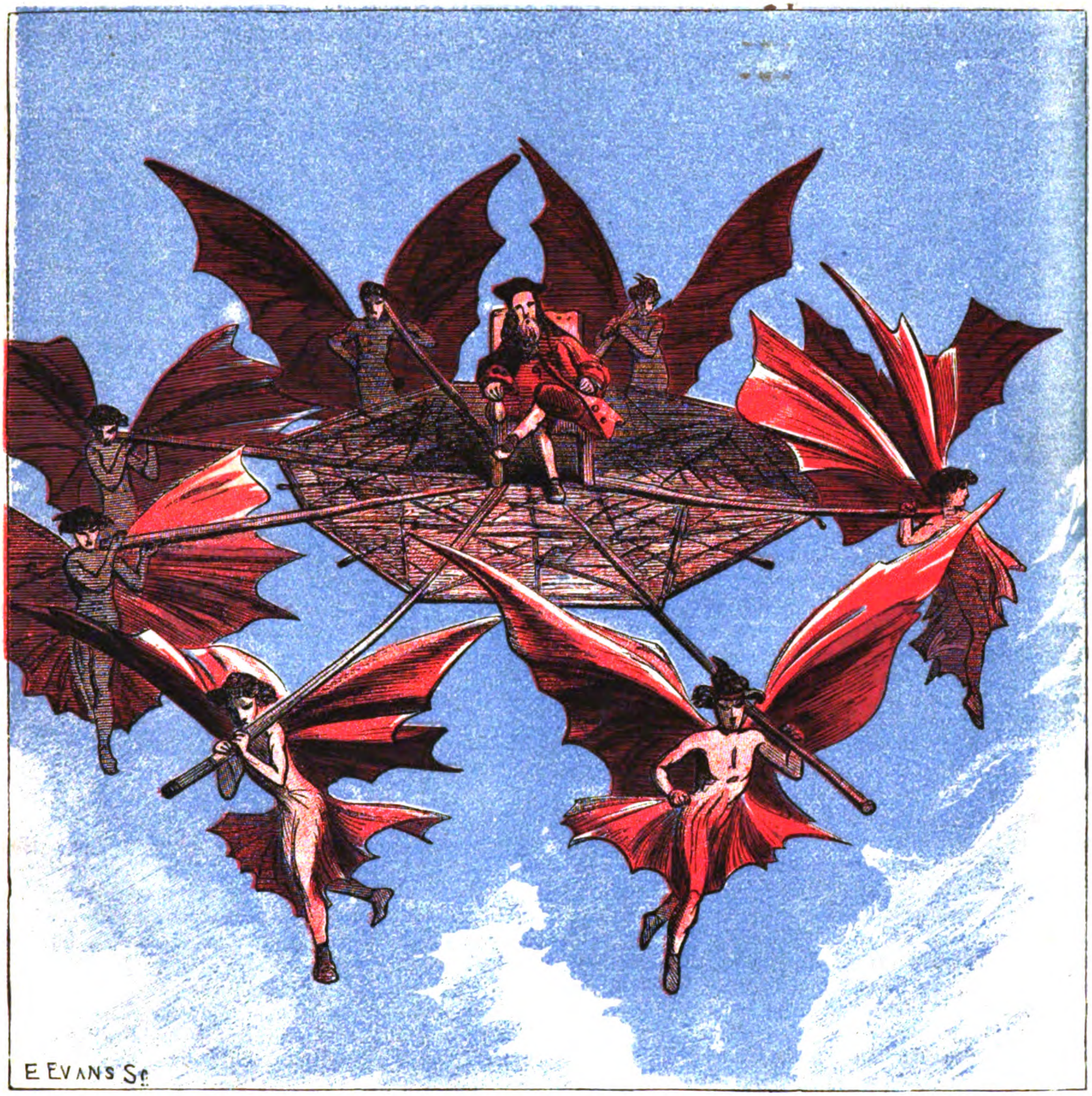
This being the last day of my company's stay, some of them moved to return the sooner, that they might have time to hear out my story.

In our return home, Nasgig singled me out, to return his acknowledgments for my favour; and viewing my gun, told me they had no such thing growing in his country. I told him, if he had it, it would do no good without my powder. I then, at his request, described what I had heard of our method of fighting in battle in Europe; and mentioning our cannon, he said he supposed they killed every man they hit. "No," says I, "not so bad as that; sometimes they hit the flesh only, and that is commonly cured; sometimes break a leg or arm, and that may in time be cured, some so well as to be useful again, and others are cut off, and healed up again; but if the ball hits the head or vitals, it is commonly mortal." "Oh," says he, "give me the head or vitals, then; no broken limbs for me."

After dinner, at their request, I went on with my story, and completed the narration that night; but I could perceive the water in my father's eyes when I came to the account of Youwarkee's fall, and the condition I took her up in.

When I had done, they adjusted the order of their flight for avoiding confusion, one to go so long before another, and the junior colambs to go first.

In the morning, nothing was to be heard but the gripsacks; the men were all ranged in order to go off with their respective colambs; and after all compliments passed, the junior colamb arising, walking halfway to the wood, where his gripsack standing to wait for him, preceded him to the level, the next gripsack



PETER WILKINS ON HIS JOURNEY TO THE COUNTRY OF THE FLYING MEN.

standing ready to sound as soon as the first removed, and this was the signal for the second to move; so that each colamb was a quarter of a mile before the other.

My father was the last but two; but I shall never forget his tenderness at parting with his daughter and grandchildren, and I may say with myself too. Patty went with my father; she so much resembling my wife, that my father said he should still have his two daughters in his sight, having her with him.

At parting, I presented Nasgig with a broadsword; and showing him the use of it, with many expressions of gratitude on his part and respect on mine, he took flight after the rest.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

For the first few days after our company had left us, Youwarkee could not forbear a tear now and then for the loss of her father and sister; but it wore off by degrees, and having a clear stage again, it cost us several days to put our confused affairs in order; and when we had done, we blessed ourselves that we could come and go, and converse with the pleasing tenderness we had hitherto always done.

She told me, nothing in the world but her concern for so tender a father should have kept her so long from me, for her life had never been so sweet and serene as with me and her children; and if she was to begin it again, and choose her settlement and company, it should be with me in that arkoe. I told her, though I was entirely of her opinion, yet I loved a little company, if for nothing else but to advance topics for discourse to the exercise of our faculties; but I then agreed, it was not from mere judgment I spoke, but from fancy. "But, Youwee," says I, "it will be proper for us to see what our friends have left us, that we don't want before the time comes about again." Then she took her part, and I mine; and having finished, we found they would hold out pretty well, and that the first thing to be done was to get the oil of the beast-fish.

When we came to examine the brandy and wine, I found they had suffered greatly; so I told Youwarkee, when she could spare time, she should make another flight to the ship; "And," says I, "pray look at all the small casks of wine or brandy, or be they what they will; if they are not above half-full, or thereabouts, they will swim, and you may send them down." I desired her to send a fire-shovel and tongs, describing them to her. "And there are abundance of good ropes between decks rolled up; send them," says I, "and anything else you think we want, as plates, bowls, and all the cutlasses and pistols, that hang in the room by the cabin; for I would, methinks, have another cargo, as it may possibly be the last, for the ship can't hold for ever." Youwarkee, who loved a jaunt to the ship mightily, told me, if I pleased, she would go the next day, to which I agreed.

She stayed on this trip till I began to be uneasy for her; but she arrived safe, telling me she had sent all she could anyways pack up; and any one who had seen the arrival of her fleet would have taken it for a good ship's cargo, for it cost me full three weeks to land and draw them up to the grotto.

It began to draw towards long days again, when one morning in bed I heard the gripsack. I waked Youwarkee, and told her of it; and we both got up, and were going to the level, when we met six glumms in the wood, with a gripsack before them, coming to the grotto. The trumpeter, it seems, had been there before, but the others, who seemed to be of better rank, had not. We saluted them, and they us; and Youwarkee knowing one of them, we desired them to walk to the grotto.

They told us they came express from Georigetti's palace, with an invitation to me and Youwarkee to spend some time at his court. I let them know what a misfortune I lay under in not being born with a graundee, or I should have taken it for the highest honour to have laid myself at their master's feet; and after some discourse, one of them pressed me to return his master my answer, for they had but very little time to stay. I told them, they saw plainly, by baring my breast to them, that I was under an absolute incapacity for such a journey, and gratifying the highest ambition I could have in the world; for I was pinned down to my arkoe, never more to pass the barrier of that rock. One of them then asking, if I should choose to go if it was possible to convey me thither; I told him, he could scarce have the least doubt, were my ability to perform such a journey equal to my inclination to take it, that I should in the least hesitate at obeying his master. "Sir," says he, "you make me very happy, in the regard you show my master; and I must beg leave to stay another day with you." I told him they did me a great honour, but little thought what it all tended to.

We were very facetious; and they talked of the number of visitors I had had here, and they mentioned several facts which had happened, and amongst the rest that of Nasgig, who, they said, since his return, had been introduced by Pendlehamby to the king, and was, for his great prudence and penetration, become Georigetti's great favourite. They also told me war was upon the point of breaking out.

The next morning, they desiring to walk and view what was most remarkable in my arkoe, and, above all, to see me fire my gun, I gratified them at a mark, and hit the edge of it, and found them quite staunch, without the least start at the report. I paid them a compliment upon it, and told them how their countrymen had behaved, even at a second firing. "But," says he who was the chief spokesman, and knew, I found, as much as I could tell him, "that second fright was from seeing death the consequence of the first; and though you had then to do mostly with soldiers, you must not think they choose death more than others, though their duty obliges them to shun it less."

A little before bed-time, the strangers told me they believed I should see Nasgig next morning. I presently thought there was somewhat more than ordinary in this visit, but could not drive to the bottom of it.

Just before they went to rest, they ordered the trumpeter to be early on the rock next morning; and upon the first sight of Nasgig's corps to sound notice of it, for us to be ready to receive him.

CHAPTER XXXV.

We were waked by the trumpet giving notice of Nasgig's coming. I did not care to inquire of the strangers into the particulars of his embassy, and I had but little time for thought; for upon our entering the level we found him and his train, of at least a hundred persons, alighting before us.

We embraced, and professed the particular pleasure fortune had done us in once more meeting together. When we arrived at the grotto, he told me he was assured I had been informed of the occasion of his visit, and that it would be the greatest honour done to his country that could be imagined. He then laid his hand on my beard, which was now of about five months' growth, having never shaved it since my father went, and told me was glad to see that. "And are you not so to see me?" says I. "Yes, surely," says he; "for I prize that for your sake." "But," says I, "pray be open with me, and tell me what you mean by my being informed of the occasion of your coming." "Why," says he, "of Georigetti's message to you, as it will be of such infinite service to our country; and," says he, "my dear Peter, know that your fame has reached far and near since I saw you before; and our state, though a large and populous one, and once of mighty power and twice its present extent, by the revolt of the western part of it, who chose themselves a king, has been so miserably harassed by wars, that the revolters, who are ever fomenting discontent and rebellion amongst us, will certainly reduce us at last to a province under their government, which will render us all slaves to a usurped power set up against our lawful sovereign. Now, these things were foretold long enough before they actually began to be transacted; but all being then at peace, we looked not out for a remedy till the disease became incurable." "Pray," says I, "by whom were the things you mention foretold?" "By a very ancient and grave ragan," says he. "How long ago?" says I. "Oh, above four times the age of the oldest man living," says he. "And when did he say it would happen?" says I. "That," says he, "was not quite so clear then." "But how do you know," says I, "that he ever said any such thing?" "Why, the thing itself was so peculiar," says he, "and the ragan delivered it so positively, that his successors have ever since pronounced it twelve times a year publicly word for word, to put the people in mind of it; and now the long-expected time being come, we have no hopes but in your destruction of the tyrant usurper." "I destroy him!" says I. "My good friend Peter," says he, "you or nobody can do it." "Pooh!" says I; "Nasgig, I took you for a man of more sense than to think, because you have seen me kill a beast-fish that could not come to hurt me, at the distance of twenty paces, that I can kill your usurper at the distance he is from me." "Dear Peter," says he, "you will not hear me out." "I will," says I; "say on." "You, as I said before, being the only person that can, according to our prediction, destroy this usurper and restore peace among us, my master Georigetti, and the whole state of Normnbdsgrsutt, were going to send a spendid embassy to you; but your father advising to repose the commission wholly in me, they all consented to it, and I am come to invite you over to Brandleguarp for that purpose. I know you will tell me you have not the graundee, and cannot get thither; but I am assured the wisdom you have will help you to surmount that difficulty, which our whole *moucheratt* (assembly of the states) cannot get over. And now, dear friend," continues he, "refuse me not; for as my first rise was owing to your favour, so my downfall as absolutely attends your refusal."

"Dear Nasgig," says I, "you know I could refuse you nothing in my power; but for me to be mounted in the air, I know not how, over these rocks, and then drowned by a fall into the sea, and all this in prosecution of a project founded upon an old wife's tale, is such a chimera as all men of sense would laugh at; as if there was no way of destroying me but with a guard of a hundred men, to souse me into the wide ocean! A very pretty conqueror of rebels I should prove, truly, kicking for life till the next wave sent me down."

Nasgig looked then so grave, I almost thought I should have heard no more of it; but after a short pause, "Peter," says he, "I am sorry you make so light of sacred things; but if I cannot prevail with you, though I perish at my return, I dread to think you may be forced without thanks to perform, what generously to undertake will be your greatest glory."

"Pray," says I, "Nasgig, what may this famous prediction be?" "Why should I relate it," says he, "if you are resolved not to fulfil it?" I told him I had no resolution against anything that related to my own good, or that of my friends; "But the greatest question with me," says I, "is, whether I am at all concerned in it." "Oh, clearly, clearly!" says he; "it must mean you or nobody." I told him, till that was apparent to my reason, it would be difficult to procure my consent to so perilous an undertaking. "And," says he, "will you, upon hearing it, judge impartially, and go with me, if you can take the application to yourself?" "I cannot go quite so far as that," says I; "but this I'll promise you, I'll judge impartially, and if I can so apply it to myself, that it must necessarily mean me, and no other, and if you convince me I may go safely, I will go."

Nasgig was so rejoiced at this, he was at a loss how to express himself. "My dear Peter," says he, "you have given me new life! our state is free! our persons free! we are free! we are free! And, Peter," says he, "now you shall hear the prediction.

"You must know, this holy ragan lived four ages ago; and from certain dreams and revelations he had, had set himself to overturn our country-worship of the Great Image; but the rest of the ragans opposing him, and finding he could not advance his scheme, he withdrew from the ragans to a close retirement for several years; and just before his death, sending for the king and all the ragans, he told them he should certainly die that day, and that he could not die in peace till he had informed them what had been revealed to him. Says he: 'You know you have rejected the alteration in your religion I proposed to you, and which Begsurbeck, our king, here present, would have advanced; and now I must tell you what you have brought upon yourselves. As for Begsurbeck, he shall reign the longest and most prosperously of all your former and future kings; but in twice his time outrun, the west shall be divided from the east, and bring sorrow, confusion, and slaughter, till the waters of the earth shall produce a glumm, with hair round his head, swimming and flying without the graundee; who with unknown fire and smoke shall destroy the traitor of the west, settle the ancient limits of the monarchy, by common consent establish what I would have taught you, change the name of this country, introduce new laws and arts, add kingdoms to this state, and force tributes from the bowels of the earth, of such things as this kingdom shall not know till then, and shall never afterwards want; and then shall return to the waters again. Take care,' says he, 'you miss not the opportunity when it may be had; for once lost, it shall never more return; and then, woe, woe to my poor country!' The ragan having said this, expired.

"This prediction made so great an impression on Begsurbeck, that he ordered all the ragans singly before him, and heard them repeat it; which having done, and made himself perfect in it, he ordered it to be pronounced twelve times in the year on particular days, in the moucheratt, that the people might learn it by heart, that they and their children being perfect in it, might not fail of applying it, when the man from the waters should appear with proper description. Thus, Peter," says he, "has this prediction been kept up in our memories as perfectly as if it had but just been pronounced to us."

"'Tis very true," says I, "here may have been a prediction, and it may have been, as you say, handed down very exactly from Begsurbeck's days till now; but how does that affect me? how am I concerned in it? Surely, if any marks would have denoted me to be the man, some of the colambs who have so lately left me would have found them out in my person, or among the several actions of my life I recounted to them."

"Upon the return of the colambs from you," says Nasgig, "they told his majesty what they had heard and seen at Grandevolet, and the story was conveyed through the whole realm. Now, one of the ragans, when he had heard of you, applying to you the prediction, soon found our deliverer in you; and at a public moucheratt declared himself thereon to the following effect: 'May it please your majesty, and you the honourable colambs, the reverend ragans, and people of this state,' says he, 'you all know that our famous king Begsurbeck, who reigned at the time of this prediction, did live sixty years after it in the greatest splendour, and died at the age of one hundred and twenty years, having reigned full ninety of them. You all likewise know, that within two hundred years after Begsurbeck's death, the rebellion in the west began, which has been carried on ever since; and our strength diminishing as theirs increases, we are now no fair match for them, but are fearful of being undone. So far, you will agree, matters have tallied with the prediction: and now, it becomes us to lay hold of the present opportunity for our relief; and, if I have any skill in interpretations, now is the time of our deliverance. Our prediction foretels the past evils, their increase and continuance, till the waters of the earth shall produce a glumm. Here I must appeal to the honourable colambs present, if the waters have not done so, in the person of glumm Peter of Grandevolet.'

"All the colambs then rising, and making reverence to the king, declared it was most true.

"'The next part,' says the ragan, 'is, he is to be hairy round his head; and how his person in this respect agrees with the prediction, I beg leave to be informed by the colambs.'

"The colambs then rising, declared, that having seen and conversed with you, they could not observe any hair on the fore part of your head; but I answered, that when I left you, I well remembered your having short stubbs of hair upon your cheeks and chin; which I had no sooner mentioned than your father arose, and told the assembly that he remembered that his daughter, a year before, had told him that you had hair on your face before as long as that behind.

"This again putting new life into the ragan, he proceeded: 'Then let this,' says he, 'be put to the trial by an embassy to glumm Peter; and if it answers, there will be no room to doubt the rest. Then,' says the ragan, 'it is plain by the report of the colambs, that glumm Peter has not the graundee; and, as to the next point, he is to swim and fly. Now I am informed he swims daily in a thing he calls a boat.' To which the colambs all agreed. 'And now,' says he, 'that he flies too, that must be fulfilled; for every word must have a meaning, and that, indeed, he must do if ever he comes hither. I therefore advise, that a contrivance be somehow found out for conveying glumm Peter through the air to us, and I think, and do not doubt, but that may be done.

"'Now,' says he, 'let us see the benefit predicted to us upon the arrival of glumm Peter. Our words are—"Who, with unknown fire and smoke, shall destroy the traitor of the west." What can be plainer than this? For I again appeal to the colambs for his making unknown fire and smoke. Thus far,' says the ragan, 'we have succeeded happily towards a discovery of the person; but it ends not here with the death of the traitor, but such other benefits are to accrue as are mentioned in the following part of the prediction.'

"The assembly were coming to a resolution of sending you a pompous embassy, but your father prevailed for sending me only. So this important affair was committed to me, with orders to prepare a conveyance for you, which I cannot attempt to do; but shall refer to your more solid judgment in the contrivance of it."

I had sat very attentive to Nasgig, and could not say but there was a very great resemblance between myself and the person predicted of. I then called in Youwarkee, and told her the whole affair of the prediction. I told her that the king and states had pitched on me as the person intended by their prediction, and that Nasgig was sent to fetch me over. Youwarkee, whose head ran only on the dangers of the undertaking, had a violent conflict with herself; the love of me, of her children, and of her country, divided her so, she was not capable of advising. I told her that I really found the prediction the plainer the more I thought of it; and that, above all, the change of religion was the uppermost: "For if I can reduce a state from the misery and bondage of idolatry to a true sense of the Supreme Being, and seemingly by his own direction, shall I fear to risk my own life for it; or, will he suffer me to perish till somewhat at least is done towards it? My dear Youwee," says I, "fear nothing; I will go."

I called Nasgig, and told him my resolution, and that he had nothing now to do but prepare a means of conveying me. He said, he begged to refer that to me, for my own thoughts would suggest to me both the safest and easiest means.

I wanted to venture on the back of some strong glumm; when Nasgig told me, no one could endure my weight for so long a flight. But what charmed me most was, the lovely Youwarkee offered to carry me herself, if she could; "And if I can't hold out," says she, "my dear, we can but at last drop both together." I kissed the charming creature with tears in my eyes, but declined the experiment.

I told Nasgig I wanted to divide my weight between two or four glumms, which I believed I could easily do; and asked if each could hold out with a fourth part of my weight. He told me there was no doubt of that; but he was afraid I should drop between their graundees, he imagining I intended to lie along on their backs, part of me on each of them, or should bear so much on them as to prevent their flight. I told him I did not purpose to dispose of myself in the manner he presumed, but if two or four could undoubtedly bear my weight so long a flight, I would order myself without any other inconvenience to my bearers than their burden.

I then, leaving him, took out my tools; I pitched upon a strong broad board my wife had sent me from the ship, about twelve feet long and a foot and a half broad, upon the middle of which I nailed down one of my chairs; then I took one cord of about thirty-four feet long, making hand-loops at each end, and nailed it down in the middle to the under side of my board, as near as I could to the fore-end of it; and I took another cord of the same length and make, and this I nailed within three feet of the farther end of my board. I then took a cord of about twenty feet long, and nailed it about three feet before the foremost, and a fourth of the same length at the farther end of my board; by which means, the first and third ropes being the longest, and at such a distance from the short ropes, the glumms who held them would fly so much higher and forwarder than the short rope ones, that they and their ropes would be quite out of the others' way, which would not have happened if either the ropes had been all of one length, or nearer to or farther from one another; and then considering that if I should receive a sudden jerk or twitch, I might possibly be shook off my chair, I took a smaller rope to tie myself with fast to the chair, and then I was sure, if I fell into the sea, I should at least have the board and chair with me, which might possibly buoy me up till the glumms could descend to my assistance.

Having carried the machine down to the level with the help of two of Nasgig's men, he being out on a walk, and having never seen it, I ordered one of the men to sit upon the chair, and eight more to hold by the loops, and rise with him; but I found it difficult at their first rising, not being able to mount all equally, to carry the board up even, and the back part rising first, the front pitched against the ground, and threw the fellow out of the chair; I therefore bade them stop, and ordering eight others to me, said I, "Hold each of you one of these ropes as high as you can over your heads; then," says I to the eight bearers, "mount on your graundees, and come round behind him in the chair gently, two and two, and take each of you a loop, and hover with it till you are all ready, and then rise together, keeping your eye on the board that it rises neither higher at one end or one side than the other, and see you all feel your weight alike; then fly across the lake and back again. They did so, and with as much ease, they told me, as if they had nothing in their hands; and the man rode with so much state and composure, he said, that I longed to try it myself; so, shifting places with the glumm, I mounted the chair, and tying myself round, I asked if any one knew which way Nasgig walked; one of them pointing to where he saw him just before in the wood, I told them to take me up as before, and go that way.

Upon coming to the place where I expected Nasgig was, I hallooed and called him, who, knowing my voice, ran to the skirt of the wood; and seeing me mounted in my flying chair, he mounted immediately, came up to me, and seeing the pleasure the men seemed to carry me with, says he, "Are you all sure you can carry him safe to Battringdrigg?" They all replied, "Yes, with ease." "This, then," says he, "is your doom: if you perform it not, every one shall be slit; but if you carry the deliverer safe, you are filgays, every man of you!"

Nasgig alighting, and viewing my contrivance, "This, Peter," says he, "is but a very plain thing." "It is so," says I; "but it is as far as my ingenuity could reach." "Ah, Peter!" says he, "say not so; for if the greatest difficulties, as I and all my nation thought it would be to convey you to them, are so plain and easy to you, what must lesser things be? Well, and when shall we set out?" says he. I told him it would take up some time to settle the affairs of my family, and to consider what I had best take with me, and required at least three days.

Nasgig was sorry it was so long, though he, imagining at the same time it was short enough for one who was to go on such an enterprise, was glad it was no longer; and immediately despatched a trumpet express, with notice that on the fourth day he should be at the height of Battringdrigg, and that having myself formed a machine for that purpose, I would accompany him.

I began next to consider what part I had to act at Doorpt Swangeanti, and what it was they expected from me. "I am," says I, "to kill a traitor; good, that may be; but then I must take a gun and ammunition; and why not some pistols and cutlasses? If I cannot use them all, I can teach others who may; I will take several of them, and all my guns but two, and I will leave a pair of pistols; I may return and want them. I will take my two best suits of clothes, and other things suitable; for, if I am to perform things according to this prediction, it may be a long time before I get back again." Thinks I, "Youwarkee shall stay here with the children, and if I like my settlement I can send for her at any time." I then began to see the necessity of making at least one more machine to carry my goods on. "And," says I, "as they will be very weighty, I must have more lasks, to shift in carrying them, for I will retain sixteen for my own body-machine, in order to relieve each other; and as the distance is so great, I will not be stinted for want of fresh hands."

Being come to this resolution, I called Nasgig, and ordered eight fresh lasks to attend my baggage; these he soon singled out. So, having settled all matters with my wife, and taken leave of her and the children, I charged them not to stir out of the grotto till I was gone; and leaving them all in tears, I set out with a heavy heart for the level, where the whole convoy and my two machines waited for me.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

When we came to the level, I desired Nasgig to draw all his men into a circle as near as they could stand; I then asked them, who would undertake to carry me, when not a man but proffered his service. I told them, my question was only in case of necessity, for my bearers were already provided, saving accidents; "But, my friends," says I, "as you are equally deserving for the offered service, are any of you desirous of being filgays?" They all answering together, "I! I! I!" "Nasgig," says I, "you and I must come to a capitulation before I go, and your honour must be pledged for performance of articles."

I began with telling them what an enemy I was to slavery; "And," says I to Nasgig, "as I am about to quit my country, my family, my every other conveniency of life, for I know not what, I know not where, and from whence I shall never return, I must be indulged in the satisfaction of seeing all these my fellow-travellers as happy as myself; for which reason I must insist upon every man present alighting in safety with me being made free the moment we touch the ground."

Nasgig paused for an answer; for though my bearers were his own lasks, yet, as the rest were the king's, he knew not how far he might venture to promise for them; but fearing I might still retract my purpose, he engaged to procure their freedom of the king.

I then permitting them to take me up, we were over the rock as quick as thought; and I perceived I had nothing to fear, for they were so dexterous on the graundee, that I received not the least shock all the way, though every quarter of an inch at hand made a considerable deflection from the perpendicular. We shifted but twice till we came to Battringdrigg, the manner of which I directed as I sat in my chair; for I ordered the new man to hover over him he was to relieve, and reaching down his hand to meet the others which were held up with a rope, the old bearer sunk beneath the chair, and the reliever took his place. This we did one by one, till all were changed; but there was one, a stout young fellow, at the first short rope on my right hand, who observing me to eye him more than the rest, in a bravado would not be relieved before we arrived at Battringdrigg arkoe; and I afterwards took him into my family.

As it was now somewhat advanced in the light season, I had hopes of a tolerably good prospect; but had it been quite light, I should have been never the better for it. I had been upon very high mountains in the inland parts of Africa, but was never too high to see what was below me before, though very much contracted; but here, in the highest of our flight, you could not distinguish the globe of the earth but by a sort of mist; then sometimes, on a cue given, from an inexpressible height my bearers would dart as it were sloping, like a shooting-star, for an incredible distance, almost to the very surface of the sea, still keeping me as upright as a Spaniard on my seat. I asked them the reason of their so vast descent. They told me, they not only eased their graundees by that descent, but could fly half as far again in a day as by a direct (they meant horizontal) flight. And on my conscience I believe they spoke true, for in their descents I think no arrow could have reached us.

In about sixteen hours—for I took my watch with me—we alighted on the height of Battringdrigg. Here we rested four hours; I opened my chest, and gave each of my bearers a drop of brandy. Nasgig and I also just wetted our mouths, and ate a piece of preserve to moisten us, the rest of the lasks sitting down, and feeding upon what they had brought with them in their colapets; for their method is, when they take long flights, to carry a number of hard round fruits, flat like my cream-cheeses, but much less, which contain a sort of flour they eat dry; then drinking, that swells, and fills them as much as a good meal of anything else would.

When we had sufficiently rested, they shut their colapets—which sometimes hung down from their necks, and were sometimes swung round to their backs—and crossing the arkoe and another large sea, we arrived in about six hours more to the height of the White Mountains, which Nasgig told me were the confines of Georigetti's territories. "But," thinks I, "it may belong to whom it will, for the value of it;" for nothing could be more barren than all the top of it; but the inside of it made amends for that, by the prodigious tall and large trees it abounded with, full of the strangest kinds of fruits I had ever seen; and these trees most of them seemed to grow out of the very stone itself, not a speck of dirt being to be collected near them. Withoutside of these mountains, it was scarce darker than at my arkoe, for I made all the observation my time would allow me; when spying at a vast distance several lights, which were unusual things to me in that country, they told me, the largest was the burning mountain Alkoe (this I remembered to have heard the name of upon some former occasion, though I could not recollect what), and that the rest were of the same sort, but smaller. I asked if they were in Georigetti's territories. They said no, they belonged to another king formerly, whose subjects were as fond of fire as Georigetti's were of avoiding it; and that many of them worked with it always before them, and made an insufferable noise by it.

At hearing the above relation, an impression struck my fancy that they might be a sort of smiths, or workers in iron or other metals; and I wished myself with them—for I had a mighty notion of that work, having been frequently at a neighbouring forge when a boy, and knew all their tools—and resolved to get all the information I could of that country some other time; for our company preparing to set forward again, I could have no more talk now.

When we came near our journey's end, Nasgig asked me where I would please to alight. I told him I thought at my father's; for though I came on a visit to the king, it would not show respect to go before him just off a journey. But I might have spared me the trouble of settling that point; for we were not gone far from the Black Mountain—it going by that name withinside, though it is called the White without—before we heard the gripsacks, and a sort of squeaking or screaming music, very loud. Nasgig told me the king was in flight. I asked him how he knew that, for I could see nobody. He knew it, he said, by the gripsack and the other music, which never played but on that occasion; and presently after I thought the whole kingdom was on the graundee, and was going to order my bearers back to the mountain, for fear of the concourse. Thinks I, "They will jostle me down out of civility, and I shall break my neck to gratify their curiosity." So I told Nasgig, if he did not somehow stop the multitude, I would turn back for the mountain, for I would never venture into that crowd of people.

Nasgig sprang away to the king, and informed him; but the king fearing the people should be disgusted at his sending them back, gave orders for the whole body to file off to the right and left, and taking a vast sweep each way, to fall in behind me. This was no sooner said than done, and all spreading into two vast semicircles, met in a train just behind my chair.

Nasgig had also persuaded the king to retreat back to the palace, telling him, as I was under the guidance of others, and on a foundation he should scarce, in my condition, have ventured upon, he was sure I should be better satisfied with his intended respect only, than to receive it there; "But," says he, "that your majesty may see his contrivance, I will cause him to alight in the palace garden."

The king returning, ordered all the colambs to assemble in council again; and as I went over the city, I was surprised to see all the rock of which it consisted quite covered with people, besides prodigious numbers in the air, all shouting out peals of welcome to me; and as we were then but little above their heads, every one had something to say of me; one wondering what I had got on, another swearing he saw hair on my face as long as his arm; and in general every one calling on the Image for my safety.

The king was present when I alighted in the garden, and himself taking me from my chair, I bent on one knee to kiss his hand; but he took me in his arms, called me his father, and told me, he hoped I would make his days equal in glory to his great ancestor, Begsurbeck. We complimented some time, before he took me into a small refectory in the garden, and gave me some of his sort of wine, which I found was loaded with ram's horn, and some dried and moist sweetmeats. His majesty then called one of the persons in waiting, and telling him he was going to the room of audience, ordered him to conduct me thither forthwith.

Following my guide, after a long walk though a sort of piazza, we entered under a stately arch, curiously carved, into a very spacious room, lighted with infinite numbers of globe-lamps; where he desired me to sit down on a round stone pedestal covered with leaves, and all round the sides of it were running foliages exquisitely wrought; on the walls were carved figures of glumms in several actions, but chiefly in battle, or other warlike exercises, in alto-relievo, very bold, with other devices interspersed. I sat down, having first paid my submission to the throne, and to the several colambs who sat on the king's right and left down the sides of the room.

The person then who introduced me, going into the middle of the room, spoke to this effect:—"Mighty king, and you honourable lords his colambs, here is present the glumm Peter of Grandevolet; I wait your commands where to dispose of him."

Then the king and all the colambs arising, another person stepped forth, and looking at me—for I was standing—"Glumm Peter of Grandevolet," says he, "I am to signify to you that the mighty king Georigetti, and all his honourable colambs, congratulate your arrival in Normnbdsgrsutt, and have commanded me to give you rank according to your merit." Then the king and colambs sat down, and I was led to the king's right hand, and placed on the same stone with, but at some small distance from, his majesty.

The king then told me the great pleasure I had done him and the colambs, in my so speedy arrival upon their message; but said he would give me no farther trouble now, than to know how I chose to be served; and desired me to give orders to a *bash* (valet) he would send to me, for whatever I wanted; and then giving orders to a bash to show me my lodgings, I was permitted to retire to refresh myself.

I was then conducted to my apartment, up a sloping flight of stone, very long, with a vast arch over my head; I believe it might be fifty paces long at least, but being a very broad, easy ascent, and smooth, it was not in the least fatiguing. All the way I went were the same sorts of globe-lights as in the audience-room. The staircase, if I may call it so, it answering the same purpose, was most beautifully carved, both sides and top. At length I came into a very large gallery, at least fourscore paces long, and about twenty broad, on each side of which hung the same globes. At the farther end of this gallery I entered by an arch, very narrow, but most neatly wrought, into an oval room; in the middle of this room, on the right hand, was another small neat archway; entering through which about ten paces, there were two smaller arches to the right and left, and within them, with an easy ascent of about three paces, you came to a flat trough of stone, six or seven feet long, and about the same width; these, I understood by my bash, were the beds to lie on. I asked him if they were used to lie on the bare stone. He told me some did; but he had orders to lay me on *dossee* (something soft); and presently up came four fellows with great mats, as I took them for by my globe-light, full of something which, by their so easily carrying so great bulk, I perceived was very light. They pitched it down upon my stone bedstead, and first with great sticks, and then with small switches, having beat it soundly, retired.

Whilst I was looking about at the oddity of the place, I found my bash was gone too. "So," says I, "all gone! I suppose they intend I shall now go to bed." I then went into my bedchamber, for there were globe-lights there too, and observing my bed lay full four feet above the stone, and sloping higher to the sides and head, I went to feel what it was; but laying my hand upon it, it was so soft, I could feel no resistance till I had pressed it some way; and it lay so light, that a fly must have sunk upon it. "Well," thinks I, "what if I never lay thus before, I believe I have lain as bad!"

I then took a turn into my oval room again, and observed the floor, sides, and all was stone, as smooth as possible, but not polished; and the walls and ceiling, and, in short, every place where they could be ornamental, were well adorned with carvings.

Though nobody came near me yet, I did not care to be too inquisitive all at once, but I longed to know what they burnt in the globes, which gave so steady a light, and yet seemed to be inclosed quite round, top and sides, without any vent-hole for the smoke to evaporate. "Surely," thinks I, "they are a dullish glass" (for they hung almost above my touch), "and must be exceeding hot with the fire so inclosed, and have some small vent-hole, though I can't see it." Then standing on tip-toe to feel, it struck quite cold to my finger; but I could only reach to touch that, or any of the rest, being all of one height.

Whilst I was musing thus, I heard the sound of voices coming along the gallery; and presently came a train of servants, with as much victuals as a hundred men could eat, and wines proportionable; they set it down at the upper end of the oval room, on a flat of stone, which on making the room had been left in the upper bend of the oval quite across it, about table high, for that purpose. These eatables, such as were liquid, or had sauces to them, were served up in a sort of grey stone bowls; but the dry were brought in neat wooden baskets of twig-work.

. I believe there were twenty different things on the table, insomuch that I did not know where to begin, and heartily wished for an excuse to get rid of my bash, who stood close at my elbow, that I might have smelt and tasted before I helped myself to anything.

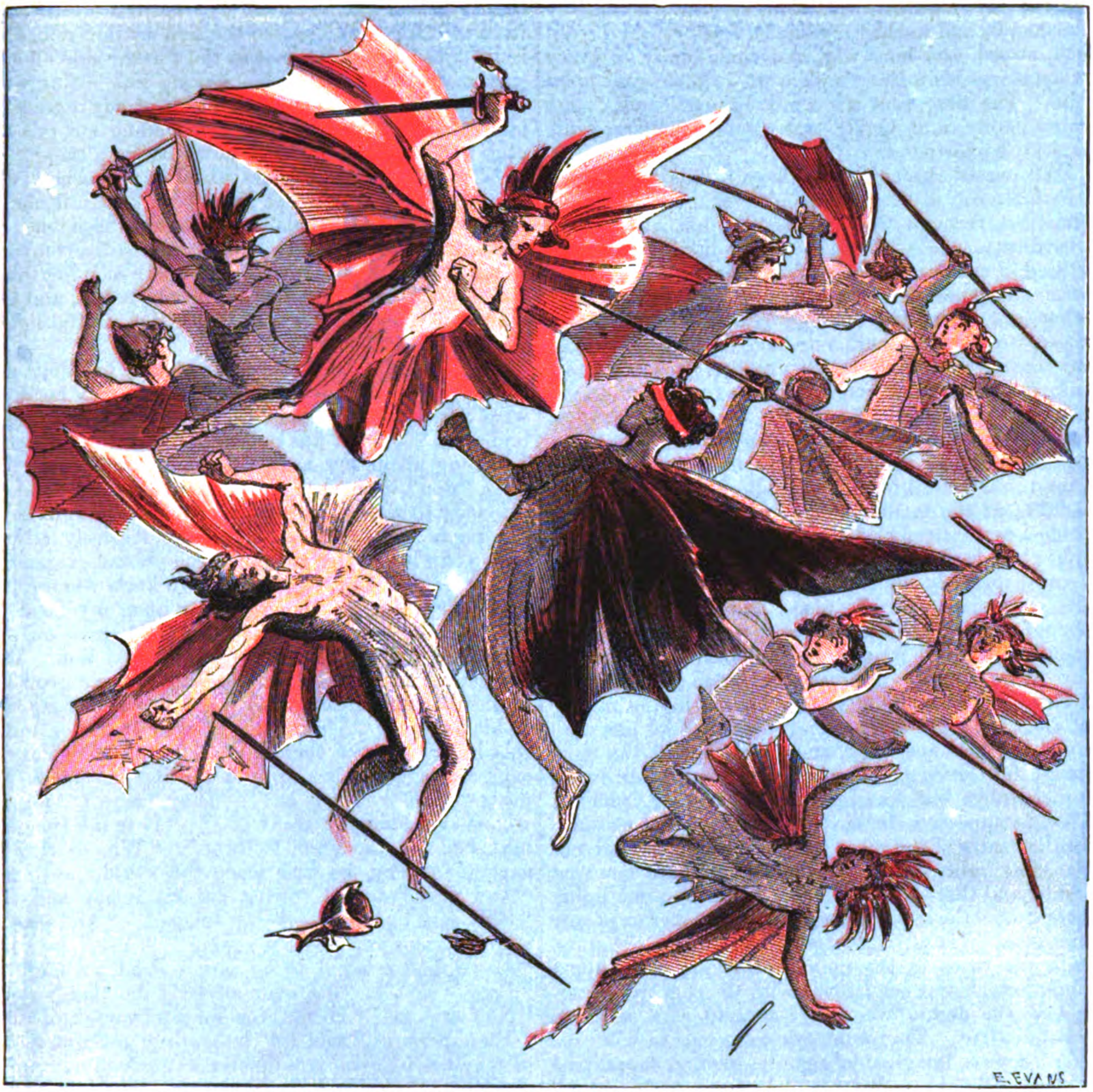
In this perplexity, I asked my bash what post he was in under his majesty. He said, one of the fifty bashes appointed to be near the king's favourites when at court. "And pray," said I, "are you the person to attend me?" He was, he said, the principal to wait on my person; but there were at least sixty others, who had different offices in this apartment. "I would be glad," said I, "to know your name, that I may the more readily speak to you." He told me his name was Quilly. "Then, pray, Quilly," says I, "do you know what is become of my baggage and my chair?" I found, though he guessed at my baggage, he was puzzled at the name of chair. "My seat," says I. "Oh, I understand you," says he. "Then, pray, will you bring me word of them, and see them brought safe up into the gallery?" He tripped away on my errand. "So," thinks I, "now I am fairly rid of you!" but I had scarce turned any of my viands over, before I found he had but stepped into the gallery, to send some of the idle fellows in waiting there; and this putting me to a nonplus, "Quilly," says I, "you know I am a stranger here; and as different countries have different ways and customs, as well of dressing their eatables as other things, and these dishes being dressed contrary to my custom, I shall be glad if you will name some of them to me, that I may know them when I see them again."

Quilly began with this, and ran on to that, which was a fine dish; and the other, few but the king have at their tables. "And here," says he, "is a dish of padsi; and there——" "Hold, hold, Quilly!" says I; let's try these first, before you proceed;" for I remembered, at my grotto, they all ate my fish for padsi, and I cut a slice of it (for I always carried my clasp-knife in my pocket, and they had no such thing there), and laying it on a round cake I took for my trencher, I tasted it, and found it so, to my apprehension, in the palate; but it did not look or flake like fish, as I observed by the slices they had cut it into; for all the victuals were in long slices ready to bite at. I asked him if these things were not all cut, and with what, for I understood they had no knives (showing him mine). He said, the cook cut it with a sharp stone. I then asked him the names of several other things, and at last he came to crallmott; which having heard of before, I now tasted, and could have sworn it had been a hashed fowl. I asked him if crallmotts were very common. He told me, yes, towards the bottoms of the mountains there were abundance of crallmott trees. "No, no," says I, "not trees; I mean fowls, birds." "I don't know what they are," says he; "but these crallmotts grow on very large trees." Indeed, I did not know yet what I was at. "But," says I, "if your fowls do, sure your fish don't grow on trees too?" "We have none of them," says he, "in this country." "Why," says I, "it is but this moment I tasted one." "I don't know, then," said he, "where the cook got it." "Why here," says I, "what you call padsi, I call fish." "Aye, padsi," says he, "grows upon a bush in the same woods." "Well done," says I; "this is the first country I was ever in where the fish and fowl grow on trees; it is ten to one but I meet with an ox growing by the tail on some tree, before I leave you."

I had by this time, out of these two and some other pickings, made up a very good meal; and putting my knife into my pocket, desired something to drink. Then he filled me a bott of wine, very well tasted, though too sweet for meals; but putting some water to it, it did very well.

My messengers being returned, and having set all my things in the gallery, I desired Quilly to let the victuals be taken away; upon which there came more servants than dishes, who took all at once, but some wine and water I desired might remain.

I told Quilly I saw there were two beds. "Who are they for?" says I. "One for you, and one for me," says he; "for we bashes never leave the king's favourites." "Pray, Quilly," says I, "what is the meaning that to the several rooms I have been in, there is never a door?" "Door!" says he, "I don't know that." "What!" says I, "don't you shut your rooms at night?" "No, no; shut at night! I never heard of that!" "I believe," says I, "Quilly, it is almost bedtime, is it not?" "No, no," says Quilly, "the gripsack has not sounded." "How do you know," says I, "in this country, when you shall lie down, and when arise? for my wife has told me you have no clocks." "No, no clocks," says he. "Then," says I, "does every one rise and lie down when they please? or do you all lie down and all rise together about the same time?" "Oh!" says Quilly, "you will hear the gripsack presently; there are several glumms who take it by turns to sound it for rest, and then we know it is time to lie down; and when they sound it again, we know it is time to rise." And afterwards I found these people guessed the time (being twelve hours between sound and sound) so well, that there were but few minutes' variation at any time between them and my watch; and I set my watch to go from their soundings at six o'clock.



THE COMBAT BETWEEN NASGIG AND THE GENERAL OF THE INVADERS.

I found myself pretty much fatigued after my journey, so I told Quilly I would lie down, and ordered him not to disturb me till I waked of myself.

I could not prevent the officiousness of my valet to put me to bed, and cover me with the down, or whatever it was; for having no sheets, I pulled off nothing but my coat, wig, and shoes; and putting on my flannel nightcap, I laid me down.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

I HAVE known some travellers not to be able to sleep in a strange lodging, but that did not prove my case; for having looked on my watch when I went to bed, as I call it, and finding it was down, I wound it up, and observed it began to go about three o'clock, whether day or night matters not, and when I waked it was past nine, so that I had slept eighteen hours; and finding that a very reasonable refreshment, and myself very hungry, I called Quilly to get my breakfast.

Quilly told me his majesty had been to visit me, but would not have me disturbed. I begging him to dispatch my breakfast as soon as possible, and let me have some water for my hands, he ordered the gallery-waiters, and everything came immediately.

My breakfast was a brown liquid, with a sort of seeds or grain in it, very sweet and good; but the fear of the king's return before I was ready for him prevented my inquiring into what it was; so having finished it, and washed my hands, I put on my brown suit, sword, and long wig, and sent Quilly to know when it was his majesty's pleasure I should wait upon him. The king sent me word he would admit me immediately, and Quilly was my conductor to his majesty's apartment.

We passed through the gallery, at the farther end of which was a very beautiful arch, even with the staircase, through which Quilly led me into a large guard-room, wherein were above one hundred glumms posted in ranks, with their pikes in hand, some headed with sharp-pointed stone, others with multangular stone, and others with stone globes. Passing through these, we entered another gallery as long as that to my apartment; then under another arch we came into a small square room, carved exceeding fine, on the right and left of which were two other archways, leading into most noble rooms; but we only saw them, passing quite across the little room, through an arch that fronted us, into a small gallery of a prodigious height; at the farther end of which, Quilly, turning aside a mat, introduced and left me in the most beautiful place in the universe; where, neither seeing nor hearing anybody stir, I employed myself in examining the magnificence of the place, and could, as I then thought, have feasted my eye with variety for a twelvemonth. I paced it over one hundred and thirty of my paces long, and ninety-six broad; there were arches in the middle of each side, and in the middle of each end; the arch ceiling could not be less than the breadth of the room, and covered with the most delightful carvings, from whence hung globe-lights innumerable, but seemingly without order, which I thought appeared the more beautiful on that account. In the centre of the room hung a prodigious cluster of the same lights, so disposed as to represent one vast light; and there were several rows of the same lights hung round the room, one row above another at proper distances. These lights represented to me the stars, with the moon in the middle of them; and after I came to be better acquainted with the country, I perceived the lights were to represent the southern constellations. The archways were carved with the finest devices imaginable, gigantic glumms supporting on each side the pediments. At every ten paces, all along the sides and ends, arose columns, each upon a broad square base, admirably carved; these reached to the cornice or base of the arched ceiling, quite round the room. On the panels between each column were carved the different battles and most remarkable achievements of Begsurbeck himself. Over the arch I entered at was the statue of Begsurbeck, and over the opposite arch the old prophetic ragan. In the middle of the room stood a long stone table lengthwise, most exquisitely carved, almost the length of the room, except where it was divided in the middle about the breadth of the archways, in order for a passage from one arch to the other. In short, to describe this one room particularly, would make a volume of itself.

I stayed here a full hour and a half, wondering why nobody came to me; at length, turning myself about, I saw two glumms coming towards me, and having received their compliments, they desired me to walk in to the king. We passed through another middling room, and taking up a mat at the farther side of it, I was conducted in, where his majesty was sitting with another glumm. They both arose at my entrance, and calling me their father, and leading me, one by each hand, obliged me to sit down between them.

After some compliments about my journey, the king told me I should not have been kept waiting so long without, but he had some urgent despatches to make, and he imagined I would be able to divert myself in the boskee. I declared I had never seen anything like it for grandeur and magnificence before, and the beauty of the sculpture and disposition of the lights were most exquisite.

All this while, I felt the other glumm handling my long wig, and feeling whether it grew to my head, or what it was; for he had by this time got his finger under the caul, and was pulling my hair down; when, I turning about my head, "Glumm Peter," says the king, "don't be uneasy; the ragan will do you no hurt, it is only to satisfy his curiosity; and I chose to have the ragan here, that we may more leisurely advise with you what course to take in the present exigencies of my state." The ragan desired to know whether all that hair (meaning my wig) grew upon my head or not. I told him no, but that hair did grow on my head, and pulling off my wig, I showed him. The ragan then asked me if I had hair of my own growing under that too (meaning my beard, which he then had in his hand, for their glumms have no beards), but I told him that grew there of itself. "O parly Puly!" says the ragan, rising up and smiting his hands together, "it is he! it is he!" "Pray," says I, "ragan, who is this Puly you speak of?" "It is the Image," says he, "of the great Collwar." "Who is that?" says I. "Why, he that made the world," says he. "And pray," says I, "what did his Image make?" "Oh," says he, "we made the Image." "And pray," says I, "can't you break it again?" "Yes," says he, "if we had a mind to be struck dead we might." "Pray," says I, "did ever anybody die that way?" "No," says he; "no one ever durst presume to do it." "Then, perhaps," said I, "the punishment you speak of might not be the consequence of such an attempt."

"Most admirable Peter," then says the king, "you, you are the glumm we depend upon to fulfil an ancient prediction delivered by a venerable ragan."

I told the king I would excuse the ragan the repetition of the prediction, as I had partly been informed of it by Nasgig; and that conceiving myself, as he did, to be the person predicted of by the ragan, I had the more readily set out on this expedition, which nothing but the hopes of performing so great a good could have prevailed with me to undertake; and I did not doubt, with God's blessing, to accomplish it.

The king grew exceeding joyous at what I said, and told me he would call a moucheratt, at which all his colambs should attend to have their advice, and then we would proceed to action; and ordered the ragan to let it be for the sixth day, and in the meantime, that he and his brethren should day and night implore the Image to guide their deliberations.

The ragan being gone, I told the king I had something to impart to him, in which it was my duty to obtain his majesty's sentiments before I appeared publicly at the moucheratt. He desired me to proceed. I told him I had been some time considering the old ragan's prediction, with the occasion of it; "And," says I, "it is plain to me that all these mischiefs have befallen you for neglect of the ragan's proposal concerning religion; as I understand your great ancestor would have come into it, and would have had his people done so too, but for the ragans, who hindered it. You find," says I, "by your traditional history, that Begsurbeck lived long and reigned gloriously; and I would aim at making you as prosperous as he was, and infinitely more happy, not only in outward splendour here, but in great glory hereafter."

Perceiving that my discourse had quickened the king's attention, says I, "I must let your majesty know, it is the old ragan's plan I must proceed upon in every branch of it." "Why," says the king, "he would have abolished our worship of the Image." "And so would I," says I; "nay, not only would, but must and will, before I engage myself in your deliverance; and then, with the only assistance of the great Collwar, whom I adore, and whom you must too, if you expect any service from me, I don't doubt to prevail."

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Having now fully entered into the spirit of the business with my own good liking, I was determined to push it vigorously, or perish in the attempt. Upon the best deliberation I could take, I came to the following resolutions: First, to insist on the abolition of the Image worship, and to introduce true religion by the fittest means I could find opportunity for. Secondly, as the revolters had been one people with those I would serve, and had this prediction amongst them too, and were interested in it, in hopes of its distant accomplishment; so, if they came properly to the knowledge that the person predicted of had appeared, and was ready for execution of his purposes, it must stagger their fidelity to their new master; and therefore I would find means to let them know it. Thirdly, that I would not march until I was in condition not easily to be repulsed, and therefore I would get some of my cannon. Fourthly, that I would go to the war in my flying chair, and train up a guard for my person with pistols and cutlasses. These resolutions I kept to myself till the moucheratt was over, to see how matters would turn out there.

Whilst I waited for the approaching moucheratt, my son Tommy and daughter Hallycarnie paid their duties to me. I found them both very glad to see me, for everybody, they said, told them I was to be their deliverer. Being now in my oval chamber, and alone with my children, I had a mind to be informed of some things I was almost ashamed to ask Quilly. "Tommy," says I, "what sort of fire do they keep in these globes? and what are they made of?" "Daddy," says he, "yonder is the man shifting them; you may go and see." Being very curious to see how he did it, I went to him. As I came near him, he seemed to have something all on fire on his arm. "What has the man got there?" says I. "Only sweecoes," says Tommy. By this time, I came up to him. "Friend," says I, "what are you about?" "Shifting the sweecoes, sir," says he, "to feed them." "What oil do you feed with?" says I. "Oil!" says he, "they won't eat oil; that would kill them all." "Why," says I, "my lamp is fed with oil."

Tommy could scarce forbear laughing himself; but for fear the servant should do so too, pulled me by the sleeve. "Daddy," says he, "it is not oil that gives this light, but sweecoes, a living creature; he has got his basket full, and is taking the old ones out to feed them, and putting new ones in; they shift them every half-day, and feed them." "What!" says I, "are all these infinite number of globes I see living creatures?" "No," says he, "the globes are only the transparent shell of a bott, like our calabashes; the light comes from the sweecoe within." "Has that man," says I, "got any of them?" "Yes," says he, "you may see them; the king, and the colambs, and indeed every man of note, has a place to breed and feed them in." "Pray let us go see them," says I, "for that is a curiosity indeed."

Tommy desired the man to show me the sweecoes, so he set down his basket, which was made of straw-coloured small twigs, neatly compacted, but so light as scarce to be of any weight, having a handle in the middle, and a division under it, with flaps on each side to lift up and down. I opened one of the lids, and looking surprised at the light, the man took out one, and would have put it into my hand, but perceiving me shy of it, he assured me it was one of the most innocent things in the world. I then took it, and surveying it, it felt to my touch as smooth and cold as a piece of ice. It was about as long as a large lob-worm, but much thicker. The man seeing me admire the brightness of its colour, told me it had done its duty, and was going to be fed, but those which were going upon duty were much clearer; and then opening the other lid, those appeared far exceeding the others in brightness and thickness too. I asked what he fed them with. He said, leaves and fruit; but grass, when he could get it, which was not often, they were very fond of.

Having dismissed my children, I sent for Nasgig. The moment I saw him, it came into my mind to inquire after my new filgays. He said, the king granted my request at the first word. "But," says I, "you told me my bearers should be free too." "They are so," says he. "Then there is one thing I want," says I, "that is, to see the second bearer on my right hand, who came through without shifting. I have a fancy for that fellow," says I, "to be about my person; and I should be glad to treat with him about it." "My friend Peter," says he, "you are a man of penetration, though it ill becomes me to say so in regard of persons; but I can say this for him, if he likes you as well as you seem to like him, he is the trustiest fellow in the world." "I don't fear his disliking me," says I, "for I make it my maxim to do as I would be done by." "But," says Nasgig, "it being now the fourth day since he was freed, he may be gone home, perhaps, for he is not one of our country, but of Mount Alkoe. If Quilly can find him, he will come." So he ordered Quilly to send for Maleck of Mount Alkoe, with orders to come to me.

We descended from one discourse to another, and at length to King Georigetti's affairs; when Nasgig, giving a sigh, "Ah, Peter," says he, "we shall loiter away our time here till the enemy are upon our backs. There is venom in the grass; I hope my good master is not betrayed." "By whom?" says I. "By those he little suspects," says he. "Why," says I, "you are much in his favour; why do you suffer it?" "I believe," says he, "I am in his favour, and may continue in it, if I will join in measures to ruin him; but there are persons in these dominions who will never let my master rest till out of his throne, or in hoximo. I am but lately in favour, but have made as many observations, perhaps, as those who have been longer about the king." "Nasgig," says I, "your concern proceeds from an honest heart; don't stifle what you have to say." "Peter," says he, "Georigetti was the only son of a well-beloved father, and ascended his throne ten years ago on his decease; but Harlokin, the prince of the revolters, finding that whispers and base stories spread about did not hurt Georigetti or withdraw his subjects' affections, has tried a means to make him undo himself. By closely playing his game, he has got one of his relations into the king's service, than whom he could never have chosen a fitter instrument. He by degrees, feeding the king's humour, and promising mountains, has pushed into the best places in the kingdom: his name is Barbarsa, a most insolent man, who has had the assurance to corrupt the king's mistress, and has prevailed and brought her over to his interest." "O perfidy!" says I, "is it possible?" "Yes," says he; "and more than that, has drawn in, till now, an honest man called Nicor; and it has been agreed between them to protract this war, till by their stratagems in procuring the revolt of Gauingrunt, a very large and populous province, and now the barrier between us and the rebels, and two or three more places, they shall have persuaded Georigetti to fly; and then Barbarsa is to be king, and Yaccombourse his queen. A union is then to be struck between him and Harlokin, and peace made by restoring some of the surrendered provinces; and upon the death of the first of them or their issue childless, the survivor or his issue is to take the whole. They laugh at your uniting the dominions, and the old prediction."

"These," says I, "Nasgig, are serious things; but, know this, he that conceals them is a traitor. Can you prove this?" "I have heard them say so," says Nasgig. "How!" says I, "and not discover it?" "I am as anxious for that as you can be," says he; "but for me to be cashiered, slit, and sent to Crashdoorpt, only for meaning well, where will be the benefit to my master or me?" "When and where did you hear this?" says I. "Several and several times," says he, "in my own bed." "In your own bed!" says I. "I'll tell you," says he; "it so happens, that when I rest at the palace, as I am bound to do when on duty, there is a particular bed for me; now, as the whole palace is cut out of one solid rock, though Yaccombourse's apartment at the entrance is at a prodigious distance from the entrance to mine, yet my bed being separated from her private apartment only by a thin or imperfect partition, I can plainly hear every word spoken therein. It is here Barbarsa repairs, to concert his plots with her." "Say nothing of it," says I, "but leave the issue to me." By this time the messenger returned with Maleck, and he and I soon agreeing, I took him into my service.

I went to bed as usual, but could get no rest, Nasgig's story engrossing my whole attention; I was resolved, however, to be better informed before I acquainted the king of it; but rising pretty early next morning, the king came into my chamber, leaning upon Barbarsa, to tell me he had received an express that Gauingrunt had revolted. "Peter," says he, "behold an undone monarch!" "Great sir," says Barbarsa, "you afflict yourself too much; here is Mr. Peter come to assist you, and he will settle all your concerns, never fear." I eyed the man, and found him a villain in his heart; for even while he was forcing a feeling tone of affliction, he was staring at my laced hat and feather that lay on the seat, by which I was sure nothing could be at a greater distance than his heart and tongue. His sham concern put me within a moment of seizing him in the king's presence; but his majesty at that instant speaking diverted me.

Before the king left me, I told him, having certain propositions to make to the moucheratt next day, it was possible they might require time to consider them; wherefore it would be proper, at this critical time, to let them meet every other day, business or none, till this affair was over. The king ordered Barbarsa to see it was so, and then we parted.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

Attending at the moucheratt to-day, I happened to be seated within two paces of the Idol. There was the most numerous assembly that had ever been seen; and when all was quiet, the king opened with signifying the revolt of Gauingrunt, the approach of the enemy, and no forces in the field to stop them. This he set forth in terms so moving, that the whole assembly were melted into sighs; till one of the colambs rising up, says he, "His majesty has set forth the state of his affairs in such a manner, that it becomes us all to be vigilant. We all seem to have, and I believe have, great faith in the remedy this day to be proposed to us, in answer to our ancient prediction; and as I doubt not but glumm Peter is the man, so I doubt not but through his management we shall receive help; but can we expect Peter to go singly to fight an army? Did your prediction say he should go alone? No; he shall slay—that is, he and his army; what is done by them, being always attributed to their general."

Here arose a ragan, and told the assembly, in the name of himself and brethren, that the prediction had never yet been applicable to any one person till glumm Peter arrived; and requested that glumm Peter might forthwith be declared protector of the army, and set forward with it, that the state might receive safety, and the Great Image its proper honour.

I could now hold out no longer; but, standing up, made my speech in the following manner, or very near it:—"Mighty king—you, reverend ragans, and honourable colambs—with the good people of this august assembly—I am come hither, led by the force of your own prediction, at the request of his majesty and the states, at the peril of my life, to accomplish things said to be predicted of me, glumm Peter. If, then, you have a prediction—if your prediction describes me, and the circumstances of these times, it consisting of several parts, they ought seriously to be weighed, that I may know when and where I am to begin my operation, and when and where to leave off; for in predictions, the whole is to be accomplished as much as any member of it. It is said I shall destroy the traitor of the west; I am ready to enter upon it, and settle the ancient limits of your monarchy. Are you willing, therefore, that should be done? yea, or nay?" Then every one answered, "Yea!" "And by common consent establish what the old ragan would have taught you?" Here the king rose up; but Barbarsa giving him a touch (for every one waited to be guided by the voice of the ragans), he sat down again; and no one answering, "Yea," I again put the same question, and told them, as it was their own concern, I would have an answer before I proceeded.

Perceiving the ragans still hush, I rose, and beckoning the populace to silence, "Mighty king—you, honourable colambs—and you, good people," says I—"for it is to you I now speak—hear me with attention. You think, perhaps, that the suppression of the truth by your ragans will prevent the knowledge of that truth your old ragan would have taught; but you are mistaken; and that you may know I don't come here at a venture to try if I can relieve you, but with an assurance of doing it if you consent, I must let you know, from me, what the ragan would have taught. The ragan would have demolished this trumpery piece of dirt, this grimalkin, set out with horrid face and colour to fright children; this, I say, he would have demolished, being assured it could neither do good nor hurt, give joy or grief to any man. Can any of you believe this stupid piece of earth hears me?" Some of the ragans cried, "Yes!" "And that he can revenge any affront I shall give him?" Again, "Yes, to be sure!" "Let him, then, if he dare!" says I, whipping out my cutlass, and with the back side of it striking his head off. "This," says I, "O glumms, is what the ragans knew, and what I defy them to deny. Now," says I, "I will farther show you to whom the old ragan would have taught you to make your petitions and pay your adoration; and that is the Supreme Being, Maker of heaven and earth, of us and all things; that Being whom you have heard of by the name of Collwar, and are taught at present to be afraid to speak to. And I appeal to your own hearts, if many of you have ever thought of him. Again," says I, "let anything in the shape of man, that gives himself leave to consider at all, only tell me, if what he can make, and does make, with his own hands, hath not more occasion to depend on him as its maker, than he on that? Why, then, should not we depend upon and pray to our Maker?"

Finding I had the populace now on my side (for I did not doubt the king and the colambs), I put the question to the ragans: "Reverend," says I, "you see your prediction this day about to be fulfilled; for if it is a true one, no force of man can withstand it. You see your image disgraced; you see, and I appeal to you all for the truth of it, that what the ragan would have taught has, without your assistance, been disclosed. I therefore would have you the first to break the bondage of idolatry, and turn to the true Collwar, as it will be so much glory to you. Will you, and which of you, from henceforth serve Collwar, and no longer worship an idol? The issue of this great affair depends upon your answers." They waited some time for a spokesman to begin; and as soon as he was able to get up, a poor old ragan said, "I will continue in it, and do all the little good I can; and blessed be the day this prediction is fulfilled, to succeeding generations! I have lived long enough, to have seen this." Then the rest of the ragans, one by one, followed his example. And thus, with prodigious acclamations, both the ragans and people ended the great affair of religion.

I now more and more believed the truth of the prediction, and told them I should have occasion for seven hundred men before I set out against the rebels, and desired that they might be commanded by Nasgig. This was readily granted. I then told them, as I purposed to do nothing without their concurrence, I desired the colambs would remain in the city till I set out, that they might be readily called together. I then desired I might be quite private from company till I departed.

I took Nasgig home with me; and, when we came there, "My dear friend," says he, "what have you done to-day!" "Nasgig," says I, "I am glad it is over. And now," says I, "you must enter on a new employ; but, first, can you provide me fifty honest, faithful glumms, for a particular expedition? they must be sensible, close, and temporizing." He said he would, and come to me again. I then desired a private audience of the king. I told his majesty if I, a stranger, could gain such influence there, I might have had much more if he had joined me, especially as he had told me he gave no credit to the Image. "Ah, Peter!" says he, "monarchs neither see, hear, nor perceive, with their own eyes, ears, or understandings. I would willingly have done it, but Barbarsa prevented me, by assuring me it would be my ruin. Nay, I will tell you, that he and Nicor are of opinion that your coming hither, which is looked upon by us all as such a blessing, will one day undo me: 'For,' say they, 'though he may perform what you expect from him, it is not to be supposed he should suffer it to redound to you.'" "Mighty sir," says I, "don't think I came hither to possess, but redress, a kingdom. I lived far more to my ease in my grotto, than I can in this palace; but I now desire you"—drawing my sword and putting it into his hand—"to pierce this heart's blood, and make yourself easy in my death, rather than to live in distrust of me. No, great king," says I, "it is not I that would injure you; but, though I have been so short a time in your dominions, I find there are those who would." "Peter," says he, "what do you mean? sure I have no more traitors in my state!" "Your majesty has," says I. "How can you prove it?" says he; "but pray inform me who they are?" "I came not hither, great king," says I, "to turn informer, but reformer. I only desire you will wholly guide yourself by my direction for three days, and you shall be able to help yourself to all the information you can require, without my telling you. In the meantime, appear no more thoughtful than usual, or in any other way alter your accustomed habits."

Nasgig having sent me the fifty men, I asked them if they could carefully and artfully execute a commission I had to charge them with. They assuring me they would, I told them I would let them into my design, and let the management alone to them. My confidence in them made them twice as diligent as all the particular directions in the world would have done; so I only told them I had a mind the revolted towns, and also the enemy's army, should know that the person so along ago predicted of was now at Brandleguarp, and had, as the first step towards reducing them, and killing the traitor Harlokin, already altered their religion to the old ragan's plan; and that they had nothing now to expect but destruction to themselves, as soon as I appeared against them with my unknown fire and smoke, which I always had with me; and that the thing was looked upon to be as good as done already at Brandleguarp; and then to slip away again unperceived. They all promised me exact performance, and went off.

Nasgig then coming in, I told him he was now under my command, and must take six hundred glumms with him to Grandevolet, tell Youwarkee to show him my ship, and then he must bring me the things I had described to her by the name of cannon; he must bring them by ropes, as I was brought; and bring powder, which she would direct him to, and about fifty heavy balls which lay in the room with the powder. I told him, if he thought he should not have men enough, he must take more, and be as expeditious as was consistent with safety. I desired him to tell Youwarkee I hoped in a short time to send for her, and all the family, over to me. "And now, Nasgig," says I, "my orders are finished; but, the king! I must assist that good man. I therefore want to know the particular times Barbarsa and Yaccombourse usually meet." "That," says he, "is every night, when she is not with the king." "Now," says I, "you must show me your lodging, that I may find it in your absence; and give orders to the guard to let me, and whoever comes with me, enter at any time." He then took me to his chamber; but I passed through so many rooms, galleries, and passages, that I was sure I should never find it again, so I asked him if Maleck knew the way; and he assuring me he did, I took my leave of him, and he set out for Grandevolet.

CHAPTER XL.

The king coming to me the next day, as by appointment, and having assured me he had hinted nothing to any one, no, not to Barbarsa or Yaccombourse, told me that Barbarsa had given orders for stopping Nasgig and his men, and had persuaded him to show his authority, and keep me under. Says I, "Your majesty's safety is so near my heart, that even want of confidence in me shall not make me decline my endeavours to serve you. But have you suffered him to stop Nasgig?" "No," says he; "Nasgig was gone some time before he sent." "Oh, sir," says I, "you do not half know the worth of that man! But now, to what we meet upon: if you will, as I told you, but comply with me for three days, without asking questions, I will show you the greatest traitors in your dominions, and put them into your power too." He promised me again he would. "Then," says I, "please to meet me at Nasgig's lodgings without being perceived, if you can." "Good," says he. "And when you are there, see or hear what you will, you must not say a word till you are retired again." All which the king engaging to perform, we parted till evening.

I called Maleck, and asked if he knew the way to Nasgig's lodging. He told me, very well; and the time being come, he conducted me thither, where I had not waited long before the king came, most of the court being in bed. I desired the king to stay in the outer room till I went into the bedchamber two or three times, and I thought we must have put it off till another night; but listening once again, I found they were come; so I called the king, and led him to the place, entreating him, whatever he heard, to keep his patience, or he would ruin all. After waiting a while, we overheard the following dialogue:—

Yac. "My dearest Barbarsa, what was all that uproar at the moucheratt the other day?"

Bar. "Nothing, my love, but that mad fellow Peter, who sets up for a conjuror, and wants us all to dance to his pipe."

Yac. "I heard he overcame the ragans at an argument about the Image."

Bar. "Why, I don't know how that was; but truly the king's fingers itched to be on Peter's side, but I gave him a judicious nod, and you know he durst not displease so dear a friend as I am—ha, ha, ha! Am not I a sad fellow, my love, to talk so of my king?"

Yac. "He that wants but one step to a throne, is almost a king's fellow."

Bar. "And that but a short one too, my dear Yaccee. But I must get rid of that Nasgig. I don't love your thinking rascals; that fellow thinks more than I do, Yaccee."

Yac. "He'll never think to so good purpose, I believe. But how goes cousin Harlokin on? I find Gauingrunt is gone over."

Bar. "And so shall Bazin, Istell, Pezele, and Ginkatt too, my dear, for I am at work there; and then good night, my poor King Georigetti; thou shalt be advised to fly, and I'll keep the throne warm for thee. I don't see but King Barbarsa, and Queen Yaccombourse, sound much better than Georigetti."

Finding a pause, the king, who had admirably kept his temper, stole into the outer room. "Peter," says he, "I thank you; you have shown me myself. What fools are we kings! Ungrateful villain! Faithless traitress!—I hate you both. Peter," says he, "give me your sword; I'll destroy them both." "Hold, sir!" says I; "your majesty has heard sufficient to found a true judgment upon; but kings should not be executioners, or act by passion and revenge. You, who are in so exalted a station as always to have it in your power to punish a known crime in individuals, have not that necessity to prompt you to a violent act that private persons have, to whom it may be difficult to obtain justice. Therefore, my advice is, that you summon the colambs to-morrow, when Barbarsa and Nicor cannot fail to attend; and I would also desire Yaccombourse to be there. I will, in the meantime, prepare the servants under Quilly, and order Maleck with another posse to attend, as by your command, to execute your orders given by me; and I myself will impeach those bad persons in public; and Nicor, if he will not ingenuously confess what commission he was charged with from Barbarsa, shall be put to the torture I direct, till he discovers it."

The king was very well pleased with this method; so I ordered Quilly, as from the king, to bring all my servants to the assembly, appointing him his place; and Maleck to select me fifty stout persons, and to wait to execute my orders on a signal given. So soon as the assembly met, I told them I had made it my business to search into the cause of their calamities; and finding some of the traitors were now approached even into the capital city, his majesty had ordered me to ask their advice, what punishment was adequate, in their judgments, to the crime of conspiring against him and the state, and holding treasonable correspondence with his enemies, under the show of his greatest friends.

I stopped, and looked at Barbarsa; he turned as pale as ashes, and was rising to speak, when the senior colamb declared, if any such thing could be made appear, the common punishment of Crashdoorpt was too trivial, but they deserved to be dropped alive either to hoximo or Mount Alkoe. I then stepped up to Barbarsa, who sat at the king's left hand, as did Yaccombourse at his right, and telling them and Nicor they were all prisoners of state, I delivered Barbarsa and Yaccombourse in custody to Quilly and his men, ordering them into separate apartments, with strict commands that neither should speak to the other, upon pain of the last pronounced judgment. Barbarsa here called out to the king, begging him not to desert so faithful a servant for the insinuations of so vile a man as Peter; but the king only told him the vile man could be made appear presently, and he hoped he would meet his deserts.

I then stood up, and told the assembly the whole of what we heard, and that the king himself had been an ear-witness of it; which the king confirming, the whole assembly rang with confusion, and revenge and indignation appeared in every face. I then proposed, as we yet knew not what that secret commission was which Nicor was charged with, that he might be brought forth, and, upon refusal to answer, be put to the torture.

Nicor appearing before the assembly, I told him I was commanded by the king to ask him what commission he was charged with by Barbarsa, and to whom. I told him, the safest way for his life, his honour, and his country, was to make a true confession at first, or I had authority to put him to the torture. My prelude terrifying him, he confessed that his last commission was to several towns, as from the king, and with his gripsack, to order their submission to Harlokin, the king not being in any condition to relieve them; and that as soon as they had submitted, Harlokin would be let into this city, which could not stand against him. He also declared, that it had been agreed, and the boundaries settled, how far Barbarsa, who was to be declared king, and marry Yaccombourse, should govern, and how far Harlokin; that Barbarsa was to be styled King of the East, and Harlokin King of the West; and that either of them, on the other's dying childless, was to inherit the whole monarchy.

The king declaring this to be all true, and that he heard it all mentioned but the last night between Barbarsa and Yaccombourse, the whole assembly ordered them to be brought out, carried with cords about their necks, and precipitated into Mount Alkoe.

I then begged they might be suffered to speak for themselves before execution; and I first asked Barbarsa what he had to say against his sentence. He declared, his ambition, and the easiness of his master's temper, had instigated him to attempt what had been charged upon him; having, as he thought, a fair opportunity of so doing. I then asked Yaccombourse the same question; she answered me, her ambition had been her sole governor from a child, and I had done my worst in preventing the progress of that; and whatever else I could do was not worth her notice: "But to have reigned," says she, with some emotion, "was worth the lives of millions, and overbalanced everything!"

I pleaded hard for Nicor, as I perceived him to be only the favourite's favourite; and as he had declared the truth, and I believed I might make farther use of him, I obtained that he might be only committed to me, and that I might have liberty of pardoning or slitting as I saw fit; and, as I expected, he afterwards proved very useful to me and my designs, and I pardoned him.

Before the assembly rose, a party of the natives of Mount Alkoe were ordered to convey Yaccombourse and Barbarsa to the mountain, slip (or draw tight to the body) their graundees, and drop them there: and thus ended the lives of these two aspiring persons.

When I came home, I called Nicor before me. "You know," says I, "Nicor, you are obliged to me for this moment of your life; but as you are sensible my endeavours are to serve this state, I offer you life and freedom, upon condition you employ your utmost diligence to repair your past conduct, by a free declaration of everything in your power that may be for the benefit of the kingdom; and I desire your opinion how best to counteract the schemes formed, and redress the evils."

Nicor, being fully convinced of his error, was very submissive, and declared he believed none of the provinces would have gone over to Harlokin, unless they had thought it was the king's order Barbarsa had acted by, which, by hearing his gripsack, they made no doubt of. He advised to send expresses with the king's gripsack to such places as had lately submitted, and to such as were about it, to put a stop to them. I told him I had done that; "But not by the gripsack," says he; "and unless they see and hear that, they will give no credit to the message."

Nicor having borne a good character before he was seduced by Barbarsa, and knowing that an obliged enemy often becomes the sincerest friend, "Come, Nicor," says I, "will you be your own security to me? May I take your own word?" He said he could not expect that; for as the terror of slitting lay over him, and in my hands too, he could not answer but he might deceive me, in case he should conceive I had a design against him; which I myself, too, might have, from a mistaken motive."

"Why, then, Nicor," says I, "you are free; now use your own discretion. I think you will never cause my judgment to be impeached for what I have done; but if you do, I can't condemn myself for it, and hope I shall have no reason to repent it."

Nicor fell at my feet, embraced them, and was so overcome with my generosity to him, that I could with difficulty prevail on him to rise again; saying he was now, more than ever, ashamed to see my face. I told him I had not done with him, and ordered him to call upon me daily, for I might have several occasions for him; and, truly, next to Nasgig, he proved the usefullest man in the kingdom.

CHAPTER XLI.

The tenth day Nasgig arrived, whilst I happened to be in the king's garden; and hearing the trumpet coming before, I called out to him, to give Nasgig notice where I was, and to desire him to alight there. After I had inquired after my wife and children, and his answers had informed me of their healths; "Well," says Nasgig, "my friend, am I to live or die?" "Explain yourself," says I. "Nay, I only mean," says he, "have you discovered me to the king?" "Pardon me," says I, "dear Nasgig, I must own the truth; I have." "Then," says he, "I suppose his majesty has no more commands for me?" "No," says I, "it is not so bad as that neither." "But, pray," says he, "what says Barbarsa to it?" "Oh, nothing at all!" says I; "quite quiet." "Nor Yaccombourse? Did you discover her baseness to the king?" "Yes," says I; "and the king behaved like a king upon the occasion." "And where are they now?" says he. "Only in Mount Alkoe," says I. "Mount Alkoe!" replies he, "what do you mean by that? How can they be in Mount Alkoe? Did they go of their own accords?" "They fled off, I suppose, with ropes about their necks," says I, "as your criminals go to Crashdoorpt." "Are they slit, too?" says he. "No," says I, "but slipped, I'll assure you." And then I told all that had happened, and the King's satisfaction at the judgment of the moucheratt. "And now," says I, "Nasgig, you may call yourself the favourite, I promise you; but have a care of power; most grow giddy with it, and the next thing to that is a fall." "Pray," says he, "what is become of Nicor? Is he under the same condemnation?" "No," says I, "Nicor is now by my means absolutely free; and no two greater friends than he and I." I told him then my proceedings with him; he was glad of it, he said, for Nicor, he believed, was honest at bottom.

By this time, up came the cannon; and, truly, had my countrymen but the graundee to convey their cannon at so easy an expense from place to place, the whole world would not stand before us. They brought me five cannon, and three swivel guns, and a larger quantity of ammunition than I had spoken for.

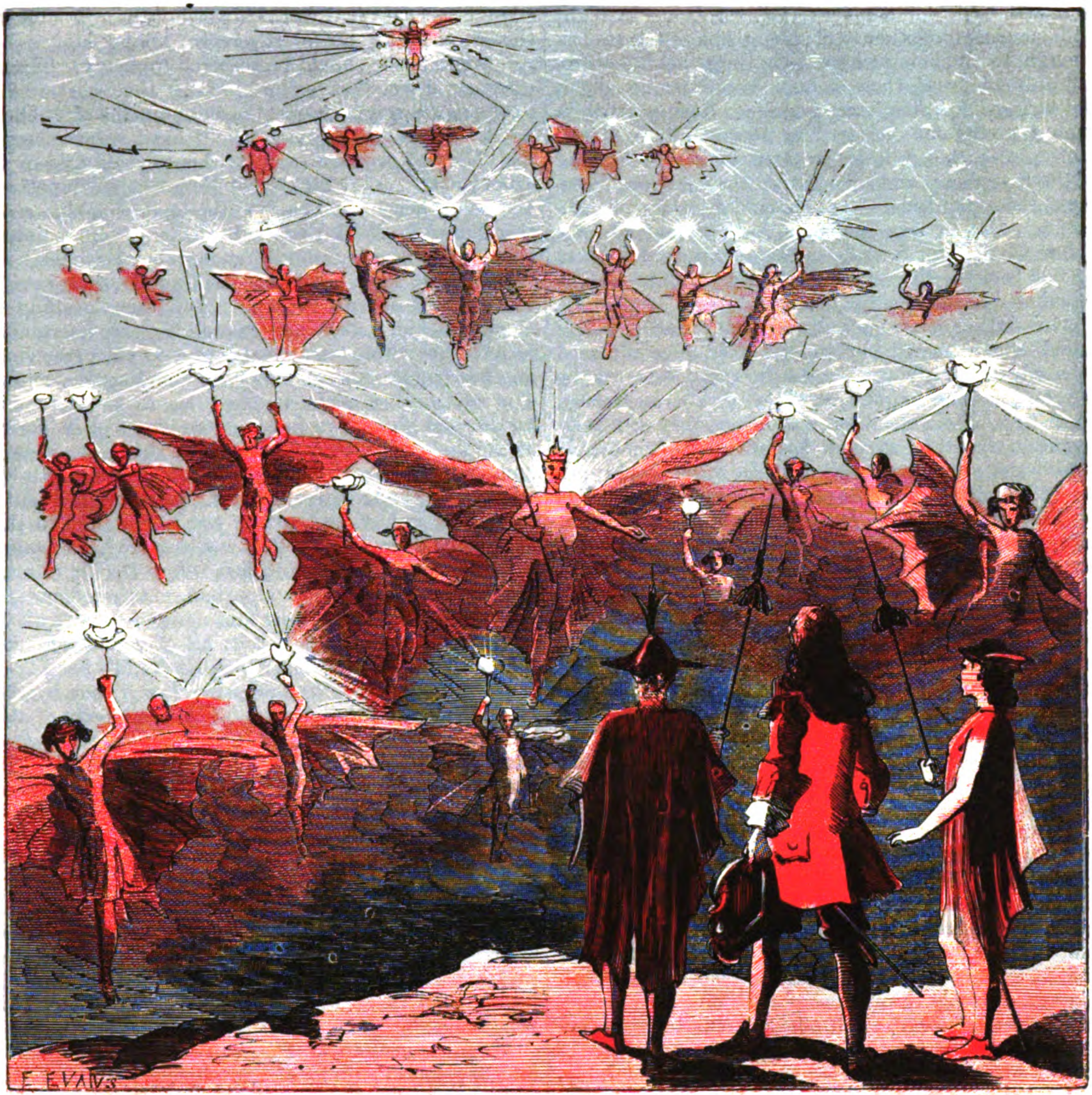
I introduced Nasgig to the king upon his return, as the person to whose conduct the safe arrival of my cannon was owing. His majesty, embracing him, told him the service he had done him was so great in the affair of Barbarsa, he should from henceforth take him into his peculiar confidence and esteem. Nasgig thanked his majesty, and desired to know when he pleased the operations for the campaign should begin. "Ask my father," says the king; "do you conduct the war, and let him conduct you."

Then Nasgig desired to know what number of troops would be requisite. I asked him what number the enemy had: he said, about thirty thousand. "Then," says I, "take you six only, besides the bearers of me and the artillery; and pick me out fifty of the best men you have, as a guard for my person, and send them to me." I showed these men my cutlasses and pistols, and showed them the use and management of them; "And," says I, "as our enemies fight with pikes, keep you at a distance first; and when you would assault, toss by the pike with your hand, and closing in, have at the graundee, and this edge," (showing them the sharpness of it) "will strip it down from shoulder to heel; you need strike but once for it, but be sure come near enough; or, if you find it difficult to turn aside the pike, give it one smart stroke with this; it will cut it in two, and then the point being gone, it will be useless. These instructions, if rightly observed, will make us conquerors."

The next thing was to settle the order of my march, which I did in the following manner; and, taking leave of the king, I set out. First, ten companies of one hundred men, including officers, with each a gripsack, in ten double lines, fifty abreast. Secondly, four hundred bearers of the cannon, with two hundred to the right, the like to the left, as relays. Thirdly, two hundred men with the ammunition, stores, hatchets, and other implements. Fourthly, fifty body-guards, in two lines. Fifthly, myself, borne by eight, with twelve on the right, and as many on the left, for relays. Sixthly, two thousand men in columns, on each side the cannon and me; fifty in a line, double lines. Seventhly, one thousand men in the rear; fifty in a line, double lines.

I consulted with Nasgig, how Harlokin's army lay, that I might avoid the revolted towns, rather choosing to take them on my return; for my design was to encounter Harlokin first; and I did not doubt, if I conquered him, but the towns would surrender of course.

When we arrived within a small flight of his army, I caused a halt at a proper place for my cannon; and having pitched them, which I did by several flat stones one on another, to a proper elevation, I loaded them,



THE REJOICINGS IN HONOUR OF PETER WILKINS' VICTORY.

and also my small arms, consisting of six muskets and three brace of pistols; and placing my army, two thousand just behind me, two thousand to my right, and the same to my left, I gave a strict command for none of them to stir forwards without orders, which Nasgig, who stood just behind me, was to give. I then sent a defiance to Harlokin by a gripsack; who sent me word, he fought for a kingdom, and would accept it. I then putting the end of a match into a pistol-pan with a little powder, by flashing lighted it, and this I put under my chair, for I sat in that, with my muskets three on each side, a pistol in my right hand, and five more in my girdle. In this manner, I waited Harlokin's coming, and in about an hour we saw the van of his army, consisting of about five thousand men, who flew in five layers, one over another. I had not loaded my cannon with ball, but small-sized stones, about sixty in each; and seeing the length of their line, I spread my cannons' mouths somewhat wider than their breeches, and then taking my observation by a bright star, for there was a clear dawn all round the horizon, I observed, as I retired to my chair, how that star answered to the elevation of my cannon; and when the foremost ranks, who, not seeing any men stir, were approaching almost over me to fall on them, had come to my pitch, I fired two pieces of my ordnance at once, and so mauled them, that there dropped about ninety upon the first discharge, together with their commander; the rest, being in flight and so close together, not being able to turn fast enough to fly, being stopped by those behind them, not only hindered those behind from turning about, but clogged up their own passage. Seeing them in such a prodigious cluster, I so successfully fired two more pieces, that I brought down double the number of the first shot; and then giving the word to fall on, my cutlass-guard and the pikemen did prodigious execution. But fearing the main body should advance before we had got in order again, I commanded them to fall back to their former stations, and to let the remainder of the enemy go off.

This did me more good in the event, than if I had killed twice as many; for they not only never returned themselves, but flying some to the right, some to the left, and passing by the two wings of their own army, consisting of six thousand men each, they severally reported, that they were all that was left of the whole van of the army, and that the prediction would certainly be fulfilled, for that their companions had died by fire and smoke. This report struck such terror into each wing, that every one shifted for himself, and never appeared more.

The main body, consisting of about ten thousand men, knowing nothing of what had happened to the wings, hearing we were but a handful, advanced boldly; and as I had ordered my men not to mount too high, the enemy sunk to their pitch. When they came nearer, I asked Nasgig who led them, and if it was Harlokin. He told me no, his general, but that he was behind; and Nasgig begging me to let him try his skill with the general, I consented, they not being yet come to the pitch of my cannon. Nasgig immediately took the graundee, and advancing singly with one of my cutlasses in his hand, challenged the general in single combat. He, like a man of honour, accepting it, ordered a halt, and to it they went, each emulous of glory, and of taking all the advantage he could, so that they suddenly did not strike or push, but sometimes one, then the other, was uppermost, and whirling expeditiously round, met almost breast to breast, while the general, who had not a pike, but a pike-staff headed with a large stone, gave Nasgig such a stroke on his head, that he reeled and sunk considerably, and I began to be in pain for him, the general lowering after him. But Nasgig springing forward beneath him, and rising light as air behind the general, had gained his height again before the general could turn about to discern him; and then plunging forward, and receiving a stroke across his left arm, at the same time he gave the general such a blow near the outside of the shoulder as slit the graundee almost down to his hip, and took away part of the flesh of the left arm; upon which the general fell fluttering down in vast pain, very near me, but not before Nasgig, in descending, had taken another severe cut at him.

Immediately upon this defeat, Nasgig again took his place behind me, our army shouting to the skies; but no sooner had the general dropped, but on came Harlokin, with majesty and terror mixed in his looks; and seeming to disdain the air he rode on, waved his men to the attack with his hand. When he came near enough to hear me, I called him vile traitor, to oppose the army of his lawful sovereign, telling him, if he would submit he should be received to mercy. "Base creeping insect!" says Harlokin, "if thou hast aught to say to me worth hearing, meet me in the air! This hand shall show thee soon who'll most want mercy; and though I scorn to stoop to thee myself, this messenger shall satisfy the world thou art an impostor, and send thee lifeless back to the fond king that sent thee hither." With that he hurled a javelin pointed with flint, sharp as a needle, at me; but I avoiding it, "This, then," says I, "if words will not do, shall justify the truth of our prediction." And then levelling a musket at him, I shot him through the very heart, and he fell dead within twenty paces of me; but perceiving another to take his room, notwithstanding the confusion my musket made amongst them, I ran to my match, and giving fire to two more pieces of ordnance at the same time, they fell so thick about me, that I had enough to do to escape being crushed to death by them; and the living remainder separating, fled quite away, and put an end to the war. I waited in the field three days, to see if they would make head again; but they were so far from it, that before I could return, most of the revolting provinces had sent their deputies, who themselves carried the first news of the defeat, to beg to be received into mercy; all of whom were detained there, till my return with Harlokin's head.

At my return to Brandleguarp, I was met by the king, the colambs, and almost the whole body of the people, every man, woman, and child, with two sweecoe lights in their hands; which unusual sight in the air gave me great alarm, till I inquired of Nasgig what it meant; who told me it must certainly be a *sweecoan* (flight with sweecoes), or he knew not what it was. I asking again what he meant by that, he told me it was a particular method of rejoicing he had heard of, but never seen; wherein, if the king goes in triumph, all the people of Brandleguarp, from fifteen to sixty, are obliged to attend him with sweecoes. He said, it was reported amongst them, that in Begsurbeck's time there were two of them, but there had been none since.

When we met them, I perceived they had opened into two lines or ranks of a prodigious length, at the farther end of which was the king, with innumerable lights about him; the whole looked like a prodigious avenue or vista of lights, bounded at the farther end, where the king was, with a pyramid of light. This had the most solemn and magnificent effect on the eye that anything of light could possibly have; but as we passed through the ranks, each of the spectators having two lights, one was given to each soldier of the whole army. And then to look backward as well as forward, the beauty of the scene was inexpressible. We marched all the way amidst the shouts of people and the sound of the gripsacks, going very slowly between the ranks; and at length arriving at the pyramid where the king was, I heard abundance of sweet voices chaunting my actions in triumphal songs; but I could take little notice of these, or of my son with his flageolet amongst them, for the extravagant appearance of the pyramid, which seemed to reach the very sky. For, first, there was a long line of a full half mile, which hovered at even height with the two side ranks; in the centre of that and over it, was the king single; over him, another line shorter than the first; and again over that shorter and shorter lines, till, at a prodigious height, it ended in one single light. These, all hovering, kept their stations, while the king darted a little space forward to meet me, and congratulate my success; then turning and preceding me, the whole pyramid turned, and marched before us, singing all the way, to the city; the pyramid changing several times into divers forms, as into squares, half-moons, with the horns sometimes erect, and again reversed, and various other figures; and yet amongst this infinite number of globes there was not the least glaring or offensive light, but only what was agreeable to the people themselves. As the rear of the army entered the lines, they closed upon it and followed us into Brandleguarp. While we passed through the city to the palace, the whole body of the people kept hovering till the king and myself were alighted, and then every one alighted where he best could. All the streets and avenues to the palace were blocked up with people, crowding to receive the king's beneficence, for he had proclaimed a feast, and open housekeeping to the people for six days. The king, the colambs, ragans, and great officers of state, with myself, had a magnificent entertainment prepared us in Begsurbeck's great room; and his majesty, after supper, being very impatient to know how the battle went, I told him, the only valorous exploit was performed by my friend Nasgig, who opened the way to victory by the slaughter of Harlokin's general. Nasgig then rose, desiring only that so much might be attributed to him as fortune had accidentally thrown into his scale, for it might have been equally his fate, as the general's, to have fallen. "But except that skirmish," says he, "and some flying cuts at the van, we have had no engagement at all, nor have we lost a single man; Peter only sitting in his chair and commanding victory. He spake aloud but thrice, and whispered once to them; but so powerfully, that having at the two first words laid above three hundred of the enemy at their lengths, and brought Harlokin to his feet with a whisper, at the third word he concluded the war. The whole time, from the first sight of the enemy to their total defeat, took not up more space than one might fairly spend in traversing his majesty's garden. In short, sir," says Nasgig, "your majesty needs no other defence against public or private enemies, as I can see, than Peter; and my profession, whilst he is with us, can be of little use to the state."

After these compliments from Nasgig, and separate ones from the king and the rest, I told them, it was the highest felicity to me to be made an instrument by the great Collwar, in freeing so mighty a kingdom and considerable a people from the misery of a tyrannical power. "You live," says I, "so happily under the mild government of Georigetti, that it is shocking but to think into what a distressed state you must have fallen under the power of a usurper, who, claiming all his own by way of conquest, would have reduced you to a miserable servitude. But," says I, "there is, and I am sorry to see it, still amongst you an evil that you great ones feel not, and yet it cries for redress. Are we not all, from the king to the meanest wretch amongst us, formed with the same members? Do we not all breathe the same air? inhabit the same earth? Are we not all subject to the same disorders? and do we not all feel pain and oppression alike? Have we not all the same senses, the same faculties? and, in short, are we not all equally creatures of, and servants to, the same master, the great Collwar? Would not the king have been a slave, but for the accident of being begotten by one who was a king? and would not the poorest creature amongst us have been the king, had he been so begotten? Did you great men, by any superior merit before your births, procure a title to the high stations in which you are placed? No, you did not. Therefore, give me leave to tell you what I would have done. As every man has equal right to the protection of Collwar, why, when you have no enemy to distress you, will you distress one another? Consider, you great ones, and act upon this disinterested principle—do to another what you in his place would have him do to you. Dismiss your slaves; let all men be what Collwar made them—free. But if this unequal distinction amongst you of man and man is still retained, though you are at present free from the late disaster, it shall be succeeded with more and heavier. And now, that you may know that I would not have every man a lord nor every man a beggar, remember, I would only have every serving-man at liberty to choose his own master, and every master his own man: for he that has property and benefits to bestow, will never want dependants for the sake of those benefits to serve him, as he that has them not must serve for the sake of obtaining them. But then let it be done with free will; he that then serves you will have an interest in it, and do it for his own sake with a willing mind; and you who are served will be tenderer and kinder to a good servant, as knowing by a contrary usage you shall lose him. I desire this may now be declared to be so, or your reasons, if any there are, against it."

One of the ragans said he thought I spoke what was very just, and would be highly acceptable to Collwar. Then two of the colambs rose to speak together, and after a short compliment who should begin, they both declared they only rose to testify their consents. The king referring it to me, and the colambs consenting, I ordered freedom to be proclaimed through the city; so that every one appeared at their usual duties, to serve their own masters for a month, and then to be at liberty to come to fresh agreement with them or who else they pleased.

"This, sir," says I to the king, "will now be a day of joy, indeed, to those poor hearts who would have been in no fear of losing before, let who would have reigned; for can any man believe a slave cares who is uppermost? he is but a slave still. But now," says I, "those who were so before, may by industry gain property; and then their own interest engages them to defend the state. There is but one thing more I will trouble you with now; and that," says I to the ragans, "is, that we all meet at the mouch to-morrow, to render Collwar thanks for the late, and implore future, favour." And this passed without any contradiction.

When we met, the poor ragans were at great loss for want of their Image; for their practice had been to prostrate themselves on the ground, making odd gestures, but whether they prayed, or only seemed to do so, no one knew. While the people were gathering, I called to a ragan. "Suppose," says I, "you and your brethren had received a favour of the king, and you was deputed by them to thank him; you would scarce be at a loss to express your gratitude to him, and tell him how highly you all esteemed his benefits, hoping you should retain a just sense of them, and behave yourselves as dutiful subjects for the future, and then desire him to keep you still in his protection. And this," says I, "as you believe in such a being as Collwar, you may with equal courage do to him, keeping but your mind intent upon him, as if you saw him present." "Indeed," says he, "I believe you are right; but it is a new thing, and you must excuse us if we do it not so well at first." I found I had a very apt scholar, for he made a most extraordinary prayer, in regular order, the people standing very attentive. It was not long, but he justly observed the points I hinted to him. When he had done, another and another went on, till we had heard ten of them, and in every one something new and very *apropos;* and several of them afterwards confessed, they never had the like satisfaction in their lives, for they had new hearts and new thoughts, they said.

We spent the sixth-day feast in every gaiety imaginable, and especially in dancing, of which they were very fond in their way; but it was not so agreeable to me as my own country way, there being too much antic in it. New deputies daily arrived from the revolted towns; and several little republics, not claimed by Georigetti before, begged to be taken under his protection; so that in one week the king saw himself not only released from the dread of being driven from his throne, but courted by some, submitted to by others, and almost at the summit of glory a sovereign can attain to.

CHAPTER XLII.

The festival being over, the colambs begged leave to depart; but the king, who now did nothing without me, consulted with me if it was yet proper. I told him, as things had so long been in confusion in the west, that though the provinces had made their submission, yet the necessity of their circumstances and the general terror might have caused them only to dissemble till their affairs were composed again; and that, as it was more than probable some relations of the deceased Harlokin, or other popular person, might engage them again in another revolt, I thought it would not be improper to advise with his colambs about the establishment of the present tranquillity, and not by too great a security give way to future commotions; and as all the colambs were then present, it might be proper to summon them once more.

When they were met, the king declared the more particular satisfaction he took in that meeting than he had heretofore done, when they had been put to it for means to secure their lives and properties. "For now," says he, "our deliberations must turn upon securing our new acquisitions, and on settling those provinces which, till now, have never fallen under my power. But," says he, "I shall refer it to Peter to propose to you what at present seems most necessary for you to consider of; and that adjusted, shall dismiss you."

I told them, that as the too sudden healing of wounds in the body natural, before the bottom was clean and uncorrupt, made them liable to break out again with greater malignity; so wounds in the body political, if skinned over only, without probing and cleansing the source and spring from whence they arose, would rankle and fret within till a proper opportunity, and then burst forth again with redoubled violence. I would therefore propose a visitation of the several provinces, and an inquiry into their conduct, an examination into the lives and principles of the colambs, the inferior officers, and magistrates; and either to retain the old or appoint new as there should be occasion. "This visitation I would have performed by his majesty, and so many of you the honourable colambs," says I, "as he shall see fit should attend him in royal state, that his new subjects may see his majesty, and hear his most gracious words, and being sensible of his good disposition towards them, may be won by his equity and justice to a zealous submission to his government, which nothing but the perception of their own senses can establish in the heart. This, I don't doubt, will answer the end I propose, and consolidate the peace and happiness of Norm—Normns—I must say, Doorpt Swangeanti."

Hearing me hesitate at the word Normnbdsgrsutt, and call it Doorpt Swangeanti, the whole assembly rang with "Doorpt Swangeanti!" and at last came to a resolution, that the west being now united again to the east, the whole dominions should be called Sass Doorpt Swangeanti, or the Great Flight Land.

They approved the visitation, and all offered to go with the king, but insisted I should be of the party; which agreeing to do, I chose two of the most knowing ragans to teach the new religion amongst them, for in every project I had in my view to advance religion.

Some were for having the deputies released, and despatched with notice of the king's intentions; but I objecting, that they might disrelish their confinement, and possibly raise reports prejudicial to our proceedings, it was thought better to take them with us, and go ourselves as soon as possible.

We set out with a prodigious retinue, first to the right, in order to sweep round the whole country, and take all the towns in our way, and occasionally enter the middle parts, as the towns lay commodious. We were met by the magistrates and chief officers of each district at some distance from each city, with strings about their necks, and the crashee instrument borne before them in much humility. His majesty said but little to them on the way, but ordered them to precede him to the city, and conduct him to the colamb's house, when he was commanded to surrender his employment to his majesty, as did all the other officers who held posts under him. Then an examination was taken of their lives, characters, and behaviour in their stations; and finding most of them had behaved well to the government they had lived under (for their plea was, they had found things under a usurpation, and being so, that government was natural to them, having singly no power to alter it), upon their perfect submission to the king, and solemn engagement to advance and maintain his right, they received their commissions anew from his majesty's own mouth. But where any one had been cruel or oppressive to the subjects, or committed any notorious crime or breach of trust (for the meanest person had liberty to complain), he was rejected, and for the most part sent to Crashdoorpt, to prevent the ill effects of his disgrace.

We having displaced but five colambs and a few inferior officers, the moderation and justice of our proceedings gavè the utmost satisfaction both to the magistrates and people.

Having observed at Brandleguarp abundance of the small images my wife had spoken of, and thinking this a proper opportunity to show my resentment against them, I ordered several of the ragans of the west before me, and asked what small images they had amongst them. One, who spoke for the rest, told me, very few he believed; for he had scarce had any brought to him to be blessed. "Where," says I, "is your Great Image?" He told me, at Youk. "And have not the people here many small ones?" "Very few," says he; "for they have not been forced upon us long." "How forced upon you?" says I; "don't the people worship them?" "A small number now do," says he. "Pray speak out," says I; "when might you not worship them?" "Never, that I know of," says he, "in our state, till about ten years ago, when Harlokin obliged us to it." "What, did you not worship them before?" says I. "No," says he, "never since it has been a separate kingdom; for we would follow the old ragan's advice of worshipping Collwar, which they not admitting of, the state was divided between us who would, and them who would not, come into the ragan's doctrine; and though Harlokin was a zealous image worshipper, yet all he could do would not bring the people heartily into it, for Collwar never wanted a great majority." This pleased me prodigiously, being what was never hinted to me before; and I resolved not to let my scheme be a loser by it.

As we were to visit Youk in about eight days, I summoned the ragans and people to meet me at the mouch, there recounting the great things done by Collwar in all nations. "This I could make appear," says I, "by many examples; but as you have one even at your own towns, I need go no farther.

"I must begin in ancient times, when, I presume, you all worshipped an idol; have you any tradition before this?" They said, "No." "This image," says I, "was worshipped in Begsurbeck's days, when an old ragan, whose mind Collwar had enlightened with the truth, would have withdrawn your reverence from the Image to the original Collwar himself; you would not consent; he threatens you, but promises success to Begsurbeck, who did consent, and he had it to an old age. Could nobody yet see the cause? was it not apparent, Collwar was angry with the east, that would not follow the old ragan, and cherished the west, who would? But, to be short, let us apply the present instance, and sure it will convince us who is right, who wrong.

"So long as the west followed Collwar, they flourished, and the east declined; but no sooner had the west degenerated under the command of Harlokin, and the east by my means had embraced Collwar, but the tables were turned; the east is found weighty, and the west kicks the beam. These things whoso sees not, is blind indeed; therefore let publication be made, for the destruction of all small images, and let the harbourers of them, contrary to this order, be slit; and for myself, I will destroy this mother-monster. Take you, holy ragans, care to destroy the brood." And having said this, I hacked the new idol to pieces.

I ordered proclamation for abolishing slavery, under the restrictions used at Brandleguarp; and thus having composed the west, and given a general satisfaction, we returned, almost the whole west accompanying us, till the east received us; and never was so happy a union, or more present to testify it, since the creation, I believe.

I ordered several of the principal men's sons to court, in order for employments, and to furnish out future colambs; and this I did, as knowing each country would rather approve of a member of their own body for their head than a stranger; and, in my opinion, it is the most natural union. And then, breeding them under the eye of the king eight or ten years, or more, they are, as it were, naturalized to him too, and in better capacity to serve both king and country.

As my head was constantly at work for the good of this people, I turned the most trifling incidents into some use or other, and made the narrowest prospects extend to the vastest distances. I shall here instance in one only. There was at Youk a private man's son, whom by accident I happened to ask some slight question of, and he giving me, with a profound respect and graceful assurance, a most pertinent answer, that, and the manner of its delivery, gave me a pleasure, which, upon farther discourse with him, was, contrary to custom, very much increased; for I found in him an extensive genius, and a desire for my conversation. I desired his father to put him under my care, which the old man, as I was then in so great repute, readily agreed to; and his son desiring nothing more, I took him with me to Brandleguarp. I soon procured him a pretty post of but small duty, for I had purposed other employment for him, but of sufficient significancy to procure him respect. I took great delight in talking with him on different subjects; and observed by his questions upon them, which often puzzled me, or his answers to them, he had a most pregnant fancy and surprising solidity, joined to a continual and unwearied application. I frequently mentioning books, writing, and letters to him, and telling him what great things might be attained that way, his inquisitive temper, and the schemes he had formed thereon, put me upon thinking of several things I should never have hit upon without him. I considered all the ways I could contrive to teach him letters; and letting him into my design, he asked me how I did to make a letter. I described a pen to him, and told him I put a black liquor into it, and as I drew that along upon a flat white thing we made use of, called paper, it would make marks whichever way I drew it, into what shape I pleased. "Why, then," says he, "anything that will make a mark upon another thing as I please, will do." "True," says I; "but what shall we get that will make a black mark?" We were entering farther into this debate, but the king sending for me, I left him unsatisfied. I stayed late with the king that night, so did not see Lasmeel (for that was his name) till next night, wondering what was become of him. I asked him then, where he had been all the day. He told me he had been looking for a pen and paper. I laughed, and asked him if he had found them. "Yes," says he, "or something that will do as well;" so he opened one side of his graundee, and showed me a large flat leaf, smooth and pulpy, very long and wide, and about a quarter of an inch thick, almost like an Indian fig-leaf. "And what am I to do with this?" says I. "To mark it," says he, "and see where you mark." "With what?" says I. "With this," says he, putting his hand again into the graundee, and taking out three or four strong sharp prickles. I looked at them both, and clapping him on the head, "Lasmeel," says I, "if you and I were in England, you should be made a privy-counsellor." "What, won't it do, then?" says he. I told him we would try. "I thought," says he, "it would have done very well; for I marked one all about, and though I could not see much at first, by the time I had made an end, that I did first was quite of a different colour from the leaf, and I could see it as plain as could be." I told him, as he was of an age to comprehend what I meant, I would take another method with him than with a child; so I reasoned from sentences backwards to words, and from them to syllables, and so on to letters. I then made one, the vowel A, told him its sound, and added a consonant to it, and told him that part of the sound of each distinct letter put together, as the two letters themselves were, made another sound, which I called a syllable; and that joining two or more of them together made a word, by putting the same letters together as made the sounds of those syllables which made that word. Then setting him a copy of letters, which with very little difficulty were to be drawn upon the leaf, and telling him their sounds, I left him to himself; and when he had done, though I named them but twice over, his memory was so strong as to retain the sounds, as he called them, of every one but F, L, and Q.

In two months' time I made him master of anything I wrote to him, and as he delighted in it, he wrote a great deal himself; so that we kept an epistolary correspondence, and he would set down all the common occurrences of the day, as what he heard and saw, with his remarks on divers things.

One day, as the king and I were walking in the gardens, and talking of the customs of my country, and about our wars, telling him how our soldiers fought on horseback, the king could not conceive what I meant by a horse. I told him my wife had said there were neither beasts nor fishes in her country; which I was very much surprised at, considering how we abounded with both; "And therefore," says I, "to tell your majesty that a horse is a creature with four legs, you must naturally believe it to be somewhat like a man with four legs." "Why, truly," says he, "I believe it is; but has it the graundee?" I could not forbear smiling, even at his majesty, and wanted to find some similitude to compare it to, to carry the king's mind that way, for else he would sooner, I thought, conceive it like a tree or a mountain, than what it really was; and as I was musing, it came into my head, I had given Lasmeel a small print of a horse, which I found in one of the captain's pockets at Grandevolet, and believing it to be the stamp of a tobacco-paper, had kept it to please the children with; so I told the king I believed I could show him the figure of a horse. He told me it would much oblige him.

Seeing several of the guards waiting at the garden-arch, I looked, and at last found one of Lasmeel's leaves in the garden, and cutting one of them up with my knife, I took the point of that, and wrote to Lasmeel to send me by the bearer the picture of a horse I gave him, that I might show it the king. And calling one of the guards, "Carry that to Lasmeel," says I; "he is, I believe, in my apartment, and bring me an answer directly." Then falling into discourse again with the king, and presently turning at the end of the walk, I saw the same guard again. Says I, "You cannot have brought me an answer already." "You have not told me," says he, "what to bring you an answer to." "Nor shall I," says I; "do as you are bid;" for I perceived then what the fellow stuck at. He walked off with the leaf, but very discontentedly. The king said he wondered how I could act such a contradiction. "This, father," says he, "is not what I expected from you, to order a man to bring an answer, without giving him a message." I desired his patience only till the man came back. Presently says the king, "Here he comes! Well," says he, "what answer?" "Sir," says the fellow, "I have only had the walk for my pains, for he sent it back again, and a little white thing with it." "Ha, ha!" says the king, "I thought so. Come, father, own you have once been in the wrong; for I am sure you intended to give him a message, but having forgot it, would not submit to be told of your mistake by a guard." I looked very grave, reading what Lasmeel had wrote, which was to tell me he had obeyed my orders by sending the horse, for he was just then drawing it out upon a leaf.

"Come, come," says the king, "give the man his message, father, and let him go again." "Sir," says I, "there is no need of that, he has punctually obeyed me; and Lasmeel was then at the table in my oval chamber, with a leaf, and this picture in my hand, before him."

The king was ready to sink when I said so, and showed the print. "Truly, father," says he, "I have been to blame to question you; for though these things are above my comprehension, I am not to think anything beyond your skill." I made no reply to it; but showing the king the picture, the guard sneaked off, and glad he was, I believe, he could do so.

I went then upon the explanation of my horse; and, answering fifty questions about him, at last he asked what his inside was. "Exactly the same as your majesty's," said I. "And can he eat and breathe too?" says he. "Just as you can," says I. "Well," says he, "I would never have believed there had been such a creature; what would I give for one of them!" I set forth the divers other uses we put them to, besides the wars; and by the picture, with some supposed alterations, I described a cow, a sheep, and numberless other quadrupeds, my account of which gave him great pleasure.

CHAPTER XLIII.

Having now some leisure time on my hands to consider over my own affairs, I had thoughts of transporting my family, with all my effects, to Sass Doorpt Swangeanti, but yet had no mind to relinquish all thoughts of my ship and cargo, for the greatest part of this was still remaining, I having had but the pickings through the gulf. I once had a mind to have gone myself, but considering the immense distance over sea, though I had once come safe, I thought I ought not to tempt Providence, where my presence was not absolutety necessary.

Nasgig, to whose care and conduct any enterprise might be trusted, offered his service to go and execute any commands I should give him. His only difficulty, he said, was, that it would be impossible for him to remember the different names of many things, which he had no idea of to convey the knowledge of them to his mind when he saw them; but, barring that, he doubted not to give me satisfaction. I told him I would send an assistant with him, who could remember whatever I once told him; and that I might not burden his memory with names only, Lasmeel should carry his memory with him, and that he, Nasgig, should only have the executive part.

Lasmeel, who had sat waiting an opportunity to put in for a share in the adventure, having a longing desire to see the ship, told Nasgig he had a peculiar art of memory, so as to remember whatever he would as long as he pleased; and that if he carried that with them, they need fear no mistakes.

The king having granted me as many of his guards as I pleased, for the carriage of my things, we appointed them to be ready on the fourth day, when Nasgig and Lasmeel set out with them. I ordered Lasmeel, however, to be with me the next morning, that we might set down proper instructions, which I told him would be very long, and that he must bring a good number of leaves with him.

When Lasmeel entered my chamber next morning, he informed me that the whole city was in an uproar, especially those who had been freed by me. "What!" says I, "have they so soon forgot their subjection, to misapply their liberty already? But step and bring me word what's the matter, and order some of the ringleaders hither to me."

Lasmeel, upon inquiry, found that it had been given out I was going to leave the country, and they all said, wherever I went, they were determined to go and settle with me; for if I left them they should be reduced to slavery again. However, he brought some of them to me; and upon my telling them I thanked them for their affection to me, but blamed them for showing it in so tumultuous a manner, and that I was so far from intending to leave them, that I was sending for my family and effects, in order to settle amongst them, they rejoiced very much, and told me they would carry the good news to their companions, and disperse immediately; but I was now in more perplexity than before, for they having signified my designs to the rest, they rushed into the gallery in such numbers, that they forced up to my very chamber. I told them this was an unprecedented manner of using a person they pretended a kindness for; and told them, if they made use of such risings to express their gratitude to me, it would be the direct means to oblige me to leave them; "For," says I, "do you think I can be safe in a kingdom where greater deference is paid to me than to the crown?" They begged my pardon, they said, and would obey me in anything; but the present trouble was only to offer their services to fetch my family and goods, or to do anything else I should want them for; and if I would favour them in that, they would retire directly. I told them, when I had considered of it, they should hear from me; and this again quieted them.

This disturbance not only took up much of my time, which I could have better employed, but put me to a nonplus, how to come off with them; till I sent Maleck to tell them, though I set a great value upon their esteem, yet after what had passed, it would be the most unadvisable thing in nature for me to accept their kindness; for having before requested a body of men of the king, as he had graciously granted them, it would be preferring them to the king, should I now relinquish his grant, and make use of their offer; and after this I heard no more of it.

I had scarce met with a more difficult task than to fix exact rules for the conduct of my present undertaking, there being so many things to be expressed, wherein the least perplexity arising, might have caused both delay and damage; for I was not only forced to set down the things I would have brought, but the manner and method of packing and securing them; but, as Lasmeel could read my writing to Pedro at home, and Youwarkee on board, it would be a means, though far from an expeditious one, of bringing matters into some order; and after I had done, as I thought, I could have enumerated many more things, and was obliged to add an *et cætera* to the end of my catalogue; and while they were ready for flight, I added divers other particulars and circumstances. Nay, when they were even on the graundee, I recollected the most material thing of all; for my greatest concern was, having broken up so many of my chests, to find package for the things; I say, even so late as that, I bethought me of the several great water-casks I had on board, that would hold an infinite number of small things, and would be slung easily; so I stopped them, and set down that; and they were no sooner out of sight and hearing, but, remembering twenty more, I was then forced to trust them to my *et cætera*.

I had sent my own flying-chair to bring the boys who had not the graundee, with orders for Pedro to sit tied in the chair, with Dicky tied in his arms; Jemmy to sit tied to the board before the chair, and David behind; so I hoped they would come safe enough; and then my wife and Sally were able to help themselves.

Having despatched my caravan, and being all alone, I called Quilly the next morning, and telling him I had thoughts of viewing the country, I bade him prepare to go with me. I had now been here above six months, and yet upon coming to walk gravely about the city, I found myself as much a stranger to the place as if that had been the first day of my arrival, though I had been over it several times in my chair.

This city is not only one of, but actually the most curious piece of work in the world, and consists of one immense entire stone of a considerable height, and it may be seven miles in length, and near as broad as it is long. The streets, and habitable part of it, are scooped, as it were, out of the solid stone, to the level with the rest of the country, very flat and smooth at bottom, the rock rising perpendicular from the streets on each side. The figure of the city is a direct square; each side about six miles long, with a large open circle in the centre of the square, about a mile in diameter; and from each of the sides of the outer streets to the opposite side, runs another street, cutting the centre of the circle.

Along the whole face of the rock, bounding the streets and the circle, there are archways; those in the circle and the four cross streets for the gentry and better people, and those in the outer streets for the meaner; and it is as easy to know as by a sign where a great man lives, by the grandeur of his entrance, and lavish distribution of the pillars, carving, and statues about his portico, within and without; for as they have no doors, you may look in, and are not forbid entrance; and though it should look odd to an English reader, that an Englishman should speak with pleasure of a land of darkness, as that almost was, yet I am satisfied, whoever shall see it after me, will be persuaded that, for the real grandeur of their entrances, and for the magnificence of the apartments and sculpture, no part of the universe can produce the like; and though within doors there is no other manner of light than the sweecoes, yet that, when you are once used to it, is so agreeable and free from all noisome savour, that I never once regretted the loss of the sun within doors, though I often have when abroad; but then that would be injurious to the proper inhabitants, though they can no more see in total darkness than myself.

I have been over some of these private houses, which contain, it may be, thirty rooms great and small, some higher, some lower, full of sweecoe lights, and extremely well proportioned and beautiful.

The king's palace, with all the apartments, stands in, and takes up one full fourth part of the square of the whole city; and is, indeed, of itself a perfect city.

There is no great man's house without one or more long galleries, for the ladies to divert themselves at divers sports in, particularly at one like our bowls on a bowling-green, and at somewhat like nine-holes, at which they play for wines, and drink a great deal, for none of them will intoxicate.

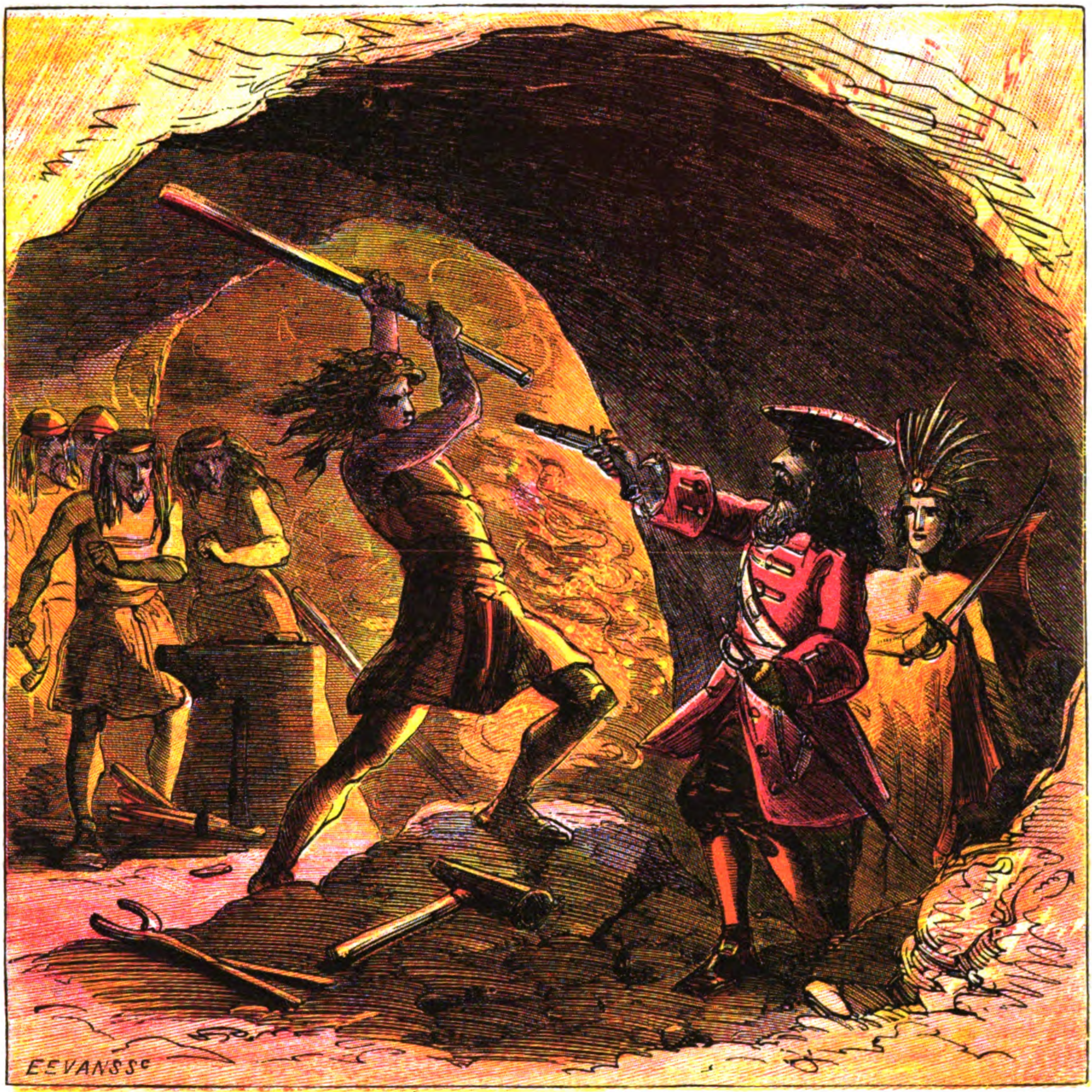
In my walk and survey of the city, one of the colambs being making a house to reside in when at Brandleguarp, I had the curiosity to go in. I saw there abundance of botts stand filled with a greenish liquor, and asked Quilly what that was. He said it was what the stone-men used in making the houses. I proceeded farther in, where I saw several men at work, and stayed a good while to observe them. Each man had a bott of this liquor in his left hand, and stood before a large bank of stone, it may be thirty feet high, reaching forward up to the ceiling of the place, and ascending by steps from bottom to top; the workmen standing, some on one step, some on another, pouring on this liquor with their left hands, and with their right holding a wooden tool, shaped like a little spade. I observed wherever they poured on this water, a smoke arose for a little space of time, and then the place turned white, which was scraped off like fine powder with the spade handle; and then pouring new liquor, he scraped again, working all the while by sweecoe lights.

Having my watch in my pocket, I measured a spot of a yard long, about a foot high, and a foot and a half on the upper flat, to see how long he would be fetching down that piece; and he got it away in a little above two hours. By this means I came to know how they made their houses, for I had neither seen any tool I thought proper, nor even iron itself, except my own, since I came into the country. Upon inquiry, I found that the scrapings of this stone and a portion of common earth, mixed with a water they have, will cement like plaster, and they use it in the small ornamental work of their buildings. I then went farther into the house, where I saw one making the figure of a glumm by the same method; but it standing upright in the solid rock against the wall, the workman held his liquor in an open shell, and dipping such stuff as my bed was made of, bound up in short rolls, some larger, some less, into the liquor, he touched the figure, and then scraped till he had reduced it into a perfect piece.

It is impossible to imagine how this work rids away; for in ten months' time after I saw it, this house was completed, having a great number of fine, large, and lofty rooms in it, exquisitely carved, to all appearance.

My wonder ceased as to the palace, when I saw how easily this work was done; but sure there is no other such room in the world as Begsurbeck's, that I described above.

The palace, as I said before, taking up one quarter of the city, opens into four streets by four different



PETER WILKINS' ENCOUNTER WITH A NATIVE OF MOUNT ALKOE.

arches; and before one of the sides, which I call the front, is a large triangle, formed by the entrance out of one of the cross streets, and the two ends of the front of the palace. Along the lower front of it, all the way runs a piazza of considerable height, supported by vast round columns, which seemed to bear up the whole front of the rock; over which was a gallery of equal length, with balustrades along it, supported with pillars of a yet finer make; and over that a pediment with divers figures, and other work, to the top of the rock, which being there quite even for its whole length, was enclosed with balustrades between pedestals all he way, on which stood the statues of their ancient kings, so large as to appear equal to the life. The other two sides of the triangle were dwellings for divers officers belonging to the palace. Under the middle arch of the piazza was the way into the palace, through a long, spacious, arched passage, whose farther end opened into a large square; on each side of this passage were large staircases, if I may so call them, by which you ascend gradually, and without steps, into the upper apartments.

The next morning, we took another walk, for I told Quilly I had a mind to take a prospect of the country. We then went out at the back arch of the palace, as we had the day before at one of the sides, there being a like passage through the rock from that we went out at, to an opposite arch leading into the garden. I say, we went out at the back arch, and after passing a large quadrangle with lodgings all round it, we ascended through a cut in the rock to a large flat, where we plainly saw the Black Mountain, with its top in the very sky, the sides of which afforded numberless trees, though the ground within view afforded very little verdure, or even shrubs. But the most beautiful sight from the rock was, to see the people come home loaded from the mountain and from the woods, with, it may be, forty pounds weight each on their backs; and mounting over the rock, to see them dart along the streets to their several dwellings, over the heads of thousands of others walking in all parts of the streets, while others were flying other ways. It was very pleasant to see a man walking gravely in one street, and as quick as thought to see him over the rock, settled in another, perhaps two miles distant.

The near view of the country seeming so barren, naturally led me to ask Quilly from whence they got provision for so many people as the city contained, which could not be less than three hundred thousand. He told me, that they had nothing but what came from the great forest, or the skirts of the mountain. "But for the grain of it, and some few outward marks," says I, "I could have sworn I had eaten some of my country beef the other day at the king's table." "I don't know what your beef, as you call it, is; but I am sure we have nothing here but the fruit of some tree or shrub, that ever I heard of." "I wonder," says I, "Quilly, how your cooks dress their victuals. I have eaten many things boiled, and otherwise dressed hot, but I have seen no rivers, or water, since I came into this country, except for drinking, or washing my hands; and I don't know where that comes from. And another thing," says I, "surprises me: though I see no sun as we have to warm the air, you are very temperate in the town, and it is seldom cold here, but I neither see fire nor smoke." "We have," says Quilly, "several very good springs under the palace, both of hot water and cold; and I don't know what we should do with fires; we see the dread of them sufficiently at Mount Alkoe. Our cooks dress their fruits at the hot springs." "That is a fancy," says I; "they cannot boil them there." "I am sure we have no other dressing," says he. "Well, Quilly," says I, "we will go home the way you told me of, and to-morrow you shall show me the springs; but, pray, how come you to be so much afraid of Mount Alkoe? I suppose your eyes won't bear the light; is not that all?" "No, no," says Quilly, "that is the country of bad men; some of us have flown over there accidentally, when the mountain has been cool, as it is sometimes for a good while together, and have heard such noises as would frighten any honest man out of his senses, for there they beat and punish bad men." I could not make much of his story, nor did I inquire farther; for I had before determined, if possible, to get over thither. As we were now come into the garden, I ordered Quilly to get ready my dinner, and I would come in presently.

We went next morning to view the springs, and, indeed, it was a sight well worth considering. We were in divers offices under the rock, (Quilly carrying two globe-lights before me,) in which were springs of very clear water, some of hot, and some of cold, rising within two or three inches of the surface of the floor. We then went into the kitchen, which was bigger than ever I saw one of our churches, and where were a great number of these springs, the hot all boiling full speed day and night, and smoking like a caldron, the water rising through very small chinks in the stone into basons, some bigger, some less; and they had several deep stone jars to set anything to boil in. But what was the most surprising was, you should see a spring of very cold water within a few feet of one of hot, and they never rise higher or sink lower than they are. I talked with the master-cook, an ingenious man, about them; and he told me they lie in this manner all over the rocky part of the country, and that the first thing any one does in looking out for a house is to see for the water, whether both hot and cold may be found within the compass he designs to make use of; and, finding that, he goes on, or else searches another place. And he told me, where this convenience was not in great plenty, the people did not inhabit, which made the towns all so very populous. He said, too, that those warm springs made the air more wholesome about the towns than in other parts where there were none of them. I thanked him for his information, which finished my search for that time.

CHAPTER XLIV.

The days hanging heavy on my hands till the arrival of my family, I sent Pendlehamby word, that, as I had sent for my family and effects, in order to settle in this country, and expected them very soon, I should be glad of his, my brother's, and sister's company, to welcome them on their arrival.

My father came alone, which gave me an opportunity of informing myself in the rise and policy of the state, as I purposed to take several farther steps in their affairs, if they might prove agreeable and consistent; for hitherto, having had only slight sketches or hints of things, I could form no just idea of the whole of their laws, customs, and government. Explaining myself, therefore, to him, I begged his instruction in those particulars.

"Son Peter," says my father, "you have already done too much in a short time, to leave any room to think you can do no more; and as you have hitherto directed your own proceedings with such incredible success, neither the king nor colambs will interpose against your inclination, but give you all the advice in our powers; and I shall esteem your selecting me for that purpose no small honour.

"Know, then, that this state, by the tradition of our ragans, has subsisted eleven thousand years; for, before that time, the great mountain Emina, then not far from the Black Mountain, but now fallen and sunk in the sea, roaring and raging in its own bowels for many ages, at last burst asunder with great violence, and threw up numberless unformed fleshy masses to the very stars, two of which happening in their passage to touch the side of the Black Mountain, (for all the rest fell into the sea and were lost,) lodged there, and lying close together as they grew, united to each other till they were joined in one; and in process of time, by the dews of heaven, became a glumm and a gawrey; but being so linked together by the adhesion of their flesh, they were obliged both to move which way either would; living thus a long time in great love and fondness for each other, they had but one inclination, lest both should be sufferers upon the least disagreement.

"In process of time, they grew tired of each other's constant society, and one willing to go here, and the other there, bred perpetual disorders between them; for prevention whereof for the future, they agreed to cut themselves asunder with sharp stones. The pain, indeed, was intolerable during the operation; but, however, they effected it, and the wounds each received were very dangerous, and a long time before they were perfectly healed; but, at length, sometimes agreeing, sometimes not, they begat a son, whom they called Perigen, and a daughter, they called Philhella. These two, as they grew up, despising their parents, who lived on the top of the mountain, ventured to descend into the plains, and living upon the fruits they found there, sheltered themselves in this very rock. Meantime, the old glumm and gawrey, having lived to a great age, were so infirm, that neither of them was able to walk for a long time; till one day, being near each other, and trying to rise by the assistance of each other, they both got up, and leaning upon and supporting each other, they also walked commodiously: this mutual assistance kept them in good humour a great while; till, one day, passing along near hoximo, they both fell in.

"Perigen and Philhella had several children in the plains, who, as they grew up, increasing, spread into remote parts, and peopled the country. At last, one of them being a very passionate man, at the instigation of his wife, became the first murderer, by slaying his father. This so enraged the people, that the murderer and his wife, in abhorrence of the fact, were conveyed to Mount Alkoe, where was then only a very narrow deep pit, into which they were both thrown headlong; but the persons who carried them thither had scarce retired from the mouth of the pit, when it burst out with fire, raging prodigiously, and has kept burning ever since. Arco and Telamine (the murderer and his wife) lived seven thousand years in the flames; till, having with their teeth wrought a passage through the side of the mountain, they begat a new generation about the foot of the mountain, and having brought fire with them, resolved to keep it burning ever after in memory of their escape; and power being given them over bad men, they and their progeny are now wholly employed in beating and tormenting them.

"A great while after Arco and Telamine were thus disposed of, the people of this country multiplying, it happened, one year, that all the fruits were so dry, that the people, not able to live any longer upon the moisture of them only, as they had always done before, and fearing all to be consumed with drought, one of their ragans praying very much, and promising to make an image to Collwar, and preserve it for ever, if he would send them but moisture, in one night's time the earth cast up such a flood, that they were forced to mount on the rocks for fear of drowning: but the next day it all sunk away again, except several bubbles which remained in many places for a long time, and the people lived only on the moisture they sucked from the stone where those bubbles settled for many years; for they found that the water arose to the height of the surface, and no higher; and where they found most of those chinks and bubbles, they settled, and formed cities, living altogether in holes of the rock; till one Lallio, having found out the art of crumbling the rock to dust by a liquor he got from the trees, and working himself a noble house in the rock, in the place where our palace now stands, he told them, if they would make him their king, they should each have such a house as his own. To this they agreed, and then he discovered the secret to them.

"This Lallio directed the cutting out this whole city; divided the people into colonies where the waters were most plenty; and while half the people worked at the streets and houses, the other half brought them provisions. In short, he grew so powerful that no one durst dispute his commands; all which authority he transmitted to his successors, who, finding by the increase of the people, and the many divisions of them, that they grew insolent and ungovernable, they appointed a colamb in every province as a vice-king, with absolute authority over all causes, except murder and treason, which are referred to the king and colambs in moucheratt.

"As we had no want but of victuals and habitations, the king, when he gave a colambat, gave also the lands and the fruits thereof, together with all the hot and cold springs, to the colamb, who again distributed parcels to the great officers under him, and they part of theirs to the meaner officers under them, for their subsistence, with such a number of the common people as was necessary in respect to the dignity of the post each enjoyed, who for their services are fed by their masters.

"In all cases of war, the king lays before the moucheratt the number of his own troops he designs to send, when each colamb's quota being settled at such a proportion of the whole, he forthwith sends his number from out of his own lasks, and also from the several officers under him; so that every man, let the number be ever so great, can be at the rendezvous in very few days.

"We have but three professions, besides the ragans and the soldiery, amongst us, and these are cooks, house-makers, and pike-makers, of which every colamb has several among his lasks; and these, upon the new regulation, will be the only gainers, as they may work where they please, and according to their skill will be their provision; but how the poor labourers will be the better for it, I cannot see."

"Dear sir," says I, "there are, you see, amongst lasks, some of such parts, that it is great pity they should be confined from showing them; and my meaning in giving liberty is in order for what is to follow, that is, for the introduction of arts amongst you. Now, every man who has natural parts will exert them, when any art is laid before him; and he will find so much delight in making new discoveries, that, did not profit attend it, the satisfaction of the discovery to a prying genius would compensate the pains; but I propose a profit also to the artificer."

"Why, what profit," says my father, "can arise but food, and perhaps a servant of their own to provide it for them?"

"Sir," says I, "the man who has nothing to hope, loses the use of one of his faculties; and, if I guess right, and you live ten years longer, you shall see this state as much altered as the difference has been between a lask and a tree he feeds on. You shall all be possessed of that which will bring you fruits from the woods without a lask to fetch it. Those who were before your slaves shall then take it as an honour to be employed by you, and at the same time shall employ others dependent on them; so as the great and small shall be under mutual obligations to each other, and both to the truly industrious artificer, and yet every one content only with what he merits."

"Dear son," says my father, "these will be glorious days indeed! But, come, come, you have played a good part already; don't, by attempting what you can't master, eclipse the glory so justly due to you."

"No, sir," says I, "nothing shall be attempted by me to my dishonour; for I shall ever remember my friend Glanlipze. Sir," says I, "see here" (showing him my watch). "Why this," says he, "hung by my daughter's side at Grandevolet." "It did so," says I; "and pray, what did you take it for?" "A bott," said he. "I thought so," says I; "but as you asked no questions, I did not then force the knowledge of it upon you. But put it to your ear." He did so. "What noise is that?" says he; "is it alive?" "No," says I, "it is not; but it is as significant. If I ask it what time of the day it is, or how long I have been going from this place to that, I look but in its face, and it tells me presently."

My father looking upon it a good while, and perceiving that the minute hand had got farther than it was at first, was just dropping it out of his hand, had I not caught it. "Why, it is alive," says he; "it moves!" "Sir," says I, "if you had dropped it, you would have done me an inexpressible injury." "Oho," says he, "I find now how you do your wonders; it is something you have shut up here that assists you; it is an evil spirit!" I laughing heartily, he was sorry for what he had said, believing he had shown some ignorance. "No, sir," says I, "it is no spirit, good or evil, but a machine made by some of my countrymen, to measure time with." "I have heard," says he, "of measuring an abb, or the ground, or a rock; but never yet heard of measuring time." "Why, sir," says I, "don't you say, three days hence I will do so? or, such a one is three years old? Is not that a measuring of time by so many days or years?" "Truly," says he, "in one sense I think it is." "Now, sir," says I, "how do you measure a day?" "Why, by rising, and lying down," says he. "But suppose I say, I will go now and come again, and have a particular time in my head when I will return; how shall I do to make you know that time?" "Why, that will be afterwards, another time," says he; "or I can think how long it will be." "But," says I, "how can you make me know when you think it will be?" "You must think too," says he. "But then," says I, "we may deceive each other, by thinking differently. Now this will set us to rights." Then I described the figures to him, telling him how many parts they divided the day into, and that by looking on it I could tell how many of such parts were passed; and that if he went from me, and said he would come one, or two, or three parts hence, I should know when to expect him. I then showed him the wheels, and explained where the force lay, and why it went no faster or slower, as well as I could, and, from my desire of teaching, insensibly perfected myself more and more in it. So that beginning to have a little idea of it, he wished he had one. "And," says he, "will you teach all our people to make such things?" "Then they would be disregarded, sir," says I. "It is impossible," says he. "I'll tell you, sir, how I mean," says I. "I can hereafter show you a hundred things as useful as this; now, if everybody was to make these, how would other things be made? Besides, if everybody made them, nobody would want them; and then what would anybody get by them, besides the pleasing their own fancy? But if only twenty men make them in one town, all the rest must come to them; and they who make these must go to one of twenty others who make another thing that these men want, and so on; by which means, every man wanting something he does not make, it will be the better for every maker of everything."

"Sir," says my father, "excuse me; I am really ashamed, now you have better informed me, I asked so foolish a question." I told him we had a saying in my country, that everything is easy when it is known. "I think," says he, "a man might find everything in your country."

Two days after, my wife and daughter Sally came very early; but sure no joy could be greater than ours at sight of each other. I embraced them both over and over, as did my father, especially Sally, who was a charming child. They told me, I might expect everything that evening, for they left them alighting at the height of Battringdrigg; for though they came out the last, yet the body of the people with their baggage could not come so fast as they did. And little Sally said, "We stayed and rested ourselves, daddy, at Battringdrigg, before the crowd came; but as soon as mammy had seen all my brothers safe, who came before the rest, and kissed Dicky, we set out again."

About seven hours after, arrived the second convoy from abroad that ever entered that country. I had too much to do with my wife and children that night, to spare a thought to my cargo; so I only set a guard over them. For though I had been married about sixteen years, Youwarkee was dear as ever to me.

I was now obliged to the king again for some additional conveniences to my former apartment; and the young ones were mightily pleased to have so much more room than we had at home, and to see the sweecoes; but finding themselves waited upon in so elegant a manner, and by so many servants, (for with our new rooms we had all the servants belonging to them,) they thought themselves in a paradise to the grotto, where all we wanted we were forced to help ourselves to.

The next day, Tommy came to see us, the king having given him a pretty post since the death of Yaccombourse; and Hallycarnie, with the Princess Jahamel, her mistress, who was mightily pleased to see Youwarkee in her English dress, and invited her and the children to her apartment.

It was but a few months since my wife saw the children, yet she scarce knew them, they were so altered; for the two courtiers behaved with so much politeness, that their brothers and Sally looked but with an ill eye upon them, finding all the fault, and dropping as many little invidious expressions on them as possible. But I sharply rebuked them: we were all made chiefly, I told them, to please our Maker, and that could be done only by the goodness of the heart, and if their hearts were more pure, they were the best children; but if they liked their brother's and sister's outward behaviour better than their own, they might so far imitate them.

When we were settled in our new apartment, I unpacked my chairs and tables, and set out my sideboard, and made such a figure as had never before been seen in that part of the world. I wanted now some shoes for Pedro, his own being almost past wear, for the young ones never had worn any, but could find none; till applying to Lasmeel, and showing him what I wanted, he pointed to one of the great water-casks, but as there were eleven of them, big and little, I knew not where to begin; till, having invited the king and several of the ministers to dine with me, I was forced to look over my goods for several other things I should want.

In my search, I found half a ream of paper, a leather inkbottle, but no ink in it, and books of accounts, and several other things relative to writing. The prize gave me courage to attempt the other casks, but I found little more that I immediately wanted. In the last cask were several books, two of them romance, six volumes of English plays, two of devotion, the next were either Spanish or Portuguese, and the last looked like a Bible; but just opening it, and taking it to be of the same language, I put them all in again, thinking to divert myself with them some other time. I here found some more paper, and so many shoes as, when I had fellowed them, served me as long as I stayed in the country.

Having, as I said before, invited the king to eat with me, I was sorry I had not ordered my fowls to be brought; and Youwarkee said she thought to have done it, but I had not wrote for them. I told her, I would send Maleck for some of them, I was resolved, for I should pique myself on giving the king a dish he had never before tasted. So I called Maleck, telling him he must take thirty men with him to Grandevolet; "And carry six empty chests with you," says I, "and put eight of my fowls in each chest, and bring them with all expedition." "Where do they lie, sir?" says he. "You will find them at roost," says I, "when it is dark." "I never was there," says he, "and don't know the way." "What," says I, "never at Grandevolet?" "Yes," says he, "but not at roost." I laughed, saying, "Maleck, did not you see fowls when you were there?" He said he did not know what they were like. "They are a bird," says I. "And what sort of a thing is that?" says he. Youwee hearing us in this debate, "Maleck," says she, "did not you see me toss down little nuts to something that you stared at? you saw them eat the nuts." "Oh dear," says he, "I know it very well, with two legs and no arms." "The same," says I, "Maleck; do you look for a little house almost by my grotto, and at night you will find these things stand on sticks in that house; take them down gently, and come away with them in the chests." Maleck performed his business to a hair, but instead of forty-eight, brought me sixty, telling me, he found the chests would hold them very well; and I kept them afterwards in the king's garden.

CHAPTER XLV.

No farther project being ripe for execution, I took a journey home with my father to Arndrumnstake, and he would take all the children with him. Youwarkee and I stayed about six weeks, leaving all the children with my father.

Upon my return, I frequently talked with Maleck about his country; who they originally were, and how long it had been inhabited, and what other countries bordered thereon, and how they lay. He told me his countrymen looked upon themselves to be very ancient, but they were not very numerous, for the old stock was almost worn out by the hardships they had undergone; that about three hundred years before, he said, as he had it from good report, there were a people from beyond the sea, or, as they called themselves, from the Little-lands, had strangely overrun them; and he had heard say they would overrun this country too, but he thought it would not answer. He said, when those people first came, they began to turn up the earth to a prodigious depth; "And now," says he, "bringing some nasty hard earth of several sorts, they put it into great fires till it runs about like water, and then beat it about with great heavy things into several shapes; and some of it, sir," says he, "looks just like that stuff that lay at the bottom of your ship, and some almost white, and some red; for when I was a boy, I was to have been sent to work amongst them as my father did, but it having killed him, I came hither, as many more have done, to avoid it." "And what do they do with it," says I, "when they have beat it about as you say?" "Then," says he, "they carry it a long way to the sea." "What then?" says I. "Why, then the Little-landers take it, and swim over the sea with it." "And what do they do with it?" says I. "Why," says he, "there are other people who take it from them, and go away with it." "Why do they let them take it?" says I. "Because," says he, "they give them clothes for it." "Do they want clothes," says I, "more than you?"

He told me they had no graundee. "And what other countries have you hereabout?" "There is one country," says he, "north of Alkoe, where they say there is just such another people as the Little-landers, and they get some of the things from Mount Alkoe." "What do they do with them?" says I. "I don't know," says he; "they fetch a great deal, but they won't let anybody come into their country." "Is there nobody inhabits between the mountain Alkoe and the sea?" He told me no, the Little-landers would not let them.

Having got what information I could from Maleck, and also from a countryman or two of his he had brought to me, I considered it all over; "And," thinks I, "if I could but get Mount Alkoe to submit" (for they had told me they were only governed by a deputy from the Little-lands) "to see the work done, I might, by intercepting the trade to the sea, turn the profit of the country my own way, and make it pass through our hands."

I next inquired of those who brought the fruits from the great forest, what sort of land they had there; and found, by their description, it was a light mould, and in many places well covered with grass and herbs; and, by all the report I could hear, must be a fruitful country, well managed; and being a flat country, and not encompassed on that side with the Black Mountain, was much lighter than Doorpt Swangeanti. This news put me upon searching the truth of it; and I made the tour of the Black Mountain and the great forest, alighting often to make my observations. The forest is a little world of wood without end, with here and there a fine lawn, very grassy; and indeed, the wood grounds bear it very well, the trees not standing in crowds, but at a healthy distance from each other. I went abundantly farther than any one had before been, but saw no variation in the woody scene; and coming round westward home, I had a view of hoximo, which is nothing but a narrow cleft in the earth on the top of the Black Mountain, of a most extraordinary depth; for, upon dropping a stone down, you shall hear it strike and hum for a long time before all is quiet again; and laying my ear over the cleft, whilst I ordered one of my attendants to throw a large stone down, after the usual thumps and humming, I imagined I heard it dash in water, so that it is not impossible it may reach to the sea, which is at least six or seven miles below it. Into this hole all dead bodies are precipitated, from the king to the beggar; for four glumms holding by the ancles and wrists of the deceased, fly with them to hoximo, and throw them down, whilst the air is filled with the lamentations of the relations of the deceased, and of such others as are induced to follow the corpse for the sake of the wines on such occasions plentifully distributed to all comers by the gentry, and in the best proportion they are able by even the meanest amongst them.

After a stay of about fourteen days at home, I fixed my next trip for Mount Alkoe; and having told Maleck my design, he said he would go with me with all his heart, but feared I should get no Brandleguarpine to bear me; for he told me they had an old tradition that *Mindrack* (the devil) lived there, and would not go for all the world; "Which has been the greatest security that country has had, for this would have devoured them else," says he.

I spoke to the king, to Nasgig, and the ragans, and found them all unanimous, that the mountain Alkoe was the habitation of Mindrack, and that the noises which had been heard there were his servants beating bad men. Says I to myself, "Here is one of the usefullest projects upon earth spoiled by an unaccountable prepossession: what must be done to overcome this prejudice?"

I told Maleck I found what he said to be too true as to the people of Brandleguarp; "But," says I, "are there not enough of your countrymen here to carry me thither?" He believing there were, I ordered him to contract with them; but it vexed me very much to be obliged to take these men. However, though I resolved to go, yet I chose to reason the ragans into the project if I could, thinking they would soon bring the people over.

I called several of the ragans together, and said, "Because you are a wiser and more thinking people than the vulgar, I have applied myself to your judgments in the affair of Mount Alkoe. Now, consider with yourselves, whether you have any real reason beyond a prepossession, for thinking these people fiends or devils' servants, as you call them, without farther examination; for, according to my comprehension, they only understanding the nature of several sorts of earth, reduce them by labour and fire to solid substances for the use of mankind; and the want of these things is the reason of your living as you do, without a hundredth part of the benefits of life. These sort of people, these noises, and these operations which you hear and see carried on at Alkoe, are to be heard and seen in my country, and we deal and traffic with their labours from one end of the world to the other; and we, who are with them the happiest, without them should be the most miserable of people. Did not some of you see, at my entertainment, what I called my knives and forks, and spoons, my pistols, cutlasses, and silver cup? All these, and infinitely more, are the produce of these poor men's industry. Now," says I, "if we settle a communication with these people, your dues will be all paid in these curious things; you will have your people employed in working them, and have strangers applying to you to serve them with what they want, who, in return, will give you what you want; and you will find yourselves known and respected in the world." Finding some of these arguments, applied to the men, had staggered them a little, I applied to their senses. Says I, "It still appears to me that you have your prejudices hanging on you; but what will you say if I go thither and return safe? will you be afraid to follow me another time?" They persuaded me from it as a dangerous experiment; but said, if I did return, they would not think there was so much in it as they suspected.

Maleck having chosen me out fourscore of his countrymen, in about a month's time I trained them up to the knowledge of my pistols and cutlasses, and the management of them; and taking a chest with me for the arms and other necessaries, we sallied up to the Black Mountain. I rested there, and there Nasgig and Lasmeel overtook me, saying, that when they found me obstinate to go, they could not in their hearts leave me, happen what would. This put new spirits into me, and we consulted how the noises lay, and agreed to engage first upon the skirts of them, where the smoke was most straggling. I charged six guns and all my pistols, which I kept in my chest, and ordered them to alight with me about a hundred paces from the first smoke they saw; then ordered three of them to carry my guns after me, and twelve of them to take pistols and follow me, but not to fire till I gave orders. The remainder I left with the baggage.

We marched up to the smoke, which issued out of a low archway just at the foot of the mountain. It was very light there with the flames of the volcano; and entering the arch, a fellow ran at me with a red-hot iron bar; him I shot dead; and seeing two more and a woman there, who stood with their faces to the wall of the hut or room, as unwilling to be seen, I ordered Maleck to speak to them in a known tongue, and tell them we were no enemies, nor intended them any hurt; and that their companion's fate was owing to his own rashness in running first at me with the hot bar; and that if they would show themselves good-natured and civil to us, we would be so to them; but if they offered to resist openly, or use any manner of treachery towards us, they might depend upon the same fate their companion had just suffered.

Upon hearing this, they approached us; and showing great tokens of submission, I delivered my gun to Maleck, and bade them go on with their work, ordering all the guns out of the shop for fear of a spark. I then perceived they were direct forges, but made after another manner from ours, their wind being made by a great wheel, like a wheel of a water-mill, which worked with fans or wings in a large trough, and caused a prodigious issue of air through a small hole in the back of the fireplace. They were then drawing out iron bars.

I gave to each of these men, and also to the woman, a dram of brandy, which they swallowed down very greedily, and looked for more, and seemed very pleasant. I then inquired into the trade—by whom and how it was carried on, and they told me just as Maleck had done. I then asked where the mines lay; and one of them, looking full at me, said, "Then you know what we are about?" "Yes," says I, "very well." He told me the mine was (in his language, as Maleck interpreted it,) about a quarter of a mile off, and directed me to it. I ordered them to go on with their work, telling them, though I left a guard over them, it was only that they might not raise their neighbours to disturb me, though if they did, I should serve them all as I had done their companion; and left four men with pistols at the archway.

I proceeded to the iron mine, but supposed the men were all within, for I saw nobody; but there were many large heaps of ore lying, which I felt of, and being vastly heavy, I supposed it might be rich in metal.

I returned to my men at the arch, and asked them what other mines there might be in that country, and of what other metals; but Maleck not knowing the metals themselves, was not able to interpret the names they called them by. I then showed them an English halfpenny, a Portuguese piece of silver money, and my gold watch; and asking if they had any of those, they pointed to the halfpenny and silver piece, but shook their heads at the watch. I then showed them a musket ball, and they said they had a great deal of that.

I desired them to show me the way to the copper mine (pointing my finger to the halfpenny), and told them if they would go with me they should have some more (pointing to my brandy); and they readily agreed, if I would stand by them for leaving their work. I believe it might be two miles farther on the right to the copper mine; and as these men had the graundee, I expected they would have flown by me, but I found they had a light chain round their graundee which prevented them, so I walked too; and having made them my friends by being familiar with them, I desired they would go in and let the head man of the works know that a stranger desired to speak with him and view his works, and to inform him how peaceable I was if he used me civilly, but that I could strike him dead at once if he did not.

I do not know how they managed, or what report they made, but the man came to me very courteously; and I bade Maleck ask if he came in friendship, as I did to him, and he giving me that assurance, I went in with him, taking Nasgig and Maleck with me, and leaving our fire-arms without. I ordered them both, as I did myself, to carry their cutlasses sheathed in their hands, for fear of a surprise. We saw a great quantity of copper ore and several smelting vats, being just at the mouth of the mine, the mine running horizontally into the side of the mountain, and, as they said, was very rich. I gave the head man a little brandy, and two or three more of them who had been industrious in showing and explaining things to me.

I desired the foreman to walk out with me; and asking how long he had been in that employ, he told me he was a native of the Born Isles, and was brought thither young, where he first wrought in the iron, then in the silver, and now in this mine; that he had been there twenty years, and never expected to be delivered from his miserable slavery; but as he was now overseer of that work, he did pretty well, though nothing like freedom. He told me they expected several new slaves quickly, for the mines killed those they did not agree with so fast, they were very thinly wrought at present; and that the governor was gone to the isles to get more men. I was glad to hear this. "And pray," says I, "where does the governor reside?" He (pointing to the place) told me. "And what guard," says I, "may he keep?" "About four hundred men; but nobody durst molest him," says he; "for he tortures them in such a manner, never killing them, that not the least thing can be done against his will."

After we had talked a good while on the misery of slavery, and finding him a man fit for my purpose, I asked him if he would go with me to Brandleguarp; "For," said I, "there are certainly good mines in those mountains; and if you will overlook them, you shall be free, and have whatever you desire." He shook his head, saying, how could he expect to be free where all the rest were slaves; "And, besides," says he, "they are in such commotions among themselves, that it is said the state will be torn to pieces." "You are mistaken," says I, "very much; I myself have settled peace amongst them, and killed the usurper." "Is it possible?" says he; "and are you the man it was said they expected to come out of the sea?" "The very same," says I; "and as to slavery, there is not a slave in the kingdom; nor shall be here, if you will hearken to me." "That would be a good time indeed," says he. "Well," says I, "my friend, I promise you it shall be so; only observe this, that when I come to reduce the governor, do none of you miners assist him." He promised me he would let the other miners secretly know it, and all should be as I wished; but desired me to be expeditious, for the governor was expected every day.

I went from him to the other mines, and my guides with me; who seeing me so well received at the copper mine, and reporting it to the others, it caused my proceedings to go on smoothly, and my offers to be readily embraced wherever I came.

Having prepared matters thus, I set Maleck and his countrymen upon the natives, to treat with them about submission to Georigetti on promise of freedom; who being assured of what I had done at Brandleguarp, and in hopes of like liberty, readily came into it; so that the only thing remaining was, before the governor's return, to attack the soldiery. Having, therefore, renewed my engagements with the miners, and believing myself upon as good terms with the natives as I could wish, I was advised by Nasgig and Lasmeel to return for cannon and a large army before I attacked the soldiery; but I, who had all my life rode upon the spur, having considered that an opportunity once lost is never to be regained, and though I could have wished for some cannon, I valued the men but for show; I therefore formed my resolves to march with the force I had next morning, and pitch upon a plain just by the governor's garrison, in order, if I could, to draw his men out. I did so, and it answered; for upon the first news of my coming, they appeared with a sort of heavy-headed weapons, which hurling round they threw upwards a slope, in order to light upon the backs of their enemies in flight, and beat them down; but they could not throw them above thirty paces.

I sat still in my chair, with a gun in my hand, and Maleck with another at my elbow, with four more lying by me ready to be presented; Lasmeel standing by to charge again as fast as we fired. I ordered a party of twenty of my men with cutlasses, to attack the van of the enemy, by rushing impetuously upon them, they coming but thin against me; for I was not willing to employ my pieces till I could do more execution. They began the attack about a hundred yards before me, not very high in the air; and my cutlass men having avoided the first flight of their weapons, fell upon them with such fury, that chopping here a limb and there a graundee, which, disabling their flight, was equally pernicious, they fell by scores before me; but I seeing those in the rear, which made a body of near three hundred, coming very swift and close in treble ranks, one above the other, hoping to bear down my handful of men with their numbers, I ordered my men all to retire behind me, and not, till the enemy were passed over my head, to fall on them. Maleck and I, as they came near, each firing a piece together, and whipping up another, and then another, in an instant, they fell round us roaring and making a horrid yell. This the rest seeing, went over our men's heads, not without many falling from the cuts of my men; and those who escaped were never heard of more.

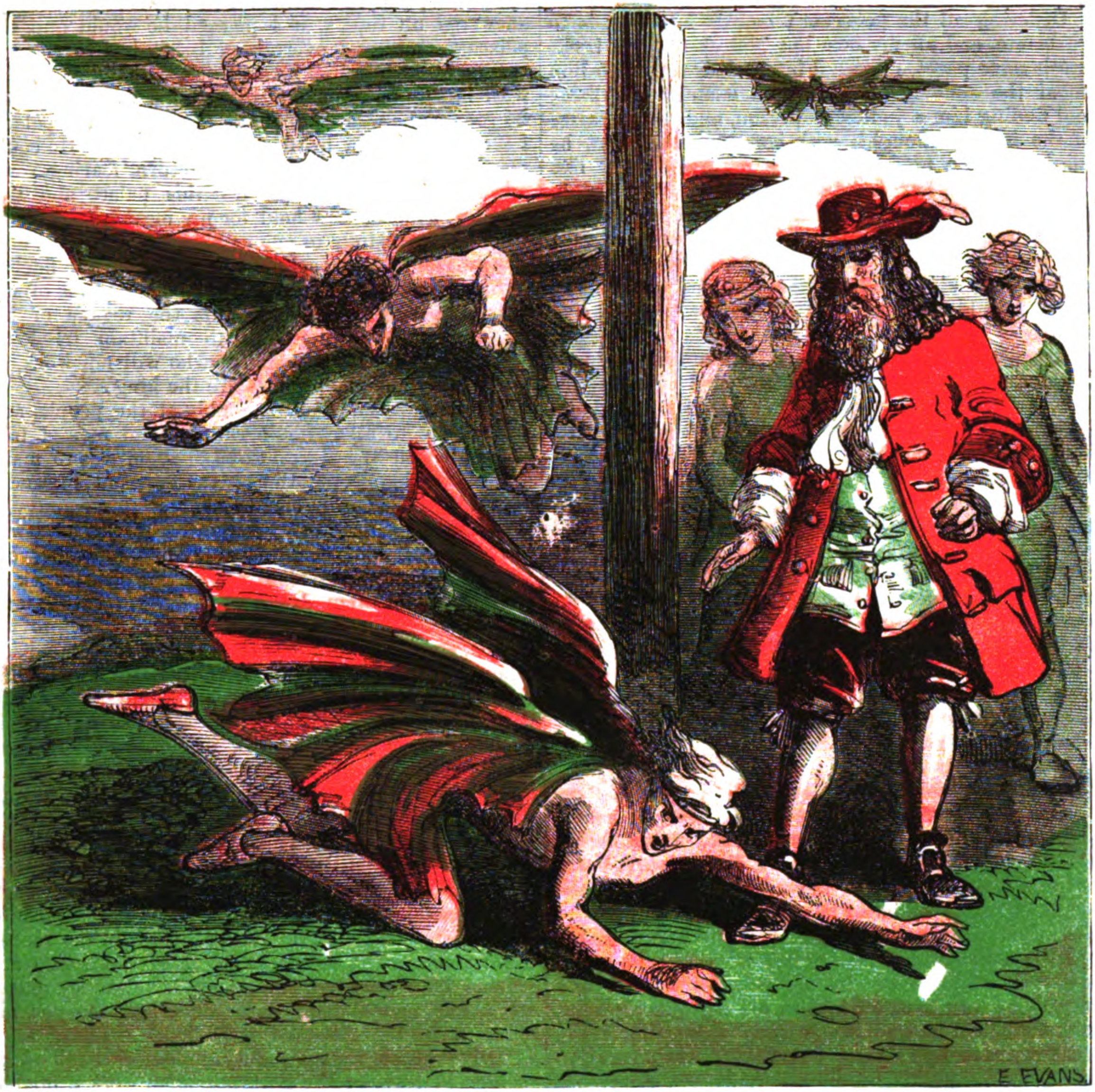
The miners, who from their several stations had beheld the action, came singing and dancing from every quarter round me; and if I had not drawn my men close in a circle about me, would probably, out of affection, have done me more hurt than two of the governor's armies, for against these common gratitude denied the use of force; and they crowding every one but to touch me, they said, for fear of being pressed to death myself, as some of them almost were, I ordered them to be let in through my men at one side of the ring, and passing by and touching me, to be let out on the other side; and this quieted them, but kept me in penance a long time.

We then marched in a body all into the town, where we were going to proclaim Georigetti King of Mount Alkoe, when a surly fellow, much wiser than the rest, as he thought, being about to harangue the people against being too hasty in it, was knocked down and trod to death for his pains; and we went on with the proclamation, giving general liberty to all persons without exception.

The next thing to be considered was, how to oppose the governor when he came; and for that purpose I inquired into the manner of his coming, the road he came, and his attendants; and being informed that a hundred of his guards, who had not the graundee, waited for him at the sea-side, and that he had got no other guard, except a few friends and the slaves he went for, and that the slaves always came first, six in a rank tied together, under convoy of a few of his guards, I went in person to view the route he came; and seeing a very convenient post in a thick wood, through which they were to pass, from whence we might see them before they came near us, I posted a watch on the sea-side of the wood, and myself and men lay on the hither side of it, just where the governor's party must come out of it again; so that, my watch giving notice of their approach, we might be ready to fall on at their coming out of our side of the wood.

When we had waited three days, our watch brought word they were coming; so we kept as close as possible, letting the slaves and guards march on, who came by about two hours' march before the governor; but so soon as he approached, I drew up my men on the plain within the wood in ranks, ordering them to lie close on their bellies till they saw me rise, and then to rise, follow me, and obey orders.

Several of the first ranks having passed the wood, just as the governor had entered the open country, I rose, and bade Maleck call aloud, that if any of them stirred or lifted up a weapon, he was a dead man; and



THE FLIGHT-RACE.—PETER WILKINS AWARDING THE PRIZE

then, seeing one of the foremost running, I fetched him down with a musket shot, bidding Maleck tell the rest, that if they submitted and laid down their weapons, they were safe, but if they refused, I would serve them all as I had done him who fled. This speech, with the terror of the gun, fixed every man to his place like a statue.

I then went forward to the governor, and by Maleck, my interpreter, asked him who they all were with him. He told me, his slaves. I then made him call every man before him and give him freedom, which, finding no way to avoid (for I looked very stern), he did; and I had enough to do to quiet my new freemen, who, I thought, would have devoured me for joy. I asked him whither he was going; he said, to his government. "Under whom do you hold it?" says I. "Under the *zaps* (lords) of the isles," says he. I then told him, that whoever held that government for the future, must receive it from the hands of Georigetti, the king of that country, to whom all the natives and miners had already engaged their fidelity. I told him, both natives and foreigners had been all declared free.

The governor seemed much dejected, and told me he hoped I would not use him or his company ill. I told him that depended entirely on his own and their good behaviour. I asked who his friends were that were with him; he said, they were some of the zaps' relations, who were come to see the method of the government, and inspect the mines.

Ordering all the governor's guards and friends to go before, and all my own but Maleck to keep backwards some paces, I entered into a discourse with him about the state of the isles and country of Alkoe; and finding him a judicious person, and not a native of the isles, I thought, with some management, he might prove a useful person to me, but did not like the character I had heard of his severity; so I plainly told him, that only one thing prevented my making him a greater man than ever he was—which was, I had been informed he had a roughness in his nature, which drove him to extremities with the poor slaves, which I could not bear. "Sir," says he, "whatever a man is in his natural temper, where slavery abounds it is necessary to act, or at least be thought to do so, in a merciless manner. I am intrusted with the government of a land of only slaves, who have no more love, nor are they capable of any for me, than the herbs of the ground have. I am to render an account to my masters of their labours; they work by force, and would not stir a step without it or the fear of correction, for which reason the rod must ever be held over them; and though I seldom let it fall, when I do, the suffering of one is too long remembered to permit others quickly to subject themselves to the like punishment; and this method I judged to be the most mild, as the death or suffering of one but seldom, must, though ever so severe, be milder than the frequent execution of numbers. And as to my appearing severe to them, my post required it; for mercy to slaves, being interpreted into fear, arms them with violence against you."

I could not gainsay this, especially as he told me he was glad I had freed them all. "For no man," says he, "but, if he were to choose, would rather reign by love (which he may in a free country, but it is impracticable in one of slaves,) than by fear, which alone will keep the latter in subjection."

I asked him whether, as he knew the nature of the country and the business of the governor, he could become faithful to my master Georigetti. He told me he had ever been faithful to his masters the zaps, and would, till he was sure (without suspecting in the least my veracity) all was true that I was pleased to tell him; for nothing could satisfy his conscience but being an eye-witness of it; and then, being discharged from any farther capacity of serving them in an open way, he should be free to choose his own master, of all of whom Georigetti would to him be most preferable; but begged me not to interpret his desire of retaining fidelity to his old masters till he could no longer serve them, into an implication of assisting them, by either open or concealed practices; for wherever he engaged he would be true to the uttermost.

At the end of six days (for I travelled on foot with them) we arrived at the governor's palace, which we found without a guard, and all the slaves he had sent before him at liberty; so I ordered my men to supply the usual guard, and took my lodging in the governor's apartment.

As Gadsi (for that was the governor's name) was not confined, or any of his friends, he came into my apartment, and told me, since he had found all things answered my report, if I pleased he would quit the palace to me, and everything belonging to the government. I told him he said well. He did so, taking with him only some few things, his own property. So soon as he was without the territory of the palace, I sent for him and his friends back again. He could not help being dejected at his return, fearing some mischief. "Gadsi," says I, "this palace and this country, which I now hold for my master Georigetti, I deliver in custody to you as his governor; and now charge you to make acknowledgment of your fidelity to him." Then taking it from him, in terms of my own proposing I delivered him the regalia of his government, charging him to maintain freedom: "But," says I, "let no man eat who will not work, as the country and the produce are the king's."

I then summoned an assembly of the people, and sent notice to all the miners to attend me. I told them, all that the king desired of them was to make themselves happy. "And as the mines at present," says I, "are the only employment of this country, I would have it agreed by your own consent, for I will force nothing upon you, that every man amongst you, from sixteen to sixty, shall work every third week at the mines and other duties of the government; and two weeks out of three shall be your own, to provide in for your families. And if I live to come back again, you shall each man have so much land of his own as shall be sufficient for his family, and I will make it my business to see for seeds to improve it with. And this week's work in three, and if afterwards it can be done with less, in four, shall be an acknowledgment to the king for his bounty to you. Do you agree to this?" They all, with one voice, cried out, "We do!" "Then," says I, "agree amongst yourselves, and part into proper divisions for carrying on the work,—that is, into four parts, one for each sort of metal; and then, again, each of those four into three parts; and on every seventh day, in the morning, let those who are to begin meet those who are leaving off work; so that there be clear six days' work, and one of going and returning. Do you all agree to this?" All cried, "We do!" "Then," says I, "whoever neglects his duty, unless through sickness or by leave of the governor, shall work a double week. Do you agree to this?" "We do!" "Then all matters of difference between you shall be decided by the governor; and in case of any injury or injustice, or wrong judgment in the governor, by Georigetti. Do you agree?" "We do!" "Then," says I, "agree upon ten men, two for the natives and two for each mineral work, to send with me to Brandleguarp, to petition Georigetti to confirm these laws till you shall make others yourselves, and to acknowledge his sovereignty. Do you agree?" "We do!"

I then told them, that as those who had been slaves were now free, they might, if they pleased, return home; but, as I should make it my endeavour to provide so well for them in all the comforts of life, I believed most of them would be of opinion, their interest would keep them where they were. And, above all things, recommending a hearty union between the new freemen and the natives, and to marry amongst each other, and to continue in love amongst themselves, and duty to the king and his governor; and promising speedily to return and settle what was wanting, I dismissed the assembly, and set out for Brandleguarp with the ten deputies; but I left Lasmeel behind with the governor, and two servants with him, to give me immediate notice in case any disturbance should happen in my absence.

CHAPTER XLVI.

As we alighted at the palace late at night, I kept the deputies with me till next morning, when I went to the king, desiring them to stay in my apartment till I had received his majesty's orders for their admission.

The king was but just up when I came in, and seeing me, embraced me, saying, "Dear father, I am glad to meet you again alive; your stay has given me the utmost perplexity; and could I have prevailed with any of my servants to have followed you, I had sent before this time to have known what was become of you."

I told his majesty, the greatest pleasure of my life consisted in the knowledge of his majesty's esteem for me; and he might depend upon it, I would take care of myself from a double motive, whilst I was in his dominions: the one, from the natural obligation of my own preservation; and the other, equally compulsive, of continuing serviceable to his majesty, till I had made him more famous than his ancestor, the great Begsurbeck.

I told his majesty, as a small token of my duty and affection to him, I was come to make him a tender of the additional title of King of Mount Alkoe. "Father," says he, "we shall never be able to get a sufficient number of my subjects to go thither; for though your safe return may be some encouragement, yet, whilst their old apprehensions subsist (and I know not what will alter them), we can do no good; and, indeed, were they free to go, and under no suspicion of danger, it would cost abundance of men to conquer Mount Alkoe."

"Great sir," says I, "you mistake me. I told you I came to make you a tender of it; I have proclaimed you king there, and freedom to the people. I have held an assembly of the kingdom; placed a governor; taken the engagement of himself and subjects to you; settled laws amongst them, claiming for your benefit the full third part of all their labour; have brought ten deputies, two from each denomination of people among them; and they only wait your command to be admitted, to beg your acceptance of their submission, and pray your royal protection."

"Father," says the king, "you amaze me! but, as it is your doing, let them come in."

The deputies being received, and heard by Maleck, their interpreter, very graciously, the king told them, in a very favourable speech, that whatever his father had done, or should do, they might accept as done by himself; and commanded them to remind the governor, for whom he had the highest esteem, to observe the laws, without the least deviation, till his father should make such farther additions as were consistent with his own honour and their future freedom; and having feasted them in a most magnificent manner, they returned, highly satisfied with the honours they had received.

This transaction being immediately noised abroad, all the colambs came themselves; and the great cities, by their deputies, sent his majesty their compliments upon the occasion; and there was nothing but mirth and rejoicing throughout the whole kingdom. And those who had refused going with me, as Maleck told me, hung their heads for shame and sorrow, that they had missed the opportunity of bearing a part in the expedition.

I demonstrated to the king, that the only way to preserve that kingdom was to settle a large colony on the plains between the mountain and the sea, to intercept clandestine trade, and make a stand against any force that might be sent from the Little-lands to recover the mines. And I promised to be present at the settlement, and an assistant in it.

Most of the colambs, as I said, being at court upon this complimentary affair, the king summoned them for their advice on my proposals, and told them he had ordered me to lay before them my thoughts on the affairs of that kingdom; and, after many compliments and encomiums had passed on me, I told them the necessity of the colony, the commodity that would arise from it, how I intended to manage it, and what prospect I had of introducing amongst them several extraordinary conveniences they had never before had.

The colambs, who, for want of practice this way, knew but little of the matter, thinking, nevertheless, that in the general turn of things they must somehow come in for a share, approved of all I said. I desired them then to settle, out of what part of the people, and how to be nominated, such choice of the colony as should be made for the new settlement; but found them much at a loss to fix on any method of doing it. So I told them, I believed it would be the best way to issue an order for such as would willingly go, to repair to a particular rendezvous; and in case sufficient should not appear voluntarily, to issue another order, that the colambs, out of their several districts, should complete the number, so as to make a body of twelve thousand men-of-arms, besides women and children; and that such a territory should be alloted to each, with so much wood-grounds, in common to all, as would suffice for their subsistence: all which passed the vote.

I then told them, that this large people must have a head, or governor, to keep them to their duties, and to determine matters of property, and all disputes amongst them. Here they one and all nominated me; but I told them I apprehended I could be more useful other ways, having too many things in my head for the general good, to confine myself to any particular province; but if they would excuse me in presuming to recommend a person, it should be Nasgig. And immediately Nasgig being sent for, and accepting it, they conferred it upon him.

Bibl Bodl

All things, as I judged, went on in so smooth a way, in reference to the new colony, that I was preparing, with the assistance of the proper officer, expresses to be sent with the king's gripsacks into the several provinces, with notice of these orders, and an appointment for a rendezvous. But while this was doing, abundance of people came crowding about me, to be informed whether I thought it safe for them to go; and I believe I had fully satisfied all their scruples, when, by some management of the ragans, who, having so long declared Mount Alkoe to be inhabited by Mindrack, did not care the people should all of a sudden find out they had deceived them, there was a report ran current, that though I and my bearers, who were all Mount Alkoe men, returned safe, yet if any of the Brandleguarpines had gone, they would never have come back again. This rumour coming to my ears, and fearing whitherto it might grow, I had no small prospect of a disappointment; and I therefore stopped issuing the orders till I had considered what farther to do in the affair. At length, being persuaded I had already satisfied abundance of their scruples, and in order to dissipate the doubts of others, and to familiarize them in some measure to the country and people of Mount Alkoe, I proposed a prize to be flown for, and gave notice of it for six days all about the country, both to those of Mount Alkoe, and those of Sass Doorpt Swangeanti, that whoever, except those who were with me in the late expedition, should make the most speedy flight to the governor's of Mount Alkoe, to carry a message, and bring me an answer from Lasmeel, should have one of my pistols, with a quantity of powder, and so many balls; and the person who should be second, should have a cutlass and belt. The time being fixed, very few had entered in the first two or three days; but on the third day came several over from Alkoe to enter, which the Brandleguarpines seeing, and having equal inclination to the prize, after half a dozen of them had entered on the fourth morning, before noon on the fifth I had near sixty of them on my list, besides the Alkoe men, making in all about one hundred.

The time of starting was fixed for the sixth morning, from off the rock on the back side of the palace, upon my firing a pistol.

This unusual diversion occasioned a prodigious confluence of spectators; for scarce a person in Brandleguarp, except those who were either too young or too old for flight, but were upon one or other of the rocks; even the king himself and all his court were there, with infinite numbers from all distant parts.

I had dispatched a letter, by one of my old bearers, to Lasmeel some days before, to inform him of it, that he might get two letters ready wrote, one to deliver to the first, and another to the second messenger; but not to take farther notice of the rest. Now, my flight-race being for the equal benefit of both the kingdoms, it happened, as I was in hopes it would, that so many of the Mount Alkoans coming over to me to be entered, and staying with me till the flight began, and such vast numbers of persons meeting of both nations upon the Black Mountains, to see them go and return, and several of the Swangeantines going, out of bravado, quite through with the fliers,—the intercourse of the two nations was that day so great, and the discourse they had with the natives and miners so stripped the Swangeantines of their old apprehensions of danger from Mount Alkoe, that in three days after the whole dread of the place was vanished, and he would then have been thought mad who had attempted to revive it.

The time being come, I set my fliers in a row on the outer edge of the rock; and having given notice that no one should presume to rise till the fliers were on the graundee, and at such a distance, I then let the fliers know I should soon give fire; which I had no sooner done, but down they all dropped as one man, as it were, headlong from the edge of the mountain, and presently the whole field were after them. They skimmed with incredible swiftness cross the face of the plain, between the rock and the mountain; the force of which descent swung them as it were up the mountain's side, in an almost upright posture; till seeming to sweep the edge of the mountain with their bellies, they slid over its surface, till they were lost in the body of the swangean, our rocks echoing the shouts of the mountaineers. I fired my pistol, by my watch, at nine o'clock in the morning, but had no occasion to inquire when it was thought they would return, for every one was passing his opinion upon it. Some said it could not be till midnight, or very near it; and others, that it would be almost next morning. However, we went to dinner, and coming again about six o'clock by my watch, I was told by the people on the rock, as the general opinion (for it was then topful), that they could not be expected a long time; and the major part concluded they could not be half-way home yet; when, on a sudden, we heard a prodigious shout from the mountain, which growing nearer and nearer to us, and louder and louder, in a few moments came a slim young fellow, and nimbly alighting on the rock, tripped briskly forward, as not able to stop himself at once, from the violence of the force he came with, and delivered me a letter from Lasmeel, as I was sitting in my chair. I gave him joy of the prize, and ordered him to come to my apartment so soon as I got home, and he should have it. I then asked him where he left the other fliers; he told me, he knew nothing of them since he came past the forges in his return, for there he met them going to Lasmeel. "Why, that," says I, "must be a great way on this side the governor's." He told me, about half an hour's flight. I then told him, as he must be strained with so hard a flight, it would be better if he laid down, and called on me in the morning. He thanked me, and after he had told me his name was Walsi, he said he would take my advice; and, springing up as light as air, went off, the rock being quite thronged with those who had followed from the mountain to see the victor.

When Walsi came in, it was just seven o'clock by my watch; so that, according to the best computation by miles I could make from their descriptions of things, I judged he had flown at little more or less than at the rate of a mile a minute.

I stayed till near nine o'clock upon the rock, where it being cold, and the time tedious, I was taking Quilly home with me, and designed that Maleck should wait for the coming of the second; but hearing again a shout from the mountain, I resolved to see the second come in myself. The noise increasing, I presently saw the whole air full of people, very near me, for I had retired near two hundred paces from the edge of the rock, to give room to the fliers to alight, and expected nothing less than to be borne down by them; when I spied two competitors, one just over the back of the other, the uppermost bearing down upon the other's graundee, their heads being just equal; so that the under man, perceiving it impossible to sink lower for the rock, or to mount higher for the man above him, and as darting sideways would lose time, and fearing to brush his belly against the rock, he slackened, just to job up his head in his antagonist's stomach, which giving the upper man a smart check with the pain, and the under one striking, at that instant, one bold stroke with his graundee, he fell just with his head at my feet, and the other upon him, with his head in the under man's neck.

Thus they lay, for a considerable time, breathless and motionless, save the working of their lungs and heaving of their breasts, when each asked me if he was not the first; and the under man giving me a letter, I told them no, Walsi had been in almost two hours ago. They both said it was impossible; they were sure no glumm in the Doorpt could out-fly either of them. I ordered them both to call on me in the morning, and I would see they should have right done to their pretensions. The under man had but just told me his name was Naggitt, when another arrived, who, seeing Naggitt before him, told me he was sure he was second; but on seeing the other also, he gave it up.

I would stay no longer, it being now so late; but the next morning, I was informed that all the rest had stopped at the mountain but two, who were obliged to give out before, being overstrained and unable to hold it.

The next morning, Walsi was the first at my apartment, when I happened to be with the king; and, speaking of his business to Quilly, he ordered him to stay in my gallery till I came back; and Quilly presently, after seeing Youwarkee, told her the victor at the flight-race was waiting for me in the gallery. Youwarkee, who had great curiosity to see him, having heard how long he came in before the rest, stepped into the gallery, and taking a turn or two there, fell into discourse with him about his flight. And, as women are very inquisitive, she distinguished by the flier's answers, speech, shape, and manner of address, that it was certainly a gawrey she was talking with, though she had endeavoured to disguise herself by rolling in her hair, and tying it round her head with a broad chaplet, like a man, and by the thinness of her body, and flatness of her breasts, might fairly enough have passed for one, to a less penetrating eye than Youwarkee's. But Youwarkee putting some questions to her, and saying she was more like a gawrey than a glumm, she put the poor girl (for so it was) to the blush, and at last she confessed the deceit; but, upon her knees, begged Youwarkee not to mention it, for it would be her undoing.

This confession gave Youwarkee a fair opportunity of asking how she came to be an adventurer for this sort of prize. The girl, finding there was no remedy, frankly confessed she had a strong affection for a glumm-boss, who was a very stout glumm, she said, but somewhat too corpulent for speedy flight, who, ever since the prize had been proposed, could rest neither night nor day, to think he was not so well qualified to put in for it as others, especially one Naggitt, who he well knew made his addresses to her, and also was an adventurer. "Had it been a matter of strength, valour, or manhood," says he, "I had had the best of chances for it; but to be under a natural incapacity of obtaining so glorious a prize, as even the king himself is not master of such another, I cannot bear it!" She then said, he had told her he was resolved to give in his name, and do his utmost, though he died in the flight. "What!" said he, "shall I see Naggitt run away with it, and perhaps with you too, when he has that to lay at your feet which no glumm else can boast of? No; I'll overcome, or never come home without it." "I must confess, madam," says Walsi, "as I knew his high spirit could never bear to be vanquished, I was afraid he would be as good as his word, and come to some unlucky end; and told him, that though he need not have feared being conqueror in anything else, had it been proposed, yet in flight there were so many, half glumms as they were, who from their effeminate make and size, and little value for anything else, would certainly be in before him, that it was unworthy of a thorough glumm to contend with them, for what could be obtained only by those who had no right to, or share in, anything more excellent; and that he must therefore not think of more than his fatigue for his pains. But as he had set his heart so much upon it, I would enter and try to get it for him, as, from my size and make, I believed few would have a better chance for it than myself. And thanks to Collwar, madam," says she, "I hope to make him easy in it, if you will but please to conceal your knowledge of who and what I am."

Youwarkee was mightily pleased with her story, and promised she would; but engaged her to come again to her apartment so soon as she was possessed of the prize.

When I returned, hearing Walsi waited for me, I called him in, read the letter he brought, and finding it Lasmeel's, I looked over my list for Walsi's name, for I set them all down as they entered; and finding it the very last name of all, and that it was entered but on the morning the race was flown, "So," says I, "Walsi, I find the last at entering is the first at returning; but I see you have been there, by what Lasmeel has sent me, though there were some last night who questioned it by your so speedy return. Here," says I, "take the prize, and see they are only used in the service of your country;" and then I dismissed him.

My two competitors appeared next for the cutlass, and had each of them many arguments to prevail with me in favour of him; but I told them I must do justice, and that though the difference was so small between them, yet certainly Naggitt was the nearest me at the time they both ceased flight, his face lying on my foot; so that, as they both complained of foul play, and were therefore equal in that respect, Naggitt in justice must have it. And I gave it him, in these words, however: "Take it, Naggitt, as certainly yours by the law of the race, but with a diffidence in myself who best deserves it."

I own I pitied the other man's case very much, as I should Naggitt's, had the other won it; but seeing the other turning away, and hearing him say, "But by half a head, when I had strove so hard!" as in a sort of dejection, I told them they were both brave glumms, and of intrepid resolution; and gave him also one, with the like instructions as to Walsi.

Walsi went from me, as she had promised, to Youwarkee, who wanted more discourse with her; for in an affair of love, her gentle heart could have dwelt all day upon the repetition of any circumstances which would create delight in the enamoured. Youwarkee and Walsi sat on thorns, wanting to be gone; but Youwarkee asking question upon question, Walsi got up, and begged she would excuse her, she would come and stay at any other time. "But," says she, "madam, when the man one loves is in pain, (for I am sure he is on the rack, for fear of a discovery, till he sees me,) if you ever loved yourself, you cannot blame me for pressing to relieve him."

When she was gone, Youwarkee finding me alone, was so full of Walsi's adventure she could not be silent; but after twenty roundabout speeches, and promises that I was to make, not to be angry with anybody, or undo anything I had done that day, and I know not what, out came the story. I was prodigiously pleased with it, and wished I had taken more notice of her. Says Youwarkee, "I endeavoured to keep her till you had done, that you might have seen her." "And why did not you?" says I. "My dear," says Youwarkee, "had you seen the poor creature's uneasiness till she got off with it, yourself could not have had the heart to have deferred that pleasure you would have perceived she expected when she came home, nor could you in conscience have detained her."

CHAPTER XLVII.

THIS race, notwithstanding all that the ragans could say to keep up their credit, and to prevent the people's perceiving what fools they had made of them, had so good and sudden an effect on the people's prejudices, that upon issuing the first proclamation there was no occasion for the second; for at least twenty-five thousand men appeared voluntarily at the rendezvous of the old slaves—whose masters, though they were declared free, had used divers devices to oppress them, and render even their freedom a sort of slavery—besides women and children; so that we had now only to pick and choose those who would be likeliest to be of service to the new colony.

Nasgig and I differed now about the choice of persons; he, as a soldier, was for taking mostly single young men, and I for taking whole families, though some were either too old or too young for war; and upon farther consideration he agreed with me, for I told him young men would leave a father, mother, or mistress behind them, which would either cause a hankering after home, and consequently the bad example of desertion, or else create an uneasy spirit, and perhaps a general distaste to the settlement; so we chose those whole families, where they offered, which had the most young men in them, first; then others in like order; after that, man by man, asking them severally if any woman they liked would go with them; and if so, we took her, till we had about thirteen thousand fighting men, besides old men, women, and children; and then marching by the palace, the king ordered ten days' stores for every mouth, and with this we took our flight; but as I was always fearful of a concourse in the air, Nasgig led them, and I brought up the rear.

Besides the above number of people, I believe we could not have less than ten thousand volunteers to the Black Mountain; some to take leave of their friends, and others out of curiosity to see our flight. I took three pieces of cannon with me, and proper stores.

Our first stage, after a short halt on the Black Mountain, was to the governor's palace, where Gadsi received us with great respect. I told him my errand, which he approved; "For," says he, "countryman, it is now as much my interest to keep my old masters out, as ever it was to serve them when in; and you have taken the only method in the world to do it effectually." I consulted him where I should fix my colony; and by his advice, fixed it on this side the wood, with some scattered habitations behind the wood, as watch-houses to give notice of an enemy, having the wood for shelter before they could reach the town, and, at the worst, the town for a retreat.

I found by Gadsi that the ships from the Little-lands were soon expected, for that, he said, the zaps knew nothing yet of the change of government, nor could till the ships returned. He asked me, as there was now a good lading, whether I thought fit to let them have it upon proper terms. I told him I would not hinder their having the metals, or endeavour to stop their trade in the least; but should be glad to treat with them about it myself.

I gave the forge-men descriptions for making shovels, spades, pickaxes, hammers, and abundance of other iron implements I should want in the building the town,—all which we got ready and carried with us. We then took flight, and alighted on the spot of our intended city; and having viewed the ground some miles each way, we drew the outlines, and set a great number of hands to cutting down trees, digging holes, and making trenches for the foundations. In short, we were all hands at it, and the women fetched the provisions; but I was obliged to show them every single step they were to take towards the new erections; and I must say, it was with great pleasure I did it, they seldom wanting to be told twice, having as quick an apprehension of what they heard or saw as any people I had ever met with.

The whole city, according to our plan, was to consist of several long straight streets, parallel to each other, with gardens backwards each way, and traverse passages at proper distances, to cross each street from one to the other quite through the whole city.

While this work was in hand, I took a progress to view the other country Maleck had told me of. We had not taken a very long flight, before we saw at a distance several persons of that country travelling to Mount Alkoe for metals. I had a great mind to have some talk with them about their kingdom, and ordered my bearers to go to them; they told me they durst not, for one of them would kill ten men. I did not choose to force them to it, for fear of some mischief; but observing which way they came, and that they came in several small bodies of six or eight together, and that there was a little wood and some bushes between me and them, I ordered my bearers to sink beneath the trees out of their sight, and to ground me just at the foot of the wood, for I resolved to know something more of them before we parted.

I lay perdue till they arrived within sixty paces of me; then asking Maleck if he knew their language, and he telling me he did, having often conversed with them at the mines, I bid him greet them, and tell them I was a friend, and be sure to stand by me. There were seven of them, and many more at different distances. I showed myself, and Maleck spoke to them, when two or three of the hindermost ran quite away; one stood and looked very surly; but the rest who stood with him turning to run, I bid Maleck tell him, if he did not call them back I would kill them. He that stood then called to them; but they mending their pace upon it, I let fly, and shot one in the shoulder, who dropping, I was afraid I had killed him. I then went up to the other, who had not stirred even at the report of the gun, seeming quite terrified. I took him by the hand and kissed it, which made him recover himself a little, and he took mine and kissed it.

I bid Maleck tell him I was a great traveller, and only wanted to talk with him; but seeing the man I had shot stir, I went to him, and by Maleck told him I was sorry I had hurt him, which I should not have attempted had he not shown a mistrust of me by running away, for I could not bear that: this I said to keep the other with me. I saw I had hurt his shoulder, but being at a great distance, the ball had not entered the bladebone, but stopping there, had fallen out; so tying my handkerchief over it, I told him I hoped it would soon be well.

I inquired into their country, its name, the intent of their journey this way, their trades, the fruits, birds, and beasts of the country.

The man I had shot, I found, was in pain, which gave me no little concern; so I chiefly applied myself to the other, who told me the name of his country was Norbon, a large kingdom, and very populous, he said, in some parts of it, and was governed by Oniwheske, an old and good king. "He has only one daughter," says he, "named Stygee; so that I am afraid, when he dies, it will go to a good-for-nothing nephew of his, a desperate debauched man, who will probably ruin us, and destroy that kingdom, which has been in the Oniwheske family these fifteen hundred years." "Won't his daughter have the kingdom," says I, "after his death, or her children?" "Children!" says he, "no; that's the pity. All would be well if she had but children, and the state continue fifteen hundred years longer in the same good family." "How is it possible for any one to know that?" says I. "You may know how long it has, but how long it will last, is mere guess-work." "No," says he; "this very time, and the present circumstances of our kingdom, were foretold at the birth of the first king we ever had, who was of the present royal family." "How so?" says I. "Why," says he, "before we had any king, we had a very good old man, who lived retired in a cave by the sea, and to him everybody, under their difficulties, repaired for advice. This old man happening to be very ill, everybody was under great affliction, for fear they should lose him; when, flocking to his assistance, he told them, they need not fear his death till the birth of a king, who should reign fifteen hundred years. At hearing this, all persons then present apprehended that his disorder had turned his brain; but he persisted in it, and recovered.

"After a few years, a great number of persons being about him, he told them he must now depart, for that their king was born, and pointed to a sucking child a poor woman had then in her arms. It caused a great wonder in his audience, at the thoughts of that poor child ever becoming a king; but he told them it was so decreed; and farther, that as he was to die the next day, if they would gather all together, he would let them know what was to come in future times.

"When they were met, the woman and child being amongst them, he told them that child was their king; and that his loins should produce them a race of kings for fifteen hundred years, during which time they should be happily governed; but then a female inhabitant of the skies should claim the dominion, and, together with the kingdom, be utterly destroyed, unless a messenger from above, with a crown in each hand, should procure her a male of her own kind; and then the kingdom should remain for the like number of years to her posterity. Now," says he, "the time will expire very soon; and as no one has been, or, it is believed, will ever come with two such crowns, the Princess Stygee, though she undoubtedly will try for it, has little hopes of succeeding her father; for her cousin Felbamko pretends, as no woman ever reigned with us, he is the right heir, and will have the kingdom." "Pray," says I, "what do you mean by an inhabitant of the air?" "Oh," says he, "she flies." "And do most of your country folks fly?" says I, "for I perceive you don't." "No," says he, "no one but the Princess Stygee." "My friend," says I, "your meeting with me will be a very happy affair for your kingdom. I am the man the princess expects; go back to the princess, and let her and her father know I will be with them in six days, and establish his dominions in the princess."

The fellow looked at me, thinking I joked, but never offered to stir a foot. "Why don't you go?" says I; "and for the good news you bear to the princess, I'll see that you shall be made one of the greatest men in

Norbon." The man smiled still, but could not conceive I was in earnest. I asked him then how long he should be in going to the palace; he said, three days at soonest. "Deliver but your message right," says I, "and I'll assure you it shall be the better for you." The man, seeing me look serious, did at length believe me, and promised he would obey me punctually; but he had not seen how I came to the place he met me at, for I had ordered my bearers into the wood with my chair before I showed myself.

He arrived, as I afterwards found, at the palace, the fourth morning very early; and passing the guard in a great heat, with much ado was introduced to the king, and discharged himself of my message. His majesty, giving no credit to him, thought he had been mad; but he affirming it to be true, and telling the king at what a distance I had knocked down his companion, and made a great hole in his back, only holding up a thing I had in my hand, which made a great noise; Oniwheske ordered his daughter to come before him, who, having herself heard the man's report, and being very willing to believe it, with the king's leave, desired that the messenger might be detained till the appointed day, and taken care of; and that preparation should be made for the reception of the stranger, in case it should be true.

The noise of my coming, and my errand, excited every one's curiosity to see me arrive; and the day being come, I hovered over the city a considerable time, to be sure of grounding right. The king and his daughter, on the rumour of my appearing, came forth to view me, and receive me at my alighting. The people were collected into a large square on one side of the palace, and standing in several clusters at different places, I judged where the king might seem most likely to be, and ordered my bearers to alight there; but I happened upon the most unlucky post, as it might have proved, and at the same time the most lucky I could have found there; for I had scarce raised myself from my chair, but Felbamko, pushing up to me through the throng, and lifting up a large club he had in his hand, had certainly despatched me, if I had not at the instant drawn a pistol from my girdle, and shot him dead upon the spot; insomuch, that the club which was then over my head fell gently down on my shoulder.

I did not then know who it was I had killed; but for fear of a fresh attempt, I drew out another pistol and my cutlass, and inquiring at which part of the square the king was, I walked directly up to him, he not as yet knowing what had happened. His majesty and his daughter met me, and welcomed me into his dominions. I fell at the king's feet, telling him I brought a message, which I hoped would excuse my entering his majesty's dominions without the formality of obtaining his leave.

When we came to the palace, the king ordered some refreshments to be given me and my servants, and then that I should be conducted to the room of audience.

The report of Felbamko's death had reached the palace before us, and that it was by my hand. This greatly surprised the whole court, but proved agreeable news to Stygee.

At my entrance into the room of audience, the king was sitting at the farther end of it against the wall, with his daughter on his right hand; and a seat was placed for me at his left, but nearer to the middle of the room sideways, on which I was ordered to sit down. There were abundance of the courtiers present, and above me was a seat ordered for one of them, who, I found afterwards, was one of the religious.

His majesty asked me aloud how it happened, that the first moment of my entering his dominions I should dip my hands in blood, and that, too, of one of his nearest relations.

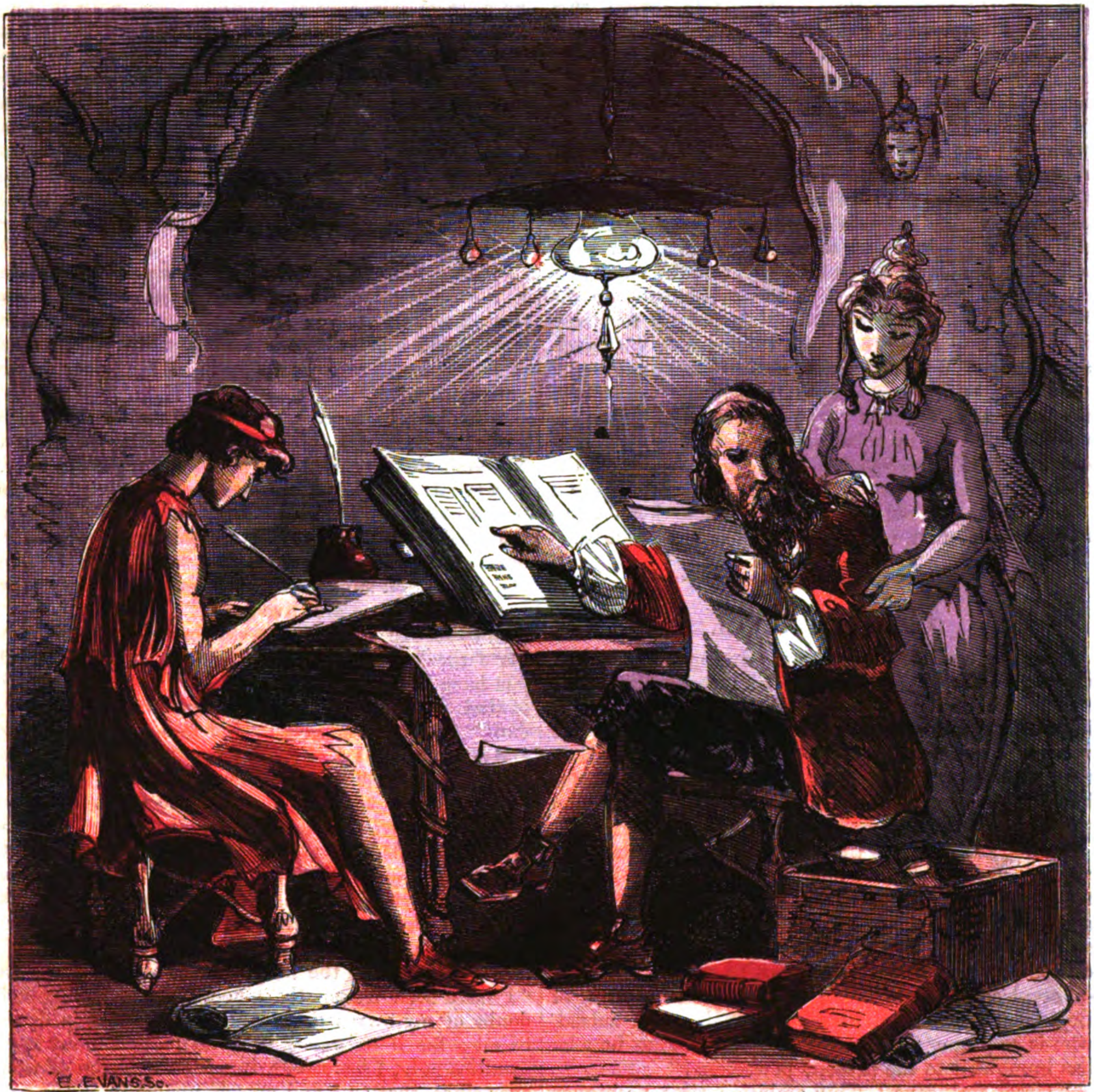
I then got up to make my answer; but his majesty ordering me to my seat again, I told him, that as it was most certain I knew no one person in his kingdom, so it could not be supposed I could have an ill design against any one, especially against that royal blood, into whose hands I then came to render myself; but the truth was, that what I had done was in preservation of my own life; for that the person slain had rushed through the crowd upon me with a great club, intending to murder me; and that whilst the blow was over my head, I killed him in such position, that by his fall the club rested on my shoulder, but was then too weak to hurt me.

The king asking if that was the real case, several from the lower end of the room said they were informed it was; and one in particular said he saw the transaction, and I had declared it faithfully. "Then," says the king, "you are acquited. And, now, what brings you hither? Relate your business."

"Great sir," says I, "it is my peculiar happiness to be appointed by Providence as the proposer of a marriage for the Princess Stygee, your daughter, with a potent neighbouring monarch; having already been enabled to perform things past belief for his honour. Know, then, great sir, I am a native of the north, and through infinite perils and hardships at last arrived in the dominions of Georigetti, where I have given peace to his state by the death of the usurper Harlokin. I have also just conquered the kingdom of Mount Alkoe for my master, and I am here come to make your daughter an offer of both crowns, and also of all that is my master's, with his person in marriage."

The old priest then rose, and said, "May it please your majesty, we are almost right; but what has always staggered me is, how the person should come; for the messenger to us on this errand is to come from above. Now this person has not the graundee, and therefore could not come from thence; as for the rest, I understand the prince from whom he brings this offer to your daughter has the graundee, and so is a male of her own kind; and I understand the two kingdoms in his possession to be the two crowns in the messenger's hands; but, I say, what I stick at is, his coming from above."

"What," says Stygee, "did not you see him come?" "No," says he. "Oh," says she, "he came in the air, and was a long time over the city before he descended." "That's impossible," says the old priest; "for he is smooth like us." "Indeed, sir," says she, "I saw him, and so did most of the court." The king and nobles then attesting this truth, "Sir," says the priest



PETER WILKINS TRANSLATES THE SCRIPTURES FOR THE FLYING ISLANDERS.

to the king, "it is completed, and your majesty must do the rest."

"I little expected," says the king, "to see this day; and now, daughter, as this message was designed for you, you only can answer it; but still I must say it surpasses my comprehension, that in the decree of Providence it should be so ordered, that the very hand which brings the accomplishment of what has been so long since foretold us, should, without design, have first destroyed all that could have rendered the marriage state uncomfortable to you."

Stygee then declared she submitted to fate and her father's will.

I stayed here a week to view the country and the sea, which I heard was not far off. Here were many useful beasts for food and burden, fowls also in plenty, and fish near the sea-coasts; and the people eat flesh, so that I thought myself amongst mankind again. I made all the remarks the shortness of the time would allow, and then taking my leave, departed.

I returned to the colony, where I heard that the Little-landers had been on the coast. but I not being there, or any lading ready, they were gone away again: however, they had detained two of them. I was pleased with that, but sorry they were returned empty.

I examined the prisoners; and, by giving them liberty and good usage, they settled amongst us; and the next fleet that came, the sailors to a man were all my own the moment they could get to shore: this, though I thought it would have spoiled our trade at first, brought the islanders and me to the following compromise, and upon this occasion:—Their ships having laid on our coasts one whole season for want of hands to carry them back, I came to an agreement with their commanders, (for they were all willing to return,) that such a number of them should be left as hostages with me till the return of a number of my own men, which I should lend them to navigate their ships home; and I sent word to the zaps, that as it might be beneficial to us both to keep the trade still on foot, to prevent the like inconveniences for the future, I would buy their shipping, paying for them in metals, and agree to furnish them yearly with such a quantity of my goods at a stated price, and would send them by my own people; which they approving, the trade went on in a very agreeable and profitable manner, and we in time built several new vessels of our own, and employed abundance of hands in the trade, and had plenty of handicraftsmen of different occupations, each of whom I obliged to keep three natives under him, to be trained up in his business.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

At my return to Sass Doorpt Swangeanti, I went directly to the king, and giving him an account of the settlement, and my proceedings thereon, he told me his whole kingdom would not be an equivalent for the services I had done him. I begged of him to look on them in no other light than as flowing from my duty; but if, when I should be no more, he or his children would be gracious to my family, it was all I desired.

"This, father," says the king, "I can undertake for myself; but who's to come after me, nobody knows, for I shall never marry. No! Yaccombourse has given me a surfeit of woman-kind; and unless the states will settle the kingdom on you, to which I will consent, it will probably be torn to pieces again by different competitors; for I am the last of the line of Begsurbeck, and of all the blood-royals; and, indeed, who is so proper to maintain it flourishing, as he who has brought it to the present perfection?"

"Great sir," says I, "my ambition rises no higher than to abound in good deeds whilst I live, and to perfect my children in the same principle; and this, I hope, will entitle them to a support when I am gone. But," says I, "why is your majesty so averse from marriage, merely on account of a woman you could not expect to be true to you?" "Not expect it!" says he; "what stronger tie upon earth could she have had to be true than my affection, and all that my kingdom could afford her?" "Weak things all, sir," says I. "Why, what could she have had?" says he, in some warmth. "Honour, sir," says I, "and virtue, both which she abandoned to become yours; and those once lost, how could you expect her to be true?" "You are too hard for me, father," says he; "but they are all alike, and I don't believe there's a grain of honour in any of them." "In any of them like Yaccombourse, I admit, sir," says I; "but think not so of others, for no part of our species abounds more with it, or is more tender of it, than a good woman. Now, if your majesty could find an agreeable and virtuous wife, one deserving of your royal person and bed, and perhaps with a kingdom for her dowry, a partner fit to share your cares as well as glory, would it not be a great pleasure to you to be possessed of such a mate, and to see heirs arising under your joint tuition, to convey down your royal blood to the latest posterity? Would not this, I say, be a grateful reflection to you in your declining years?"

"Truly, father," says the king, "as you have painted it, the prospect could not fail to please; and under the circumstances you have put it, it would meet my approbation: but where is such a thing as a woman of this character to be found? I fear only in the imagination."

"Sir," says I, after a seeming muse for some time, "what should you think of Oniwheske, the king of Norbon's, daughter? he has but that one child, I hear." "Dear father, have done," says his majesty; "to what purpose should you mention her? We but barely know that there is such a state—we have never had any intercourse; and, besides, as you say he has but one child, can you suppose she will ever marry, to leave so fine a kingdom and live here?" "But, sir," says I, "now we are supposing,—suppose she should, with her father's consent, be willing to marry you, would you have her for your queen?" "To make any doubt of that, father," says he, "is almost to suppose me a fool." "Then, sir," says I, "her father has consented, and she too; and if I durst have presumed so far, or had known your mind sooner, she would, I believe, have ventured with me to have become yours: but you might have slighted her, and crowned heads are not to be trifled with; but since you are pleased to show your approbation of it, I can assume you, sir, her person will yield to none in your majesty's dominions; for, sir, I have been there, and have seen her, and she is your own, and her kingdom too, upon demand."

"Father," says the king, looking earnestly at me, "I have been frequently, since I knew you first, in doubt of my own existence—my life seems a dream to me; for if existence is to be judged of by one's faculties only, I have been in such a delusion of them ever since, that as I find myself unable to judge with certainty of any other thing, so I am subject to doubt whether I really exist. Are these things possible that you tell me, father?"

I then told him the whole affair, and advised him by all means to accept the offer, and marry the princess out of hand.

His majesty, when I had brought him thoroughly to believe me, was as eager to conclude the marriage as I was to have him; but then, whether he should go to her, or she come to him, was the question. I told him it was a thing unusual for a sovereign to quit his own dominions for a wife; but would advise an embassy to her father, with notice that his majesty would meet and espouse her on the frontiers of the two kingdoms.

The ambassadors returning with an appointment of time and place, it was not above a month before I had settled Stygee on the thrones of Sass Doorpt Swangeanti and Mount Alkoe, with the reversion of the kingdom of Norbon without a competitor.

I shall here give you an account of the marriage ceremony. The king being arrived on the borders, Stygee, who had waited but a few hours at the last village in Norbon, advanced to his majesty on the very division, as they called it, of the two kingdoms, a line being drawn to express the bounds of each. The king and Stygee having talked apart from the company a little space, each standing, hand in hand, on their respective ground, the chief ragan advanced, and began the ceremony.

He first asked each party aloud, if he and she were willing to be united in body and affections, and would engage to continue so their whole lives; to which each party having answered aloud in the affirmative, "Show me, then, a token!" says he; and immediately each expanding the right side of their graundees, laid it upon the other's left side, so that they appeared then but as one body, standing hand in hand, encased round with the graundee. The ragan then, having descanted upon the duties of marriage, concluded the ceremony with wishing them as fruitful as Perigen and Philhella. So soon as it was over, and the gripsacks and voices had finished an epithalamium, the bride and bridegroom, taking wing, were accompanied to Brandleguarp, amidst the acclamations of an infinite number of Georigetti's subjects.

The king had made vast preparations for the reception of the Princess Stygee, and nothing was to be heard or seen but feastings and rejoicings for many days; and his majesty afterwards assured me of his entire satisfaction in my choice of his bride, without whom, he confessed, that notwithstanding the many other blessings I had procured him, his happiness must have been incomplete.

Intending another flight to Norbon, I was charged with the king and queen's compliments to Oniwheske; which having executed, I opened a free trade to Mount Alkoe; and hearing that small vessels came frequently on the Norbonese coast, to carry off the iron and other metals from thence unwrought, and paid part of their return in wrought metals, I ordered some of the next that came to be stopped and brought to me; and the day before I had fixed for my departure, notice was sent that twelve of those traders were stopped, and in custody at the sea-side. I longed to see them, but then considering that it would take up more time to bring them to Apsilo, the capital, where I was, than I should take in going to them and returning, I resolved to go and examine them myself.

They told me they traded with small vessels to Norbon for metals, which they carried home, and wrought great part of it themselves, sending it to, and dispersing it in several islands at a distance, and also sold the unwrought to several people who carried it they knew not whither in great ships. They said they kept abundance of hands at work in the trade. I asked if their artificers wrought it for their own profit, or their masters'. They told me, for masters', themselves being all slaves. "And are you all slaves?" says I. They told me "Yes," all but one, pointing to him. I then ordered him to be secured and removed; and told them, if they would procure some hands to settle at Norbon and Mount Alkoe, they should all be made free, have lands assigned them, and have other privileges, and I did not doubt in time would become the richest men in the country, for I understood by them they were acquainted with the use of money. I asked them what other commodities they brought to Norbon in exchange. They said, clothes for the people, both what they received in exchange from others who bought their iron, and some of a coarser sort of their own making. I found, in my discourse I had with them, that out of my eleven men there were persons of four different occupations; so I promised those who would stay with me their freedoms, good houses, and other rewards; and sending three hands home with the vessel, and a full freight, according to the value of the cargo they brought, I ordered them to engage as many as they could of their countrymen of distinct trades, to come and settle with me; and to be sure, if they had any grain, corn, roots, plants, or seeds, usually eaten for food, to bring all they could get with them, and they should have good returns for them; and as to those good hands that settled here, they should be allowed all materials to work for their own profit for the first year, and after that they should also work for themselves, allowing the king one-tenth of the clear profit. This took so far with them, that it was with the utmost difficulty I got any of them to carry the ship back, for fear they should not be able to return.

Before I parted from them, I assigned the eight who were left all proper conveniences, and recommended them to the king's protection; and I ordered the owner, then in custody, to be conducted to Mount Alkoe, and from thence to Brandleguarp, where, treating him kindly, and giving him liberty, I made my proper use of him.

The king having lent me a convoy to conduct my prisoner, and given me a license for as many cattle of the sorts I chose as I pleased to drive to Georigetti's dominions, I made them drive a great number of sheep of the finest wool I ever saw, and very large also; a great number of creatures not unlike an ass for shape, but with two upright horns and short ears, which gave abundance of rich milk; and also some swine. All these were drove to, and distributed at my new colony, where I let them remain till I had provided a proper receptacle for them at Doorpt Swangeanti, near the woods, when I brought many over the Black Mountain, and distributed there, with directions how to manage them; and in about seven years' time, we held a little beast-market near Brandleguarp, twice a year, where the spare cattle were brought up, and preserved in salt till the next market; for I had some years before made large salt-works near the sea at Mount Alkoe, which employed abundance of hands, and was now become a considerable trade.

We had iron, copper, and silver money, which went very current; and had butter and cheese from the farms near the woods, as plenty as we had the fruits before, great numbers of families having settled there; and there was scarce a family but was of some occupation or other.

By the accounts I received from the mines from time to time, it was prodigious to hear what vast quantities of metals were prepared in one year now, by little above one-third of the hands that were usually employed in them before; for now the men's ambition was, to leave a good week's work done at their return, for an example to those who were coming; and the overseers told me, they would sing and work with the greatest delight imaginable, whilst they pleased themselves with telling one another how they intended to spend the next fourteen days.

CHAPTER XLIX.

All things being now so settled that they would go on of themselves, and having no farther direct view in my head, I spent my time with my wife; and looking over my books one day to divert myself, with the greatest joy imaginable I found that the Bible I had taken to be in the Portuguese tongue was a Latin one. It was many years since I had thought of that language; but on this occasion, by force of memory and recollection, and with some attention, consideration, and practice, I found it return to me in so plentiful a manner, that I fully resolved to translate my Bible into the Swangeantine tongue.

I sent directly for Lasmeel to be my amanuensis; and to work we went upon the translation.

We began at the creation, and descending to the flood, went on to the Jewish captivity in Egypt, and deliverance by Moses, leaving out the genealogies, and all the Jewish ceremonies and laws, except the Ten Commandments. I translated the Books of Samuel and Kings, down to the Babylonish captivity. I then translated such parts of the Prophets as were necessary to introduce the Messiah, and discover him; the Book of Psalms, Job, and the Proverbs; and with the utmost impatience hasted to the New Testament. But then considering, that when I had done, as only Lasmeel and myself could read it, in case of our deaths the translation must die with us, I chose out six of the junior ragans, and two of the elder, to learn letters; and in less than twelve months I had brought them all to read mine and Lasmeel's writing perfectly well.

I instructed these ragans at spare hours, whilst I went on with my translation; but finding my paper grow low, having had a great supply of coarse linen, and a sort of calicoes from the isles, in return for our metals, I set up a manufactory from that and some gums of the trees, which we boiled with it to a pulp in iron pans, and beating it to pieces, made a useful paper, which would bear ink tolerably. But I could find nothing to make ink of, though I sent over all the country to search for every herb and fruit not commonly used; till at last I found an herb, and flower on it, which, taken before the flower faded, would, by boiling thoroughly, become blue: this, by still more boiling in a copper pan, till it was dry and burnt hard to the bottom, in some measure answered my purpose; and I fixed upon it as the best I could obtain from all my experiments.

When the ragans were masters of their pens, I set six of them to copy what Lasmeel had finished, and the other two to teach their brethren; and in two years' time, by a pretty constant application, (for I made them transcribe it perfectly fair and intelligible,) we finished our translation, and two fair copies.

I then ordered the ragans to read a portion of it to the people constantly in the mouch: they, from the novelty of the story, at first grew so exceeding fond of it, that upon the proper expositions of it I taught the ragans afterwards to make, they began to apply it seriously to religious purposes.

My writing ragans were very fond of their knowledge of letters; and trade and commerce now increasing, which put every one more or less in want of the same knowledge, they made a great profit of it, by instructing all who applied to them. This increase of writing necessarily provided a maintenance for several persons, who travelled to Norbon for quills, and sold them to the Swangeantines at extravagant rates; till the Norbonese, hearing that, brought them themselves to the foot of the mountain, where the Swangeantines bought them, as they did several other commodities, which one country had, and the other wanted, especially iron-wares of almost every denomination; so that the mountain, being so excessively high, was the barrier; for the Norbonese finding that difficulty in ascending and descending, which the Swangeantines with their graundees did not, there was a constant market of buyers and sellers on the Mount Alkoe side of the Black Mountain, which by degrees grew the general mart of the three kingdoms.

I have often reflected with myself, and have been amazed to think, that so ingenious and industrious a people as the Swangeantines have since appeared to be, and who, till I came amongst them, had nothing more than bare food, and a hole to lie in, in a barren rocky country, and then seemed to desire only what they had, should, in ten years' time, be supplied not only with the conveniences, but superfluities of life; and that they should then become so fond of them, as rather willingly to part with life itself, than be reduced to the state I found them in. And I have as often, on this occasion, reflected on the goodness of Providence, in rendering one part of mankind easy under the absence of such comforts as others could not rest without; and have made it a great argument for my assent to well-attested truths above my comprehension. "For," says I, "to have affirmed, at my first coming, either that these things could have been made at all, or, when done, could have been of any additional benefit to these people, would have been so far beyond their imaginations, that the reporter of so plain a truth, as they now find it, would have been looked upon as a madman or an impostor; but by opening their views by little and little, and showing them the dependence of one thing upon another, he that should now affirm the inutility of them, would be observed in a much worse light. And yet, without any embellishments of art, how did this so great a people live under the protection of Providence? Let us first view them at a vast distance from any sort of sustenance; yet, from the help of the graundee, the distance was but a step to them. They were forced to inhabit the rocks, from an utter incapacity of providing shelter elsewhere, having no tool that would either cut down timber for a habitation, or dig up the earth for a fence, or materials to make one; but they had a liquor that would dissolve the rock itself into habitations. They had neither beast or fish, for food or burden; but they had fruits equivalent to both, of the same relish, and as wholesome, without shedding blood. Their fruits were dangerous, till they had fermented in a boiling heat, and they had neither the sun, or any fire, or any knowledge how to propagate or continue it; but they had their hot springs always boiling, without their care or concern. They had neither the skins of beasts, the original clothing, or any other artificial covering from the weather; but they were born with that warm clothing, the graundee, which being of a considerable density, and full of veins flowing with warm blood, not only defended their flesh from all outward injuries, but was a most soft, comely, and warm dress to the body. They lived mostly in the dark rock, having less difference of light with the change of seasons than other people have; but either by custom or make, more light than what Providence has sent them in the sweecoe is disagreeable: so that where little is to be obtained, Providence, by confining the capacity, can give content with that; and where apparent wants are, we may see, by these people, how careful Providence is to supply them; for neither the graundee, the sweecoes, or their springs, are to be found where those necessaries can be supplied by other means."

Amongst my other considerations, I have often thought, that if I had gone to the top of the Black Mountains northward of Brandleguarp, in the very lightest time, I might have seen the sun; but these mountains were so elevated, that our lightest time was only the gilded glimmering of their tops, having never seen so much light on them as totally to eclipse all the stars, of which we had always the same in view, but in different positions.

CHAPTER L.

I HAD now been at Brandleguarp ten years; and my children were all provided for by the king, but Dicky, as fast as they were qualified for employment, and such as were fit for it were married off to the best alliances in the country; so that I had only to sit down, and see everything I had put my hand to prosper, and not an evil eye in the three kingdoms cast at me. But about my eleventh or twelfth year, my wife falling into a lingering disorder, at the end of two years it carried her off. This was the first real affliction I had suffered for many years, and so soured my temper, that I became fit for nothing, and it was painful to me even to think of business.

The king's marriage had produced four children, three sons and a daughter, which he would frequently tell me were mine.

Old Oniwheske was dead, and the king and queen divided their whole time equally between Brandleguarp and Apsilo; but he was building a palace at my new colony, which by this time was grown to a vast city, and was called Stygena, in compliment to the queen; and this new palace was designed to receive the court one-third of the year, as it lay almost at equal distance between both his other palaces. This method, which his majesty took at my persuasion, on the death of Oniwheske, though it went against the grain at first, was now grown so habitual to him, and he saw his own interest so much in it, in the love and esteem it procured him from the people, that at last he wanted no spur to it.

My melancholy for the death of my wife, which I hoped time would wear off, rather gained ground upon me; and though I was as much regarded as ever by the whole court, yet it grew troublesome to me even to be asked my advice; and it not only surprised those about me, but even myself, to see the same genius, without any visible natural decay, in so short a time, from the most sprightly and enterprizing, become the most phlegmatic and inactive.

My longings after my native country, ever since my wife's death, redoubled upon me, and I had formed several schemes of getting thither; as, first, I had formed a project of going off by the islands, as I had so many small vessels at command there, and to get into the main ocean, and try my fortune that way; but, upon inquiry, I found that my vessels could not get to sea, or elsewhere but to the zaps' islands, by reason of the many rocks and sand-banks which would oppose me, unless I went through the zaps' country, which, in the light they had reason to view me, I was afraid to do. Then I had thoughts of going from the coast of Norbon; but that must have been in one of the foreign vessels, and they coming from a quite different quarter than I must go, in all probability, if I had put to sea any way they were unacquainted with, they having no compass, we must have perished; for the more I grew by degrees acquainted with the situation of Doorpt Swangeanti, the stronger were my conjectures, that my nearest continent must be the southern coast of America; but still it was only conjecture. At length, being tired and uneasy, I resolved, as I was accustomed to flight, and loved it, I would take a turn for some days, carry me where it would; I should certainly light on some land, whence, at worst, I could but come back again. I then went to see if my chair, boards, and ropes, were sound, for I had not used them for several years past; but I found them all so crazy, I durst not venture in them, which disappointment put off my journey for some time. However, as I had still the thought remaining, it put me on seeking some other method to put in practice; so I contrived the poles from which you took me, being a sort of hollow cane the Swangeantines make their spears of, but exceeding strong and springy, which, interwoven with small cords, were my seat, and were much lighter than my chair; and these buoyed me up when your goodness relieved me. I had taken Mount Alkoe bearers, as I knew I must come to a country of more light; and I now find, if I had not fallen, I must soon have reached land, if we could have held out; for we were come too far to think of returning, without a resting-place. And what will become of my poor bearers I dread to think; if they attempted to return, they must have dropped, for they had complained all the last day and night, and had shifted very often. If in your history you think fit to carry down the life of a poor old man any farther, you will as well know what to say of me as I can tell you; and I hope what I have hitherto said will in some measure recompense both your expense and labour.

Then, having finished the work to our mutual satisfaction, I locked it up, in order to peruse it at leisure, intending to have presented it to him at our arrival in England, to dispose of as he pleased, in such a way as might have most conduced to his profit; for I resolved, notwithstanding our agreement, and the obligations he was under to me, that the whole of that should be his own. But he, having been in a declining state some time before we reached shore, died the very night we landed; and his funeral falling upon me, I thought I had the greatest right to the manuscript; which, however, I had no design to have parted with, but showing it to some judicious friends, I have by them been prevailed with not to conceal from the world what may prove so very entertaining, and, perhaps, useful.

R S.

JOHN JOHNSON
Bibl. Bodl.

THE END.

EDMUND EVANS, ENGRAVER AND PRINTER, RAQUET COURT, FLEET STREET.